

THE LOEB CLASSICAL LIBRARY

EDITED BY

T E PAGE, LITT.D.

E CAPPS, PH.D , LL.D. W H. D ROUSE, LITT D

PROCOPIUS

V

PROCOPIUS.

VOLUME I

THE PERSIAN WAR

VOLUME II

THE VANDALIC WAR

VOLUME III

THE GOTHIC WAR

VOLUME IV

THE GOTHIC WAR

(continued)

PROCOPIUS

WITH AN ENGLISH TRANSLATION BY

H. B. DEWING

PRESIDENT, ATHENS COLLEGE, 1890-1891

IN SEVEN VOLUMES

V

HISTORY OF THE WARS,
BOOKS VII (*continued*) AND VIII



LONDON WILLIAM HEINEMANN
NEW YORK . G P PUTNAM'S SONS

MCMXXVIII

Printed in Great Britain

CONTENTS

	PAGE
HISTORY OF THE WARS—	
VII —THE GOTHIC WAR (<i>continued</i>) .	1
VIII —THE GOTHIC WAR (<i>continued</i>)	149
INDEX .	469

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA
HISTORY OF THE WARS :
BOOK VII
THE GOTHIC WAR (*continued*)

ΠΡΟΚΟΠΙΟΥ ΚΑΙΣΑΡΕΩΣ
ΥΠΕΡ ΤΩΝ ΠΟΛΕΜΩΝ ΛΟΓΟΣ ΕΒΔΟΜΟΣ

XXXVI

Μετὰ δὲ Τουτίλας ἅπαν ἐπὶ Ῥώμην τὸ στράτευμα ἦγε, καὶ ἐγκαθεζόμενος εἰς πολιορκίαν καθίστατο. ἐτύγχανε δὲ Βελισάριος τρισχιλίους ἀριστίνδην ἀπολεξάμενος, οὗσπερ ἐπὶ τῷ Ῥώμης φυλακτηρίῳ καταστησάμενος Διογένην αὐτοῖς ἄρχοντα, τῶν δορυφόρων τῶν αὐτοῦ ἕνα, ἐπέστησεν, ἄνδρα ξυνετόν τε διαφερόντως καὶ ἀγαθὸν
2 τὰ πολέμια. διὸ δὴ χρόνου μῆκος τῇ προσεδρεΐα ταύτῃ ἐτρίβετο. οἳ τε γὰρ πολιορκούμενοι ἀρετῆς περιουσία πρὸς ἅπαντα τὸν Γότθων στρατὸν ἀξιόμαχοι ὄντες ἐφαίνοντο καὶ Διογένης ἕς τε τὸ ἀκριβὲς τῇ φυλακῇ ἐχρήτο ὥς μή τις κακουργήσων ἐπὶ τὸ τεῖχος ἴοι¹ καὶ πανταχόθι τῆς πόλεως σίτον ἐντὸς τοῦ περιβόλου σπείρας ἐνδεῖν
3 σφίσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὥς ἥκιστα ἐποίει. πολλάκις δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι τειχομαχεῖν ἐγχειρήσαντες καὶ τοῦ περιβόλου ἀποπειράσασθαι ἀπεκρούσθησαν, ἀρετῇ σφᾶς ἀπωσαμένων ἐνθένδε Ῥωμαίων.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

HISTORY OF THE WARS : BOOK VII

THE GOTHIC WAR (*continued*)

XXXVI

TOTILA now led his whole army against Rome, and ^{549 A.D.} establishing himself there entered upon a siege. But Belisarius had selected three thousand men noted for their valour and appointed them to garrison Rome, placing in command of them Diogenes, one of his own spearmen, a man of unusual discretion and an able warrior. Consequently a long time was consumed in the blockade. For the besieged, on their part, shewed themselves, thanks to their extraordinary valour, a match for the entire Gothic army, while Diogenes was ever keeping a strict watch that no one should approach the wall to damage it; furthermore, he sowed grain in all parts of the city inside the circuit-wall and so brought it about that they had not the least shortage of food. Many times indeed the barbarians attempted to storm the fortifications and make trial of the circuit-wall, but they were always repulsed, being driven back from the wall by the valour of the Romans.

¹ 701 Dindorf 711 V, 711 L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

τοῦ μέντοι Πόρτου κρατήσαντες Ῥώμην κατὰ κράτος ἐπολιόρκουν. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἐφέρετο τῇδε.

- 4 Βασιλεὺς δὲ Ἰουστινιανὸς ἐπειδὴ Βελισάριον ἐς Βυζάντιον ἤκοντα εἶδεν, ἄρχοντα πέμπειν ξὺν στρατῷ ἄλλον ἐπὶ Γότθους τε διανοεῖτο καὶ
- 5 Τουτίλαν. καὶ εἰ μὲν ἐπιτελῇ ταύτην δὴ ἐπεποιήκει τὴν ἔννοιαν, οἶμαι ἂν, Ῥώμης μὲν ἔτι ὑπ' αὐτῷ οὔσης, σεσωσμένων δέ οἱ τῶν ἐνταῦθα στρατιωτῶν καὶ τοῖς ἐκ Βυζαντίου ἐπιβεβοηθη-
- 6 ἐναντίων αὐτὸν τῷ πολέμῳ. νῦν δὲ τὰ μὲν πρῶτα Λιβέριον ἀπολεξάμενος, ἄνδρα τῶν ἐκ Ῥώμης πατρικίων, ἐν παρασκευῇ ἐκέλευε γενέσθαι, μετὰ δὲ ἀσχολίας οἱ ἴσως ἐπιγενομένης ἐτέρας τινὸς τὴν προθυμίαν κατέπαυσε.
- 7 Χρόνου δὲ τῇ Ῥώμης πολιορκία τριβέντος πολλοῦ, τῶν τινὲς Ἰσαύρων, οἱ ἀμφὶ πύλην ἢ Παύλου τοῦ ἀποστόλου ἐπώνυμός ἐστι φυλακὴν εἶχον (ἅμα μὲν ἐπικαλοῦντες ἐνιαιτῶν πολλῶν οὐδὲν πρὸς βασιλέως σφίσι δεδόσθαι, ἅμα δὲ καὶ Ἰσαύρους ὀρώντες τοὺς παραδόντας Ῥώμην τὰ πρότερα Γότθοις κεκομφευμένους ἐπὶ μεγάλων τινῶν χρημάτων ὄγκῳ), Τουτίλα λαθραιότατα ἐς λόγους ἐλθόντες ὡμολογησαν τὴν πόλιν ἐνδῶσειν,
- 8 τακτὴν τε ξυνέκειτο ἡμέρα τῇ πράξει. καὶ ἐπεὶ παρῆν ἡ κυρία, Τουτίλας μηχανᾶται τοιάδε. ἐς ποταμὸν Τίβεριν ἐν πρώτῃ τῶν νυκτῶν φυλακῇ δύο πλοῖα μακρὰ καθήκεν, ἄνδρας ἐνταῦθα χρῆσθαι ταῖς σάλπιγξιν ἐπισταμένους ἐνθήμερος.
- 9 οἷς δὴ ἐπέστελλε διὰ μὲν τοῦ Τιβέριδος ἐρέσσον-
τας ἐπίπροσθεν ἵεναι, ἐπειδὰν δὲ τοῦ περιβόλου

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII xxxvi. 3-9

They did, however, capture Portus,¹ and thereafter held Rome under close siege. Such was the course of these events.

As soon as the emperor saw Belisarius returned to Byzantium, he began to make plans for sending another commander with an army against the Goths and Totila. And if he had actually carried out this idea, I believe that, with Rome still under his power, and the soldiers in the city saved for him and enabled to unite with the relieving force from Byzantium, he would have overcome his opponents in the war. But in fact, after first selecting Liberius, one of the patricians from Rome, and ordering him to make himself ready, he later, perhaps because some other business claimed his attention, lost interest in the matter.

After the siege of Rome had continued for a long time, some of the Isaurians who were keeping guard at the gate which bears the name of Paul the Apostle²—men nursing a grievance because for many years nothing had been paid them by the emperor, and observing, at the same time, that those Isaurians who had previously surrendered Rome to the Goths had become the proud possessors of vast sums of money—very secretly opened negotiations with Totila and agreed to hand over the city, and a definite day was appointed for the transaction. So when the appointed day was come, Totila contrived the following plan. He launched in the Tiber River during the first watch of the night two long boats, placing on them men who understood the use of the trumpet. These he commanded to row straight across the Tiber, and when

¹ At the Tiber's mouth

² The Porta Ostiensis. Cf. Book VI. iv. 3.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἄγχιστα ἤκωσι¹ ταῖς σάλπιγξιν ἐνταῦθα ἡχεῖν
 10 δυνάμει τῇ πάσῃ. αὐτὸς δὲ τὸν Γότθων στρατὸν
 ἄγχιστα πύλης τῆς εἰρημένης, ἣ Παύλου τοῦ
 ἀποστόλου ἐπώνυμός ἐστι, λαυθάνων τοὺς πολε-
 11 μίους ἐν παρασκευῇ εἶχε. λογισάμενός τε ὥς ἦν
 τινες² τοῦ Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ ἅτε ἐν σκότῳ
 διαλαθόντες ἐκ τῆς πόλεως διαδρᾶναι οἰοί τε
 ὦσιν, ἴωσιν³ ἐς Κεντουκέλλας, ἐπεὶ ὀχύρωμα
 ἕτερον τῶν τῇδε χωρίων οὐδαμῇ σφίσιν ἐλέλειπτο,
 ἀνδρῶν μαχίμων ἐνέδραις τισὶ προλοχίζειν ἔγνω
 τὴν ἐνταῦθα ὁδὸν φέρουσαν, οἷς⁴ δὴ ἐπήγγελλε
 12 τοὺς φεύγοντας διαχρήσασθαι. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἐν
 τοῖς πλοίοις ὄντες, ἐπεὶ τῆς πόλεως ἄγχι ἐγένοντο,
 ἐχρῶντο ἤδη κατὰ τὰ σφίσιν ἐπηγγελμένα ταῖς
 13 σάλπιγξι Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ καταπλαγέντες ἐς μέγα
 τε δέος καὶ θόρυβον καταστάντες ἑξαπιναίως
 ἀπολιπόντες οὐδενὶ λόγῳ τὰ σφέτερα⁵ φυλακ-
 τήρια ἐβοήθουν ἐνταῦθα δρόμῳ, τὴν ἐπιβουλήν
 14 ἐς τὸ ἐκείνη τεῖχος εἶναι οἰόμενοι. μόνοι τε οἱ
 προδιδόντες Ἰσαυροὶ ἐπὶ τῇ αὐτῶν φυλακῇ
 μέιναντες τὰς τε πύλας κατ' ἐξουσίαν ἀνέφγον
 15 καὶ τῇ πόλει τοὺς πολεμίους ἐδέξαντο. καὶ
 πολλὸς μὲν τῶν παραπεπτωκότων ἐνταῦθα γεγένη-
 ται φόνος, πολλοὶ δὲ φεύγοντες δι' ἐτέρων πυλῶν
 ὄχοντο, οἱ δὲ τὴν ἐπὶ Κεντουκέλλας ἰόντες
 ὑπὸ τε τοῖς ἐνεδρεύουσι γενόμενοι διεφθάρησαν.
 ὀλίγοι μέντοι αὐτῶν διέφυγον μόλις, ἐν οἷς καὶ
 Διογένην πληγέντα φασὶ διασεσῶσθαι.
 16 Ἦν δέ τις ἐν τῷ Ῥωμαίων στρατῷ Παῦλος

¹ ἤκωσι V. ἴκονται L

² ἦν τινες Haury: ἦν τινας V, μή τινες L.

³ ἴωσιν Haury: om. MSS.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII. xxxvi 9-16

they came close to the circuit-wall to sound the trumpets there with all their might. Meanwhile he himself was holding the Gothic army in readiness close to the above-mentioned gate which bears the name of the Apostle Paul, unobserved by his enemy. And reasoning that, if any of the Roman army should succeed in escaping from the city, as they well might under cover of darkness, they would go to Centumcellae, for no other fortress was left to them anywhere among the towns of that region, he decided to guard the road leading thither by means of some ambuscades of warlike men, to whom he gave instructions to destroy the fugitives. So the men in the boats, upon getting near the city, immediately made use of their trumpets, as they had been instructed to do. Thereupon the Romans were thunderstruck, and falling into great fear and confusion suddenly abandoned for no sufficient reason their several posts and hastened on the run to give assistance at that point, supposing that the attempt was directed against that part of the wall. Thus the Isaurians who were betraying the city remained alone at their post, and they opened the gates at their leisure and received the enemy into the city. And there was great slaughter of those who fell into the hands of the enemy there, though many made off in flight through other gates, but those who went toward Centumcellae¹ got into the ambuscades and perished. However, a few of them did escape with difficulty, Diogenes too, they say, being among them and securing his safety though wounded.

Now there was in the Roman army one named

¹ Modern Civita Vecchia.

⁴ οἷς L. διό V.

⁵ σφέτερα V σφέτερα ἕκαστοι L.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

μὲν ὄνομα, Κίλιξ δὲ γένος, ὃς τὰ μὲν πρῶτα
 ἐφειστήκει τῇ Βελισαρίου οἰκίᾳ, ὕστερον δὲ
 καταλόγου ἱππικοῦ ἄρχων ἕς τε Ἰταλίαν ἐστρά-
 τευσε καὶ ξὺν τῷ Διογένει ἐπὶ τῷ Ῥώμης
 17 φυλακτηρίῳ ἐτέτακτο. οὗτος ὁ Παῦλος, ἀλίσκο-
 μένης τότε τῆς πόλεως, ξὺν ἱππεῦσι τετρακοσίοις
 ἕς τε τὸν Ἀδριανοῦ τάφον ἀνέδραμε καὶ τὴν
 γέφυραν ἔσχε τὴν ἐς Πέτρου τοῦ ἀποστόλου τὸν
 18 νεῶν φέρουσαν. τοῦ δὲ Γότθων στρατοῦ, ὄρθρου
 τε ὄντος καὶ μέλλοντός τι ὑποφαίνειν ἡμέρας,
 τούτοις δὴ τοῖς ἀνδράσιν ἕς χεῖρας ἐλθόντος,
 ἐνταῦθα ἰσχυρότατα τοὺς πολεμίους¹ ὑφιστά-
 μενοι τὸ πλεον ἔσχον· τῶν τε βαρβάρων ἅτε
 πλήθους τε μεγάλου καὶ στενοχωρίας ἐν αὐτοῖς
 19 οὔσης πολλοὺς ἔκτειναν. ὅπερ ἐπεὶ ὁ Τουτίλας
 εἶδε, κατέπαυσε μὲν αὐτίκα τὴν μάχην, Γότθους
 δὲ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἀντικαθεζομένους ἡσυχάζειν
 ἐκέλευεν, οἰόμενος λιμῷ τοὺς ἄνδρας αἰρήσειν.
 20 ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν Παῦλός τε καὶ οἱ
 τετρακόσιοι ἀπόσιτοι διαγεγόνασιν, τὴν τε νύκτα
 οὕτως ηὐλίσαντο· τῇ δὲ ἐπιγενομένῃ ἐβουλεύ-
 σαντο μὲν σιτίζεσθαι τῶν ἵππων τισίν, ὁκνησας
 δὲ αὐτοὺς τῷ τῆς ἐδωδῆς οὐ ξυνειθισμένῳ διε-
 κρούσατο² μέχρι ἐς δείλην ὀψίαν, καίπερ πιεζο-
 21 μένους τῷ λιμῷ ἐς τὰ μίλιστα. τότε δὲ πολλὰ
 λογισάμενοι ἐν σφίσιν αὐτοῖς, καὶ ἀλλήλους
 ἐς εὐτολμίαν παρακαλέσαντες, ἐβουλεύσαντο
 ἄμεινον σφίσιν εἶναι εὐπρεπεῖ θανάτῳ αὐτίκα δὴ
 22 μάλα καταλύσαι τὸν βίον. ὀρμήσαι μὲν γὰρ
 ἔγνωσαν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἐκ τοῦ αἰφνιδίου
 κτεῖναι δὲ αὐτῶν ὅσους ἂν ἐκάστῳ δυνατὰ εἴη

¹ τοὺς πολεμίους Haury : τοῖς πολεμίοις MSS.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII. xxxvi. 16-22

Paulus, a Cilician by birth, who at first had been in charge of the household of Belisarius, but later went with the army to Italy in command of a cavalry troop, and had been appointed with Diogenes to command the garrison of Rome. This Paulus, during the capture of the city at that time, rushed with four hundred horsemen into the Tomb of Hadrian and seized the bridge leading to the church of the Apostle Peter. And while it was still dawn and a little daylight was about to appear, the Gothic army assailed these men, but they withstood their enemy most vigorously where they were and gained the upper hand; indeed they slew large numbers of the barbarians, seeing they were in a great throng and huddled together. When Totila saw this, he stopped the fighting immediately, and commanded the Goths quietly to blockade their enemy, thinking that he would capture the men by starvation. Consequently Paulus and the four hundred passed that day without food, and bivouacked during the night in the same condition. On the following day, however, they resolved to use some of the horses for food, but a feeling of reluctance owing to the unusual nature of this food prevented them until late afternoon, although exceedingly hard pressed by hunger. At that time, after long deliberation among themselves, and after exhorting one another to boldness, they came to the conclusion that the better course for them was to end their lives then and there by a glorious death. In fact their decision was to make a sudden rush upon their enemy, to kill as many of them as each man could,

² διεκρούσατο Maltretus. διεκρούσαντο MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- οὕτω τε ἀνδρείως τῆς τελευτῆς τυχεῖν ἅπαντες.¹
 23 ἀλλήλους τοίνυν ἐξαπιναίως περιπλακέντες καὶ
 τῶν προσώπων καταφιλήσαντες τὴν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ
 ἡσπάζοντο, ὡς ἀπολούμενοι εὐθὺς ἅπαντες.
 24 "Ὅπερ κατανοήσας ὁ Τουτίλας ἔδεισε μὴ
 θανατῶντες ἄνθρωποι καὶ σωτηρίας πέρι ἐλπίδα
 οὐδεμίαν τὸ λοιπὸν² ἔχοντες ἀνήκεστα ἔργα
 25 Γότθους δράσωσι. πέμψας οὖν παρ' αὐτοὺς
 δυοῖν προὔτεινετο αὐτοῖς αἵρεσιν, ὅπως ἢ τοὺς
 ἵππους ἀφέντες ἐνταῦθα καὶ τὰ ὄπλα καταθέμενοι,
 ἀπομόσαντές τε μηκέτι ἐπὶ Γότθους στρατεύεσθαι,
 κακῶν ἀπαθεῖς ἐς Βυζάντιον ἀπαλλάσσωνται,
 ἢ τὰ σφέτερα αὐτῶν ἔχοντες ἐπὶ τῇ ἴσῃ καὶ
 26 ὁμοίᾳ Γότθοις τὸ λοιπὸν ξυστρατεύσωσι. τού-
 τους Ῥωμαῖοι τοὺς λόγους ἄσμενοι ἤκουσαν. καὶ
 τὰ μὲν πρῶτα τὴν ἐπὶ τὸ Βυζάντιον εἴλοντο
 ἅπαντες, ἔπειτα δὲ πεζοὶ μὲν ποιεῖσθαι καὶ
 ἄνοπλοι τὴν ἀναχώρησιν αἰσχυνόμενοι, δειμαί-
 νοντες δὲ μὴ τισιν ἐνέδραις ἐν τῇ ἀποπορείᾳ
 περιπεπτωκότες διαφθαρεῖεν, ἅμα δὲ καὶ μεμφό-
 μενοι, ὅτι δὴ σφίσι χρόνου τὰς συντάξεις πολλοῦ
 τὸ Ῥωμαίων δημόσιον ὤφειλεν, ἅπαντες ἐβελούσιοι
 τῷ Γότθων στρατῷ ἀνεμίγνυντο, πλὴν γε δὴ ὅτι
 Παῦλός τε καὶ τῶν τις Ἰσαύρων, Μίνδης ὄνομα,
 Τουτίλα ἐς ὅψιν ἐλθόντες ἐς Βυζάντιον σφᾶς
 27 ἐδέοντο στείλαι. παῖδάς τε γὰρ καὶ γυναῖκας
 σφίσιν ἐν γῇ τῇ πατρῷᾳ ἔφασκον εἶναι, ὥνπερ
 28 χωρὶς βιοτεύειν οὐχ οἰοί τε εἶναι οὔσπερ ὁ
 Τουτίλας ἄτε ἀληθιζομένους ἀποδεξάμενος,

¹ ἅπαντες Haury ἅπαντας MSS

² τὸ λοιπὸν V om. L.

and thus each and every one of them to meet his death valiantly. Accordingly they rushed suddenly into each other's arms, and kissing one another's cheeks held their friends in a last embrace on the point of death, intending one and all to perish forthwith.

But Totila, observing this, began to fear that men who were setting their faces toward death, having now no further hope as regards safety, would inflict irreparable harm upon the Goths. He therefore sent to them and offered them a choice of two alternatives, either to leave their houses and arms there, take an oath not again to fight against the Goths, and thus to depart for Byzantium without experiencing any harm, or, on the other hand, to keep their own possessions and fight thereafter in the Gothic army, enjoying full and complete equality with the Goths. These proposals were heard gladly by the Romans. And at first, to be sure, all were for choosing to go to Byzantium, but later, being ashamed to make their withdrawal on foot and without arms, and dreading also that they would fall into some ambuscades on the homeward journey and thus be destroyed, and bearing a grudge, furthermore, because the Roman State owed them pay for a long period, they all mingled voluntarily with the Gothic army, except indeed that Paulus and one of the Isaurians, Mundus by name, came before Totila and prayed him to send them to Byzantium. For they stated that they had children and wives in their native land, and apart from these they were unable to live. And Totila received the request of these men with favour, believing that they were speaking the truth, and he released them

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

ἐφοδίοις τε δωρησάμενος καὶ παραπομπούς
 ξυμπέμψας ἀφῆκε. καὶ ἄλλοι μέντοι τοῦ
 Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ, ὅσοι καταφυγόντες ἐς τὰ
 τῆς πόλεως ἱερὰ ἔτυχον, ἐς τριακοσίους ὄντες,
 τὰ πιστὰ λαβόντες Τουτίλα προσεχώρησαν.
 29 Ῥώμην δὲ οὔτε καθελεῖν οὔτε ἀπολιπεῖν· τὸ
 λοιπὸν Τουτίλας ἤθελεν, ἀλλὰ Γότθους τε καὶ
 Ῥωμαίους τοὺς¹ ἐκ τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς καὶ
 τοὺς ἄλλους ἅπαντας ξυνοικίζειν ἐνταῦθα ἔγνω ἐξ
 αἰτίας τοιαύσδε.

XXXVII

Τουτίλας οὐ πολλῷ πρότερον παρὰ τῶν
 Φράγγων τὸν ἄρχοντα πέμψας, τὴν παῖδά οἱ
 2 γυναῖκα ἐδεῖτο γαμετὴν δοῦναι. ὁ δὲ τὴν αἴτησιν
 ἀπεσεύσατο, Ἰταλίας αὐτὸν οὔτε εἶναι οὔτε
 ἔσεσθαι ποτε βασιλέα φάσκων, ὅς γε Ῥώμην
 ἔλων ἔχεσθαι μὲν αὐτῆς οὐδαμῇ ἴσχυσε, μοῖραν
 δὲ αὐτῆς καθελὼν τοῖς πολεμίοις μεθῆκεν αὐθις.
 3 διὸ δὴ τὰ² ἐπιτήδεια ἐν τῷ παρόντι ἐς αὐτὴν
 ἐσκομίζεσθαι διὰ σπουδῆς εἶχε καὶ ἀνοικοδο-
 μεῖσθαι ὅτι τάχιστα πάντα ἐκέλευεν, ὅσα καθελὼν
 τε καὶ πυρπολήσας αὐτὸς³ ἔτυχεν, ἥνικα Ῥώμην
 τὸ πρότερον εἶλε· τῶν τε Ῥωμαίων τοὺς⁴ ἐκ τῆς
 συγκλήτου βουλῆς καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἅπαντας
 οὕσπερ ἐπὶ Καμπανίας ἐφύλασσε μετεπέμπετο.
 4 ἐνταῦθά τε ἀγῶνα τὸν ἵππικὸν θεασάμενος,⁵ τὴν
 στρατιὰν ἡτοίμαζε πᾶσαν, ὥς ἐπὶ Σικελίαν
 5 στρατεύσων. ἅμα δὲ καὶ τὰ μακρὰ πλοῖα

¹ τοὺς V · τοὺς τε L

² τά V : τὰ τε L.

³ αὐτός V . αὐτοῦ L.

after presenting them with travelling money and sending an escort with them. There were others also of the Roman army, those, namely, who had chanced to take refuge in the sanctuaries of the city, about three hundred in number, who received pledges and went over to Totila. As for Rome itself, Totila was unwilling thereafter either to dismantle or to abandon it, instead he decided to establish in residence there both Goths and Romans, not only members of the senate, but also all the others, for the following reason.

XXXVII

Not long before this Totila had sent to the ruler of the Franks and requested him to give his daughter in marriage. But the Frankish king spurned the request, declaring that Totila neither was nor ever would be king of Italy, seeing that after capturing Rome he had been utterly unable to hold it, but after tearing down a portion of it had let it fall again into the hands of his enemy. Consequently he made haste on the present occasion to convey supplies into the city, and gave orders to rebuild as quickly as possible everything which he himself had pulled down and destroyed by fire when he captured Rome at the previous time, then he summoned the members of the Roman senate and all the others whom he had under guard in Campania. And after witnessing the horse-races there, he made ready his whole army, intending to make an expedition against Sicily. At the same time too he put his four

⁴ τοὺς V ; τοὺς τε L

⁵ θαλασάμενος L. θέμενος V.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- τετρακόσια ὥς ἐς ναυμαχίαν ἐν παρασκευῇ
 ἐποιεῖτο, καὶ στόλον νεῶν μεγάλων τε καὶ πολλῶν
 ἄγαν, ὥσπερ ἐκ βασιλέως ἐκ τῆς ἐφ' αὐτῆς
 σταλείσας αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσι τε καὶ φορτίοις πάντα
 6 τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἔλων ἔτυχε. Στέφανόν τε
 ἄνδρα Ῥωμαῖον παρὰ βασιλέα πρεσβευτὴν
 ἔπεμψε, τὸν μὲν πόλεμον τόνδε καταλύειν αἰτῶν,
 ἐνσπόνδους δὲ Γότθους ποιεῖσθαι, ἐφ' ᾧ δὴ
 αὐτῷ ξυμμαχήσουσιν ἐπὶ πολεμίους τοὺς ἄλλους
 7 ἰόντι. βασιλεὺς δὲ Ἰουστινιανὸς οὔτε τὸν πρεσ-
 βευτὴν οἱ ἐς ὄψιν ἐλθεῖν ξυνεχώρησεν οὔτε
 τινὰ τῶν λεγομένων ἐντροπὴν τὸ παράπαν
 πεποίηται.
 8 Ἄπερ ἐπεὶ Τουτίλας ἤκουσεν, αὐθις τὰ ἐς τὸν
 πόλεμον ἐν παρασκευῇ ἐποιεῖτο. ξύμφορον δέ
 οἱ ἔδοξεν εἶναι, Κεντουκελλῶν ἀποπειρασμένῳ
 9 πρότερον οὕτω δὴ ἐπὶ Σικελίαν¹ ἰέναι. ἦρχε δὲ
 τότε τοῦ ἐνταῦθα φυλακτηρίου Διογένης, ὁ
 Βελισαρίου δορυφόρος, δύναμιν ἀξιόχρεων ξὺν
 10 αὐτῷ ἔχων. καὶ ὁ μὲν Γότθων στρατός, ἐπειδὴ
 ἐς Κεντουκέλλας ἀφίκοντο, ἀγχιστα τοῦ περι-
 βόλου ἐνστρατοπεδευσάμενοι ἐς πολιορκίαν καθί-
 11 σταντο. πρέσβεις δὲ πέμψας παρὰ Διογένην ὁ
 Τουτίλας αὐτόν τε προῦκαλεῖτο καὶ τοὺς ἀμφ'
 αὐτὸν στρατιώτας, ἣν μὲν² σφίσι βουλομένοις ἡ
 μάχη πρὸς αὐτοὺς διακρίνεσθαι, ἔργου ἔχεσθαι
 12 αὐτίκα δὴ μάλα. ἐν ἐλπίδι τε παρήνει μηδεμιᾶ
 ἔχειν, δύναμιν ἐτέραν τινὰ ἐκ βασιλέως σφίσιν
 13 ἀφίξεσθαι. ἀδύνατον γὰρ Ἰουστινιανὸν τὸ λοιπὸν
 εἶναι πόλεμον πρὸς Γότθους τόνδε διενεγκεῖν, εἴ
 τῷ ἱκανὰ τεκμηριῶσαι τὰ³ χρόνου τοσούτου ἐπὶ

¹ σικελίαν V : σικελίας L

hundred war-ships in readiness for sea-fighting, as well as a very considerable fleet of large ships which had been sent thither from the East by the emperor, and which he, during all this time, had had the fortune to capture with both crews and cargoes. He also sent a Roman named Stephanus as an envoy to the emperor, requesting him to put an end to this war and make a treaty with the Goths, with the understanding that they should fight as his allies when he should go against his other enemies. But the Emperor Justinian would not permit the envoy even to come into his presence, nor did he pay the least attention to anything he said.

When Totila heard this, he again set about making preparations for the war. And it seemed to him advisable first to make trial of Centumcellae and then to proceed against Sicily. Now the garrison there was at that time commanded by Diogenes, the guardsman of Belisarius, and he had a sufficient force under him. So the Gothic army, upon reaching Centumcellae, made camp close to the circuit-wall and commenced a siege. And Totila sent envoys to Diogenes and challenged him and his soldiers, if it was their wish to reach a decision by battle with the Goths, to fall to with all speed. He also advised them to entertain no hope whatever that further reinforcements from the emperor would reach them, for Justinian, he said, was unable longer to carry on this war against the Goths, if anyone could base a reasonable judgment upon those things which had

² ἤν μέν V καὶ εἰ μὴ L

³ τὰ Haury τὰ μετὰ V . μετὰ L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 14 τῆς Ῥώμης ξυμβάντα.¹ αἵρεσιν οὖν προϋτείνετο²
 ἐλέσθαι ὁποτέραν ἂν αὐτοὶ βούλοιντο, ἢ ἐπὶ τῇ
 Ἰση καὶ ὁμοίᾳ τῷ Γότθων στρατῷ ἀναμίγνυσθαι,
 ἢ κακῶν ἀπαθέσιν ἐνθένδε ἀπαλλασσομένοις ἐπὶ
 15 Βυζαντίου κομίζεσθαι. Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ καὶ Διογένης
 οὔτε μάχῃ διακρίνεσθαι βουλομένοις σφίσιν
 αὐτοῖς ἔφασκον εἶναι οὔτε μέντοι ἀναμίγνυσθαι
 τῷ Γότθων στρατῷ, ἐπεὶ παίδων τε καὶ γυναικῶν
 τῶν σφετέρων χωρὶς βιοτεύειν οὐκ ἂν δύναιντο.
 16 πόλιν δέ, ἥσπερ φυλακὴν ἔχουσιν, ἐν μὲν τῷ
 παρόντι λόγῳ τινὶ εὐπρεπεῖ ἐνδύναι οὐδαμῇ ἔχειν,
 ἐπεὶ οὐδέ τις σκῆψις αὐτοῖς, ἄλλως τε καὶ παρὰ
 βασιλέα στέλλεσθαι βουλομένοις, τανῦν πάρεσ-
 17 τιν· ἐς χρόνον δὲ ἀναβαλέσθαι τινὰ τὴν πρᾶξιν
 ἐδέοντο, ἐφ' ᾧ βασιλεῖ μὲν ἐν τούτῳ τὰ σφίσι
 παρόντα σημήνωσιν, οὐδεμιᾶς δὲ μεταξὺ βοηθείας
 ἐκ βασιλέως ἐνταῦθα ἰούσης οὔτω δὴ ἀπαλλάσ-
 σοιντο, Γότθοις μὲν τὴν πόλιν ἐνδόντες, οὐκ
 ἀπροφάσιστον δὲ αὐτοὶ τὴν ἀναχώρησιν ποιησά-
 18 μενοι ταῦτα ἐπεὶ Τουτίλαν ἤρεσκε, τακτὴν
 ἡμέρα ξυνέκειτο, ἄνδρες δὲ τριάκοντα ἐκατέρωθεν
 ἐν ὁμήρων λόγῳ ἐπὶ τῇ ὁμολογίᾳ δέδονται ταύτῃ
 καὶ Γότθοι τὴν προσεδρείαν διαλύσαντες ἐπὶ
 Σικελίας ἐχώρησαν.
 19 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐς τὸ Ῥήγιον, οὐ πρότερον
 διέβησαν τὸν τῇδε πορθμόν, ἕως φρουρίου τοῦ ἐν
 20 Ῥηγίῳ ἀπεπειράσαντο. ἥρχον δὲ τοῦ ἐνταῦθα

¹ χρόνον τοσοῦτον—ξυμβάντα V: χρόνον τοσοῦτον δὲ μῆκος ἐπὶ
 τῆς Ῥώμης ξυν L, followed by a lacuna of about one line.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII. XXXVII. 13-20

taken place at Rome for such a long period. He accordingly offered them the privilege of choosing whichever of two alternatives they wished, either to mingle with the Gothic army on terms of complete equality, or to depart from the city without suffering harm and betake themselves to Byzantium. But the Romans and Diogenes declared that it was not their wish either to fight a decisive battle or, on the other hand, to mingle with the Gothic army, because they would find it impossible to live apart from their children and their wives. And as for the city over which they were keeping guard, they were quite unable for the present to surrender it with any plausible excuse, since they had, in fact, not even a pretext for doing so at that time, particularly if they wished to present themselves before the emperor; they did, however, beg him to defer the matter for a time, in order that they might during that interval report the situation to the emperor, and in case no relief should come to them from him in the meantime, that then finally they might quit the city, thus they would surrender the city to the Goths, while they, for their part, would not be without justification in leaving it. This was approved by Totila, and a definite day was agreed upon; then thirty men were given as hostages by each side to make this agreement binding, and the Goths broke up the siege and proceeded on the way to Sicily.

But when they came to Rhegium, they did not cross the strait there until they had made trial of the fortress of that city. Now the garrison there

² αἴρεσιν οὖν προὔτελντο V εἰ δ' ὥς ἡκιστα
 ἔστιν, αἴρεσιν προὔτελντο L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- φυλακτηρίου Θουριμούθ τε καὶ Ἰμέριος, οὗσπερ Βελισάριος ἐνταῦθα καταστησάμενος ἔτυχεν.
- 21 οὔπερ ἐπεὶ πολλοὺς τε καὶ ἀρίστους ξὺν αὐτοῖς εἶχον, τειχομαχοῦντάς τε ἀπεκρούσαντο τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ ἐπεξελθόντες τὸ πλεόν ἐν ξυμβολῇ
- 22 ἔσχον. ὕστερον μέντοι πλήθει τῶν ἐναντίων παρὰ πολὺ ἐλασσούμενοι ἐντὸς τοῦ περιβόλου
- 23 κατακλεισθέντες ἡσύχαζον. Τουτίλας δὲ μοῖραν μὲν τοῦ Γότθων στρατοῦ αὐτοῦ εἶασε φρουρὰς ἕνεκα, τῶν ἐπιτηδείων τῇ ἀπορίᾳ χρόνῳ ὑστέρῳ ἐξαιρήσειν караδοκῶν τοὺς ταύτῃ Ῥωμαίους, ἐς δὲ Ταραντηνοὺς στράτευμα πέμψας τὸ ἐκείνῃ φρούριον παρεστήσατο οὐδενὶ πόνῳ· καὶ Γότθοι δὲ οὗσπερ ἐλίπετο ἐν Πικηνῶν¹ τῇ χώρᾳ πόλιν Ἀρίμινον τηνικάδε προδοσίᾳ εἶλον.
- 24 Ταῦτα ἀκούσας Ἰουστινιανὸς βασιλεὺς Γερμανὸν τὸν ἀνεψιὸν τὸν αὐτοῦ αὐτοκράτορα ἐβούλευσε πολέμου τοῦ πρὸς Γότθους τε καὶ Τουτίλαν καταστήσασθαι,² καὶ οἱ ἐν παρασκευῇ ἐπέστελλον εἶναι. ἐπεὶ τε ὁ περὶ τούτου λόγος ἐς Ἰταλίαν ἦλθε, Γότθοι μὲν ἐν φροντίδι μεγάλη ἐγένοντο· δεξιὰ γάρ τις ἢ ἀμφὶ Γερμανῷ δόξα ἐς
- 25 πάντας ἀνθρώπους οὔσα ἐτύγγχανεν· εὐέλπιδες δὲ Ῥωμαῖοί τε³ γεγενημένοι εὐθὺς ἅπαντες καὶ οἱ τοῦ βασιλέως στρατοῦ τῷ τε κινδύνῳ καὶ τῇ τालαιπωρίᾳ πολλῷ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἀντεῖχον. ἀλλὰ βασιλεὺς οὐκ οἶδα ὅπως μεταμαθὼν Λιβέριον γέφυρα Ῥωμαίων, οὗπερ ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις γέφυρα ὠνομάσθη, ἐς τὸ ἔργον καταστήσασθαι ἀντὶ

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII. xxxvii. 20-26

commanded by Thurimuth and Himerius, whom Belisarius had appointed to that post. And since they had under them a large force of excellent men, they not only repulsed the enemy when he attacked the wall, but also made a sally and gained the advantage in combat. Later, however, since they were far outnumbered by their opponents, they were shut up inside the circuit-wall and remained quiet. So Totila left a portion of the Gothic army there to guard the place, expecting that at a later time they would capture the Roman garrison through failure of the food supply, meanwhile he sent an army against Tarentum and took over the fortress there with no difficulty; likewise the Goths whom he had left in the land of Picenum also took the city of Animum at that time, for it was betrayed to them.

When the Emperor Justinian heard this, he formed the purpose of appointing his nephew Germanus commander-in-chief to carry on the war against the Goths and Totila, and he directed him to make ready. Now when the report of this reached Italy, the Goths became very deeply concerned, for the reputation of Germanus happened to be a favourable one among all men. The Romans, on the other hand, straightway became confident one and all, and the soldiers of the emperor's army began to meet danger and hardship much more courageously. The emperor for some unknown reason changed mind and decided to appoint to the post Libertus, a Roman whom I have mentioned in the

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 27 Γερμανοῦ ἔγνω. καὶ ὁ μὲν παρασκευασάμενος
ὡς τάχιστα, ὅτι δὴ αὐτίκα ξὺν στρατῷ ἀπο-
πλεύσει ἐπίδοξος ἦν. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ βασιλεῖ μετέμελεν
28 αὐθις, ἡσυχῇ καὶ αὐτὸς ἔμενε. τότε δὴ Βῆρος
ξὺν ἀνδράσιν οὓς ἀγείρας μαχιμωτάτους ἀμφ'
αὐτὸν ἔτυχε Γότθοις τοῖς ἐν Πικηνῷ οὖσιν ἐς
χεῖρας ἐλθὼν πόλεως Ῥαβέννης οὐ πολλῷ
ἀποθεν, τῶν τε ἐπομένων πολλοὺς ἀποβάλλει
καὶ αὐτὸς θνήσκει, ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς ἐν τῷ πόνῳ
τούτῳ γενόμενος.

XXXVIII

- Ἑπὶ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον στράτευμα Σκλαβηνῶν
οὐ πλέον ἢ ἐς τρισχιλίους ἀγηγερόμενοι, ποταμὸν
τε Ἰστρον, οὐδενὸς σφίσιν ἀνιστατοῦντος,
διέβησαν, καὶ πόνῳ οὐδενὶ ποταμῷ Εὐρὸν εὐθὺς
2 διαβάντες δίχα ἐγένοντο. εἶχε δὲ αὐτῶν ἑτέρα
μὲν συμμορία ὀκτακοσίους τε καὶ χιλίους, ἡ δὲ
3 δὴ ἑτέρα τοὺς καταλοίπους. ἑκατέροις μὲν οὖν
καίπερ¹ ἀλλήλων ἀπολελειμμένοις ἐς χεῖρας
ἐλθόντες οἱ τοῦ Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ ἄρχοντες ἔν
τε Ἰλλυριοῖς καὶ Θραξίν, ἡσσήθησάν τε ἐκ τοῦ
ἀπροσδοκῆτου καὶ οἱ μὲν αὐτοῦ διεφθάρησαν, οἱ
4 δὲ κόσμῳ οὐδενὶ διαφυγόντες ἐσώθησαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ
οἱ στρατηγοὶ πάντες οὕτω παρ' ἑκατέρων τῶν
βαρβαρικῶν στρατοπέδων, καίπερ ἑλασσύνων
τὰ πολὺ ὄντων, ἀπήλλαξαν, Ἀσβάδῳ ἢ ἑτέρα
ἐν πολεμίῳν συμμορία ξυνέμιξεν. ἦν δὲ οὗτος
ἰνὸν βασιλέως μὲν Ἰουστινιανοῦ δορυφόρος, ἐπεὶ

¹ καίπερ Haury : καὶ παρ' MSS

narrative,¹ in place of Germanus. And Liberius did in fact make preparations with all possible speed, and it was expected that he would sail away immediately with an army. But again the emperor changed his mind, and consequently he too remained quiet. It was at this time that Verus with a band of excellent warriors whom he had gathered about him came to an engagement not far from the city of Ravenna with the Goths who were in Picenum, and he not only lost many of his followers but was also killed himself after shewing himself a brave man in the encounter.

XXXVIII

AT about this time an army of Slaveni² amounting to not more than three thousand crossed the Ister River without encountering any opposition, advanced immediately to the Hebrus River,³ which they crossed with no difficulty, and then split into two parts. Now the one section of them contained eighteen hundred men, while the other comprised the remainder. And although the two sections were thus separated from each other, the commanders of the Roman army, upon engaging with them, both in Illyricum and in Thrace, were defeated unexpectedly, and some of them were killed on the field of battle, while others saved themselves by a disorderly flight. Now after all the generals had fared thus at the hands of the two barbarian armies, though they were far inferior to the Roman forces in number, one section of the enemy engaged with Asbadus, — man was a guard of the Emperor Justinian,

¹ Chap. xxxvi 6. ² Cf. VII. xiv.

³ Modern Maritza.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἐς τοὺς Κανδιδάτους καλουμένους τελῶν ἔτυχε,
 τῶν δὲ ἱππικῶν καταλόγων ἦρχεν οἱ ἐν Τζουρουλῷ
 τῷ ἐν Θράκῃ φρουρίῳ ἐκ παλαιοῦ ἴδρυνται,
 6 πολλοί τε καὶ ἄριστοι ὄντες. καὶ αὐτοὺς¹ οἱ
 Σκλαβηνοὶ τρεψάμενοι οὐδενὶ πόνῳ πλείστους
 μὲν αἰσχροτάτα φεύγοντας ἔκτειναν, Ἀσβαδον
 δὲ καταλαβόντες ἐν μὲν τῷ παραντίκῳ ἐξώγησαν,
 ὕστερον δὲ αὐτὸν ἐς πυρὸς ἐμβεβλημένον φλόγα
 ἔκασαν, ἱμάντας πρότερον ἐκ τοῦ νώτου τοῦ
 7 ἀνθρώπου ἐκδείραντες. ταῦτα διαπεπραγμένοι
 τὰ χωρία ξύμπαντα, τὰ τε Θρακῶν καὶ Ἰλλυριῶν,
 ἀδεέστερον² ἐληίζοντο, καὶ φρούρια πολλὰ πο-
 λιορκίᾳ ἐκάτεροι εἶλον, οὔτε τειχομαχήσαντες
 πρότερον, οὔτε ἐς τὸ πεδίον καταβῆναι τολμή-
 σαντες, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲ γῆν τὴν Ῥωμαίων καταθεῖν
 8 ἐγκεχειρήκασιν οἱ βάρβαροι οὗτοι πώποτε. οὐ
 μὴν οὐδὲ στρατῷ ποταμὸν Ἰστρον φαίνονται
 διαβεβηκότες ἐκ τοῦ παντὸς χρόνου, πλήν γε δὴ
 ἐξ ὅτου μοι ἐμπροσθεν εἴρηται.
 9 Οὗτοι δὲ οἱ τὸν Ἀσβαδον νενικηκότες μέχρι
 ἐς θάλασσαν ληισάμενοι ἐφεξῆς ἅπαντα καὶ
 πόλιν ἐπιθαλασσίαν τειχομαχήσαντες εἶλον,
 καίπερ στρατιωτῶν φρουρὰν ἔχουσιν, Τόπηρον
 ὄνομα· ἡ πρώτη μὲν Θρακῶν τῶν παραλίῳ ἐστὶ,
 τοῦ δὲ Βυζαντίου διέχει ὁδῷ ἡμερῶν δυοκαίδεκα.
 εἶλον δὲ αὐτὴν τρόπῳ τοιῷδε. οἱ μὲν πλείστοι
 ἐν δυσχωρίαις πρὸ τοῦ περιβόλου σφᾶς αὐτοὺς
 ἔκρυψαν, ὀλίγοι δὲ τινες ἀμφὶ τὰς πύλας γενό-
 ντες αἱ πρὸς ἀνίσχοντά εἰσιν ἡλιον, τοὺς ἐν
 ῥόνῳ ἐπάλλεσσι Ῥωμαίους ἠνώχλουν. ὑποτοπή-

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII. xxxviii. 5-11

served among the *candidati*,¹ as they are called, and he was also commander of the cavalry cohorts which from ancient times have been stationed at Tzurullum,² the fortress in Thrace, a numerous body of the best troops. These too the Sclaveni routed with no trouble, and they slew the most of them in a most disgraceful flight; they also captured Asbadus and for the moment made him a prisoner, but afterwards they burned him by casting him into a fire, having first flayed strips from the man's back. Having accomplished these things, they turned to plunder all the towns, both of Thrace and of Illyricum, in comparative security, and both armies captured many fortresses by siege, though they neither had any previous experience in attacking city walls, nor had they dared to come down to the open plain, since these barbarians had never, in fact, even attempted to overrun the land of the Romans. Indeed it appears that they have never in all time crossed the Ister River with an army before the occasion which I have mentioned above.

Then those who had defeated Asbadus plundered everything in order as far as the sea and captured by storm a city on the coast named Topius,³ though it had a garrison of soldiers, this is the first of the coast towns of Thrace and is twelve days' journey distant from Byzantium. And they captured it in the following manner. The most of them concealed themselves in the rough ground which lay before the fortifications, while some few went near the gate which is toward the east and began to harass the Romans at the battlements. Then the soldiers kept

¹ Bodyguards distinguished by a white tunic.

² Modern Choralou.

³ Opposite Thasos, in the region of modern

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- σαντες δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται ὅσοι τὸ ἐνταῦθα φυλακτήριον εἶχον οὐ πλείους αὐτοὺς ἢ ὅσοι καθεωρῶντο εἶναι, ἀνελόμενοι αὐτίκα τὰ ὄπλα
- 12 ἐξίασιν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἅπαντες. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ὀπίσω ἀνέστρεφον, δόκησιν παρεχόμενοι τοῖς ἐπιούσιν ὅτι δὴ αὐτοὺς κατωρρωδηκότες ἐς ὑπαγωγὴν χωροῦσι· καὶ οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι ἐς τὴν διώξιν ἐκπεπτωκότες πόρρω πού τοῦ περιβόλου
- 13 ἐγένοντο. ἀναστάντες οὖν οἱ ἐκ τῶν ἐνεδρῶν κατόπισθέν τε τῶν διωκόντων γενόμενοι ἐσιτητὰ
- 14 σφίσιν ἐς τὴν πόλιν οὐκέτι ἐποιοῦν. ἀναστρέψαντες δὲ καὶ οἱ φεύγειν δοκοῦντες ἀμφιβόλους ἤδη τοὺς Ῥωμαίους πεποίηται. οὓς δὴ ἅπαντας οἱ βάρβαροι διαφθείραντες τῷ περιβόλῳ
- 15 προσέβαλον. οἱ δὲ τῆς πόλεως οἰκήτορες τῶν στρατιωτῶν τῆς δυνάμεως ἐστερημένοι, γίνονται μὲν ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ πολλῇ, καὶ ὥς δὲ τοὺς ἐπιόντας
- 16 ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ἡμύνοντο. καὶ πρῶτα μὲν ἔλαιόν τε καὶ πίσσαν ἐπὶ πλείστον θερμήναντες τῶν τειχομαχούντων κατέχεον, καὶ λίθων βολαῖς πανδημεῖ ἐς αὐτοὺς χρώμενοι τοῦ ἀπεῶσθαι τὸν
- 17 κίνδυνον οὐ μακράν πού ἐγένοντο. ἔπειτα δὲ αὐτοὺς πληθθεὶ βελῶν οἱ¹ βάρβαροι βιασάμενοι ἐκκλιπεῖν τε τὰς ἐπάλξεις ἠνάγκασαν καὶ κλίμακας τῷ περιβόλῳ ἐρείσαντες κατὰ κράτος τὴν πόλιν εἶλον. ἄνδρας μὲν οὖν ἐς πεντακισχιλίους τε καὶ μυρίους εὐθύς ἅπαντας ἔκτειναν καὶ πάντα τὰ χρήματα ἐλήρισαντο, παῖδας δὲ καὶ γυναῖκας ἀνδραπόδων πεποίηται λόγῳ. καίτοι τὰ οὐδεμιᾶς ἡλικίας ἐφείσαντο, ἀλλ' αὐτοῖ

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII. xxxviii. 11-19

guard there, supposing that they were no more than those who were seen, immediately seized their arms and one and all sallied forth against them. Whereupon the barbarians began to withdraw to the rear, making it appear to their assailants that they were moving off in retreat because they were thoroughly frightened by them, and the Romans, being drawn into the pursuit, found themselves at a considerable distance from the fortifications. Then the men in ambush rose from their hiding-places and, placing themselves behind the pursuers, made it no longer possible for them to enter the city. Furthermore, those who had seemed to be in flight turned about, and thus the Romans now came to be exposed to attack on two sides. Then the barbarians, after destroying these to the last man, assaulted the fortifications. But the inhabitants of the city, deprived as they were of the support of the soldiers, found themselves in a very difficult situation, yet even so they warded off the assailants as well as the circumstances permitted. And at first they resisted successfully by heating oil and pitch till it was very hot and pouring it down on those who were attacking the wall, and the whole population joined in hurling stones upon them and thus came not very far from repelling the danger. But finally the barbarians overwhelmed them by the multitude of their missiles and forced them to abandon the battlements, whereupon they placed ladders against the fortifications and so captured the city by storm. Then they slew all the men immediately, to the number fifteen thousand, took all the valuables as plunder and reduced the children and women to slavery. Before this, however, they had spared

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

τε καὶ ἡ συμμορία ἡ ἑτέρα,¹ ἐξ ὅτου δὴ τῇ Ῥω-
μαίων ἐπέσκηψαν χώρα, τοὺς παραπίπτοντας
ἡβηδὸν ἅπαντας ἔκτεινον. ὥστε γῆν ἅπασαν,
ἥπερ Ἰλλυριῶν τε καὶ Θρακῶν ἐστί, νεκρῶν
ἔμπλεων ἐπὶ πλεῖστον ἀτάφων γενέσθαι.

- 20 Ἐκτεινον δὲ τοὺς παραπίπτοντας οὔτε ῥίψει
οὔτε δόρατι οὔτε τῷ ἄλλῳ εἰωθότι τρόπῳ, ἀλλὰ
σκόλοπας ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς πηξάμενοι ἰσχυρότατα,
ὁξεῖς τε αὐτοὺς ἐς τὰ μάλιστα ποιησάμενοι, ἐπὶ
τούτων ξὺν βίᾳ πολλῇ τοὺς δειλαίους ἐκάθιζον,
τὴν τε σκολόπων ἀκμὴν γλουτῶν κατὰ μέσον
ἐνείροντες ὠθοῦντές τε ἄχρι ἐς τῶν ἀνθρώπων τὰ
ἔγκατα, οὕτω δὲ αὐτοὺς διαχρήσασθαι ἡξίου.
- 21 καὶ ξύλα δὲ παχέα τέτταρα ἐπὶ πλεῖστον ἐς γῆν
κατορύξαντες οἱ βάρβαροι οὗτοι, ἐπ' αὐτῶν τε
χεῖράς τε καὶ πόδας τῶν ἡλωκότων δεσμεύοντες,
εἶτα ῥοπάλοις αὐτοὺς κατὰ κόρρης ἐνδελεχέστατα
παίοντες, ὥς δὲ κύνας ἢ ὄφεις ἢ ἄλλο τι θηρίον
- 22 διέφθειρον. ἄλλους δὲ ξὺν τε βουσὶ καὶ προ-
βάτοις, ὅσα δὲ ἐπάγεσθαι ἐς τὰ πάτρια ἡθῆ ὥς
ἡκιστα εἶχον, ἐν τοῖς δωματίοις καθεύδξαντες,
οὐδεμιᾷ φειδοῖ ἐνεπίμπρασαν οὕτω μὲν Σκλα-
- 23 βηνοὶ τοὺς ἐντυχόντας αἰεὶ ἀνήρουν. ἀλλὰ νῦν
αὐτοὶ τε καὶ οἱ τῆς ἑτέρας συμμορίας, ὥσπερ
τῷ τῶν αἱμάτων μεθύοντες πλήθει, ζωγρεῖν τὸ
ἰθὺνδε ἡξίου τῶν παραπεπτωκότων τινάς, καὶ
αὐτοῦ μυριάδας αἰχμαλώτων ἐπαγόμενοι
κρείσουσιν ἐπ' οἴκου ἀπεκομίσθησαν

but both these and the other group, since the time when they fell upon the land of the Romans, had been killing all who fell in their way, young and old alike, so that the whole land inhabited by the Illyrians and Thracians came to be everywhere filled with unburied corpses

Now they killed their victims, not with sword nor spear, nor in any other accustomed manner, but by planting very firmly in the earth stakes which they had made exceedingly sharp, and seating the poor wretches upon these with great violence, driving the point of the stake between the buttocks and forcing it up into the intestines; thus did they see fit to destroy them. These barbarians also had a way of planting four thick stakes very deep in the ground, and after binding the feet and hands of the captives to these they would then assiduously beat them over the head with clubs, killing them like dogs or snakes or any other animal. Others again they would imprison in their huts together with their cattle and sheep—those, of course, which they were utterly unable to take with them to their native haunts—and then they would set fire to the huts without mercy. Thus did the Scythians consistently destroy those who fell in their way. But from this time onward both these and those of the other group, being as it were drunk with the great quantity of blood they had shed, saw fit to make prisoners of some who fell into their hands, and consequently they were taking with them countless thousands of prisoners when they all departed the homeward way

¹ ἡ συμμορία ἡ ἑτέρα Κ: οἱ ξυμμορίας τῆς ἑτέρας

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

XXXIX

Ὑστερον δὲ Γότθοι τῷ Ῥηγίνων προσέβαλον
 ὀχυρώματι, οἱ δὲ πολιορκούμενοι καρτερώτατα
 σφᾶς ἀμυνόμενοι ἀπεκρούοντο, ἔργα τε ὁ Θουρι-
 μούθ ἐπεδείκνυτο αἰὲς ἐς αὐτοὺς ἀρετῆς ἄξια.
 2 γνούς δὲ ὁ Τουτίλας ἐνδεῖν τοῖς πολιορκουμένοις
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, μοῖραν μὲν τοῦ στρατοῦ αὐτοῦ
 εἶασε φυλακῆς ἕνεκα, ὅπως δὴ οἱ πολέμιοι μηδὲν
 μὲν τοῦ λοιποῦ ἐσκομίζονται, ἀπορία δὲ τῶν
 ἀναγκαίων σφᾶς τε αὐτοὺς καὶ τὸ φρούριον
 Γότθοις ἐνδώσουσιν· αὐτὸς δὲ τῷ ἄλλῳ στρατῷ
 ἐς Σικελίαν διαπορθμευσάμενος τῷ Μεσηνῶν
 3 προσέβαλε τείχει. καὶ οἱ Δομνεντίολος ὁ
 Βούζου ἀδελφιδοῦς, ὅσπερ τῶν τῇδε Ῥωμαίων
 ἦρχεν, ὑπαντιάσας τε πρὸ τοῦ περιβόλου καὶ ἐς
 4 χεῖρας ἐλθὼν οὐκ ἔλασσον ἔσχεν. αὐθις δὲ ἐν
 τῇ πόλει γενόμενος φυλακῆς τε τῆς ἐνταῦθα
 ἐπιμελούμενος ἡσυχίαν ἦγε. Γότθοι δέ, μηδενὸς
 σφίσιν ἐπεξιόντος, ἐλήϊσαντο Σικελίαν σχεδόν
 5 τι ὅλην. Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ οἱ ἐν Ῥηγίῳ πολιορκου-
 μένοι, ὧν δὴ Θουριμούθ τε καὶ Ἰμέριος ἦρχον,
 ὥσπερ μοι εἴρηται, τὰ γὰρ ἀναγκαῖα σφᾶς
 παντάπασιν ἐπελελοίπει,¹ αὐτοὺς τε καὶ τὸ
 φρούριον ὁμολογία τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐνέδοσαν.

XXXIX

AFTER this the Goths assaulted the fortress of Rhegium, but the besieged continued to defend themselves very vigorously and so repulsed them, and Thurimuth was always conspicuous for the deeds of heroism which he performed in fighting them. But Totila discovered that the besieged were in want of provisions, and so he contented himself with leaving a portion of his army there to keep guard, in order, of course, that the enemy might not carry in anything thereafter, but might be compelled by lack of necessities to surrender themselves and the fortress to the Goths, he himself meanwhile crossed over to Sicily with the rest of the army and delivered an attack on the wall of Messina. And Domnentiolus, the nephew of Buzes, who was in command of the Romans there, encountered him before the fortifications, and in the engagement which followed he was not unsuccessful. But he went back into the city and remained quiet, attending to the guarding of the place. The Goths, however, since no one came out against them, plundered practically the whole of Sicily. And the Romans besieged in Rhegium, commanded by Thurimuth and Himerius, as I have said, seeing their provisions had failed completely, came to terms and surrendered themselves and the fortress to the enemy.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 7 σώσασθαι δυνάμει τῇ πάσῃ. ἀλλὰ οἱ ἄρχοντα
τοῦ στόλου καταστησαμένῳ Λιβέριον αὐτίκα δὴ
μάλα μετέμελεν· ἦν γὰρ ἐσχατογέρων τε ὁ
ἄνθρωπος μάλιστα καὶ ἀμελέτητος πολεμίων ἔργων
- 8 Ἀρταβάνῃ τε ἀφείς τὰ ἐς αὐτὸν ἐγκλήματα
πάντα καὶ στρατηγὸν καταλόγων τῶν. ἐπὶ
Θράκης καταστησάμενος ἐς Σικελίαν εὐθὺς
ἔπεμψε, στράτευμα μὲν οὐ πολὺ παρασχόμενος,
ἐπιστείλας δὲ τὸν ξὺν τῷ Λιβερίῳ παραλαβεῖν
στόλον, ἐπεὶ Λιβέριον ἐς Βυζάντιον μετεπέμπετο
- 9 αὐτοκράτορα δὲ τοῦ πρὸς Τουτίλαν τε καὶ
Γότθους πολέμου Γερμανὸν κατεστήσατο τὸν
αὐτοῦ ἀνεψιόν. ὃ δὴ στράτευμα μὲν οὐ πολὺ
ἔδωκε, χρήματα δὲ λόγου ἄξια παρασχόμενος
στρατιὰν ἐπέστελλεν ἕκ τε Θρακῶν καὶ Ἰλλυριῶν
ἀξιολογωτάτην ἀγείραντι¹ οὕτω δὴ στέλλεσθαι
- 10 σπουδῇ ἐς τὴν Ἰταλίαν πολλῇ. καὶ οἱ Φιλημούθ
τε τὸν Ἑρουλον ξὺν τοῖς ἐπομένοις καὶ Ἰωάννην
τὸν αὐτοῦ μὲν Γερμανοῦ κηδεστήν, Βιταλιανοῦ
δὲ ἀδελφιδοῦν (στρατηγὸς γὰρ ὢν τῶν ἐν Ἰλλυ-
ριοῖς καταλόγων διατριβὴν ἐνταῦθα εἶχε) ξὺν
αὐτῷ ἐς τὴν Ἰταλίαν ἐπαγαγέσθαι² ἐπήγγελλε.
- 11 Τότε δὴ Γερμανὸν φιλοτιμία πολλή τις ἔσχε
Γότθων τὴν ἐπικράτησιν ἀναδήσασθαι, ὅπως οἱ
Λιβύην τε καὶ Ἰταλίαν ἀνασώσασθαι περιέσται
- 12 τῇ Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ. Στότζα γὰρ τετυραννηκός
ἐν γε Αἰβύῃ τὰ πρότερα καὶ τὸ Λιβύης κράτος
βεβαιότατα ἤδη ἔχοντας αὐτὸς ἐκ βασιλέως

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII. xxxix. 6-12

and to put forth all his power to save the island. But he very speedily repented having appointed Liberius commander of the fleet, for he was an extremely old man and without experience in deeds of war. Then he absolved Artabanus from all the charges against him,¹ and appointing him General of the forces in Thrace straightway sent him to Sicily, providing him with an army of no great size but instructing him to take over the fleet commanded by Liberius, since he was summoning Liberius to Byzantium. But as commander-in-chief in the war against Totila and the Goths he appointed Germanus, his own nephew. To him he gave an army of no great size, but he provided him with a considerable amount of money and directed him to gather a very formidable army from Thrace and Illyricum and then to set forth with great speed for Italy. And he further instructed him to take with him to Italy both Philemuth the Eruhan with his troops and his own son-in-law John the nephew of Vitalian, for John, as General of the forces in Illyricum, was stationed there.

Then a great ambition took possession of Germanus to achieve for himself the overthrow of the Goths, in order that it might be his fortune to recover for the Roman empire both Libya and Italy. For in the case of Libya, at any rate, he had been sent there by the emperor at the time when Stotzas had established his tyranny and was already holding the power of Libya most securely, and he had exceeded all expectations by defeating the rebels in battle, put an end to the tyranny, and once more recovered

¹ In connection with the palace plot, VII. xxxii

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- αὐθις ἀνεσώσατο τῇ Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ, ὥσπερ μοι
 13 ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις ἐρρήθη. καὶ νῦν δὲ
 τῶν Ἰταλίας πραγμάτων ἐς τοῦτο τύχης ἐληλα-
 κότων ἐς ὃ μοι ἔναγχος δεδιήγεται, μέγα δὴ
 ἐνθένδε περιβαλέσθαι κλέος ἐβούλετο ἅτε δὴ καὶ
 14 αὐτὴν ἰσχύσας βασιλεῖ ἀνασώσασθαι. καὶ
 πρῶτα μὲν (ἐτετελευτήκει γάρ οἱ πολλῶ πρό-
 τερον ἢ γυνὴ Πασσάρα ὄνομα) Ματασοῦνθαν ἐν
 γαμετῆς ἐποιήσατο λόγῳ, τὴν Ἀμαλασούνθης
 τῆς Θευδερίχου θυγατρὸς παῖδα, Οὐιττίγιδος ἥδη
 15 ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἀφανισθέντος. ἤλπιζε γάρ, ἦν ξὺν
 αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἢ γυνὴ εἴη,¹ αἰσχύνεσθαι,
 ὥς τὸ εἰκός, Γότθους ὅπλα ἐπ' αὐτὴν ἀνελέσθαι,
 ἀναμνησθέντας τῆς Θευδερίχου τε καὶ Ἀτα-
 16 λαρίχου ἀρχῆς. ἔπειτα δὲ χρήματα μεγάλα τὰ
 μὲν ἐκ βασιλέως, τὰ δὲ πλείω οἴκοθεν οὐδεμιᾷ
 φειδοῖ προιέμενος στρατιὰν ἐκ τοῦ ἀπροσδοκίτου
 πολλὴν ἀνδρῶν μαχιμωτάτων ἀγεῖραι δι' ὀλίγον
 17 εὐπετῶς ἰσχυσε. Ῥωμαῖοί τε γάρ, ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ
 τὰ πολέμια, τῶν ἀρχόντων πολλοὺς ὧν δὴ δο-
 ρυφόροι τε καὶ ὑπασπισταὶ ἦσαν, ἐν ὀλιγορῖα
 πεπονημένοι, Γερμανῶ εἶποντο, ἔκ τε Βυζαντίου
 καὶ τῶν ἐπὶ Θράκης χωρίων καὶ Ἰλλυριῶν οὐδέν
 τι ἦσσαν, Ἰουστίνου τε καὶ Ἰουστινιανοῦ, τῶν
 αὐτοῦ παίδων, πολλὴν ἐνδειξαμένων περὶ ταῦτα
 18 σπουδῇν, ἐπεὶ καὶ αὐτοὺς ἐπαγαγόμενος ἀπὼν
 ὥχετο. τινὰς δὲ καὶ ἐκ καταλόγων ἰππικῶν οἱ
 ἐπὶ τῆς Θράκης ἴδρυντο, δόντος βασιλέως, ξυνέ-
 λεξε. καὶ βάρβαροι πολλοὶ οἵπερ ἀμφὶ ποταμὸν
 Ἰστρον διατριβὴν εἶχον, κατὰ κλέος τοῦ Γερμα-

¹ εἴη K: ἴη L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII. xxxix. 12-19

Libya for the Roman empire, as I have recounted in the preceding narrative¹ And now that the affairs of Italy had come to such a pass as I have just described, he naturally wished to win for himself great glory in that field, by showing himself able to recover this too for the emperor Now his first move, made possible by the fact that his wife, who was named Passara, had died long before, was to marry Malasuntha, the daughter of Amalasuntha and granddaughter of Theodoric, since Vittigis had already passed from the world For he cherished the hope that, if the woman should be with him in the army, the Goths would probably be ashamed to take up arms against her, calling to mind the rule of Theodoric and Atalaric Then, by expending great sums of money, part of which was provided by the emperor, but most of which he furnished unstintingly from his own resources, he easily succeeded, contrary to expectation, in raising a great army of very warlike men in a short space of time For among the Romans, on the one hand, the experienced fighters in many cases ignored the officers to whom they belonged as spearmen and guards and followed Germanus; these came not only from Byzantium, but also from the towns of Thrace and Illyricum as well, his sons Justinus and Justinian having displayed great zeal in this matter—for he had taken them also on his departure He also enrolled some from the cavalry detachments which were stationed in Thrace, with the emperor's permission The barbarians also, on the other hand, who had then homes near the Ister River kept coming in great numbers, attracted by the fame of

¹ Book IV xvi, xvii.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- νοῦ ἤκουντες καὶ χρήματα πολλὰ κεκομισμένοι,
 20 ἀνεμίγνυντο τῷ Ῥωμαίων στρατῷ. ἄλλοι τε
 βάρβαροι ἐκ πάσης ἀγειρόμενοι ξυνέρρεον γῆς.
 καὶ ὁ τῶν Λαγγοβαρδῶν ἡγούμενος ὀπλίτας
 χιλίους ἐν παρασκευῇ πεποιημένος αὐτίκα δὴ
 μάλα ὑπέσχετο πέμψειν.
 21 Τούτων δὴ καὶ πλειοτέρων ἐς τὴν Ἰταλίαν
 ἀγγελλομένων, οἷα δὴ ἐξεργάζεσθαι εἴωθεν ἐς
 τὰ ἀνθρώπεια προιοῦσα ἢ φήμη, Γότθοι ἅμα
 μὲν¹ ἔδεισαν, ἅμα δὲ καὶ ἐν ἀπόρῳ ἐγένοντο,
 εἰ σφίσιν ἐς γένος τὸ Θεουδερύχου πολεμητέα
 22 εἶη στρατιῶται δὲ Ῥωμαίων, ὅσοι Γότθοις
 ἐτύγχανον ἀκούσιοι² ξυστρατεύοντες, ἀγγελον
 πέμψαντες Γερμανῷ σημαίνειν ἐκέλευον ὥς,
 ἐπειδὴν τάχιστα ἐν Ἰταλίᾳ γενόμενον αὐτὸν³
 ἴδοιεν, ἐνστρατοπεδευομένην τε τὴν αὐτοῦ
 στρατιάν, καὶ αὐτοὶ οὐδέν τι μελλήσαντες ξὺν
 23 ἐκείνοις τετάξονται πάντως. οἷς δὴ ἅπασι
 θαρσήσαντες οἱ τοῦ βασιλέως στρατοῦ ἐν τε
 Ῥαβέννῃ καὶ εἰς πον ἀλλῇ πόλιν σφίσι λε-
 λείφθαι τετύχηκεν, εὐέλπιδες ἰσχυρότατα γε-
 γεννημένοι, τὰ χωρία βασιλεῖ ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς
 24 φυλάσσειν ἡξίου. ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅσοι ξὺν τῷ
 Βήρῳ τὰ πρότερα ἢ ἄλλοις τισὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις
 ἐς χεῖρας ἐλθόντες ἠσσημένοι τε τῶν ἐναντίων
 ἐν τῇ ξυμβολῇ διέφυγόν τε καὶ σκεδαννύμενοι
 περιήεσαν, ὅπῃ ἐκάστῳ τετύχηκεν, ἐπειδὴ ὁδῷ
 ἰέναι Γερμανὸν ἤκουσαν, ἀθρόοι ἐν Ἰστρίᾳ
 γεγεννημένοι, ἐνταῦθά τε τὸ στράτευμα τοῦτο
 προσδεχόμενοι, ἡσυχῇ ἔμενον.

¹ ἅμα μὲν Haury δὲ ἅμα τε K, τε ἅμα L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII. xxxix. 19-24

Germanus, and, upon receiving large sums of money, these mingled with the Roman army. And other barbarians too kept flocking to his standard, collected from the whole world. Furthermore, the ruler of the Lombards made ready a thousand heavy-armed soldiers and promised to send them right speedily.

When these things were reported in Italy, with such additions as rumour customarily makes as it spreads among men, the Goths were both frightened and perplexed at the same time, being faced, as they were, with the necessity of making war upon the race of Theoderic. But those Roman soldiers who chanced to be fighting unwillingly in the ranks of the Goths sent a messenger to Germanus with orders to state to him that, as soon as they should see him arrived in Italy and his army actually encamped, they too without any hesitation would certainly array themselves with his troops. All these things brought fresh courage to the detachments of the emperor's army in Ravenna and whatever other cities chanced to be left in their hands, and being now filled with the highest hopes they were determined to guard the towns vigorously for the emperor. Nay, more, all those who under Verus or other commanders had previously engaged with the enemy and had escaped after being defeated in battle by their opponents, and were now dispersed and wandering about, each man wherever chance led him, all these, as soon as they heard that Germanus was on the way, gathered in a body in Istria, and there remained quiet, awaiting this army.

² ἀκούσιοι K. ἀκούσιοι ἢ ἐθελούσιοι L

³ αὐτόν K. γερμανόν L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 25 Τότε δὴ ὁ Τουτίλας, ἡμέρα γὰρ ἡ ξυγκειμένη
αὐτῷ τε καὶ Διογένει ἀμφὶ Κεντουκέλλαις εἰσ-
τήκει, πέμψας παρ' αὐτὸν ἐκέλευεν οἱ κατὰ
26 τὰ ξυγκείμενα τὴν πόλιν ἐνδοῦναι. Διογένης
δὲ τούτου δὴ κύριος ἔφασκεν αὐτὸς οὐκέτι εἶναι·
ἀκηκοέναι γὰρ αὐτοκράτορα τοῦδε τοῦ πολέμου
τὸν Γερμανὸν καταστήναι τε καὶ ξὺν τῷ στρατῷ
27 οὐκ ἄποθεν εἶναι. τῶν δὲ ὁμήρων βουλομένων
οἱ αὐτῷ¹ εἶναι τοὺς μὲν σφετέρους ἀπολαβεῖν,
τοὺς δὲ πρὸς Γότθων σφίσι δεδομένους ἀπο-
28 τινύναι. τοὺς τε² σταλέντας ἀποπεμφάμενος
τοῦ τῆς πόλεως φυλακτηρίου ἐπεμελείτο, Γερ-
μανὸν τε καὶ τὸ ξὺν αὐτῷ караδοκῶν στρα-
29 τευμα. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἐπράσσετο τῇδε, καὶ ὁ
χειμῶν ἔληγε, καὶ τὸ πέμπτον καὶ δέκατον ἔτος
ἐτελεύτα τῷ πολέμῳ τῷδε, ὃν Προκόπιος
ξυνέγραψε.

XL

- Γερμανοῦ δὲ τὸ στράτευμα ἐν Σαρδικῇ, τῇ
Ἰλλυριῶν πόλει, ἀγείραντός τε καὶ διέποντος,
ἅπαντά τε ἰσχυρότατα ἐξαρτυρομένου τὰ ἐς τὴν
τοῦ πολέμου παρασκευήν, Σκλαβηνῶν ὁμιλος
ὅσος οὐπω πρότερον ἀφίκετο ἐς Ῥωμαίων τὴν
γῆν. Ἰστρον τε ποταμὸν διαβάντες ἀμφὶ Νάισον
2 ἦλθον. ὧν δὴ ὀλίγους τινὰς ἀποσκεδασθέντας
μὲν τοῦ στρατοπέδου, πλανωμένους δὲ καὶ κατὰ
μόνας περιούντας τὰ ἐκείνῃ χωρία τῶν τινὲς
Ῥωμαίων καταλαβόντες τε καὶ ξυνδήσαντες ἀνε-

¹ βουλομένων οἱ αὐτῷ βουλομένων αὐτῷ Herwerden · βου-
λενομένων οἱ αὐτῷ K βουλευόμενον οἱ αὐτῷ L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII xxxix. 25-xl. 2

Just at this time Totila sent to Centumcellae (for the time agreed upon by him and Diogenes as touching this town had arrived), and commanded Diogenes to surrender the city in accordance with the agreement. Diogenes, however, said that he personally no longer had authority to do this, for he had heard that Germanus had been appointed commander-in chief to carry on that war, and was not far away with his army. And he added that, in regard to the hostages, it was his desire to receive back, on the one hand, their own, and, on the other, to return those furnished by the Goths. Then, after dismissing the messengers, he turned his attention to the defence of the city, expecting Germanus and the army with him. Such was the course of these events; and the winter drew to its close, and the fifteenth year ended in this war, the history of 550 A D which Procopius has written.

XL

BUT while Germanus was collecting and organizing his army in Sardice,¹ the city of Illyricum, and making all the necessary preparations for war with the greatest thoroughness, a throng of Sclaveni such as never before was known arrived on Roman soil, having crossed the Ister River and come to the vicinity of Naissus.² Now some few of these had scattered from their army and, wandering about the country there alone, were captured by certain of the Romans and made prisoners, and the Romans

¹ Modern Sofia

² Modern Nish

² τοὺς τε Κ οὕτω τοὺς Λ

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- πυνθάνοντο ὅτου δὴ ἔνεκα οὗτος δὴ ὁ τῶν
 Σκλαβηνῶν στρατὸς καὶ ὁ τι κατεργασόμενοι
 3 διέβησαν ποταμὸν Ἰστρον. οἱ δὲ ἰσχυρίσαντο
 ὡς Θεσσαλονίκην τε αὐτὴν καὶ πόλεις τὰς ἄμφ'
 αὐτὴν πολιορκίᾳ ἐξαιρήσοντας ἤκοιεν.¹ ἅπερ
 ἐπεὶ βασιλεὺς ἤκουσεν, ἄγαν τε ξυνεταράχθη καὶ
 πρὸς Γερμανὸν εὐθὺς ἔγραψεν, ὁδὸν μὲν ἐν τῷ
 παραυτίκα τὴν ἐπὶ Ἰταλίαν ἀναβαλέσθαι, Θεσσα-
 λονίκη δὲ καὶ πόλεσι ταῖς ἄλλαις ἀμύναι, καὶ τὴν
 Σκλαβηνῶν ἔφοδον ὅση δύναμις ἀποκρούσασθαι.
 καὶ Γερμανὸς μὲν ἄμφι ταῦτα διατριβὴν εἶχε.
 4 Σκλαβηνοὶ δὲ γνόντες διαρρήδην πρὸς τῶν
 αἰχμαλώτων Γερμανὸν ἐν Σαρδικῇ εἶναι ἐς δέος
 5 ἦλθον· μέγα γὰρ ὄνομα ἐς τούτους δὴ τοὺς
 βαρβάρους ὁ Γερμανὸς εἶχεν ἐξ αἰτίας τοιαύσδε.
 ἡνίκα Ἰουστινιανὸς ὁ Γερμανοῦ θεῖος τὴν βασι-
 λείαν εἶχεν, Ἄνται, οἱ Σκλαβηνῶν ἀγχιστα
 ὄκνηται, Ἰστρον ποταμὸν διαβάντες στρατῷ
 6 μεγάλῳ ἐσέβαλον ἐς Ῥωμαίων τὴν γῆν. ἐτύγ-
 χανε δὲ Γερμανὸν βασιλεὺς Θράκης ὅλης στρα-
 τηγὸν καταστησάμενος οὐ πολλῷ πρότερον.
 ὃς δὴ ἐς χεῖρας ἐλθὼν τῷ τῶν πολεμίων στρατῷ
 κατὰ κράτος τε μάχῃ νικήσας σχεδὸν τι ἅπαντας
 ἔκτεινε, κλέος τε μέγα ἐκ τοῦ ἔργου τούτου ὁ
 Γερμανὸς ἐς πάντας ἀνθρώπους καὶ διαφερόντως
 ἐς τούτους δὴ τοὺς βαρβάρους περιεβάλετο.
 7 δειμαίνοντες οὖν αὐτόν, ὥσπερ μοι εἴρηται,
 Σκλαβηνοί, ἅμα δὲ καὶ δύναμιν ἀξιολογωτάτην
 αὐτόν ἐπάγεσθαι οἰόμενοι ἅτε πρὸς βασιλέως
 στελλόμενον ἐπὶ Τουτίλαν τε καὶ Γότθους, ὁδοῦ

¹ ἐξαιρήσοντας ἤκοιεν: ἐξαιρήσοντας ἴκοιεν K: ἐξαιρήσεσθαι
 σχοῖεν L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII. xl 2-7

questioned them as to why this particular army of the Sclaveni had crossed the Ister and what they had in mind to accomplish. And they stoutly declared that they had come with the intention of capturing by siege both Thessalonice¹ itself and the cities around it. When the emperor heard this, he was greatly agitated and straightway wrote to Germanus directing him to postpone for the moment his expedition to Italy and defend Thessalonice and the other cities, and to repel the invasion of the Sclaveni with all his power. So Germanus, for his part, was devoting himself to this problem.

But the Sclaveni, upon learning definitely from their captives that Germanus was in Sardice, began to be afraid, for Germanus had a great reputation among these particular barbarians for the following reason. During the reign of Justinian, the uncle of Germanus, the Antae, who dwell close to the Sclaveni, had crossed the Ister River with a great army and invaded the Roman domain. Now the emperor had not long before this, as it happened, appointed Germanus General of all Thrace. He accordingly engaged with the hostile army, defeated them decisively in battle, and killed practically all of them; and Germanus, as a result of this achievement, had covered himself with great glory in the estimation of all men, including these same barbarians. Consequently, on account of their dread of him, as I have said, and also because they supposed that he was conducting a very formidable force, seeing that he was being sent by the emperor against Totila and the Goths, the Sclaveni immediately turned

¹ Modern Salonica

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- μὲν εὐθὺς τῆς ἐπὶ Θεσσαλονίκην ἀπέσχοντο, ἐς δὲ τὸ πεδῖον καταβῆναι οὐκέτι ἐτόλμων, ἀλλὰ ξύμπαντα τὰ ὄρη τὰ Ἰλλυριῶν διαμείψαντες ἐν
- 8 Δαλματία ἐγένοντο. ὦν δὴ ὁ Γερμανὸς ἀφροντιστήσας πάσῃ ἐπήγγελλε τῇ στρατιᾷ ξυσκευάζεσθαι, ὡς ἡμέραιν δυοῖν ὕστερον ὁδοῦ ἐνθένδε τῆς ἐπὶ τὴν Ἰταλίαν ἀρξόμενος
- 9 Ἀλλὰ τις αὐτῷ ξυνέπεσε τύχη νοσήσαντι ἐξαπιναιῶς τὸν βίον διαμετρήσασθαι. εὐθυωρόν¹ τε ὁ Γερμανὸς ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἠφάνιστο, ἀνὴρ ἀνδρείος τε καὶ δραστήριος ἐς τὰ μάλιστα, ἐν μὲν τῷ πολέμῳ στρατηγὸς τε ἄριστος καὶ αὐτουργὸς δεξιός, ἐν δὲ εἰρήνῃ καὶ ἀγαθοῖς πράγμασι² τὰ τε νόμιμα καὶ τὸν τῆς πολιτείας κόσμον βεβαιότατα φυλάσσειν ἐξεπιστάμενος, δικάσας μὲν ὀρθότατα πάντων μάλιστα, χρήματα δὲ τοῖς δεομένοις ἅπασι δεδανεικῶς μεγάλα καὶ τόκον οὐδ' ὅσον λόγῳ κεκομισμένος πρὸς αὐτῶν πώποτε, ἐν Παλατίῳ μὲν καὶ τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἐμβριθέστατός τε καὶ σοβαρὸς ἄγαν, ἐστιάτωρ δὲ καθ' ἡμέραν οἴκοι ἡδύς τε καὶ ἐλευθέριος καὶ ἐπίχαρις, οὐδέ τι ἐν Παλατίῳ ἀμαρτάνεσθαι παρὰ τὰ εἰωθότα ὅση δύναμις ξυγχωρῶν, οὐδὲ στασιώταις τοῖς ἐν Βυζαντίῳ τῆς βουλήσεως ἢ τῆς ὀμιλίας μεταλαχὼν πώποτε, καίπερ καὶ τῶν ἐν δυνάμει πολλῶν ἐς τοῦτο ἀτοπίας ἐληλακότων. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν τῇδε κεχώρηκε.
- 10 Βασιλεὺς δὲ τοῖς ξυμπεσοῦσι περιώδυνος γεγονῶς Ἰωάννην ἐκέλευε, τὸν Βιταλιανοῦ μὲν

¹ εὐθυωρόν Dindorf εὐθυωρός K, εὐθύωρός L.

² πράγμασι L· γράμμασι K.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII. xl. 7-10

aside from their march on Thessalonice and no longer dared to descend to the plain, but they crossed over all the mountain ranges of Illyricum and so came into Dalmatia. Germanus, accordingly, paid no further attention to them and issued orders to the entire army to prepare for marching, intending to commence the journey thence to Italy two days later.

But by some chance it so befell that he was taken sick and abruptly reached the term of life. Thus did Germanus suddenly pass away, a man endowed with the finest qualities and remarkable for his activity; for in war, on the one hand, he was not only a most able general, but was also resourceful and independent in action, while in peace and prosperity, on the other hand, he well understood how to uphold with all firmness both the laws and the institutions of the state. As a judge he was conspicuously upright, while in private life he made loans of large sums of money to all who requested it, never so much as speaking of taking interest from them. Both in the palace and in the market-place he was a man of very impressive personality and exceedingly serious demeanour, while in his daily home life he was a pleasant, open-hearted, and charming host. He would not permit, as far as his strength allowed, any offence in the palace against established laws, nor did he ever share either in the purpose or in the conversations of the conspirators in Byzantium, though many even of those in power went so far in their unnatural conduct. Such then was the course of these events.

The emperor was deeply moved by this misfortune, and commanded John, the nephew of Vitalian and

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἀδελφιδοῦν, Γερμανοῦ δὲ γαμβρόν, ξὺν Ἰουστινιανῷ θατέρῳ τοῖν Γερμανοῦ παίδειν τῷ
- 11 στρατῷ τούτῳ ἐς τὴν Ἰταλίαν ἡγήσασθαι. καὶ οἱ μὲν τὴν ἐπὶ Δαλματίας ἦσαν, ὥς ἐν Σάλωσι διαχειμάσουντες, ἐπεὶ ἀδύνατα σφίσιν ᾤοντο εἶναι τηνικάδε τοῦ καιροῦ περιιοῦσι τὴν τοῦ κόλπου περίοδον ἐς Ἰταλίαν κομίζεσθαι· διαπορθμεύεσθαι γὰρ νηῶν σφίσιν οὐ παρουσῶν
- 12 ἀμήχανα ἦν. Λιβέριος δέ, οὐπω τι πεπυσμένος ὦν περ βασιλεῖ ἀμφὶ τῷ στόλῳ τούτῳ μετέμελε, Συρακούσαις προσέσχε πολιορκουμέναις πρὸς
- 13 τῶν πολεμίων. βιασάμενός τε τοὺς ταύτῃ βαρβάρους ἐς τε τὸν λιμένα κατήρε καὶ παντὶ τῷ στόλῳ ἐντὸς τοῦ περιβόλου ἐγένετο. καὶ
- 14 Ἀρταβάνης δὲ οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον ἐν Κεφαλωνίᾳ γενόμενος, ἐπειδὴ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Λιβέριον ἤδη ἐνθένδε ἀναχθέντας ἐπὶ Σικελίας κεχωρηκέναι ἔγνω, ἄρας ἐνθένδε πέλαγος αὐτίκα τὸ Ἀδριατικὸν καλούμενον διέβη. ἐπεὶ δὲ Καλαβρῶν ἀγχοῦ ἐγένετο, χειμῶνός οἱ ἐξαισίου ἐπιπесόντος καὶ τοῦ πνεύματος σκληροῦ τε ὑπεράγαν ὄντος καὶ ἀπ' ἐναντίας σφίσιν ἰόντος, οὕτως ἀπάσας διασκεδάννυσθαι τὰς ναῦς ξυνηνέχθη, ὥς δοκεῖν ὅτι δὴ αἱ πολλαὶ ἐς τὴν Καλαβρίαν ἐξενεχθεῖσαι
- 16 ὑπὸ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐγένοντο. οὐκ ἦν δὲ οὕτως, ἀλλὰ πρὸς τοῦ πνεύματος ξὺν βίᾳ πολλῇ διωθόμεναι ἀνέστρεφόν τε βιαζόμεναι ὑπερφυῶς καὶ αὖθις ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ ἐγένοντο. καὶ ταῖς ἄλλαις δέ, ὅπη παρατύχῃ, ἢ διεφθάρθαι ἢ διασεσῶσθαι τετύχηκε. ναῦς δὲ μία, ἐν ᾗ ἔπλει Ἀρταβάνης αὐτός, τοῦ ἱστοῦ οἱ ἐν τῷ σάλῳ τούτῳ ἀποκοπέντος, ἐς τοσόνδε κινδύνου ἐλθοῦσα,

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII xl. 10-17

son-in-law of Germanus, in company with Justinian, one of the two sons of Germanus, to lead this army into Italy. So they set out on the way to Dalmatia, intending to pass the winter in Salones, since it seemed to them impossible at that season to make the circuit of the gulf, as they would be obliged to do in travelling into Italy; for it was impossible for them to ferry across since they had no ships. Meanwhile Liberius, not having as yet learned anything of the emperor's change of purpose regarding the fleet he commanded, put in at Syracuse while it was under siege by the enemy. And he forced his way through the barbarian lines, sailed into the harbour, and so got inside the fortifications with the whole fleet. Now Artabanes not long after this reached Cephallenia, and finding that Liberius and his army had already put out to sea and departed thence on the way to Sicily, he immediately set out from there and crossed the so-called Adriatic Sea. But when he came near Calabria, he was assailed by a terrific storm and a head wind of extraordinary violence, and it so fell out that all the ships were scattered so completely that it appeared that the most of them had been driven on the shore of Calabria and fallen into the hands of the enemy. This, however, was not the case, but they had first been driven apart by the great violence of the wind, then had turned about, heavily buffeted meanwhile by the sea, and had reached the Peloponnesus again. As for the other ships, some were lost and some were saved, according to where chance carried them. But one ship, that in which Artabanes himself was sailing, had its mast broken off in this heavy sea, and yet, after coming to such a degree of danger, was carried

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

πρός τε τοῦ ῥοθίου φερομένη καὶ τῷ κλύδωνι ἐπισπομένη¹ Μελίτη προσέσχε τῇ νήσῳ. οὗτω μὲν Ἀρταβάνην διασεσῶσθαι ἐκ τοῦ ἀπροσδοκῆτου ξυνέπεσε

- 18 Λιβέριος δὲ οὔτε τοῖς πολιορκούσιν ἐπεξιέναι ἢ μάχῃ πρὸς αὐτοὺς οἶός τε ὦν διακρίνεσθαι, καὶ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων σφίσιν ἅτε πολλοῖς οὖσιν ἐς πλείω χρόνον οὐδαμῇ διαρκούντων, ἄρας ἐνθένδε ξὺν τοῖς ἐπομένοις καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους λαθὼν ἐς Πάνορμον ἀπεχώρησε.
- 19 Τουτίλας δὲ καὶ Γότθοι σχεδόν τι ἅπαντα ληισάμενοι τὰ ἐπὶ Σικελίας χωρία ἵππων μὲν ἐπαγόμενοι καὶ ζώων ἄλλων μέγα τι χρήμα, σῖτον δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους καρπούς ἅπαντας ἐκ τῆς νήσου μετενεγκόντες καὶ πάντα τὰ χρήματα, μεγάλα κομιδῇ ὄντα, ἐν τοῖς πλοίοις ἐνθήμενοι, τήν τε νήσον ἐξαπιναίως ἐξέλιπον καὶ ἐς τὴν Ἰταλίαν ἀνέστρεφον, τρόπῳ ὁρμώμενοι τοιῷδε.
- 20 τῶν τινὰ Ῥωμαίων, Σπῖνον ὄνομα, ἐκ Σπολιτίου ὁρμώμενόν οἱ αὐτῷ πάρεδρον οὐ πολλῷ πρότερον
- 21 καταστησάμενος Τουτίλας ἔτυχεν. οὗτος ἀνὴρ ἐν πόλει Κατάνη, ἀτειχίστῳ οὔσῃ, διατριβὴν εἶχε. τύχῃ τέ τις αὐτῷ ξυνέβη ὑπὸ τοῖς πολε-
- 22 μίοις ἐνταῦθα γενέσθαι. ὃν δὴ ῥύεσθαι ὁ Τουτίλας ἐπειγόμενος τῶν τινὰ ἐπιφανῶν γυναῖκα, αἰχμάλωτον οὔσαν, ἀφεῖναι Ῥωμαίοις ἀντ' αὐτοῦ ἤθελε.
- 23 γυναῖκα δὲ Ῥωμαῖοι οὐδαμῇ ἐδικαίουσαν ἀνταλλάξασθαι ἀνδρὸς τὴν τοῦ καλουμένου κοιαιστω-
- 24 ρος ἀρχὴν ἔχοντος. δείσας οὖν ὁ ἀνὴρ μὴ παρὰ τοῖς πολεμίοις διαφθαρεῖν, ὡμολόγησε Ῥωμαίοις

¹ ἐπισπομένη Dindorf, ἐπισπωμένη MSS

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII. xl 17-24

by the surge and followed the swell until it came to land at the island of Melita¹ Thus did it come about contrary to expectation that Artabanus was saved

Libenius now found himself unable to make sallies against the besiegers or to fight a decisive battle against them, while at the same time their provisions could not possibly suffice for any considerable time, seeing they were a large force, and so he set sail from there with his troops, and, eluding the enemy, withdrew to Panormus.

Totila and the Goths, meanwhile, had plundered practically the whole land of Sicily; they had collected as booty a vast number of horses and other animals, and had stripped the island of grain and all its other crops, these, together with all the treasure, which amounted to a great sum indeed, they loaded on their ships, and then suddenly abandoned the island and returned to Italy, being impelled to do so for the following reason. Not long before this, as it happened, Totila had appointed one of the Romans, Spinus by name, a native of Spolitum, to be his personal adviser. This man was staying in Catana, which was an unwallled town. And, by some chance, it came about that he fell into the hands of the enemy there. Now Totila, being eager to rescue this man, wished to release to the Romans in his stead a notable's wife who was his prisoner. But the Romans would not consent to accept a woman in exchange for a man holding the position of quaestor, as it is called. The man consequently became fearful that he would be destroyed while in hostile hands, and so promised the Romans that he would

¹ Modern Meleđa

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- αὐτίκα Τουτίλαν ἀναπείσειν Σικελίας μὲν ἀπα-
 νίστασθαι, παντὶ δὲ τῷ Γότθων στρατῷ ἐς
 25 Ἰταλίαν διαπορθμεύσασθαι. καὶ οἱ μὲν ὄρκοις
 αὐτὸν σφίσιν ἀμφὶ ταύτῃ τῇ ὁμολογίᾳ κατα-
 ληφθέντα Γότθοις ἀπέδωσαν, αὐτ' αὐτοῦ τὴν
 26 γυναῖκα κεκομισμένοι. ὁ δὲ Τουτίλα ἐς· ὄψιν
 ἤκων οὐκ ἐπὶ τῷ σφετέρῳ ξυμφόρῳ Γότθους
 ἔφασκε Σικελίαν ληισαμένους σχεδὸν τι ὅλην
 ὀλίγων τινῶν φρουρίων διατριβὴν ἐνταῦθα ἔχειν.
 27 ἑναγχος γὰρ ἰσχυρίζετο ἀκηκοέναι, ἥνικα παρὰ
 τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐτύγχανεν ὢν, Γερμανὸν μὲν τὸν
 βασιλέως ἀνεψιὸν ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἀφανισθῆναι,
 Ἰωάννην δὲ τὸν αὐτοῦ κηδεστὴν καὶ Ἰουστινιανὸν
 τὸν αὐτοῦ παῖδα παντὶ τῷ πρὸς Γερμανοῦ συλ-
 λεγέντι στρατῷ εἶναι μὲν ἤδη ἐν Δαλματία, εὐθὺς
 δὲ Λιγουρίας αὐτίκα δὴ μάλα ξυσκευαζομένους
 ἐνθένδε χωρήσειν, ἐφ' ᾧ δὴ Γότθων ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς
 παῖδάς τε καὶ γυναῖκας ἀνδραποδίσουσιν καὶ
 χρήματα λήσονται πάντα, οἷσπερ ἡμᾶς ὑπαν-
 τιάζειν ἄμεινον ἂν εἴη ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ ξὺν τοῖς
 28 οἰκέοις διαχειμάζοντας. ἦν γὰρ ἐκείνων περιε-
 σόμεθα, Σικελίας αὖθις ἅμα ἡρι ἀρχομένῳ
 παρέσται ἡμῖν ἀδεέστερον ἐπιβήσεσθαι πολέμιον
 29 οὐδὲν ἐν νῷ ἔχουσι. ταύτῃ ὁ Τουτίλας τῇ ὑπο-
 θήκῃ ἀναπείσειν φρουροὺς μὲν ἐν ὀχυρώμασι
 τέτρασιν εἶασεν, αὐτὸς δὲ ξύμπασαν τὴν λείαν
 ἐπαγόμενος παντὶ τῷ ἄλλῳ στρατῷ ἐς Ἰταλίαν
 διεπορθμεύσατο. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἐπράσσετο τῇδε.
 30 Ἰωάννης δὲ καὶ ὁ βασιλέως στρατὸς ἀφικόμενοι
 ἐς Δαλματίαν ἐν Σάλωσι¹ διαχειμάζειν ἔγνωσαν,
 ἐνθένδε μετὰ τὴν τοῦ χειμῶνος ὥραν εὐθὺς Ῥαβέν-

¹ ἐν Σάλωσι L: εἰς σάλωνας K

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII. xl 24-30

persuade Totila to depart immediately from Sicily and cross over to Italy with the whole Gothic army. So they first bound him over by oaths to carry out this promise and then gave him up to the Goths, receiving the woman in return. He then went before Totila and asserted that the Goths were not consulting their own interests, now that they had plundered practically the whole of Sicily, in remaining there for a few insignificant fortresses. For he declared that he had recently heard, while he was among the enemy, that Germanus, the emperor's nephew, had passed from the world, and that John, his son-in-law, and Justinian, his son, with the whole army collected by Germanus were already in Dalmatia and would move on from there, after completing their preparations in the briefest time, straight for Liguria, in order, obviously, to descend suddenly upon the Goths and make slaves of their women and children and to plunder all their valuables, and it would be better for the Goths, he said, to be there to meet them, passing the winter meanwhile in safety in company with their families. "For," he went on, "if we overcome that army, it will be possible for us at the opening of spring to renew our operations against Sicily free from anxiety and with no thought of an enemy in our minds." Totila was convinced by this suggestion, and so, leaving guards in four strongholds, he himself, taking with him the entire booty, crossed over with all the rest of the army to Italy. Such was the course of these events.

Now John and the emperor's army, upon reaching Dalmatia, decided to pass the winter in Salones, purposing to march from there straight for Ravenna

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 31 νης ὁδῷ ἵεναι διανοούμενοι. Σκλαβηνοὶ δέ, οἳ τε
τὰ πρότερα ἐν γῇ τῇ βασιλέως γενόμενοι, ὥσπερ
μοι ἑναγχος δεδιήγεται, καὶ ἄλλοι οὐ πολλῷ
ἕστερον Ἰστρον ποταμὸν διαβάντες καὶ τοῖς
32 προτέροις ἀναμιχθέντες, κατέθεον ἐν πολλῇ
ἐξουσίᾳ τὴν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχήν. καὶ τινες μὲν ἐν
ὑποψίᾳ εἶχον ὡς Τουτίλας τούτους δὴ τοὺς βαρ-
βάρους χρήμασι πολλοῖς ἀναπείσας ἐπιπέμφειε
τοῖς ταύτῃ Ῥωμαίοις, ὅπως δὴ βασιλεῖ ἀδύνατα
εἴη τὸν πρὸς Γότθους πόλεμον ἀσχολία τῇ ἐς τού-
33 τους δὴ τοὺς βαρβάρους εὖ διοικήσασθαι. εἴτε
δὲ Τουτίλα χαριζόμενοι εἴτε ἄκλητοι Σκλαβηνοὶ
ἐνταῦθα ἦλθον οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν. ἐς τρία μέντοι
τέλη σφᾶς αὐτοὺς διελόντες οἱ βάρβαροι οὗτοι
ἀνήκεστα ἐν Εὐρώπῃ τῇ ὅλῃ ἔργα εἰργάσαντο,
οὐκ ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς ληιζόμενοι τὰ ἐκεῖνη χωρία,
ἀλλ' ὥσπερ ἐν χώρᾳ οἰκείᾳ διαχειμαζόντες οὐδέν
34 τε δεδιότες πολέμιον. ἕστερον δὲ Ἰουστινιανὸς
βασιλεὺς στρατιὰν ἀξιολογωτάτην ἐπ' αὐτοὺς
ἔπεμφεν, ἧς ἄλλοι τε καὶ Κωνσταντιανὸς καὶ
Ἀράτιος καὶ Ναζάρης ἡγούντο καὶ Ἰουστίνος ὁ
Γερμανοῦ παῖς καὶ Ἰωάννης, ὃνπερ ἐπὶ κλησιν
35 ἐκάλουν Φαγᾶν. ἐπιστάτην δὲ Σχολαστικὸν
ἐφ' ἅπασι κατεστήσατο, τῶν ἐν Παλατίῳ
εὐνούχων ἓνα.
- 36 Οὗτος ὁ στρατὸς μοῖραν τῶν βαρβάρων κατα-
λαμβάνουσιν ἀμφὶ Ἀδριανούπολιν, ἥπερ ἐπὶ
Θράκης ἐν μεσογείοις κεῖται, πέντε ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν
37 Βυζαντίου διέχουσα. καὶ πρόσω μὲν χωρεῖν οἱ
βάρβαροι οὐκέτι εἶχον· λεῖαν γὰρ ἐπήγοντο

¹ Modern Edirne or Adrianople.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII xl 30-37

after the winter season. But the Sclaveni now reappeared, both those who had previously come into the emperor's land, as I have recounted above, and others who had crossed the Ister not long afterwards and joined the first, and they began to overrun the Roman domain with complete freedom. And some indeed entertained the suspicion that Totila had bribed these very barbarians with large gifts of money and so set them upon the Romans there, with the definite purpose of making it impossible for the emperor to manage the war against the Goths well because of his preoccupation with these barbarians. But as to whether the Sclaveni were conferring a favour upon Totila, or whether they came there without invitation, I am unable to say. These barbarians did, in any case, divide themselves into three groups and wrought irreparable damage in all Europe, not merely plundering that country by sudden raids, but actually spending the winter as if in their own land and having no fear of the enemy. Afterwards, however, the Emperor Justinian sent a very considerable army against them, which was led by a number of commanders, including Constantianus, Aratius, Nazares, Justinus the son of Germanus and John who bore the epithet of the Glutton. But he placed in supreme command over them all Scholasticus, one of the eunuchs of the palace.

This army came upon a part of the barbarians near Adrianopolis,¹ which is situated in the interior of Thrace, five days' journey distant from Byzantium. And the barbarians were unable to proceed further; for they were taking with them a booty which

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

ἀνθρώπων τε καὶ ζώων ἄλλων καὶ πάντων χρη-
 33 μάτων ἀριθμοῦ κρείσσονα μένοντες δὲ αὐτοῦ
 ἡπείγοντο τοῖς πολεμίους ἐς χεῖρας ἰέναι, τούτου
 δὴ¹ αὐτοῖς αἰσθησιν ὥς ἤκιστα παρεχόμενοι. καὶ
 οἱ μὲν Σκλαβηνοὶ ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐς τὸ ὄρος ὃ
 ταύτῃ ἀνέχει, Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ οὐ πολλῷ
 39 ἄποθεν. χρόνου δὲ σφίσιν ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ προσε-
 δρεΐᾳ τριβομένου συχνοῦ ἥσχαλλόν τε οἱ στρα-
 τιῶται καὶ δεινὰ ἐποιούντο, τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
 ἐπικαλοῦντες ὅτι δὴ αὐτοὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ξύμπαντα
 εὔπορα ἔχοντες ἅτε τοῦ Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ
 ἄρχοντες τοὺς στρατιώτας περιορῶσι τῶν ἀναγ-
 καίων τῇ ἀπορίᾳ πιεζομένους καὶ οὐ βούλονται
 40 τοῖς πολεμίους ἐς χεῖρας ἰέναι. οἷς δὴ οἱ στρα-
 τηγοὶ ἀναγκασθέντες τοῖς ἐναντίοις ξυνέμιξαν.
 καὶ γίνεται μὲν καρτερὰ μάχη, ἡσσῶνται δὲ κατὰ
 41 κράτος Ῥωμαῖοι. ἐνθα δὴ στρατιῶται μὲν πολλοί
 τε καὶ ἄριστοι θνήσκουσιν, οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ παρ'
 ὀλίγον ἐλθόντες ὑπὸ τοῖς πολεμίους γενέσθαι ξύν
 τοῖς καταλοιποῖς μόλις διαφυγόντες ἐσώθησαν,
 42 ὥς πη ἐκάστω δυνατὰ γέγονε. καὶ Κωνσταντια-
 νοῦ δὲ τὸ σημεῖον οἱ βάρβαροι εἶλον, τοῦ τε
 Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ ἐς ὀλιγορίαν τραπόμενοι
 43 πρόσω ἐχώρου. καὶ χώραν τὴν Ἀστικὴν καλου-
 μένην ἐληίζοντο κατ' ἐξουσίαν, ἀδήωτον ἐκ
 παλαιοῦ οὔσαν, καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ λείαν αὐτοὺς
 πολλήν τινα ἐνταῦθα εὐρεῖν ξυνηνέχθη· οὕτω δὲ
 50

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII. xl. 37-43

surpassed all reckoning, consisting of men and animals and valuables of every description. So they remained there, eager to come to an engagement with the enemy, but without letting this be known to them in any way. Now the Sclaveni were encamped on the hill which rises there, while the Romans were in the plain not far away. And since a long time was consumed in thus blocking the enemy, the soldiers began to be resentful and made a great to-do, laying against the generals the charge that while they themselves, as commanders of the Roman army, had all provisions in abundance, they were paying no heed to the soldiers, to whom the want of absolute necessities was causing hardship and who were unwilling to engage with the enemy. By these remonstrances the generals were compelled to join battle with the enemy. And the battle which followed was a fierce one, but the Romans were decisively vanquished. In that battle many of the best soldiers perished, and the generals came within a little of falling into the hands of the enemy, succeeding only with difficulty in making their escape with the remnant of the army and thus saving themselves, each as best he could. The standard of Constantianus was also captured by the barbarians, who now moved forward heedless of the Roman army. And they plundered the land of Astica,¹ as it is called, without let or hindrance, a place which had not been ravaged since ancient times, and for this reason it turned out that they found there an enormous booty. Thus they devastated a

¹ Between Adrianople and Constantinople

¹ τούτου δὴ de Stefani τούτοις δέ MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

χώραν πολλήν ληιζόμενοι ἄχρι ἐς τὰ μακρὰ τείχη
 ἀφίκοντο, ἅπερ ὀλίγω πλέον ἢ ἡμέρας ὁδὸν
 44 Βυζαντίου διέχει. οὐ πολλῶ δὲ ὕστερον ὁ Ῥω-
 μαίων στρατὸς τούτοις δὴ ἐπισπόμενοι τοῖς βαρ-
 βάροις, μοίρα τε αὐτῶν ἐντυχόντες τινὶ καὶ
 45 ἐξαπιναίως ἐς χεῖρας ἐλθόντες ἐτρέψαντο. καὶ
 τῶν μὲν πολεμίων πολλοὺς ἔκτειναν, Ῥωμαίων
 δὲ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων μέγα τι διεσώσαντο χρήμα,
 τό τε Κωνσταντιανοῦ σημεῖον εὐρόντες ἀνείλουντο.
 οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ βάρβαροι ξὺν τῇ ἄλλῃ λεία ἐπ'
 οἴκου ἀπεκομίσθησαν.

¹ "Forty milestones," as stated by Procopius, *On the Buildings*, IV 9. The modern line of defence, passing

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VII. xl. 43-45

wide expanse of country and came as far as the long walls, which are a little more than one day's journey¹ distant from Byzantium. But not long afterwards the Roman army, in following up these barbarians, came upon a portion of their force, engaged with them suddenly, and turned them to flight. And they not only slew many of the enemy, but also rescued a vast number of Roman captives, and they also found and recovered the standard of Constantianus. But the rest of the barbarians departed on the homeward way with the other booty.

through Chataldja, is about ten miles nearer the city. The ancient wall, like the modern line, extended from the shore of the Black Sea to that of the Sea of Marmara, a distance of twenty eight miles, cutting off the end of the peninsula on which Byzantium stood.

HISTORY OF THE WARS
BOOK VIII

THE GOTHIC WAR (*continued*)

ΤΗΡ ΤΩΝ ΠΟΛΕΜΩΝ ΛΟΓΟΣ ΟΓΔΟΥΣ

I

- “Οσα μὲν ἄχρι τοῦδέ μοι δεδιήγηται, τῇδε
 ξυγγέγραπται ἥπερ δυνατὰ ἐγεγόνει ἐπὶ χωρίων
 ἐφ’ ὧν δὴ ἔργα τὰ πολέμια ξυνηνέχθη γενέσθαι
 διελόντι τε καὶ ἀρμοσαμένῳ τοὺς λόγους, οἵπερ
 ἤδη ἐξενεχθέντες πανταχόθι δεδήλονται τῆς
 Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς. τὸ δὲ ἐνθένδε οὐκέτι μοι τρόπῳ
 2 τῷ εἰρημένῳ ξυγκίσεται. γράμμασι γὰρ τοῖς
 ἐς τὸ πᾶν δεδηλωμένοις οὐκέτι εἶχον τὰ ἐπιγινώ-
 μενα ἐναρμόζεσθαι, ἀλλ’ ὅσα κατὰ τοὺς
 πολέμους τούσδε γεγονέναι ξυνέβη, ἔτι¹ μέντοι
 καὶ ἐς τὸ Μήδων γένος, ἐπειδὴ τοὺς ἔμπροσθεν
 λόγους ἐξήνεγκα, ἐν τῷδέ μοι τῷ λόγῳ πάντα
 γεγράψεται, ἱστορίαν τε αὐτῶν ἐπάναγκες ποικί-
 λην ξυγκίσθαι.
- 3 Ἦδη μὲν οὖν ὅσα ξυνέβη² ἄχρι ἐς τὸ τέταρτον
 ἔτος τῆς πενταετηρίδος ἐκεχειρίας ἢ Ῥωμαίοις
 ἐγεγόνει καὶ Πέρσαις, ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθέν μοι
 δεδιήγηται λόγοις· τῷ δὲ ἐπιγινομένῳ ἐνιαυτῷ
 Μηδικῆς στρατιᾶς πολὺς ὄμιλος ἐς γῆν τὴν
 4 Κολχίδα ἐσέβαλον. οἷσπερ ἐφειστήκει Πέρσης
 ἀνὴρ, Χοριάνης ὄνομα, πολέμων ἐσάγαν πολλῶν

¹ ἔτι Maltretus: ἐπὶ MSS,

² ὅσα ξυνέβη L: om K

HISTORY OF THE WARS: BOOK VIII

THE GOTHIC WAR (*continued*)

I

THE narrative which I have written up to this point has been composed, as far as possible, on the principle of separating the material into parts which relate severally to the countries in which the different wars took place, and these parts have already been published and have appeared in every corner of the Roman empire. But from this point onward I shall no longer follow this principle of arrangement. For after my writings had appeared before the public, I was no longer able to add to each the events which happened afterwards, but all the later developments in these wars, and in the war against Persia as well, now that I have published the previous parts, will be written down in full in this present narrative, and thus the record which I shall make of these events will of necessity be composite.

Now all that took place up to the fourth year of the five-year truce which was made between the Romans and the Persians has already been recounted by me in the previous books.¹ But in the succeeding year a Persian army in vast numbers invaded the land of Colchis. In command of this army was a Persian, Chorianes by name, a man of wide experience

¹ Books I and II

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἔμπειρος, καὶ αὐτῷ ξύμμαχοι βάρβαροι τοῦ
 5 Ἀλανῶν γένους πολλοὶ εἶποντο. οὗτος ὁ στρατὸς
 ἐπειδὴ ἀφίκοντο εἰς χώραν τῆς Λαζικῆς ἣ ἐπικαλεῖ-
 ται Μοχήρησις, ἐν ἐπιτηδείῳ στρατοπεδευσάμενοι
 6 ἔμενον. ῥεῖ δέ πη ἐνταῦθα ποταμὸς Ἴππης, οὐ
 μέγας οὐδὲ ναυσίπορος, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἰππεύσι καὶ
 ἀνδράσι πεζοῖς ἐσβατός, οὐ δὲ ἐν δεξιᾷ τὸν
 χάρακα ἐποιήσαντο, οὐ παρὰ τὴν ὄχθην, ἀλλὰ
 κατὰ πολὺ ἀποθεν.
- 7 Ὅπως δὲ τοῖς τάδε ἀναλεγόμενοις ἔκδηλα τὰ
 ἐπὶ Λαζικῆς χωρία ἔσται ὅσα τε γένη ἀνθρώπων
 ἀμφ' αὐτὴν ἵδρυνται, καὶ μὴ ὑπὲρ τῶν ἀφανῶν
 σφίσιν ὥσπερ οἱ σκιαμαχοῦντες διαλέγεσθαι
 ἀναγκάζονται, οὐ μοι ἀπὸ καιροῦ ἔδοξεν εἶναι
 ἀναγράψασθαι ἐνταῦθα τοῦ λόγου ὄντινα δὴ
 τρόπον ἀνθρωποὶ οἰκοῦσι τὸν Εὐξείνιον καλού-
 μενον Πόντον, οὐκ ἀγνοοῦντι μὲν ὥς καὶ τῶν
 παλαιότερων τισὶ γέγραπται ταῦτα, οἰομένῳ δὲ
 8 οὐκ εἰς τὸ ἀκριβὲς αὐτοῖς πάντα εἰρῆσθαι. ὧν¹
 γέ τινες Τραπεζουντίων ὁμόρους ἢ Σάνους²
 ἔφασαν, οἱ τανῦν Τζάνοι ἐπικαλοῦνται, ἣ Κόλ-
 χους εἶναι, Λαζοὺς ἑτέροισι καλέσαντες οἱ καὶ νῦν
 ἐπὶ τούτῳ προσαγορεύονται τοῦ ὀνόματος.
- 9 καίτοι ἔστι τούτων οὐδέτερον. Τζάνοι μὲν γὰρ
 τῆς παραλίας ὥς ἀπωτάτω ὄντες προσοικοῦσι
 τοὺς Ἀρμενίους ἐν τῇ μεσογείᾳ καὶ ὄρη πολλὰ

¹ ὧν K. οἷς L

² Τραπεζουντίων ὁμόρους ἢ Σάνους Haury : τραπεζῶν ὁμόρους
 ἦσαν οὗς K. ὁμόρους λαζῶν τζανούς L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII 1 4-9

in many wars, and a large number of barbarians of the tribe of the Alani followed him as allies. When this army had come to a part of Lazica, which is called Mocheiresis, they made camp in a suitable position and remained there. Now there is a river in that place, the Hippiis, not a large or navigable stream, but actually passable for both horsemen and foot-soldiers, and it was on the right of this that they made their entrenchment, not along the bank, but at a considerable distance from it.

At this point in my narrative it has seemed to me not inappropriate to pause a moment, in order that the geography of Lazica may be clear to those who read this history and that they may know what races of men inhabit that region, so that they may not be compelled to discuss matters which are obscure to them, like men fighting shadows, I shall therefore give an account of the distribution of the peoples who live about the Euxine Sea, as it is called, not that I am ignorant that these things have been written down by some of the men of earlier times also, but because I believe that not all their statements are accurate. Some of these writers, for example, have stated¹ that the territory of the Trapezuntines is adjoined either by the Sani, who at the present day are called Tzani, or by the Colchians, calling another people Lazi, who are actually addressed by this name at the present day. And yet neither of these statements is true. For, in the first place, the Tzani live at a very great distance from the coast as neighbours of the Armenians in the interior, and many mountains stand between

¹ Xenophon, *Anabasis* IV viii 22, and Arrian, *Periplus* xi, state that the Colchians were neighbours of the Trapezuntines

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- μεταξὺ ἀποκρέμαται, λίαν τε ἄβατα καὶ ὅλως κρημνώδη, χώρα τε πολλὴ ἔρημος ἀνθρώπων ἐς αἰεὶ οὐσα καὶ χαράδραι ἀνέκβατοι καὶ λόφοι ὑλώδεις καὶ σήραγγες ἀδιέξοδοι, οἷς δὴ ἅπασι μὴ
- 10 ἐπιθαλάσσιοι εἶναι διείργονται Τζάνοι. Κόλχους δὲ οὐχ¹ οἷόν τέ ἐστι μὴ τοὺς Λαζοὺς εἶναι, ἐπεὶ παρὰ Φᾶσιν ποταμὸν ὄκνηται· τὸ δὲ ὄνομα μόνον οἱ Κόλχοι, ὥσπερ ἀνθρώπων ἔθνη καὶ πολλὰ ἕτερα, τανὺν ἐς τὸ Λαζῶν μεταβέβληνται.
- 11 χωρὶς δὲ τούτων καὶ μέγας αἰὼν μετὰ τοὺς ἐκεῖνα ἀναγραφασμένους ἐπιγενόμενος αἰεὶ τε συννεωτερίζων τοῖς πράγμασι τὰ πολλὰ τῶν καθεστώτων τὰ πρότερα νεοχμῶσαι ἴσχυσεν, ἐθνῶν τε μεταστάσεσι καὶ ἀρχόντων καὶ ὀνομάτων δια-
- 12 δοχαῖς. ἅπερ μοι διαμετρήσασθαι ἀναγκαιότατον ἔδοξεν εἶναι, οὐ τὰ μυθώδη περὶ αὐτῶν ἀπαγγέλλοντι ἢ ἄλλως ἀρχαῖα, οὐδὲ ὅπη ποτὲ Πόντου τοῦ Εὐξείνου δεθῆναι τὸν Προμηθεά
- 13 ποιηταὶ λέγουσι· μύθου γὰρ ἱστορίαν παρὰ πολὺν κεχωρῖσθαι οἶμαι.² ἀλλ' ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς διεξιόντι τά τε ὀνόματα καὶ τὰ πράγματα, ὅσα δὴ τανὺν ἐπιχωριάζει τῶν τόπων ἐκείνων ἐκάστω.

II

Οὗτος τοίνυν ὁ Πόντος ἄρχεται μὲν ἐκ Βυζαντίου καὶ Καλχηδόνης, τελευτᾷ δὲ ἐς Κόλχων τὴν

¹ οὐχ om MSS. . οὐχ οἷόν τέ ἐστι μὴ οὐ conjectured by Comparetti.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. i. 9—ii. 1

which are thoroughly impassable and altogether precipitous, and there is an extensive area always devoid of human habitation, cañons from which it is impossible to climb out, forested heights, and impassable chasms—all these prevent the Tzani from being on the sea. In the second place, it is impossible that the Lazi should not be the Colchians, because they inhabit the banks of the Phasis River, and the Colchians have merely changed their name at the present time to Lazi, just as nations of men and many other things do. But apart from this, a long period of time has elapsed since these accounts were written, and has brought about constant changes along with the march of events, with the result that many of the conditions which formerly obtained have been replaced by new conditions, because of the migration of nations and successive changes of rulers and of names. These things it has seemed to me very necessary to investigate, not relating the mythological tales about them nor other antiquated material, nor even telling in what part of the Euxine Sea the poets say Prometheus was bound (for I consider that history is very widely separated from mythology), but stating accurately and in order both the names of each of those places and the facts that apply to them at the present day.

II

THIS Pontus, then, begins from Byzantium and Calchedon and ends at the land of the Colchians

² οἱμαὶ L. εἶναι K

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 2 γῆν. καὶ αὐτὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἐσπλέοντι Βιθυνοὶ τε καὶ οἱ αὐτῶν ἐχόμενοι Ὀνωριάται καὶ Παφλαγόνες ὥκνηται, οἳ δὲ ἄλλα τε χωρία καὶ Ἡράκλειάν τε καὶ Ἀμαστριν ἐπιθαλασσίας πόλεις ἔχουσι, καὶ μετ' αὐτοὺς οἱ Ποντικοὶ ἐπικαλούμενοι μέχρι ἐς Τραπεζοῦντα πόλιν καὶ τὰ ταύτης ὄρια. ἐνταῦθα πολίσματά τε ἄλλα ἐπιθαλασσίδια καὶ Σινώπη τε καὶ Ἀμισὸς οἰκεῖται, Ἀμισοῦ δὲ ἄγχιστα τό τε Θεμίσκουρον καλούμενον καὶ Θερμῶδων ποταμὸς ἐστίν, οὗ δὲ τὸ τῶν Ἀμαζόνων στρατόπεδον γεγενῆσθαι φασιν ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν Ἀμαζόνων γεγράφεται μοι οὐ
- 3 πολλῷ ὀπισθεν. Τραπεζουντίων δὲ τὰ ὄρια διήκει ἔς τε κώμην Σουσοῦρμενα καὶ τὸ Ῥιζαῖον καλούμενον χωρίον, ὅπερ Τραπεζουντίων διέχει δυοῖν ἡμέραιν ὁδὸν διὰ τῆς παραλίας ἐς Λαζικὴν
- 4 ἰόντι. Τραπεζοῦντος δέ μοι ἐπιμνησθέντι οὐ παριτέον τὸ πλείστῳ παραλόγῳ τῇδε ξυμβαῖνον. τὸ γὰρ μέλι ἐν ᾗ πασι τοῖς περὶ Τραπεζοῦντα χωρίοις πικρὸν γίνεται, ἐνταῦθα μόνον στασιαζο-
- 5 μένης τῆς ἀμφ' αὐτὸ ¹ δόξης. τούτων δὲ δὴ τῶν χωρίων ἐν δεξιᾷ τὰ Τζανικῆς ὄρη πάντα ἀνέχει, ἐπέκεινά τε αὐτῶν Ἀρμένιοι Ῥωμαίων κατήκοοι ὥκνηται.
- 6 Ἐκ τούτων δὲ τῶν Τζανικῶν ὄρων κάτεισι ποταμὸς Βόας ὄνομα, ὃς δὲ ἔς τε λόχμας παμπληθεῖς ἰὼν καὶ χώραν λοφώδη ² περιερχόμενος φέρεται μὲν ἄγχιστα τῶν Λαζικῆς χωρίων,

¹ αὐτό K αὐτῶ L

² λοφώδη K ὑλώδη L.

¹ Modern Eregli and Amasia

² Modern Trabuzun

³ Modern Sinob and Samsun.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. ii. 1-6

And as one sails into it, the land on the right is inhabited by the Bithynians, and next after them by the Honoriatae and the Paphlagonians, who have, besides other towns, the coast cities of Heraclea and Amastris,¹ beyond them are the people called Pontici as far as the city of Trapezus² and its boundaries. In that region are a number of towns on the coast, among which are Sinope and Amisus,³ and close to Amisus is the town called Themiscyra⁴ and the river Thermodon,⁵ where they say the army of the Amazons originated. But concerning the Amazons I shall write a little later. From here the territory of the Trapezuntines extends to the village of Susurmena and the place called Rhizaeum,⁶ which is two days' journey distant from Trapezus as one goes toward Lazica along the coast. But now that I have mentioned Trapezus, I must not omit the very strange thing which takes place there, for the honey which is produced in all the places around Trapezus is bitter,⁷ this being the only place where it is at variance with its established reputation.⁸ On the right of these places rise all the mountains of Tzanica, and beyond them are the Armenians, who are subject to the Romans.

Now from these mountains of Tzanica the Boas River⁹ descends, a stream which, after passing into innumerable jungles and traversing a mountainous region, flows along by the land of Lazica and

¹ Modern Terme.

² Modern Terme Tschai.

³ Modern Surmene and Rize.

⁴ Cf. Xenophon, *Anabasis* IV. viii. 20.

⁵ Schol. Hor. *A. P.* 375 notes that Sardinian honey was "pessimi saporis."

⁶ Modern Tscharukh Su.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ποιεῖται δὲ τὰς ἐκβολὰς εἰς τὸν Εὐξείνιον καλού-
μενον Πόντον, οὐ μέντοι Βόας καλούμενος.
- 7 ἐπειδὴν γὰρ τῆς θαλάσσης ἐγγὺς ἵκηται, τὸ μὲν
ὄνομα μεθίησι τοῦτο, ἐτέρας δὲ τὸ ἐνθένδε
προσηγορίας μεταλαγχάνει, ἐκ τῶν οἱ ἐπιγίνο-
8 μένων ὄνομα κτώμενος. Ἀκαμφιν γὰρ αὐτὸν τὸ
λοιπὸν καλοῦσιν οἱ ἐπιχώριοι, τούτου δὴ ἕνεκα,
ὅτι δὴ κάμψαι αὐτὸν τῇ θαλάσσῃ ἀναμιχθέντα
ἀμήχανά ἐστιν, ἐπεὶ ξὺν ῥύμῃ τοσαύτῃ καὶ
ὀξύτητι τοῦ ῥοῦ τὰς ἐκβολὰς ποιεῖται, ταραχὴν
τοῦ ῥοθίου πολλὴν ἐπίπροσθεν ἐργαζόμενος, ὥστε
ὡς πορρωτάτῳ τῆς θαλάσσης ἰὼν ἄπορον ποιεῖται
τὸν ταύτην διάπλουν· οἳ τε ναυτιλλόμενοι ἐνταῦθα
τοῦ Πόντου, εἴτε Λαζικῆς εὐθὺ πλέοντες εἴτε καὶ
ἐνθένδε ἀπάραντες, οὐκέτι ἐξῆς διαπλεῖν δύνανται.
- 9 κάμψαι¹ γὰρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸν ῥοῦν οὐδαμῇ
ἔχουσιν, ἀλλὰ πορρωτάτῳ μὲν ἀναγόμενοι τοῦ
ἐκείνῃ πελάγους, ἐπὶ μέσον δέ που τὸν Πόντον
ιόντες, οὕτω δὴ ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι τῆς τοῦ ποταμοῦ
ἐκβολῆς δύνανται. τὰ μὲν οὖν ἀμφὶ ποταμὸν
Βόαν τοιαῦτά ἐστι.
- 10 Μετὰ δὲ τὸ Ῥιζαῖον αὐτονόμων ἀνθρώπων ὄροι
ἐκδέχονται, οἳ δὴ Ῥωμαίων τε καὶ Λαζῶν μεταξὺ
ᾤκηται. καὶ κώμη τις, Ἀθηναῖον ὄνομα, ἐνταῦθα
οἰκεῖται, οὐχ ὅτι Ἀθηναίων ἄποικοι, ὥσπερ τινὲς
οἴονται, τῇδε ἰδρύσαντο, ἀλλὰ γυνή τις Ἀθηναία
ὄνομα ἐν τοῖς ἄνω χρόνοις κυρία ἐγεγόνει τῆς
χώρας, ἥσπερ ὁ τάφος ἐνταῦθα καὶ εἰς ἐμὲ ἐστι.

¹ κάμψαι L: καλύψαι K.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. II. 6-10

empties into the Euxine Sea, as it is called, but no longer keeping the name of Boas. For when it gets near the sea it loses this name and thereafter bears another, which it acquires from the character which it now displays. This name which the natives apply to it for the rest of its course is *Acampsis*, and they so name it, obviously, because it is impossible to force a way through it¹ after it has entered the sea, since it discharges its stream with such force and swiftness, causing a great disturbance of the water before it, that it goes out for a very great distance into the sea and makes it impossible to coast along at that point. And those who are navigating in that part of the Pontus, whether sailing toward Lazica or even putting out from there, are not able to hold a straight course in their voyage; for they are quite unable to push through the river's current, but they must needs put out to a very great distance into the sea there, going somewhere near the middle of the Pontus, and only in this way can they escape the force of the river's discharge. So much, then, may be said regarding the Boas River.

Beyond Rhizaeum there is found a territory occupied by independent peoples, who live between the Romans and the Lazi. And there is a certain village there named *Athenae*,² not, as some suppose, because colonists from Athens settled there, but because a certain woman named *Athenaea* in early times ruled over the land, and the tomb of this

¹ Literally "bend it." Procopius takes the name to mean *ἄκαμπος*, "unbent" or "unbending," which it certainly does not mean, his explanation is doubtless fanciful.

² Modern Atina.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 11 μετὰ δὲ Ἀθήνας Ἀρχαβίς τε οἰκεῖται καὶ
 Ἀψαροῦς, πόλις ἀρχαία, ἣ τοῦ Ῥιξαίου διέχει
 12 ὁδῷ ἡμερῶν τριῶν μάλιστα. αὕτη Ἀψυρτος τὸ
 παλαιὸν ὠνομάζετο, ὁμώνυμος τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ διὰ
 τὸ πάθος γεγεννημένη. ἐνταῦθα γάρ φασιν οἱ
 ἐπιχώριοι ἐξ ἐπιβουλῆς Μηδείας τε καὶ Ἰά-
 σονος τὸν Ἀψυρτον ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἀφανισθῆναι,
 καὶ δι' αὐτὸ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν τὸ χωρίον λαβεῖν·
 ὁ μὲν γὰρ ἐν ἐκείνῳ ἀπέθνησκε, τὸ δὲ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ
 13 ὠνομάζετο. ἀλλὰ πολὺς ἄγαν μετὰ ταῦτα
 ἐπιρρεύσας ὁ χρόνος καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἀναρίθμοις
 διαδοχαῖς ἐνακμάσας αὐτὸς διαφθεῖραι μὲν
 τὴν τῶν πραγμάτων ἐπιβολὴν ἴσχυσεν ἐξ
 ὧν τὸ ὄνομα ξύγκειται τοῦτο, ἐς δὲ τὸν νῦν
 φαινόμενον τρόπον μεταρρυθμῆσαι¹ τὴν προση-
 14 γορίαν τῷ τόπῳ. τούτου δὲ τοῦ Ἀψύρτου καὶ
 τάφος ἐς τῆς πόλεως τὰ πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα ἡλιόν
 ἐστίν. αὕτη πόλις ἦν τὸ παλαιὸν πολυάνθρωπος,
 καὶ τείχους μὲν αὐτὴν περιέβαλε μέγα τι χρήμα,
 θεάτρῳ δὲ καὶ ἵπποδρόμῳ ἐκαλλωπίζετο καὶ τοῖς
 ἄλλοις ἅπασιν οἷσπερ πόλεως μέγεθος δεικνυσθαι
 εἶωθε νῦν δὲ δὴ αὐτῶν ἄλλο οὐδὲν ἀπολέλειπται,
 ὅτι μὴ τῆς κατασκευῆς τὰ ἐδάφη.
 15 Ὡστε εἰκότως θαυμάσειεν ἄν τις τῶν Κόλχους
 φαμένων Τραπεζουντίοις ὁμόρους² εἶναι. ταύτη
 μὲν γὰρ καὶ τὸ δέρας ξὺν τῇ Μηδείᾳ συλήσας
 Ἰάσων οὐκ ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ τὰ πάτρια ἤθη
 φυγὼν φαίνοιτο, ἀλλ' ἔμπαλιν ἐπὶ Φᾶσίν τε
 16 ποταμὸν καὶ τοὺς ἐνδοτάτω βαρβάρους. λέγουσι
 μὲν οὖν ὥς κατὰ τοὺς Τραιανοῦ τοῦ Ῥωμαίων

¹ μεταρρυθμῆσαι μεταριθμῆσαι MSS, μεταρρυθμίσαι Dindorf.

² Τραπεζουντίοις ὁμόρους K: τραπεζουντίων ἰσομόρους L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. ii. 11-16

woman is there even to my day Beyond Athenae are Archabis and Apsarus,¹ an ancient city which is about three days' journey from Rhizaëum This was called Apsyrtus in ancient times, having come to be named after the man on account of his catastrophe For in that place the natives say that Apsyrtus was removed from the world by the plot of Medea and Jason, and that from this circumstance the place received its name; for he died on that spot and the place was named after him But an extremely long time has elapsed since these events, while countless generations of men have flourished, and the mere passage of time has thus availed to efface from memory the succession of incidents from which this name arose and to transform the name of the place to the form in which it appears at the present There is also a tomb of this Apsyrtus to the east of the city. This was a populous city in ancient times, and a great expanse of wall surrounded it, while it was adorned with a theatre and hippodrome and all the rest of those things by which the size of a city is commonly indicated. But at the present nothing of these is left except the foundations of the buildings.

It is now clear that one might with good reason wonder at those who assert that the Colchians are adjacent to the Trapezuntines For on this hypothesis it would appear that after Jason in company with Medea had captured the fleece, he actually did not flee toward Hellas and his own land, but backward to the Phasis River and the barbarians in the most remote interior Now they say that in the time of the Roman Emperor Trajan detachments of

¹ Modern Akhava and Makryalos

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- αὐτοκράτορος χρόνους κατάλογοι Ῥωμαίων
στρατιωτῶν ἐνταῦθά τε καὶ μέχρι ἐς Λαζούς
17 καὶ Σαγίνας ἴδρυντο. τὰ δὲ νῦν ἄνθρωποι ἐνταῦθα
οἰκοῦσιν οὔτε τοῦ Ῥωμαίων οὔτε τοῦ Λαζῶν
βασιλέως κατήκοοι ὄντες, πλὴν γε δὴ ὅτι
Χριστιανοῖς οὖσιν οἱ Λαζῶν ἐπίσκοποι τοὺς
18 ἱερεῖς καθίστανται σφίσι. καὶ αὐτοὶ ἔνσπονδοί
τε καὶ φίλοι ἀμφοτέροις ἐθέλοντες¹ εἶναι, τοὺς²
ἐξ ἑκατέρων παρὰ τοὺς ἑτέρους ἀεὶ στελλομένους
παραπέμψειν διηνεκῶς ὡμολόγησαν· ὃ δὴ φαί-
19 νονται καὶ ἐς ἐμὲ δρῶντες. ἀκάτοις γὰρ ἰδίαις
τοὺς παρὰ θατέρου βασιλέως ἐς τὸν ἕτερον
στελλομένους ἀγγέλους ναυτιλλόμενοι παραπέμ-
πουσι. φόρου μέντοι ὑποτελεῖς οὐδαμῇ γεγέννηται
20 ἐς τόδε τοῦ χρόνου. τούτων δὲ τῶν χωρίων ἐν
δεξιᾷ ὄρη τε λίαν ἀπότομα ἀποκρέμαται καὶ
χώρα ἔρημος ἐπὶ πλείστον διήκει. καὶ αὐτῆς
ὑπερθεὶν οἱ Περσαρμένιοι καλούμενοι ὥκηνται,
καὶ Ἀρμένιοι οὐ Ῥωμαίων κατήκοοί εἰσι μέχρι ἐς
τοὺς Ἰβηρίας ὄρους διήκοντες.
- 21 Ἐκ δὲ Ἀψαροῦντος πόλεως ἐς Πέτραν τε
πόλιν καὶ τοὺς Λαζῶν ὄρους, οὗ δὴ τελευτᾷ ὁ
Εὐξείνιος Πόντος, μιᾶς ἐστὶν ἡμέρας ὁδός. ἀπολή-
γων δὲ ὁ Πόντος ἐνταῦθα μηνοειδῇ τίθεται τὴν
22 ἀκτὴν. καὶ ὁ μὲν τοῦ μηνοειδοῦς τούτου διάπλους
ἐς πεντήκοντά τε καὶ πεντακοσίους μάλιστα
σταδίους διήκει, τὰ δὲ αὐτοῦ ὅπισθεν ξύμπαντα
23 Λαζικὴ τέ ἐστι καὶ ὠνόμασται. μετὰ δὲ αὐτοὺς
κατὰ τὴν μεσόγαιαν Σκυμνία τε καὶ Σονανία
ἐστί. ταῦτα δὲ τὰ ἔθνη Λαζῶν κατήκοα τυγχάνει
ὄντα. καὶ ἄρχοντας μὲν οἱ τῇδε ἄνθρωποι τῶν

¹ ἐθέλοντες K. ἐθέλουσιν L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII II. 16-23

Roman soldiers were stationed there and as far as the Lazī and Saginæ. But at the present time people live there who are neither subjects of the Romans nor of the king of the Lazī, except indeed that the bishops of the Lazī appoint their priests, seeing they are Christians. And wishing, as they do, to live in peace and friendship with both peoples, they have made a permanent agreement to provide an escort for those who from time to time travel from the one country to the other, and it appears that they have been doing this even down to my time. For they escort the messengers despatched from the one king to the other, sailing in boats of their own. However, they have become in no way tributary down to the present time. On the right of these places very abrupt mountains tower overhead and a barren land extends to an indefinite distance. And beyond this the so-called Persarmenians dwell, as well as the Armenians who are subjects of the Romans, extending as far as the confines of Iberia.¹

From the city of Apsarus to Petra and the boundary of Lazica, where the Euxine Sea reaches its limit, is a journey of one day. Now as this sea comes to an end here, its coast takes the form of a crescent. And the distance across this crescent amounts to about five hundred and fifty stades,² while the entire country behind it is Lazica and is known under this name. Behind them in the interior are Scymnia and Suania; these nations happen to be subjects of the Lazī. Indeed, although these peoples do have

¹ Roughly modern Georgia, south of the Caucasus

² About 63 miles

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ὁμογενῶν τινὰς ἔχουσιν, ἐπειδὴν δὲ τῶν ἀρχόντων
 τινὲ ἐπιγένηται ἡ τέλειος ἡμέρα τοῦ βίου, ἕτερον
 αὐτοῖς ἀντικαθίστασθαι πρὸς τοῦ Λαζῶν βασι-
 24 λέως ἐς αἰεὶ εἴθισται. ταύτης δὲ τῆς χώρας ἐκ
 πλαγίου μὲν παρ' αὐτὴν μάλιστα τὴν Ἰβηρίαν
 Μέσχοι Ἰβήρων ἐκ παλαιοῦ κατήκοοι ὥκηνται,
 25 τὰ οἰκία ἐν ὄρεσιν ἔχοντες. ὄρη δὲ τὰ Μέσχων οὐ
 σκληρὰ οὐδὲ καρπῶν ἀφορά ἐστίν, ἀλλ' εὐθηνού-
 σιν ἀγαθοῖς ἅπασιν, ἐπεὶ καὶ οἱ Μέσχοι γεωργοὶ
 δεξιοὶ καὶ ἀμπελῶνες τυγχάνουσιν ἐκεῖ ὄντες¹
 26 ταύτῃ δὲ τῇ χώρᾳ ὄρη ἐπικεῖνται ἄγαν τε ὑψηλὰ
 καὶ ἀμφιλαφῇ καὶ δεινῶς ἄβατα καὶ ταῦτα μὲν
 ἄχρι ἐς τὰ Καυκάσια ὄρη διήκει· ὅπισθεν δὲ
 αὐτῶν πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα ἥλιον Ἰβηρία ἐστί, μέχρι
 ἐς Περσαρμενίους διήκουσα.
 27 Διὰ δὲ τῶν ὄρων ἃ ταύτῃ ἀνέχει, Φᾶσις
 ποταμὸς κάτεισιν, ἐκ τῶν Καυκασίων ἀρχόμενος
 καὶ κατὰ μέσον τὸ μνηοειδὲς τοῦ Πόντου ἐκβάλ-
 28 λει. ταύτῃ τε ἡπειρον ἐκατέραν αὐτὸν διορίζειν
 τινὲς οἴονται. τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἐν ἀριστερᾷ κατιόντος
 τοῦ ροῦ Ἀσία ἐστί, τὰ δὲ ἐν δεξιᾷ Εὐρώπη
 29 ὠνόμασται. κατὰ μὲν οὖν τὴν τῆς Εὐρώπης
 μοῖραν ξύμπαντα Λαζῶν τὰ οἰκία ξυμβαίνει
 εἶναι, ἐπὶ θάτερα δὲ οὔτε πόλισμα² οὔτε ἄλλο
 τι ὀχύρωμα οὔτε κώμην τινὰ λόγου ἀξίαν Λαζοὶ
 ἔχουσι, πλὴν γε δὴ ὅτι Πέτραν Ῥωμαῖοι ἐνταῦθα
 30 ἐδείμαντο πρότερον. κατὰ ταύτην δὲ που τὴν³
 Λαζικῆς μοῖραν ἀπέκειτο, ὥσπερ οἱ ἐπιχώριοι
 λέγουσι, καὶ τὸ δέρας ἐκεῖνο, οὐπερ ἔνεκα οἱ

¹ δεξιοί—ὄντες δεξιοί καὶ ἀμπελῶνες τυγχάνουσιν ἐκεῖσε K
 δεξιοὶ ἄλλως τε καὶ ἐς ἀμπελῶνας τυγχάνουσιν ὄντες L.

² πόλισμα. πτόλισμα K πόλισμά τι L.

³ που τήν; που τῆς K: τήν L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. 11 23-30

magistrates of their own blood, still, whenever any of the magistrates reaches the end of his life, it is always customary for another one to be appointed in his place by the king of the Lazi. At the side of this land and bordering upon Iberia proper for the most part dwell the Meschi, who have been from ancient times subjects of the Iberians, having their dwellings on the mountains. But the mountains of the Meschi are not rough nor unproductive of crops, but they abound in all good things, since the Meschi, for their part, are skilful farmers and there are actually vineyards in their country. However, this land is hemmed in by mountains which are very lofty and covered by forests so that they are exceedingly difficult to pass through. And these mountains extend as far as the Caucasus, while behind them toward the east is Iberia, extending as far as Persarmenia.

Now though the mountains which rise here the Phasis River emerges, having its source in the Caucasus and its mouth at the middle of the crescent of the Pontus. Because of this some consider that it forms the boundary between the two continents, for the land on the left as one goes down this stream is Asia, but that on the right is named Europe. Now it so happens that all the habitations of the Lazi are on the European side, while on the opposite side there is neither fortress nor stronghold nor any village of consequence held by the Lazi, except indeed the city of Petra which the Romans built there in earlier times. It was somewhere in this part of Lazica, as the inhabitants say, that the famous fleece was placed for safe keeping, that fleece on account of which, as the

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ποιηταὶ τὴν Ἀργὸν ἀποτετορνεύσθαι μυθολογοῦσι.
λέγουσι δὲ ταῦτα, ἐμὴν γνώμην, ἀληθιζόμενοι
- 31 ἤκιστα. οὐ γὰρ ἄν, οἶμαι, λαθὼν τὸν Αἰήτην
Ἰάσων ἐνθένδε ἀπηλλάσσετο ξὺν τῇ Μηδεῖᾳ τὸ
δέρας ἔχων, εἰ μὴ τὰ τε βασιλεία καὶ τὰ ἄλλα
τῶν Κόλχων οἰκία τοῦ χωρίου διεύργετο Φάσιδι
ποταμῷ, ἵνα δὴ τὸ δέρας ἐκείνο κεῖσθαι ξυνέ-
βαιεν, ὃ δὴ καὶ οἱ ποιηταὶ παραδηλοῦσιν οἱ
- 32 τὰ τοιαῦτα ἀναγραφάμενοι. ὁ μὲν οὖν Φᾶσις
τῇδε φερόμενος, ἥπέρ μοι δεδιήγηται, ἐς αὐτόν
που λήγοντα ἐκβάλλει¹ τὸν Εὐξείνιον Πόντον.
τοῦ δὲ μνηοειδοῦς κατὰ μὲν τὴν μίαν ἀρχήν, ἣ
τῆς Ἀσίας ἐστί, Πέτρα ἢ πόλις ἐτύγχανεν οὔσα,
ἐν δὲ δὴ τῇ ἀντιπέρας ἀκτῇ κατὰ τὴν τῆς
- 33 Εὐρώπης μοῖραν Ἀψιλίων ἡ χώρα ἐστί. Λαζῶν
δὲ κατήκοοί εἰσι καὶ Χριστιανοὶ γεγόνασιν ἐκ
παλαιοῦ οἱ Ἀψίλιοι, ὥσπερ καὶ τᾶλλα ξύμπαντα
ἔθνη ὧν περ ἐμνήσθην² ἐς τόδε τοῦ λόγου.

III

- Ταύτης δὲ τῆς χώρας καθύπερθεν ὄρος τὸ
Καυκάσιόν ἐστι. τοῦτο δὲ τὸ ὄρος, ὁ Καύκασος,
ἐς τοσόνδε ὕψος³ ἀνέχει, ὥστε δὴ αὐτοῦ τῶν μὲν
ὑπερβολῶν οὔτε ὄμβρους οὔτε νιφετοὺς ἐπιψαύειν
ποτέ· τῶν γὰρ νεφελῶν αὐτὰς ἀπασῶν καθυ-
περτέρας ξυμβαίνει εἶναι. τὰ δὲ μέσα μέχρι τῶν
- 2 ἐσχάτων χιόνων ἔμπλεα διηνεκές ἐστι. καὶ ἀπ'
αὐτοῦ οἱ πρόποδες ὑψηλοὶ ἐσάγαν τυγχάνουσιν
ὄντες, οὐδέν τι καταδεέστεροι τῶν ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσι

¹ ἐκβάλλει K ἐμβάλλει L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII II. 30-III. 2

poets tell the tale, the Argo was fashioned But in saying this they are, in my opinion, not telling the truth at all For I think that Jason would not have eluded Aeetes and got away from there with the fleece in company with Medea, unless both the palace and the other dwellings of the Colchians had been separated by the Phasis River from the place in which that fleece was lying, indeed the poets who have recorded the story imply that this was the case. So the Phasis, flowing as I have said, empties into the Euxine Sea approximately at the very point where it comes to an end. Now at the one end of the crescent, that, namely, which is in Asia, was the city of Petra, while on the opposite coast which forms a part of Europe the territory is held by the Apsilii, these Apsilii are subjects of the Lazi and have been Christians from ancient times, just as all the other nations which I have mentioned up to this point in my narrative.

III

ABOVE and beyond this country are the mountains of the Caucasus This mountain range which composes the Caucasus rises to such a great height that its summits are in fact never touched either by rain or by snow, for they are indeed above all clouds But the middle slopes are continually filled with snow down to the very base And from this it may be inferred that the foothills are extremely high, being in no way inferior to the

² ἐμνήσθη K ἐπεμνήσθη L

³ ὕψος K ὕψους L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 3 τοῖς ἄλλοις σκοπέλων. τῶν δὲ τοῦ Καυκασίου
 ὄρους προπόδων οἱ μὲν πρὸς τε βορρᾶν ἄνεμον
 καὶ ἥλιον δύνοντα τετραμμένοι ἕς τε Ἴλλυριούς
 καὶ Θραῦκας διήκουσιν, οἱ δὲ πρὸς τε ἀνίσχοντα
 ἥλιον καὶ ἄνεμον νότον ἕς τὰς διεξόδους¹ ἐξικ-
 νοῦνται αὐτὰς αἰ τὰ τῇδε ὠκημένα Οὐννικὰ ἔθνη
 ἕς γῆν τήν τε Περσῶν καὶ Ῥωμαίων ἄγουσιν.
- 4 ὧν περ ἀτέρα μὲν Τζοῦρ ἐπικέκληται, ἡ δὲ δὴ
 ἑτέρα Πύλη ἐκ παλαιοῦ Κασπία ἐκλήθη. ταύτην
 δὲ τὴν χώραν ἡ ἐξ ὄρους τοῦ Καυκάσου ἄχρι ἕς
 τὰς Κασπίας κατατείνει Πύλας Ἀλανοὶ ἔχουσιν,
 αὐτόνομον ἔθνος, οἱ δὴ καὶ Πέρσαις τὰ πολλὰ
 ξυμμαχοῦσιν, ἐπὶ τε Ῥωμαίους καὶ ἄλλους πολε-
 μίους στρατεύουσι. τὰ μὲν οὖν ἀμφὶ τῷ ὄρει τῷ
 Καυκασίῳ ταύτῃ πη ἔχει.
- 5 Οὐννοι δέ, οἱ Σάβειροι ἐπικαλούμενοι,² ἐν ταῦθα
 ὦκηνται καὶ ἄλλα ἅττα Οὐννικὰ ἔθνη. ἐνθένδε
 μὲν τὰς Ἀμαζόνας ὠρμήσθαι³ φασιν, ἀμφὶ δὲ
 τὸ Θεμίσκουρον καὶ ποταμὸν τὸν Θερμώδοντα
 ἐν στρατοπεδεύσασθαι, ἡπὲρ μοι ἔναγχος εἴρηται,
- 6 οὗ δὴ πόλις ἐν τῷ παρόντι Ἀμισός ἐστι. τανῦν
 δὲ οὐδαμῇ τῶν ἀμφὶ τὸ Καυκάσιον ὄρος χωρίων
 Ἀμαζόνων τις μνήμη ἢ ὄνομα διασώζεται, καί τοι
 καὶ Στράβωνι καὶ ἄλλοις τισὶ λόγοι ἀμφ' αὐταῖς
- 7 πολλοὶ εἴρηνται. ἀλλὰ μοι δοκοῦσι μάλιστα
 πάντων τά γε κατὰ τὰς Ἀμαζόνας ξὺν τῷ ἀληθεῖ

¹ διεξόδους L ἐξόδους K

² Σάβειροι ἐπικ. σάβιροι ἐπικαλούμενοι K καὶ σάβειροι
 καλούμενοι L

³ ὠρμήσθαι Hoeschel ὀρμεῖσθαι MSS.

¹ An obviously absurd statement Procopius perhap
 thinks of the Haemus Range (modern Balkans) as a con-

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. iii 2-7

principal ridges of other mountains. Now the spurs of the Caucasus range extend in one direction to the north and west and continue into Illyricum and Thiacæ,¹ while in the other direction they extend toward the east and south and reach as far as those very passes which provide entrance for the Hunnic nations inhabiting that region into both Persian and Roman territory. One of these passes is called Tzur, while the other has been named the Caspian Gates² from ancient times. But this country which extends from the Caucasus range as far as the Caspian Gates is held by the Alani, an autonomous nation, who are for the most part allied with the Persians and march against the Romans and their other enemies. So much then may be said regarding the Caucasus.

The Huns who are called Sabiri dwell in that region, as well as certain other Hunnic tribes. And they say that the Amazons really originated here and afterwards established their camp near Themiscyra on the Thermodon River, as I have stated above, at the place where the city of Amisus is at the present time. But to-day nowhere in the vicinity of the Caucasus range is any memory of the Amazons preserved or any name connected with them, although much has been written about them both by Strabo³ and by some others. But it seems to me that those have spoken the truth about the Amazons at any rate better than any others, who

tinuation of the Caucasus, but the valleys of the great rivers Tanais (Don), Borysthenes (Dnieper), and Ister (Danube) lie between them.

² Cf. Book I x 1 ff.

³ Book XI 5, XII 3, 21.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

λόγῳ εἰπεῖν, ὅσοι ἔφασαν οὐ πώποτε γένος
 γυναικῶν ἀνδρείων¹ γεγονέναι, οὐδ' ἐν² ὄρει
 μόνῳ τῷ Καυκασίῳ τὴν τῶν ἀνθρώπων φύσιν
 θεσμῶν τῶν οἰκείων ἐξίστασθαι, ἀλλὰ βαρ-
 βάρους ἐκ τῶνδε τῶν χωρίων στρατῷ μεγάλῳ
 ξὺν γυναιξὶ ταῖς αὐτῶν ἰδίαις ἐπὶ τὴν Ἀσίαν
 στρατεῦσαι, στρατόπεδόν τε ἀμφὶ ποταμὸν
 Θερμώδοντα ποιησαμένους ἐνταῦθα μὲν τὰς
 γυναῖκας ἀπολιπεῖν, αὐτοὺς δὲ γῆν τῆς Ἀσίας
 τὴν πολλὴν καταθέοντας, ὑπαντιασάντων σφίσι
 τῶν τῇδε ὥκημένων, ἅπαντας ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἀφα-
 νισθῆναι, οὐδένα τε αὐτῶν τὸ παράπαν ἐπανήκειν
 ἐς τῶν γυναικῶν τὸ χαράκωμα, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν
 ταύτας δὴ τὰς γυναῖκας, δέει τῶν περιοίκων
 καὶ ἀπορίᾳ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων³ ἀναγκασθείσας, τό-
 τε ἀρρενωπὸν ἀμφιέσασθαι οὔτι ἐθελουσίας καὶ
 ἀνελομένας τὴν πρὸς τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἐν τῷ στρατο-
 πέδῳ ἀπολελειμμένην τῶν ὅπλων σκευήν, καὶ
 ταύτῃ ἐξοπλισαμένας⁴ ὥς ἄριστα ἔργα ἀνδρεῖα⁵
 ξὺν ἀρετῇ ἐπιδείξασθαι, διωθουμένης ἐς τοῦτο
 αὐτὰς τῆς ἀνάγκης, ἕως δὴ ἀπάσαις διαφθαρῆναι
 8 ξυνέπεσε. ταῦτα δὲ ὧδέ πη γεγονέναι καὶ ξὺν
 τοῖς ἀνδράσι τὰς Ἀμαζόνας στρατεύσασθαι καὶ
 αὐτὸς οἶμαι, τεκμηριούμενος οἷς δὴ καὶ χρόνῳ
 9 τῷ κατ' ἐμὲ ξυνηνέχθη γενέσθαι. τὰ γὰρ ἐπιτη-
 δεύματα μέχρι ἐς τοὺς ἀπογόνους παραπεμπό-
 μενα τῶν προγεγεννημένων τῆς φύσεως Ἰνδαλμα
 10 γίνεσθαι. Οὔννων τοίνυν καταδραμόντων πολ-
 λάκις τὴν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχήν, τοῖς τε ὑπαντιάσασιν
 ἐς χεῖρας ἐλθόντων, τινὰς μὲν αὐτῶν πεσεῖν

¹ ἀνδρείων K : ἀνδρεῖων L.

² οὐδ' ἐν Haury. οὐδέ MSS.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII III 7-10

have stated that there never was a race of women endowed with the qualities of men and that human nature did not depart from its established norm in the mountains of the Caucasus alone; but the fact was that barbarians from these regions together with their own women made an invasion of Asia with a great army, established a camp at the river Thermodon, and left their women there; then, while they themselves were overrunning the greater part of the land of Asia, they were encountered by the inhabitants of the land and utterly destroyed, and not a man of them returned to the women's encampment, and thereafter these women, through fear of the people dwelling round about and constrained by the failure of their supplies, put on manly valour, not at all of their own will, and, taking up the equipment of arms and armour left by the men in the camp and arming themselves in excellent fashion with this, they made a display of manly valour, being driven to do so by sheer necessity, until they were all destroyed. That this is about what happened and that the Amazons did make an expedition with their husbands, I too believe, basing my judgment on what has actually taken place in my time. For customs which are handed down to remote descendants give a picture of the character of former generations. I mean this, that on many occasions when Huns have made raids into the Roman domain and have engaged in battle with those who encountered them, some, of

³ ἐπιτηδείων K ἀναγκαίων L

⁴ ἐξοπλισαμένας MSS ἐξοπλισμένας editors.

⁵ ἀνδρεία ἀνδρίας K τὰ ἀνδρεία L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἐνταῦθα τετύχηκε, μετὰ δὲ τῶν βαρβάρων τὴν ἀναχώρησιν Ῥωμαῖοι διερευνώμενοι τῶν πεπτωκότων τὰ σώματα καὶ γυναῖκας ἐν αὐτοῖς εὔρου.
- 11 ἄλλο μέντοι γυναικῶν στράτευμα οὐδαμῇ τῆς Ἀσίας ἢ τῆς Εὐρώπης ἐπιχωρίαζον ἐφάνη. οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ τὰ Καυκάσια ὄρη ἀνδρῶν ἔρημὰ γεγενῆσθαι πώποτε ἀκοῇ ἴσμεν. περὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν Ἀμαζόνων τοσαῦτα εἰρήσθω.
- 12 Μετὰ δὲ Ἀψιλίους τε καὶ τοῦ μνηοειδοῦς τὴν ἐτέραν ἀρχὴν ἐς τὴν παραλίαν Ἀβασγοὶ ὥκηνται, ἄχρι ἐς τὰ Καυκάσια ὄρη διήκοντες. οἱ δὲ Ἀβασγοὶ Λαζῶν μὲν κατήκοοι ἐκ παλαιοῦ ἦσαν,
- 13 ἄρχοντας δὲ ὁμογενεῖς δύο ἔσαι εἶχον. ὧν ἄτερος μὲν ἐς τῆς χώρας τὰ πρὸς ἐσπέραν, ὁ δὲ δὴ ἕτερος ἐς τὰ πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα ἥλιον ἴδρυτο.
- 14 οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι οὗτοι μέχρι μὲν ἐς ἐμὲ ἄλση τε καὶ ὕλας ἐσέβοντο· θεοὺς γὰρ τὰ δένδρα βαρ-
- 15 βάρῳ τινὶ ἀφελείᾳ ὑπώπτευνον εἶναι. πρὸς δὲ τῶν ἐν σφίσιν ἀρχόντων τὰ δεινότατα διὰ φιλοχρηματίας μέγεθος ἔπασχον. ἅμφω γὰρ αὐτῶν οἱ βασιλεῖς, ὅσους ἂν παῖδας ἐν τούτῳ τῷ ἔθνει ἀγαθοὺς τε τὴν ὄψιν καὶ τὸ σῶμα καλοὺς ἴδοιεν, τούτους δὴ ὀκνήσει οὐδεμιᾷ ἐκ τῶν γειναμένων ἀφέλλοντες εὐνούχους τε ἀπεργαζόμενοι ἀπεδίδοντο ἐς Ῥωμαίων τὴν γῆν τοῖς ὠνεῖσθαι βουλο-
- 16 μένοις χρημάτων μεγάλων. τοὺς τε αὐτῶν πατέρας ἔκτεινον¹ εὐθύς, τοῦ μὴ αὐτῶν τινὰς τίσασθαι ποτε τῆς ἐς τοὺς παῖδας ἀδικίας τὸν βασιλέα

¹ ἔκτεινον L ἔθυσον K.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. iii. 10-16

course, have fallen there, and after the departure of the barbarians the Romans, in searching the bodies of the fallen have actually found women among them. No other army of women, however, has made its appearance in any locality of Asia or Europe. On the other hand, we have no tradition that the mountains of the Caucasus were ever devoid of men. Concerning the Amazons then let this suffice.

Beyond the Apsili and the other end¹ of the crescent the Abasgi dwell along the coast, and their country extends as far as the mountains of the Caucasus. Now the Abasgi have been from ancient times subjects of the Lazi, but they have always had two rulers of their own blood. One of these resided in the western part of their country, the other in the eastern part. And these barbarians even down to my time have worshipped groves and forests, for with a sort of barbarian simplicity they supposed the trees were gods. But they have suffered most cruelly at the hands of their rulers owing to the excessive avarice displayed by them. For both their kings used to take such boys of this nation as they noted having comely features and fine bodies, and dragging them away from their parents without the least hesitation they would make them eunuchs and then sell them at high prices to any persons in Roman territory who wished to buy them. They also killed the fathers of these boys immediately, in order to prevent any of them from attempting at some time to exact vengeance from the king for the wrong done their boys, and also

¹ i. e. the northern end.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἐγχειριεῖν, μηδὲ ὑπόπτους αὐτοῖς τῶν κατηκόων
 τινὰς ἐνταῦθα εἶναι ἢ τε τῶν υἱέων εὐμορφία
 17 σφίσιν ἐς τὸν ὄλεθρον ἀπεκρίνετο· διεφθείροντο
 γὰρ οἱ ταλαίπωροι, παίδων θανάσιμον δεδυστυ-
 χηκότες εὐπρέπειαν. καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ τῶν ἐν
 Ῥωμαίοις εὐνούχων οἱ πλείστοι καὶ οὐχ ἥκιστα
 ἐν τῇ βασιλέως αὐλῇ γένος Ἀβασγοὶ ἐτύγχανον
 ὄντες.
- 18 Ἐπὶ τούτου δὲ Ἰουστινιανοῦ βασιλεύοντος
 ἅπαντα Ἀβασγοῖς ἐπὶ τὸ ἡμερώτερον τετύχηκε
 19 μεταμπίσχυσθαι τά τε γὰρ Χριστιανῶν δόγματα
 εἴλοντο καὶ αὐτοῖς Ἰουστινιανὸς βασιλεὺς τῶν
 τινὰ ἐκ Παλατίου εὐνούχων¹ στείλας, Ἀβασγὸν
 γένος, Εὐφρατᾶν ὄνομα, τοῖς αὐτῶν βασιλεῦσι
 διαρρήδην ἀπέειπε² μηδένα τὸ λοιπὸν ἐν τούτῳ
 τῷ ἔθνει τὴν ἀρρενωπίαν ἀποψιλοῦσθαι, σιδήρῳ
 βιαζομένης τῆς φύσεως ὃ δὲ ἄσμενοι Ἀβασγοὶ
 20 ἤκουσαν, καὶ τῇ τοῦ Ῥωμαίων βασιλέως ἐπι-
 τάξει³ θαρροῦντες ἤδη τὸ ἔργον τοῦτο σθένει
 παντὶ διεκώλυνον. ἐδεδίει γὰρ αὐτῶν ἕκαστος
 21 μὴ ποτε παιδίου πατὴρ εὐπρεποὺς γένηται τότε
 δὲ Ἰουστινιανὸς βασιλεὺς καὶ ἱερὸν τῆς θεοτόκου
 ἐν Ἀβασγοῖς οἰκοδομησάμενος, ἱερεῖς τε αὐτοῖς
 καταστησάμενος, διεπράξατο ἅπαντα αὐτοὺς ἦθη
 τῶν Χριστιανῶν ἐκδιδάσκεισθαι, τοὺς τε βασιλεῖς
 ἄμφω Ἀβασγοὶ καθελόντες αὐτίκα ἐν ἐλευθερίᾳ
 βιοτεύειν ἐδόκουν. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν τῇδε ἐχώρησε.

¹ εὐνούχων K εὐνοῦχον L

² ἀπέειπε K ἐπέειπε L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII iii. 16-21

that there might be in the country no subjects suspected by the kings. And thus the physical beauty of their sons was resulting in their destruction; for the poor wretches were being destroyed through the misfortune of fatal comeliness in their children. And it was in consequence of this that the most of the eunuchs among the Romans, and particularly at the emperor's court, happened to be Abasgi by birth

But during the reign of the present Emperor Justinian the Abasgi have changed everything and adopted a more civilised standard of life. For not only have they espoused the Christian doctrine, but the Emperor Justinian also sent them one of the eunuchs from the palace, an Abasgius by birth named Euphratas, and through him commanded their kings in explicit terms to mutilate no male thereafter in this nation by doing violence to nature with the knife. This the Abasgi heard gladly, and taking courage now because of the decree of the Roman emperor they began to strive with all their might to put an end to this practice. For each one of them had to dread that at some time he would become the father of a comely child. It was at that same time that the Emperor Justinian also built a sanctuary of the Virgin in their land, and appointed priests for them, and thus brought it about that they learned thoroughly all the observances of the Christians, and the Abasgi immediately dethroned both their kings and seemed to be living in a state of freedom. Thus then did these things take place

³ ἐπιτάξει K διατάξει L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

IV

Μετὰ δὲ τοὺς Ἀβασγῶν ὄρους κατὰ μὲν ὄρος
 τὸ Καυκάσιον Βροῦχοι ὄκηνται, Ἀβασγῶν τε
 καὶ Ἀλανῶν μεταξὺ ὄντες, κατὰ δὲ τὴν παραλίαν
 2 Πόντου τοῦ Εὐξείνου Ζήχοι ἱδρυνται. τοῖς δὲ
 δὴ Ζήχοις κατὰ μὲν¹ παλαιὸν ὁ Ῥωμαίων αὐτο-
 κράτωρ βασιλέα καθίστη, τὸ δὲ νῦν οὐδ' ὅτιοῦν
 3 Ῥωμαίοις ἐπακούουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι οὗτοι. μετὰ
 δὲ αὐτοὺς Σαγίνας μὲν οἰκοῦσι, μοῖραν δὲ αὐτῶν
 4 τῆς παραλίας Ῥωμαῖοι ἐκ παλαιοῦ ἔσχον φρού-
 ριά τε δειμάμενοι ἐπιθαλασσίδια δύο, Σεβαστό-
 πολιν τε καὶ Πιτιοῦντα, δυοῖν ἡμέραιν ὁδῷ ἀλλή-
 λωιν διέχοντα, φρουρὰν ἐνταῦθα στρατιωτῶν τὸ
 5 ἐξ ἀρχῆς κατεστήσαντο τὰ μὲν γὰρ πρότερα
 κατάλογοι Ῥωμαίων στρατιωτῶν τὰ ἐπὶ τῆς
 ἀκτῆς πάντα χωρία ἐκ τῶν Τραπεζοῦντος ὁρίων
 ἄχρι ἐς τοὺς Σαγίνας εἶχον, ἥπέρ μοι εἴρηται·
 νῦν δὲ μόνα τὰ δύο ταῦτα φρούρια ἐλέλειπτο
 σφίσιν, οὗ δὴ τὰ φυλακτήρια καὶ ἐς ἐμὲ εἶχον,
 ἐπειδὴ Χοσρόης, ὁ Περσῶν βασιλεὺς, Λαζῶν
 αὐτὸν² ἐπαγαγομένων ἐς τὴν Πέτραν, στράτευμα
 Περσῶν ἐνταῦθα στέλλειν ἐν σπουδῇ εἶχε, τοὺς
 τε τὰ φρούρια ταῦτα καθέξοντας καὶ καθιζήσο-
 6 μένους ἐν τοῖς ἐνταῦθα φυλακτηρίοις. ἅπερ ἐπεὶ
 οἱ Ῥωμαίων στρατιῶται προμαθεῖν ἴσχυσαν,
 προτερήσαντες τὰς τε οἰκίας ἐνέπρησαν καὶ τὰ
 τείχη ἐς τὸ ἔδαφος καθελόντες ἕς τε τὰς ἀκάτους
 μελλήσει οὐδεμιᾷ ἐσβάντες ἐς ἡπειρον εὐθὺς τὴν
 ἀντιπέραν καὶ Τραπεζοῦντα πόλιν ἐχώρησαν,

¹ κατὰ μὲν K: μὲν τό L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. iv. 1-6

IV

BEYOND the confines of the Abasgi along the Caucasus range dwell the Bruchi, who are between the Abasgi and the Alani, while along the coast of the Euxine Sea the Zechi have their habitation. Now in ancient times the Roman emperor used to appoint a king over the Zechi, but at present these barbarians are in no way subject to the Romans. Beyond these dwell the Saginae, and the Romans had held a portion of their coast from ancient times. And they had constructed two fortresses on the coast, Sebastopolis and Pityus, two days' journey apart, and maintained in them garrisons of soldiers from the first. For though in earlier times detachments of Roman soldiers held all the towns on the coast from the limits of Trapezus as far as the Saginae, as previously stated,¹ it finally came about that these two fortresses were the only ones left them, and here they actually maintained their garrisons up to my day, [but no longer]; for Chosroes, the Persian king, having been brought in by invitation of the Lazi to Petra, made haste to send an army of Persians there who were to take possession of these fortresses and settle down to garrison duty in them. But the Roman soldiers succeeded in learning this in advance, and so, anticipating him, they fired the houses and razed the walls to the ground, and then with no hesitation embarked in small boats and made their way immediately to the city of Trapezus on the opposite mainland. Thus,

¹ Cf chap. II 16, above

² ἀντόν L; ἀντῶν K

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

ξημιώσαντες μὲν τῇ τῶν φρουρίων διαφθορᾷ τὴν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχήν, κέρδος δὲ αὐτῇ¹ πορισάμενοι μέγα, ὅτι δὴ τῆς χώρας ἐγκρατεῖς οὐ γεγόνασιν οἱ πολέμιοι. ἀπρακτοὶ γὰρ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ ἐς τὴν Πέτραν ἀνέστρεφον Πέρσαι. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν τῇδε ξυνηνέχθη γενέσθαι.

- 7 Ὑπὲρ δὲ Σαγίνας Οὐννικὰ ἔθνη πολλὰ ἴδρυνται. τὸ δ' ἐντεῦθεν Εὐλυσία μὲν ἡ χώρα ὠνόμασται, Βάρβαροι δὲ αὐτῆς ἄνθρωποι τὰ τε παράλια καὶ τὴν μεσόγειον ἔχουσι, μέχρι ἐς τὴν Μαιώτιν καλουμένην Λίμνην καὶ ποταμὸν Τάναϊν, ὃς δὴ
8 ἐς τὴν Λίμνην ἐσβάλλει. αὕτη δὲ ἡ Λίμνη ἐς τὴν ἀκτὴν Πόντου τοῦ Εὐξείνου τὰς ἐκβολὰς ποιεῖται. ἄνθρωποι δὲ οἱ ταύτῃ ὥκηνται Κιμμέριοι μὲν τὸ παλαιὸν ὠνομάζοντο, ταυῦν δὲ
9 Οὐτίγουροι καλοῦνται. καὶ αὐτῶν καθύπερθεν ἐς βορρᾶν ἄνεμον ἔθνη τὰ Ἀντῶν ἄμετρα ἴδρυνται. παρὰ δὲ τὸν χώρον αὐτὸν ὅθεν ἡ τῆς Λίμνης ἐκβολὴ ἄρχεται, Γότθοι οἱ Τετραξίται καλοῦμενοι ὥκηνται, οὐ πολλοὶ ὄντες, οἱ δὴ τὰ Χριστιανῶν νόμιμα σεβόμενοι περιστέλλουσιν οὐδενὸς
10 ἥσσον. (Τάναϊν δὲ καλοῦσιν οἱ ἐπιχώριοι καὶ τὴν ἐκβολὴν ταύτην, ἥπερ² ἐκ Λίμνης ἄρξαμένη³ τῆς Μαιώτιδος ἄχρι ἐς τὸν Εὐξείνου Πόντον διήκει, ἐς ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν, ὥς φασιν, εἴκοσιν. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸν ἄνεμον ὃς ἐνθένδε πνεῖ Ταναίτην προσαγορεύου-
11 σιν.) εἴτε δὲ τῆς Ἀρείου δόξης ἐγένοντό ποτε οἱ Γότθοι οὗτοι, ὥσπερ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα Γοτθικὰ ἔθνη, εἴτε καὶ ἄλλο τι ἀμφὶ τῇ δόξῃ αὐτοῖς

¹ αὐτῇ Haury αὐτοῖ MSS.

² ἥπερ transposed by Haury from immediately before διήκει below

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII IV. 6-II

while they did penalize the Roman empire by the destruction of the fortresses, they at the same time gained for it a great advantage in that the enemy did not become masters of the land. For as a result of their action the Persians returned baffled to Petia. Thus then did this take place.

Above the Saginæ are settled numerous Hunnic tribes. And from there onward the country has received the name of Eulysia, and barbarian peoples hold both the coast and the interior of this land, as far as the so called Maeotic Lake¹ and the Tanais River² which empties into the lake. And this lake has its outlet at the coast of the Euxine Sea. Now the people who are settled there were named in ancient times Cimmerians, but now they are called Utigurs. And above them to the north the countless tribes of the Antae are settled. But beside the exact point where the outlet of the lake commences dwell the Goths who are called Tetraxitæ, a people who are not very numerous, but they reverence and observe the rites of the Christians as carefully as any people do. (The inhabitants indeed give the name Tanais also to this outlet which starts from the Maeotic Lake and extends to the Euxine Sea, a distance, they say, of twenty days' journey. And they also call the wind which blows from there the "Tanaitis.") Now as to whether these Goths were once of the Arian belief, as the other Gothic nations are, or whether the faith as practised by them has shewn some other peculiarity, I am unable to say, for

¹ Modern Sea of Azov

² Modern Don

³ ἀρξαμένη Haury ἀρξάμενοι MSS, ἀρξαμένην editors, Christ.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

ἤσκητο, οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲ αὐτοὶ ἴσασι, ἀλλ' ἀφελεία¹ τε ταυῦν καὶ ἀπραγμοσύνη πολλῇ τιμῶσι τὴν δόξαν.

- 12 Οὗτοι ὀλίγῳ πρότερον (λέγω δέ, ἡνίκα πρῶτόν τε καὶ εἰκοστὸν ἔτος Ἰουστινιανὸς βασιλεὺς τὴν αὐτοκράτορα εἶχεν ἀρχὴν) πρέσβεις τέτταρας ἐς Βυζάντιον ἔπεμψαν, ἐπίσκοπον σφίσι τινὰ δεόμενοι δοῦναι· ἐπεὶ ὅστις μὲν αὐτοῖς ἱερεὺς ἦν τετελευτήκει οὐ πολλῷ πρότερον, ἔγνωσαν δὲ ὡς καὶ Ἀβασγοῖς ἱερέα βασιλεὺς πέμψει· καὶ αὐτοῖς προθυμότατα Ἰουστινιανὸς βασιλεὺς ἐπι-
13 τελῇ ποιήσας τὴν δέησιν ἀπεπέμψατο. οἱ δὲ πρέσβεις οὗτοι δέει Οὐννων τῶν Οὔτιγούρων ἐς μὲν τὸ ἐμφανές, αὐτηκόων πολλῶν ὄντων, ἀποστοματίζοντες ὅτου δὴ ἔνεκα ἤκοιεν, ἄλλο οὐδὲν ὅτι μὴ τὰ ἀμφὶ τῷ ἱερεῖ βασιλεῖ ἡγγειλαν, ὡς λαθραιότατα δὲ² ξυγγενόμενοι ἅπαντα φράζουσιν, ὅσα συνοίσειν τῇ Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ ἔμελλε, ξυγκρουομένων ἐς ἀλλήλους αἰὲ τῶν σφίσι προσοίκων βαρβάρων. ὅντινα δὲ τρόπον οἱ Τετραξίται καὶ ὅθεν ἀναστάντες ἐνταῦθα ἰδρύσαντο, ἐρῶν ἔρχομαι.

V

- Πάλαι μὲν Οὐννων, τῶν τότε Κιμμερίων καλουμένων, πολὺς τις ὄμιλος τὰ χωρία ταῦτα ἐνέμοντο ὧν ἄρτι ἐμνήσθην, βασιλεὺς τε εἰς
2 ἅπασιν ἐφειστήκει. καὶ ποτὲ τις αὐτῶν τὴν

¹ ἀλλ' ἀφελεία Maltretus : ἀλλὰ φίλια MSS

² δέ Haury : γε K. τε L

they themselves are entirely ignorant on this subject, but at the present time they honour the faith in a spirit of complete simplicity and with no vain questionings

This people a short time ago (when, namely, the Emperor Justinian was in the twenty-first year¹ of his reign) sent four envoys to Byzantium, begging him to give them a bishop, for the one who had been their priest had died not long before and they had learned that the emperor had actually sent a priest to the Abasgi, and the Emperor Justinian very willingly complied with their request before dismissing them. Now these envoys were moved by fear of the Utigur Huns in making the public declaration of the object of their coming—for there were many who heard their speeches—and so they made no statement whatever to the emperor openly except regarding the matter of the priest, but meeting him with the greatest possible secrecy, they declared everything, shewing how it would benefit the Roman empire if the barbarians who were their neighbours should be always on hostile terms with one another. Now as to the manner in which the Tetraxitae settled there and whence they migrated, I shall now proceed to tell

V

IN ancient times a vast throng of the Huns who were then called Cimmerians ranged over this region which I have just mentioned, and one king had authority over them all. And at one time the

¹ 548 A.D.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἀρχὴν ἔσχεν, ᾧ δὲ παῖδες ἐγένοντο δύο, ἄτερος
 μὲν Οὐτίγουρ ὄνομα, Κουτρίγουρ δὲ ὁ ἕτερος.
 3 οὔπερ, ἐπειδὴ αὐτοῖν ὁ πατὴρ τὸν βίον συνε-
 μετρήσατο, τὴν τε ἀρχὴν ἄμφω ἐν σφίσιν¹
 αὐτοῖς διεδάσαντο² καὶ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν τοῖς
 4 ἀρχομένοις αὐτοῖς ἔδοσαν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ Οὐτίγουροι,
 οἱ δὲ Κουτρίγουροι καὶ ἐς ἐμὲ ὀνομάζονται. οὗτοι
 μὲν ἅπαντες τῇδε ᾠκνητο,³ κοινὰ μὲν τὰ ἐπιτη-
 δεύματα ξύμπαντα ἔχοντες, οὐκ ἐπιμιγνύμενοι δὲ
 ἀνθρώποις οἳ δὴ τῆς τε Λίμνης καὶ τῆς ἐνθένδε
 ἐκροῆς ἐς τὰ ἐπὶ θάτερα ἵδρυντο, ἐπεὶ οὔτε
 διέβαινόν ποτε τὰ ὕδατα ταῦτα οὔτε διαβατὰ
 εἶναι ὑπόπτευνον, πρὸς τὰ εὐκολώτατα περίφοβοι
 ὄντες, τῷ μὴδὲ ἀποπειράσασθαι αὐτῶν πώποτε,
 ἀλλ' ἀμελέητοι τῆς διαβάσεως παντάπασιν
 εἶναι.
 5 Λίμνην δὲ τὴν Μαιώτιν καὶ τὴν ἐξ αὐτῆς
 ἐκβολὴν ὑπερβάντι εὐθύς μὲν ἐς αὐτὴν που τὴν
 ταύτης ἀκτὴν οἱ Τετραξῖται καλούμενοι Γότθοι
 τὸ παλαιὸν ᾠκνητο, ὧν ἐπεμνήσθην ἀρτίως·
 πολλῷ δὲ αὐτῶν ἀποθεν Γότθοι τε καὶ Οὐνισί-
 γοτθοι καὶ Βανδίλοι καὶ τὰ ἄλλα Γοθικὰ γένη
 6 ξύμπαντα ἵδρυντο. οἳ δὲ καὶ Σκύθαι ἐν τοῖς
 ἄνω χρόνοις ἐπεκαλοῦντο, ἐπεὶ πάντα τὰ ἔθνη
 ἄπερ τὰ ἐκείνη χωρία εἶχον, Σκυθικὰ μὲν ἐπὶ
 κοινῆς ὀνομάζεται, ἔνιοι δὲ αὐτῶν Σαυρομάται ἢ
 Μελάγχλαινοι, ἢ ἄλλο τι ἐπεκαλοῦντο.
 7 Προϊόντος δὲ τοῦ χρόνου, φασίν, εἴπερ ὁ λόγος
 ὑγιῆς ἐστὶ, τῶν μὲν Κιμμερίων νεανίας τινὰς ἐν
 κυνηγεσίῳ διατριβὴν ἔχειν, ἔλαφον δὲμίαν πρὸς
 αὐτῶν φεύγουσαν ἐς τὰ ὕδατα ἐσπηδήσαι ταῦτα.

¹ ἐν σφίσιν Hoeschel. ἐς σφίσιν K, σφίσιν L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. v. 2-7

power was secured by a certain man to whom two sons were born, one of whom was named Utigur and the other Cutigur. These two sons, when their father came to the end of his life, divided the power between them, and each gave his own name to his subjects, for the one group has been called Utigurs and the other Cutigurs even to my time. All these now continued to live in this region, associating freely in all the business of life, but not mingling with the people who were settled on the other side of the lake and its outlet, for they never crossed these waters at any time nor did they suspect that they could be crossed, being fearful of that which was really easy, simply because they had never even attempted to cross them, and they remained utterly ignorant of the possibility.

Now beyond the Maeotic Lake and the outlet flowing from it the first people were the Goths called Tetraxitae, whom I have just mentioned, who in ancient times lived close along the shore of this strait, but the Goths and the Visigoths and Vandals were located far away from them as were other Gothic nations. These Tetraxitae were called also Scythians in ancient times, because all the nations who held these regions are called in general Scythians, while a few of them had an additional designation such as Sauromatae or Melanchlaenae or something else.

But as time went on, they say (if, indeed, the story is sound), some youths of the Cimmerians were engaged in hunting, and a single doe which was fleeing before them leaped into these waters. And the

² διεδάσαντο K διεσώσαντο L

³ ἔκηντο Dindorf, ὤκηνται MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 8 τοὺς τε νεανίας, εἴτε φιλοτιμία εἴτε φιλονεικία
τινὶ ἐχομένους, ἢ καὶ τι δαιμόνιον αὐτοὺς κατη-
νάγκασε, τῇ ἐλάφῳ ἐπισπένσθαι ταύτῃ, μηχανῇ
τε μεθίεσθαι αὐτῆς οὐδεμιᾶ, ἕως ξὺν αὐτῇ ἐς τὴν
9 ἀντιπέρας ἀκτὴν ἵκοντο. καὶ τὸ μὲν διωκόμενον
ὅ τι ποτ' ἦν εὐθὺς ἀφανισθῆναι. (δοκεῖν¹ γάρ
μοι² οὐδὲ ἄλλου του ἔνεκα ἐνταῦθα ἐφάνη, ὅτι
μὴ τοῦ³ γενέσθαι κακῶς τοῖς τῇδε ὠκημένοις
βαρβάροις) τοὺς δὲ νεανίας τοῦ μὲν κυνηγεσίου
ἀποτυχεῖν, μάχης δὲ ἀφορμὴν καὶ λείας εὐρέσθαι.
10 ἐς ἣθῃ γὰρ τὰ πάτρια ὅτι τάχιστα ἐπανήκοντες
ἐνδηλα πᾶσι Κιμμερίοις πεποίηνται ὅτι δὴ ταῦτα
βατὰ σφίσι τὰ ὕδατα εἶη. ἀνελόμενοι οὖν
αὐτίκα τὰ ὅπλα πανδημεῖ τε διαβάντες ἐγένοντο
μελλήσει οὐδεμιᾶ ἐν τῇ ἀντιπέρας ἡπεύρω,
Βανδύλων μὲν ἤδη ἐνθένδε ἀναστάντων ἐπὶ τε
Λιβύης ἰδρυσάμενων, ἐν Ἰσπανίᾳ δὲ Οὐρσιγότθων
11 οἰκησαμένων. Γότθοις οὖν τοῖς ἐς τὰ τῇδε
ὠκημένοις πεδία ἐξαπιναίως ἐπιπесόντες πολλοὺς
μὲν ἔκτειναν, τοὺς δὲ λοιποὺς ἐτρέψαντο ἅπαν-
12 τας. ὅσοι τε αὐτοὺς⁴ διαφυγεῖν ἴσχυσαν, ξὺν
παισὶ τε καὶ γυναιξὶν ἐνθένδε ἀναστάντες ἀπέ-
λιπον μὲν τὰ πάτρια ἣθῃ, διαπορθμευσάμενοι δὲ
ποταμὸν Ἰστρον ἐν γῇ τῇ Ῥωμαίων ἐγένοντο.
13 Καὶ πολλὰ μὲν τοὺς ταύτῃ ὠκημένους δεινὰ
ἔδρασαν, μετὰ δὲ δόντος βασιλέως ὠκῆσαντο ἐς
τὰ ἐπὶ Θράκης χωρία, καὶ τὰ μὲν ξυνεμάχουν
Ῥωμαίοις, τὰς τε συντάξεις ὥσπερ οἱ ἄλλοι
στρατιῶται πρὸς βασιλέως κομιζόμενοι ἀνὰ πᾶν

¹ δοκεῖν Haury: δοκεῖ MSS

² μοι MSS.: μοι ὡς editors

³ μὴ τοῦ Maltretus: μὴ MSS.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. v. 8-13

youths, either moved by a thirst for glory or in some sort of competition, or perhaps it was really some deity which constrained them, followed after this doe and refused absolutely to let her go, until they came with her to the opposite shore. And then the quarry, whatever it was, immediately disappeared from sight; for in my opinion it appeared there for no other purpose than that evil might befall the barbarians who lived in that region. Thus, while the youths did fail in their hunt, they found an incentive to battle and plunder. For they returned as fast as they could to their own land, and thus made it clear to all the Cimmerians that these waters could be crossed by them. Accordingly they immediately took up arms as a nation, and making the crossing with no delay got on the opposite mainland; this was at a time when the Vandals had already migrated from there and established themselves in Libya; while the Visigoths had taken up their abode in Spain. So they suddenly fell upon the Goths who inhabited these plains and slew many of them and turned the rest to flight. And as many as succeeded in escaping them migrated thence with their children and wives, leaving their ancestral abodes, and by ferrying across the Ister River they came into the land of the Romans.

And at first they committed many outrages against the inhabitants of that region, but later, with the emperor's permission, they settled in Thrace, and during part of this time they were fighting on the side of the Romans, receiving pay from the emperor every year just as the other soldiers did and being

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἔτος καὶ φοιδερᾶτοι ἐπικληθέντες· οὕτω γὰρ αὐτοὺς τότε¹ Λατίνων φωνῇ ἐκάλεσαν Ῥωμαῖοι, ἐκεῖνο, οἶμαι, παραδηλοῦντες, ὅτι δὴ οὐχ ἡσσημένοι αὐτῶν τῷ πολέμῳ Γότθοι, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ ξυνθή-
 14 καις τισὶν ἐνσπονδοὶ ἐγένοντο σφίσι· φοῖδερα γὰρ Λατῖνοι τὰς ἐν πολέμῳ καλοῦσι ξυνθήκας, ἥπερ μοι ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν δεδήλωται λόγοις· τὰ δὲ καὶ πόλεμον πρὸς αὐτοὺς διέφερον οὐδενὶ λόγῳ, ἕως ὥχοντο ἀπίοντες ἐς Ἰταλίαν, Θεουδερίχου ἡγουμένου σφίσι. τὰ μὲν οὖν τῶν Γότθων τῇδε κεχώρηκεν.
- 15 Οὐννοι δὲ αὐτῶν τοὺς μὲν κτείναντες, τοὺς δέ, ὥσπερ ἐρρήθη, ἐξαναστήσαντες τὴν χώραν ἔσχον. καὶ αὐτῶν Κουτρίγουροι μὲν παῖδάς τε καὶ γυναικάς μεταπεμψάμενοι ἐνταῦθα ἰδρύσαντο,
 16 οὐδὲ καὶ ἐς ἐμὲ ὥκηνται. καὶ δῶρα μὲν πολλὰ πρὸς βασιλέως ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος κομίζονται, καὶ ὡς δὲ διαβαίνοντες ποταμὸν Ἰστρον καταθέουσιν
 17 ἐσαεὶ τὴν βασιλέως χώραν, ἐνσπονδοὶ τε καὶ πολέμιοι Ῥωμαίοις ὄντες. Οὐτίγουροι δὲ ξὺν τῷ ἡγουμένῳ ἐπ' οἴκου ἀπεκομίζοντο, μόνον τὸ
 18 λοιπὸν ἐνταῦθα καθιζήσόμενοι. οἵπερ ἐπειδὴ Λίμνης τῆς Μαιώτιδος ἀγχοῦ ἐγένοντο, Γότθοις ἐνταῦθα τοῖς Τετραξίταις καλουμένοις ἐνέτυχον.
 19 καὶ τὰ μὲν πρῶτα φραζάμενοι ταῖς ἀσπίσιν οἱ Γότθοι ἀντικρὺ τοῖς ἐπιούσιν ὡς ἀμυνόμενοι ἕστησαν, σθένει τε τῷ σφετέρῳ καὶ χωρίου ἰσχύϊ θαρσοῦντες· αὐτοὶ γὰρ ἀλκιμώτατοι ἀπάντων
 20 εἰσὶ τῶν τῇδε βαρβάρων. καὶ ἡ πρώτη τῆς Μαιώτιδος ἐκροή, οὐδὲ τότε οἱ Τετραξίται Γότθοι ἴδρυντο, ἐν κόλπῳ ξυνιούσα μνηνοειδεί,

¹ τότε K: τῇ L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. v. 13-20

called "foederati", for so the Romans at that time called them in the Latin tongue, meaning to shew, I suppose, that the Goths had not been defeated by them in war, but had come into peaceful relations with them on the basis of some treaty, for the Latins call treaties in war "foedera," as I have explained in the previous narrative,¹ but during the rest of the time they were actually waging war against the Romans for no good reason, until they went off to Italy under the leadership of Theoderic. Thus then did the Goths fare.

But the Huns, after killing some of them and driving out the others, as stated, took possession of the land. And the Cutrigurs, on the one hand, summoned their children and wives and settled there in the very place where they have dwelt even to my time. And although they receive from the emperor many gifts every year, they still cross the Ister River continually and overrun the emperor's land, being both at peace and at war with the Romans. The Utigurs, however, departed homeward with their leader, being destined to live alone in that land thereafter. Now when these Huns came near the Maeotic Lake, they chanced upon the Goths there who are called Tetraxitae. And at first the Goths formed a barrier with their shields and made a stand against their assailants in their own defence, trusting both in their own strength and the advantage of their position; for they are the most stalwart of all the barbarians of that region. Now the head of the outlet of the Maeotic Lake, where the Tetraxitae Goths were then settled, forms a crescent-shaped

¹ Book I xi. 4. See also note on Book III xi. 3.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- περιβαλουῦσά τε αὐτοὺς ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον, μίαν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς εἴσοδον οὐ λίαν εὐρείαν¹ τοῖς
- 21 ἐπιούσι παρείχετο. ὕστερον δὲ (οὔτε γὰρ Οὐννοι χρόνον τινὰ τρίβεσθαι σφίσιν ἐνταῦθα ἤθελον, οἷ τε Γότθοι τῷ τῶν πολεμίων ὁμίλῳ ἐπὶ πολὺν ἀνθέξειν οὐδαμῇ ἥλπιζον) ἐς λόγους ἀλλήλοις ξυνίασιν, ἐφ' ᾧ ἀναμιχθέντες κοινῇ ποιήσονται τὴν διάβασιν, καὶ οἱ Γότθοι ἰδρύσονται μὲν ἐν τῇ ἀντιπέρας ἡπείρῳ παρ' αὐτὴν τῆς ἐκβολῆς μάλιστα τὴν ἀκτὴν, ἵνα δὴ καὶ τανῦν ἴδρυνται, φίλοι δὲ καὶ ξύμμαχοι τὸ λοιπὸν Οὐτιγούροις ὄντες ἐπὶ τῇ ἴσῃ καὶ ὁμοίᾳ σφίσιν ἐνταῦθα
- 22 βιώσονται τὸν πάντα αἰῶνα. οὕτω μὲν οὖν οἶδε οἱ Γότθοι τῇδε ἰδρύσαντο καὶ τῶν Κουτριγούρων, ὥσπερ μοι εἴρηται, ἀπολελειμμένων ἐν γῇ τῇ ἐπὶ² θάτερα τῆς Λίμνης οὕση μόνον Οὐτίγουροι τὴν χώραν ἔσχον, πράγματα Ῥωμαίοις ὡς ἥκιστα παρεχόμενοι, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲ αὐτῶν ἀγχιστα ᾤκηται, ἀλλ' ἔθνεσι πολλοῖς διειργόμενοι μεταξὺ οὖσιν ἀκουσίῳ ἀπραγμοσύνῃ ἐς αὐτοὺς ἔχονται.
- 23 Ὑπερβάντι δὲ Λίμνην τε τὴν Μαιώτιδα καὶ ποταμὸν Τανάιν ἐπὶ πλείστον μὲν τῶν τῇδε πεδίων Κουτρίγουροι Οὐννοι, ἡπέρ μοι ἐρρήθη, ὥκησαντο· μετὰ δὲ αὐτοὺς Σκύθαι τε καὶ Ταῦροι ξύμπασαν ἔχουσι τὴν ταύτην χώραν, ἥσπερ μοιρά τις Ταυρικὴ καὶ νῦν ἐπικαλεῖται, ἵνα δὴ καὶ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος τὸν νεῶν γεγονέναι φασίν, οὐπὲρ ποτε
- 24 ἢ τοῦ Ἀγαμέμνονος Ἰφιγένεια προύστη. καίτοι Ἀρμένιοι ἐν τῇ παρ' αὐτοῖς Κελεσηνῇ καλουμένη³ χώρα τὸν νεῶν τοῦτον γεγονέναι φασί

¹ εὐρείαν L: εὐρεῖν ἄν K. ² ἐπὶ θάτερα L: ἀποθατέρα K.

³ ἀρμένιοι—καλουμένη L: σκύθας τε τῇ K.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. v. 20-24

bay by which they were almost completely surrounded, so that only one approach, and that not a very wide one, was open to those who attacked them. But afterwards, seeing that the Huns were unwilling to waste any time there and the Goths were quite hopeless of holding out for a long time against the throng of their enemy, they came to an understanding with each other, agreeing that they should join forces and make the crossing in common, and that the Goths should settle on the opposite mainland, principally along the bank of the outlet (where they are actually settled at the present time), and that they should continue to be thereafter friends and allies of the Utigurs and live for ever on terms of complete equality with them. Thus it was that these Goths settled here, and the Cutrigurs, as I have said, being left behind in the land on the other side of the lake, the Utigurs alone possessed the land, making no trouble at all for the Romans, because they do not even dwell near them, but, being separated by many nations which lie between, they are forced, by no will of their own, not to meddle with them.

West of the Maeotic Lake, then, and the Tanais River the Cutrigur Huns established their homes over the greater part of the plains of that region, as I have said; and beyond them Scythians and Taurians hold the entire country, a certain part of which is even now called Taurica; and this is the place where they say the Temple of Artemis was, over which Agamemnon's daughter Iphigeneia once presided. The Armenians, however, claim that this temple was in the part of their land called Celesene, and that at that period all the peoples of this region

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- Σκύθας τε τηνικάδε ξύμπαντας καλείσθαι τοὺς ἐνταῦθα ἀνθρώπους, τεκμηριούμενοι τοῖς ἀμφί τε Ὀρέστη καὶ πόλει Κομάνη δεδιηγημένοις μοι
- 25 ἐς ἐκεῖνο τοῦ λόγου. ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τούτων λεγέτω ἕκαστος ὥς πῃ αὐτῷ βουλομένῳ ἐστί· πολλὰ γὰρ τῶν ἐτέρωθι γεγενημένων, ἴσως δὲ καὶ οὐδαμῇ ξυμπεπτωκότων, ἄνθρωποι προσποιεῖσθαι φιλοῦσιν ὥς πάτρια ἦθῃ, ἀγανακτοῦντες, ἣν μὴ τῇ δοκῇσει τῇ αὐτῶν ἅπαντες ἔπονται.
- 26 Μετὰ δὲ τὰ ἔθνη ταῦτα πόλις θαλασσία οἰκεῖται, Βόσπορος ὄνομα, Ῥωμαίων κατήκοος
- 27 γενομένη οὐ πολλῷ πρότερον. ἐκ δὲ Βοσπόρου πόλεως ἐς πόλιν Χερσῶνα ἰόντι, ἥ κεῖται μὲν ἐν τῇ παραλίᾳ, Ῥωμαίων δὲ καὶ αὐτὴ κατήκοος ἐκ παλαιοῦ ἐστί, βάρβαροι, Οὐννικὰ ἔθνη, τὰ
- 28 μεταξὺ ἅπαντα ἔχουσι. καὶ ἄλλα δὲ πολίσματα δύο ἀγχοῦ Χερσῶνος, Κῆποι τε καὶ Φανάγουρις καλούμενα, Ῥωμαίων κατήκοα ἐκ παλαιοῦ τε καὶ ἐς ἐμὲ ἦν. ἅπερ οὐ πολλῷ ἔμπροσθεν βαρβάρων τῶν πλησιοχώρων ἐλόντες τινὲς ἐς ἔδαφος κα-
- 29 θεῖλον. ἐκ δὲ Χερσῶνος πόλεως ἐς τὰς ἐκβολὰς ποταμοῦ Ἰστρου, ὃν καὶ Δανούβιον καλοῦσιν, ὁδὸς μὲν ἐστὶν ἡμερῶν δέκα, βάρβαροι δὲ τὰ
- 30 ἐκείνη ξύμπαντα ἔχουσιν. Ἰστρος δὲ ποταμὸς ἐξ ὁρέων¹ μὲν τῶν Κελτικῶν ῥεῖ, περιῶν δὲ τὰς Ἰταλίας ἐσχατίας, φερόμενός τε ἐπὶ τὰ² Δακῶν καὶ Ἰλλυριῶν καὶ τὰ ἐπὶ Θράκης χωρία,³ ἐκβάλλει ἐς τὸν Εὐξείνου Πόντον. τὰ δὲ ἐνθένδε ἅπαντα μέχρι ἐς Βυζάντιον τοῦ Ῥωμαίων βασιλέως τυγχάνει ὄντα.

¹ ὁρέων L • ὀρίων K

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. v. 24-30

were called Scythians, citing as evidence the story of Orestes and the city of Comana related by me in that part of my narrative¹ But as regards these matters, let each one speak according to his wish, for many things which happened elsewhere, on which, perhaps, never really happened at all, men are wont to appropriate to their own country, being indignant if all do not follow their opinion.

Beyond these nations there is an inhabited city on the coast, Bosphorus by name, which became subject to the Romans not long ago. From the city of Bosphorus to the city of Cherson,² which is situated on the coast and has likewise been subject to the Romans from of old, all between is held by barbarians, Hunnic nations. And two other towns near Cherson, named Cepi and Phanaguris, have been subject to the Romans from ancient times and even to my day. But these not long ago were captured by some of the neighbouring barbarians and razed to the ground. From the city of Cherson to the mouth of the Ister River, which is also called the Danube, is a journey of ten days, and barbarians hold that whole region. Now the Ister River rises in the Celtic mountains,³ skirts the boundaries of Italy, flows into the lands of Dacia, Illyricum, and Thrace, and finally empties into the Euxine Sea. From that point all the territory as far as Byzantium is under the sway of the Roman emperor.

¹ Book I xvii 13-20

² Chersonnesus, near modern Sevastopol

³ The Alps

² ἐπὶ τὰ Λ ἐπὶ τε Κ.

³ τὰ—χωρὶς Λ τῶν—χωρίων Κ

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 31 Ἡ μὲν οὖν τοῦ Εὐξείνου Πόντου περίοδος ἐκ
 Καλχηδόνος μέχρι ἐς Βυζάντιον ταύτῃ πῃ ἔχει.
 32 ἐς ὅσον δὲ ἡ περίοδος ἦδε διήκει, ἅπαντα μὲν ἐς
 τὸ ἀκριβὲς οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν, βαρβάρων, ὥσπερ μοι
 ἐρρήθη, ὠκημένων ἐνταῦθα τοσούτων τὸ πλῆθος,
 ἐπιμιξίας τε Ῥωμαίοις παρ' αὐτῶν τινάς, ὅτι μὴ
 ὅσα κατὰ πρεσβείαν, ἴσως οὐδεμιᾶς οὔσης· ἐπεὶ
 οὐδὲ τοῖς πρότερον ταῦτα ἐγκεχειρηκόσι δια-
 μετρήσασθαι ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς τι ξυμβαίνει εἰρήσθαι.
 33 ἐκεῖνο μέντοι διαφανὲς ἐστίν, ὡς Πόντου τοῦ
 Εὐξείνου τὰ ἐν δεξιᾷ, εἴη δ' ἂν ἐκ Καλχηδόνος
 ἐς ποταμὸν Φᾶσιν, δυοῖν καὶ πεντήκοντα ὁδὸς
 ἡμερῶν ἐστίν¹ εὐζώνῳ ἀνδρί· ᾧ δὲ οὐκ ἀπὸ
 τρόπου τεκμηριούμενος φαίη ἂν τις καὶ τὴν
 ἐτέραν τοῦ Πόντου μοῖραν μέτρου τοῦδε εἶναι οὐ
 πολλῶ ἀποθεν.

VI

- Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφικόμεθα ἐνταῦθα τοῦ λόγου, ἀνα-
 γράψασθαι οὐ μοι ἀπὸ καιροῦ ἔδοξεν εἶναι ὅσα
 δὴ ἀμφὶ τοῖς ὀρίοις τῆς τε Ἀσίας καὶ τῆς
 Εὐρώπης διαμάχονται πρὸς ἀλλήλους οἱ ταῦτα
 2 δεινοί. λέγουσι μὲν γάρ τινες αὐτῶν τὰ ἡπείρω
 ταῦτα διορίζειν ποταμὸν Τάναιν, ἀπισχυρίζο-
 μενοι μὲν χρῆναι τὰς τομὰς φυσικὰς εἶναι,
 τεκμηριούμενοι δὲ ὡς ἡ μὲν θάλασσα προιοῦσα
 ἐκ τῶν ἐσπερίων ἐπὶ τὴν ἐφ' ἃν φέρεται² μοῖραν,
 ποταμὸς δὲ Τάναις ἐκ τῶν ἀρκτῶων φερόμενος
 ἐς ἄνεμον νότον μεταξὺ ταῖν ἡπείροιον χωρεῖ·

¹ ἐστίν MSS om editors

² φέρεται K στέλλεσθαι L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. v. 31-vi. 2

Such is the circuit of the Euxine Sea from Calchedon to Byzantium. As to the length of this circuit, however, I am unable to speak accurately regarding all portions of it, since such vast numbers of barbarians, as stated above, dwell along its shores, and the Romans have no intercourse at all with any of them except for an occasional interchange of embassies; indeed those who have attempted heretofore to ascertain these measurements have not been able to make any definite statement. This, however, is clear, that the right side of the Euxine Sea, from Calchedon, namely, to the Phasis River, is a journey of fifty-two days for an unencumbered traveller¹. From this fact one could not unreasonably draw the conclusion that the length of the other side of the Pontus likewise is not far from this.

VI

SINCE we have now reached an appropriate point in the narrative, it has seemed to me not out of place to mention the opinions concerning the boundaries of Asia and Europe which are debated among those who are experts in these matters. For, on the one hand, some of them say that these two continents are separated by the Tanais River, stoutly maintaining first of all that the division must be a natural one, and further supporting their claim by the fact that, while the sea extends from the west toward the east, the Tanais River flows from the north toward the south between the two

¹ About 1,248 miles. Cf. Book III 1 17 for Procopius' standard

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

ἔμπαλιν δὲ τὸν Αἰγύπτιον Νεῖλον ἐκ μεσημβρίας
 ἰόντα πρὸς βορρᾶν ἄνεμον Ἀσίας τε καὶ Λιβύης
 3 μεταξὺ φέρεσθαι. ἄλλοι δὲ ἀπ' ἐναντίας αὐτοῖς
 ἰόντες οὐχ ὑγιᾶ τὸν λόγον ἰσχυρίζονται εἶναι.
 λέγουσι γὰρ ὡς τὰ μὲν ἡπείρω ταῦτα τὸ ἐξ ἀρχῆς
 ὃ τε ἐν Γαδεύροις διορίζει πορθμὸς ἀπ' Ὠκεανοῦ
 ἐξιών καὶ ἡ προιοῦσα ἐνθένδε θάλασσα, καὶ τὰ
 μὲν τοῦ πορθμοῦ καὶ τῆς θαλάσσης ἐν δεξιᾷ
 Λιβύη τε καὶ Ἀσία ὠνόμασται, τὰ δὲ ἐν ἀριστερᾷ
 πάντα Εὐρώπῃ ἐκλήθη μέχρι που ἐς λήγοντα τὸν
 Εὐξεινον καλούμενον Πόντον.

- 4 Τούτων δὲ δὴ τοιούτων ὄντων ὁ μὲν Τάναις
 ποταμὸς ἐν γῇ τῆς Εὐρώπης τικτόμενος ἐκβάλλει
 ἐς Λίμνην τὴν Μαιώτιδα, ἡ δὲ Λίμνη ἐς τὸν
 Εὐξεινον Πόντον τὰς ἐκβολὰς ποιεῖται οὔτε
 λήγοντα οὔτε μὴν κατὰ μέσον, ἀλλ' ἔτι πρόσω.
 5 τὰ δὲ¹ εὐώνυμα τούτου δὴ τοῦ Πόντου τῇ τῆς
 Ἀσίας λογίζεται μοίρα. χωρὶς δὲ τούτων ποτα-
 μὸς Τάναις ἐξ ὁρέων τῶν Ῥιπαίων καλουμένων
 ἔξεισιν, ἅπερ ἐν γῇ τῇ Εὐρώπῃ ἐστίν, ὥσπερ καὶ
 αὐτοὶ οἱ ταῦτα ἐκ παλαιοῦ ἀναγραφάμενοι
 6 ὁμολογοῦσι. τούτων δὲ τῶν Ῥιπαίων ὁρῶν τὸν
 Ὠκεανὸν ὡς ἀπωτάτῳ ξυμβαίνει εἶναι. τὰ
 τοῖνυν αὐτῶν τε καὶ Τανάιδος ποταμοῦ ὀπισθεν
 7 ξύμπαντα Εὐρωπαϊα ἐφ' ἐκάτερα ἐπάναγκες εἶναι.
 πόθεν οὖν ἄρα ποτὲ ἄρχεται ἡπειρον ἐκατέραν
 διορίζειν ὁ Τάναις οὐ ῥάδιον εἶναι εἰπεῖν. ἦν δὲ
 8 οὗτος δὴ ἐκεῖνος ὁ Φᾶσις ἂν εἴη. καταντικρὺ

¹ τὰ δὲ L εἶναι δὲ τὰ εὐμήχανα τὰ K.

¹ Modern Cadiz, the Strait of Gibraltar.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. vi. 2-8

continents, similarly, they say, the Egyptian Nile proceeds in the opposite direction from the south to the north and flows between Asia and Libya. On the other hand, others taking issue directly with them maintain that their reasoning is not sound. For they say that these two continents are divided originally by the strait at Gadma,¹ which issues from the ocean, and by the sea which extends from that point, and that the land on the right of the strait and the sea received the names of Libya and Asia, while everything on the left was called Europe approximately as far as the end of the so-called Euxine Sea.

But on this hypothesis the Tanais River rises within the limits of Europe and empties into the Maeotic Lake, which in turn discharges its waters into the Euxine Sea neither at its end nor even at its middle, but actually beyond it.² Yet the land on the left of this same sea is counted³ as a portion of Asia. But apart from this the river Tanais rises in the so-called Rhipaeon mountains, which are in the land of Europe, as, in fact, those who have written of these matters from ancient times agree. Now the Ocean is very far removed⁴ from these Rhipaeon mountains, consequently all the land beyond them and the Tanais River in both directions⁵ must necessarily be European. Just at what point, then, the Tanais River begins to divide the two continents it is not easy to say. But if any river must be said to divide the two continents, that river would surely be the Phasis. For it flows

² That is, well within the boundaries of Europe

³ By the supporters of the former view

⁴ To the north

⁵ East and west

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

γὰρ πορθμοῦ τοῦ ἐν Γαδείροις φερόμενος¹ ταῖν ἡπείρου κατὰ μέσον χωρεῖ, ἐπεὶ ὁ μὲν πορθμὸς ἐξ Ὀκεανοῦ ἐξιὼν θάλασσαν τήνδε ἀπεργαζόμενος τὰ ἡπείρω ταῦτα ἐφ' ἐκάτερα ἔχει, ὁ δὲ Φᾶσις κατ' αὐτόν που λήγοντα μάλιστα ἰὼν τὸν Εὐξεινον Πόντον ἐς τοῦ μηνοειδοῦς τὰ μέσα ἐκβάλλει, τὴν τῆς γῆς ἐκτομὴν ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάσσης
9 διαφανῶς ἐκδεχόμενος. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἐκάτεροι προτεινόμενοι διαμάχονται.

Ὡς δὲ οὐ μόνος ὁ πρότερος λόγος, ἀλλὰ καὶ οὗτος, ὃν περ ἀρτίως ἐλέγομεν, μήκει τε χρόνου κεκόμψευται καὶ ἀνδρῶν τινῶν παλαιοτάτων δόξῃ, ἐγὼ δηλώσω, ἐκείνο εἰδὼς ὡς ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον ἄνθρωποι ἅπαντες, ἣν τινος φθάσωσι λόγου ἀρχαίου πεπονημένοι τὴν μάθησιν, οὐκέτι ἐθέλουσι τῇ τῆς ἀληθείας ζητήσῃ ἐμφιλοχωροῦντες ταλαιπωρεῖν, οὐδὲ νεωτέραν τινὰ μεταμαθεῖν ἀμφ' αὐτῷ δόξαν, ἀλλὰ αἰεὶ αὐτοῖς τὸ μὲν παλαιότερον ὑγιές τε δοκεῖ καὶ ἔντιμον εἶναι, τὸ δὲ κατ' αὐτοὺς εὐκαταφρόνητον νομίζεται
10 εἶναι καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ γελοιῶδες χωρεῖ.² πρὸς δὲ τούτοις τανῦν οὐ περὶ νοερῶν ἢ νοητῶν τινὸς ἢ ἀφανῶν ἄλλως γίγνεται ζήτησις, ἀλλὰ περὶ³ ποταμοῦ τε καὶ χώρας· ἅπερ ὁ χρόνος οὔτε
11 ἀμείβειν οὔτε πη ἀποκρύψασθαι ἴσχυσεν ἢ τε γὰρ πείρα ἐγγὺς καὶ ἡ ὄψις ἐς μαρτυρίαν ἱκανωτάτη, οὐδὲν τε παρεμποδισθήσεσθαι οἶμαι

¹ φερόμενος K : φαινόμενος L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. vi. 8-11

in a direction opposite to that of the strait of Gadira, and so passes between the two continents; for while the strait, coming out of the ocean and forming this sea, has these two continents, one on either side, the Phasis River flows almost at the end of the Euxine Sea and empties into the middle of the crescent, obviously continuing the division of the land heretofore made by the sea. These then are the arguments which the two sides put forth as they wrangle over the question.

But not only the former argument, but also that which I have just stated, can boast, as I shall shew, of high antiquity and the support of some men of very ancient times, for I am aware that as a general thing all men, if they first discover an ancient argument, are no longer willing to devote themselves to the labour involved in the search for truth nor to learn instead some later theory about the matter in hand, but the more ancient view always seems to them sound and worthy of honour, while contemporary opinions are considered negligible and are classed as absurd. Furthermore, in the present case the investigation is not concerned with any matter to be grasped only by the mind or the intellect, or that is in any other way obscure, but with rivers and lands; these are things which time has not been able either to change or to conceal in any way. For the test is near at hand and vision can provide most satisfactory evidence, and I think no obstacle will be placed in the way of those eager

² χωρεῖ K. · δοκεῖ L

³ ἀλλὰ περὶ Haury: ἀλλ' ἢ περὶ K, ἀλλ' ὑπέρ L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 12 τοῖς τὸ ἀληθὲς εὐρέσθαι ἐν σπουδῇ ἔχουσιν. ὁ τοίνυν Ἀλικαρνασεὺς Ἡρόδοτος ἐν τῇ τῶν ἱστοριῶν τετάρτῃ φησὶ μίαν μὲν εἶναι τὴν γῆν ξύμπασαν, νομίζεσθαι δὲ εἰς μοίρας τε καὶ προσηγορίας τρεῖς διαιρεῖσθαι, Λιβύην τε καὶ
- 13 Ἀσίαν καὶ Εὐρώπην.¹ καὶ αὐτῶν Λιβύης μὲν καὶ τῆς Ἀσίας Νεῖλον τὸν Αἰγύπτιον ποταμὸν μεταξὺ φέρεσθαι, τὴν δὲ δὴ Ἀσίαν τε καὶ Εὐρώπην διορίζειν τὸν Κόλχον Φᾶσιν. εἰδὼς δέ τις ἀμφὶ Τανάδι ποταμῷ ταῦτα οἶεσθαι, καὶ
- 14 τοῦτο ἐν ὑστέρω ἐπέειπε. καὶ μοι οὐκ ἀπὸ καιροῦ ἔδοξεν εἶναι αὐτὰ² τοῦ Ἡροδότου τὰ γράμματα τῷ λόγῳ ἐνθῆναι ὧδέ πη ἔχοντα· “Οὐδὲ ἔχω συμβαλέσθαι ἀπὸ τοῦ³ μὴ εἰοῦση γῇ ὀνόματα τριφάσια κέαται, ἐπωνυμίην⁴ ἔχοντα γυναικῶν, καὶ ὀρίσματα αὐτῇ Νεῖλός τε ὁ Αἰγύπτιος ποταμὸς ἐτέθη καὶ Φᾶσις ὁ Κόλχος.
- 15 οἱ δὲ Τάναιν ποταμὸν τὸν Μαιήτην⁵ καὶ πορθμήια τὰ Κιμμέρια λέγουσιν.” ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ τραγωδοποιὸς Αἰσχύλος ἐν Προμηθεὶ τῷ Λυομένῳ εὐθύς ἀρχόμενος τῆς τραγωδίας τὸν ποταμὸν Φᾶσιν τέρμονα καλεῖ γῆς τε τῆς Ἀσίας καὶ τῆς Εὐρώπης.
- 16 Κακεῖνο δέ μοι ἐν τῷ παρόντι εἰρήσεται, ὥς τούτων δὴ τῶν τὰ τοιαῦτα σοφῶν οἱ μὲν τὴν Μαιῶτιν οἶονται Λίμνην ἀπεργάζεσθαι τὸν Εὐξεινον Πόντον, καὶ αὐτοῦ τὸ μὲν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ, τὸ δὲ ἐν δεξιᾷ τῆς Λίμνης χωρεῖν, μητέρα τε διὰ
- 17 τοῦτο τοῦ Πόντου καλεῖσθαι τὴν Λίμνην. ταῦτά

¹ εὐρώπην K : εὐρώπην φημί L

² αὐτά K . αὐτοῦ L

³ ἀπὸ τοῦ MSS ἐπ' ὅτεν Herodotus

⁴ ἐπωνυμίην MSS . ἐπωνυμίας Herodotus

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. VI. 11-17

to discover the truth To proceed, then, Herodotus of Halicarnassus in the Fourth Book of his *History* says that the entire earth is one, but is considered to be divided into three parts, having three separate titles, Libya, Asia, and Europe And between two of them, on the one hand, Libya and Asia namely, flows the Egyptian Nile, while Asia and Europe, on the other hand, are divided by the Colchian Phasis But knowing as he did that some thought that the Tanais River performed this function, he mentioned this view also afterwards And it has seemed to me not inappropriate to insert in my narrative the actual language of Herodotus, which is as follows¹ "Nor am I able to conjecture for what reason it is that, though the earth is one, three names are applied to it which are women's names And its lines of division have been established as the Egyptian Nile and the Colchian Phasis But others name the Tanais River, which empties into the Maeotic Lake and the Cimmerian Strait"² Also the tragic poet Aeschylus in the *Prometheus Unbound*, at the very beginning of the tragedy, calls the Phasis River the limit of the land of both Asia and Europe³

At this point I shall also mention the fact that some of those who are versed in such matters think that the Maeotic Lake forms the Euxine Sea, and that it spreads out from this lake partly to the right and partly to the left, this being the reason why the lake is called the mother of the Pontus And they

¹ Book IV 45

² The Cimmerian Bosphorus, Mod. Strait of Yenikale

³ *Frags* 106, preserved by Arian, *Voyage in the Euxine*, 99 22

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- τέ φασι τεκμηριούμενοι, ὅτι δὴ ἐκ τοῦ καλουμένου Ἱεροῦ ἢ τούτου δὴ τοῦ Πόντου ἐκροῇ ἐπὶ Βυζαντίου καθάπερ τις ποταμὸς κάτεισι, καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ πέρας εἶναι τοῦτο τοῦ Πόντου οἴονται.
- 18 οἱ δὲ τοῦ λόγου κατηγοροῦντες ἀποφαίνουσιν ὅτι δὴ μία τις ἐξ Ὠκεανοῦ ξύμπασα ἢ θάλασσα οὔσα καὶ οὐδαμῇ ἐτέρωθι ἀπολήγουσα ἐς γῆν τὴν Λαζῶν κατατείνει, πλὴν γε εἰ μὴ τις, φασί, τὸ ἐν τοῖς ὀνόμασι διάλλασσον ἐτερότητα εἶπῃ, ὅτι δὴ τὸ ἐνθένδε ἢ θάλασσα Πόντος ὠνόμασται.
- 19 Εἰ δὲ τὰ ρεύματα ἐκ τοῦ Ἱεροῦ καλουμένου κάτεισιν¹ ἐς Βυζάντιον, οὐδὲν τοῦτο πρᾶγμα. τὰ γὰρ ἐν πορθμοῖς ἅπασι ξυμπίπτοντα πάθῃ οὐδενὶ λόγῳ φαίνεται εἴκοντα, οὐδέ τις αὐτὰ
- 20 φράσαι πώποτε ἱκανὸς γέγονεν. ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ Σταγειρίτης Ἀριστοτέλης, σοφὸς ἀνὴρ ἐν τοῖς μάλιστα, ἐν Χαλκίδι τῇ τῆς² Εὐβοίας τούτου δὴ ἕνεκα γεγονώς, κατανοῶν τε τὸν ταύτη πορθμόν, ὃνπερ Εὐριπον ὀνομάζουσι, καὶ λόγον τὸν φυσικὸν ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς διερευνᾶσθαι βουλόμενος, ὅπως δὴ καὶ ὄντινα τρόπον ἐνίοτε μὲν τὰ τοῦ πορθμοῦ τούτου ρεύματα ἐκ δυσμῶν φέρεται, ἐνίοτε δὲ ἐξ ἡλίου ἀνατολῶν, καὶ κατὰ ταῦτα πλεῖν τὰ πλοῖα ξύμπαντα ἐνταῦθα ξυμβαίνει, ἣν δέ ποτε τοῦ ῥοῦ ἐξ ἀνίσχοντος ἡλίου ἰόντος, ἀρξαμένων τε τῶν ναυτῶν³ ἐνθένδε ξὺν τῇ τοῦ ῥοθίου ἐπιρροῇ ναυτίλλεσθαι, ἥπερ εἰώθει, ἀπ' ἐναντίας αὐτοῦ⁴ τὸ ρεῦμα ἤ, ὅπερ πολλάκις

¹ κάτεισιν Dindorf: ἐξίσιν K, κατίσιν L.

² Χαλκίδι τῇ τῆς. σχολῇ ἐπὶ L.

³ ναυτῶν L· αὐτῶν K.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII vi. 17-20

make this statement on the basis of the observation that from the place called Hieron¹ the outlet of this sea flows down toward Byzantium just as if it were a river, and consequently they consider this to be the limit of the Pontus. But those who oppose this view explain that the entire sea is, of course, one, coming from the ocean, and, without any other ending, extends to the land of the Lazı, unless, indeed, they say, anyone considers the mere change of name to constitute a real difference, seeing that the sea is called Pontus beyond a certain point.

But if the current does flow down from the place called Hieron¹ to Byzantium, this has nothing to do with the matter. For the phenomena which are exhibited in all straits appear to be susceptible of no explanation, nor has anyone ever shewn himself able to account for them. Indeed it was this question which led Aristotle of Stagirus, a man prominent among all others as a philosopher, to go to Chalcis on Euboea, where he observed the strait which they call Euripus in an effort to discover by careful investigation the physical reason why it is and in what manner it comes about that sometimes the current of the strait flows from the west, but at other times from the east, and the sailing of all boats there is governed by this fact, whenever, for example, the current is running from the east and the mariners have begun to sail their boats from that direction following the inflow of the water, as they are accustomed to do, if then the current turns upon itself, a thing which is wont to happen there

¹ On the upper part of the Bosphorus.

⁴ αὐτοῦ Hoeschel. αὐτό K, δὲ αὐτοῦ L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἐνταῦθα φιλεῖ γίνεσθαι, ἀναστρέφει μὲν τὰ πλοῖα ταῦτα εὐθὺς ἐνθεν ὥρμηται, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα ἐκ δυσμῶν ἐπὶ θάτερα πλεῖ, καίπερ αὐτοῖς τῶν ἀνέμων τινὸς ὡς ἥκιστα ἐπιπνεύσαντος, ἀλλὰ γαλήνης τε βαθείας τινὸς καὶ νηνεμίας ἐνταῦθα οὔσης, ταῦτα ὁ Σταγειρίτης ἐννοῶν τε καὶ ἀνακυκλῶν ἐπὶ χρόνου μῆκος, δυσθανατῶν ἐπὶ
- 21 ξυννοία¹ ἀφίκετο² ἐς τὸ μέτρον τοῦ βίου. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ³ καὶ τῷ τὴν Ἰταλίαν τε καὶ Σικελίαν διείργοντι πορθμῷ πολλὰ τῷ παραλόγῳ γίνεσθαι πέφυκε. δοκεῖ γὰρ ἐκ τοῦ Ἀδριατικοῦ καλου-
- 22 μένου πελάγους τὸ ρεῦμα ἐκείσε ἰέναι. καίτοι ἐξ Ὀκεανοῦ καὶ Γαδεύρων ἡ τῆς θαλάσσης πρόοδος γίνεται. ἀλλὰ καὶ ἱλιγγοὶ ἐξαπινάϊως ἐνταῦθα συχνοὶ ἀπ' οὐδεμιᾶς ἡμῖν φαινομένης
- 23 αἰτίας τὰς ναῦς διαχρῶνται. καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οἱ ποιηταὶ λέγουσι πρὸς τῆς Χαρύβδews ῥοφέϊσθαι τὰ πλοῖα, ὅσα ἂν τύχῃ τηνικάδε ὄντα ἐν τῷ
- 24 πορθμῷ τούτῳ. οὗτοι δὲ ταῦτα δὴ ἅπαντα οἶονται τὰ πλείεσθ' παραλόγῳ ἐν πᾶσι ξυμβαίνοντα τοῖς πορθμοῖς, ἐκ τῆς ἄγχιστα οὔσης ἐκατέρωθεν ἡπείρου ξυμβαίνειν· βιαζόμενον γάρ φασι τῇ στενοχωρίᾳ τὸ ῥόθιον ἐς ἀτόπους τινὰς καὶ λόγον οὐκ ἐχούσας ἀνάγκας χωρεῖν.
- 25 Ὡστε εἰ καὶ ὁ ῥοῦς ἐκ τοῦ Ἱεροῦ καλουμένου ἐς Βυζάντιον δοκεῖ φέρεσθαι, οὐκ ἂν τις τὴν τε θάλασσαν καὶ τὸν Εὐξείνιον Πόντον ἀπολήγειν
- 26 ἰσχυρίσαιτο ἐνταῦθα εἰκότως. οὐ γὰρ ἐπὶ στερρᾶς τινὸς ὁ λόγος ὅδε φύσεως ἔστηκεν, ἀλλ'

¹ ξυννοία Hoeschel σοφίας K, ξυνοία L

² ἀφίκετο K ἤει L.

³ οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ L: ἐπει K

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. vi. 20-26

many a time, it immediately turns these boats back in the direction from which they have started, while the other boats sail from the west to the opposite end, even though no wind has blown upon them in the least but deep calm prevails there with all winds absent, all this the Stagnite observed and pondered for a long time, until he worried himself to death with anxious thought and so reached the term of his life. But this is not an isolated case, for in the strait also which separates Italy from Sicily nature plays many strange tricks. For it appears that the current runs into this strait from the sea called the Adriatic, and this in spite of the fact that the forward movement of the sea takes place from the ocean and Gadira. But there are also numerous whirlpools which appear there suddenly from no cause apparent to us and destroy the ships. It is on account of this that the poets say that the boats are gulped down by Charybdis, when any chance to be in this strait at such a time. But the advocates of the second view¹ think that all these exceedingly strange phenomena which present themselves in all straits come about in consequence of the two sides coming very close to each other, for the water, they say, being constrained by the limited space, is subject to some strange and unaccountable compulsion.

Consequently, if the current does actually seem to flow from the place called Hieron to Byzantium, no one could reasonably maintain that the sea² and the Euxine end at that point. For this view rests upon no solid basis of nature, but here again the

¹ Mentioned in par. 18 ff., above

² The Mediterranean, or, more accurately, the Sea of Marmara

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἡ στενοχωρία κἀνταῦθα νικάτω. οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ
 27 παντάπασι τὸ τοιοῦτον ταύτῃ πῃ ἔχει. λέγουσι
 γὰρ οἱ ἀσπαλιεῖς τῶν τῇδε χωρίων ὡς οὐχ ὅλος
 δὴ εὐθὺ τοῦ Βυζαντίου ὁ ῥοὺς κάτεισιν,¹ ἀλλ'
 αὐτοῦ τὰ μὲν ἄνω, ἅπερ ἡμῖν διαφανῇ ἐστί,
 κατὰ ταῦτα ἰέναι ξυμβαίνει, τὰ μέντοι ἔνερθεν,
 ἵνα δὴ ἄβυσσός ἐστί τε καὶ ὠνόμασται, τὴν
 ἐναντίαν τοῖς ἄνω διαρρήδην χωρεῖν, ἔμπαλιν τε
 28 τοῦ φαινομένου ἐσαεὶ φέρεσθαι. ταῦτά τοι,
 ἐπειδὴν ἄγραν μετιόντες ἰχθύων τὰ λῖνα ἐνταῦθά
 πῃ ἀπορρίψωσι, ταῦτα δὲ αἰὲ τῷ ῥεύματι
 βιαζόμενα τὴν ἐπὶ τὸ Ἱερὸν φέρεσθαι.
 29 Ἐν δὲ Λαζικῇ πανταχόθεν ἡ γῆ τῆς θαλάσσης
 ἀποκρουομένη² τὴν πρόοδον καὶ³ ἀναχαιτίζουσα
 τὸν αὐτῆς δρόμον, πρῶτόν τε καὶ μόνον ἀπολή-
 γειν αὐτὴν ἐνταῦθα ποιεῖ, τοῦ δημιουργοῦ δι-
 30 λονότι τὰ ὅρια σφίσι τῇδε θεμένου. ἀπτομένη⁴
 γὰρ ἡ θάλασσα τῆς ταύτης ἡϊόνος οὔτε πρόσω
 χωρεῖ οὔτε πῃ ἐς ὕψος ἐπαίρεται μείζον, καίπερ
 πανταχόθεν αἰὲ περιρρεομένη ποταμῶν ἐκβυλαῖς
 ἀναρίθμων τε καὶ ὑπερφυῶν ἄγαν, ἀλλ' ἀνα-
 ποδίζουσα ὀπίσω ἐπάνεισιν αὐθις καὶ μέτρον
 διαριθμουμένη τὸ ταύτης ἴδιον, διασώζει τὸν ἐξ
 αὐτῆς ὄρον, ὥσπερ τινὰ δειμαίνουσα νόμον,
 ἀνάγκη τε τῇ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς σφιγγο-
 μένη μή τι τῶν ξυγκειμένων ἐκβᾶσα φανείη.
 31 τὰς γὰρ ἄλλας ἀπάσας τῆς θαλάσσης ἀκτὰς οὐκ
 ἀπ' ἐναντίας αὐτῇ, ἀλλ' ἐκ πλαγίου ξυμβαίνει

¹ κάτεισιν L ἄπεισιν K.

² ἀποκρουομένη MSS.: ἀποκρούει μὲν Scaliger, ἀποκρούει Dindorf

³ καὶ K: om. L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII vi. 26-31

narrowness of the channel must be considered the determining factor. Indeed not even this is all that happens here; for the fishermen of the towns on the Bosphorus say that the whole stream does not flow in the direction of Byzantium, but while the upper current which we can see plainly does flow in this direction, the deep water of the abyss, as it is called, moves in a direction exactly opposite to that of the upper current and so flows continually against the current which is seen. Consequently, whenever in going after a catch of fish they cast their nets there anywhere, these are always carried by the force of the current in the direction of Hieron¹

But at Lazica the land checks the advance of the sea on all sides and puts a stop to its course, and thus makes its first and only ending at that point, the Creator obviously having set bounds there for sea and land. For when the sea encounters that beach, it neither advances farther nor does it rise to any higher level, although it is constantly receiving the inflow of countless rivers of extraordinary size which empty into it from all sides, but it falls back and returns again and thus, while making the beach of normal width, it preserves the boundary set by the land as if fearing some law, and, through the necessity prescribed by this, checking itself with precision and taking care not to be found to have transgressed the covenant in any way. For all the other shores of the sea do not face it, but lie along

¹ This observation is amply confirmed by experience at the present time. The counter-current below is caused perhaps by variation in temperature.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

κεῖσθαι. ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τούτων γινωσκέτω τε καὶ λεγέτω ἕκαστος ὅπῃ αὐτῷ φίλον.

VII

“Οτου δὲ ὁ Χοσρόης ἔνεκα Λαζικῆς μεταποιεῖσθαι διὰ σπουδῆς εἶχεν ἤδη μὲν πρόσθεν μοι ἐρρήθη· ὃ δὲ δὴ αὐτὸν τε καὶ Πέρσας μάλιστα πάντων ἐς τοῦτο ἤνεγκεν, ἐνταῦθα δηλώσω, ὅτι δὴ καὶ χώραν τήνδε περιηγησάμενος ξύμπασαν
 2 σαφῇ τὸν περὶ τούτου πεποίηκα λόγον. πολλάκις οἱ βάρβαροι οὔτοι, Χοσρόου σφίσιν ἡγουμένου, στρατῷ μεγάλῳ ἐμβαλόντες¹ ἐς Ῥωμαίων τὴν γῆν οὐκ εὐδιήγητα μὲν τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐπήνεγκαν πάθη, ἅπερ μοι ἐν τοῖς ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν λόγοις ἐρρήθη, αὐτοῖς δὲ ὄφελος οὐδ’ ὅτιοῦν ἀπενεγκαμένοις ἐνθύνδε τοῖς τε χρήμασι καὶ τοῖς σώμασι προσκεκακῶσθαι² ξυνέπεσε· πολλοὺς γὰρ ἀποβεβληκότες αἰεὶ ἀπηλλάσσοντο ἐκ Ῥωμαίων τῆς
 3 γῆς. διὸ δὴ ἐς ἥθη ἐπανιόντες τὰ πάτρια Χοσρόη ὡς λαθραιότατα ἐλοιδοροῦντο καὶ διαφθορέα τοῦ
 4 Περσῶν γένους αὐτὸν ἀπεκάλουν. καὶ ποτε καὶ ἐκ Λαζικῆς ἐπανήκοντες, ἐπειδὴ ἐνταῦθα πάθεσιν ἔτυχον ὠμιληκότες ἀνηκέστοις τισί, ξυστήσεσθαι τε ἐκ τοῦ ἐμφανοῦς ἐπ’ αὐτὸν ἔμελλον καὶ διαχρήσεσθαι³ θανάτῳ οἰκτίστῳ, εἰ μὴ προμαθὼν ἐφυλάξατο, θωπεία πολλῇ τοὺς ἐν σφίσιν λογι-
 5 μωτάτους περιελθών. καὶ ἀπ’ αὐτοῦ ἀπολο-

¹ ἐμβαλόντες L ἐκβαλόντες K

² προσκεκακῶσθαι Haury: πρόσθεν κεκακῶσθαι K, πρὸς δὲ κεκακῶσθαι L.

³ διαχρήσεσθαι Maltretus: διαχρήσασθαι MSS

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. VI. 31-vii. 5

its side. But concerning these matters let each man form his decision and speak as he wishes

VII

Now the reason why Chosroes was eager to get possession of Lazica has already been stated by me in a previous passage,¹ but that particular consideration which above everything else impelled him and the Persians to desire this I shall here set forth, now that I have given a description of this whole country and so made clear my statement of this matter. Many times these barbarians, under the leadership of Chosroes, had invaded the Roman domain with a mighty army, and while they had inflicted upon their enemy sufferings not easy to describe, as has been told by me in the books on this subject,² still they gained from these invasions no advantage whatsoever and had also to bear the loss of both treasure and lives. for they always departed from the Roman domain having lost many men. Consequently, after they had returned to their own land, they would very privately rail against Chosroes and call him the destroyer of the Persian nation. And on one such occasion when they had returned from Lazica, seeing that they had suffered terrible losses there, they were actually on the point of combining openly against him and doing away with him by a most cruel death, and would have done so had he not learned in advance and guarded against it by winning over the most notable of them by assiduous wheedling. As a

¹ Book II xxviii. 18

² Books I and II

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

γείσθαι τὴν κατηγορίαν ἐθέλων μέγα τι ὄφελος
Περσῶν τῇ ἀρχῇ ἐκπορίζεσθαι διὰ σπουδῆς εἶχε.

- Πόλει γοῦν Δάρας αὐτίκα ἐγκεχειρηκῶς
ἀπεκρούσθη ἐνθένδε, ὥσπερ μοι εἴρηται, ἐς
ἀπόγνωσιν τε τῆς τοῦ χωρίου ἐπικρατήσεως
6 παντάπασιν ἦλθεν. οὐδὲ γὰρ αὐτὸ ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς
ἐξαιρήσειν τὸ λοιπὸν εἶχεν,¹ οὕτω φυλασσομένων
τῶν ἐκείνη φρουρῶν, οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ πολιορκῶν
7 μηχανῇ τινὶ περιέσεσθαι αὐτῶν ἤλπιζε τά τε
γὰρ ἄλλα τῶν ἐπιτηδείων ἐσαι ἐν πόλει Δάρας
διαρκῶς² ἐστὶν ἐξεπίτηδες ἀποκείμενα, ὅπως δὴ
ἐς μέγα τι χρόνον διαρκέσειε μῆκος, καὶ πηγὴ
ἀγχιστά πη φυομένη ἐν χώρῳ κρημνῶδει ποτα-
μὸν ἀπεργάζεται μέγαν ὅσπερ τῆς πόλεως εὐθὺ
φέρεται, οὐ δυναμένων τῶν ἐπιβουλεύειν ἐφιε-
μένων ἐτέρωσέ πη αὐτὸν ἀποτρέπειν ἢ τρόπῳ τῷ
8 ἄλλῳ διὰ τὴν δυσχωρίαν βιάζεσθαι. ἐπειδὴν
δὲ τοῦ περιβόλου ἐντὸς³ γένηται, τὴν τε πόλιν
περιῶν ξύμπασαν καὶ τὰς ταύτῃ δεξαμενάς
ἐμπλησάμενος εἶτα ἔξεισιν, ὡς ἀγχοτάτω τε τοῦ
περιβόλου ἐς χάος ἐμπεσὼν ἀφανίζεται καὶ ὅπη
9 ποτὲ τὸ ἐνθένδε ἐκδίδωσιν οὐδενὶ γέγονε φανερὸν
ἐς τότε τοῦ χρόνου. τοῦτο δὲ τὸ χάος οὐκ ἐπὶ
παλαιοῦ γεγονὸς ἔτυχεν, ἀλλὰ χρόνῳ πολλῷ
ὕστερον ἢ τὴν πόλιν Ἀναστάσιος βασιλεὺς
ἐδείματο ταύτην ἢ φύσις αὐτὸ τοῦ⁴ χωρίου
ἀπαντοματίσασα ἔθετο, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ξυμβαίνει
τοῖς προσεδρεύειν ἐθέλουσιν ἀμφὶ πόλιν Δάρας
πιέζεσθαι ὕδατος ἀπορία πολλῇ.

¹ εἶχεν MSS ἐλπίδα εἶχεν conjectured by Haury.

² διαρκῶς K: διηνεκῶς L

³ ἐντὸς Maltretus: εὐθύ K: εὐθύς L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. vii 5-9

result of this incident he wished to remove the sting from the accusation, and to this end was eager to gain some great advantage for the Persian Empire

He accordingly made an attempt¹ upon the city of Daras, but met with reverse there, as I have told,² and came to a state of utter despair regarding the capture of the place. For neither could he thereafter capture it by a surprise assault, seeing that the guards of the city were so alert, nor indeed did he entertain the hope that he would by any device get the better of them in a siege. For there is always an abundant supply of all manner of provisions in the city of Daras stored away against a siege, so that it may last for a great length of time, and close by there is a spring placed by nature among precipices, forming a large river which flows straight towards the city, and those who seek to interfere with it are unable to turn it to any other course or otherwise do violence to it on account of the rough character of the terrain. But as soon as this river gets inside the circuit-wall, it flows about the entire city, filling its cisterns, and then flows out, and very close to the circuit-wall it falls into a chasm, where it is lost to sight. And where it emerges from there has become known to no man up to this time. Now this chasm was not there in ancient times, but a long time after the Emperor Anastasius built this city nature unaided fashioned and placed it there, and for this reason it comes about that those desiring to draw a siege about the city of Daras are very hard pressed by scarcity of water

¹ By strategem, not by storm.

² Book II xxviii 31 ff

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 10 Ταύτης οὖν, ὥσπερ μοι εἴρηται, ἀποτυχὼν ὁ Χοσρόης τῆς πείρας ἐς ἔννοιαν ἦλθεν ὥς, ἣν καὶ πόλιν οἱ Ῥωμαίων ἐτέραν τινὰ παραστήσασθαι δυνατὰ εἶη, ἀλλὰ καθίζεσθαι οὐ μὴ ποτε οἶός τε εἶη ἐν μέσῳ Ῥωμαίων, ὁχυρωμάτων τοῖς
- 11 πολεμίοις ἀπολελειμμένων ὀπίσω πολλῶν. καὶ Ἀντιόχειαν γὰρ τούτου δὴ εἵνεκα ἐς ἔδαφος καθελὼν ἡνίκα ἐξεῖλεν,¹ ἀπηλλάγη ἐκ Ῥωμαίων τῆς γῆς. διὸ δὴ μετεωρισθεὶς τὴν διάνοιαν ἐπὶ μακροτέρας ἐλπίδος ὥχεῖτο, διερευνώμενος ἀμή-
12 χανα ἔργα. ἀκοῇ γὰρ ἔχων ὄντινα τρόπον ἐπ' ἀριστερᾷ Πόντου τοῦ Εὐξείνου οὗτοι δὲ βάρβαροι² οἱ ἀμφὶ τὴν Μαιώτιν ὥκηνται Λίμνην ἀδεῶς³ κατατρέχουσι Ῥωμαίων τὴν γῆν,⁴ οὕτω καὶ Πέρσαις Λαζικὴν ἔχουσι πόνῳ οὐδενὶ δυνατὰ ἔσεσθαι ἔλεγεν, ἡνίκα ἂν βουλομένοις ἦ, εὐθὺς Βυζαντίου ἵεναι, οὐδαμῇ διαπορθμευομένοις τὴν θάλασσαν, ὥσπερ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα βαρβαρικὰ ἔθνη
- 13 ἃ ταύτῃ ἰδρυταὶ ἐσαεὶ δρῶσι. διὰ ταῦτα μὲν Λαζικῆς Πέρσαι μεταποιοῦνται. ἐγὼ δὲ ὅθεν τὴν ἐκβολὴν τοῦ λόγου ἐποίησάμην ἐπάνειμι

VIII

Χοριάνης μὲν οὖν καὶ ὁ Μήδων στρατὸς ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἀμφὶ ποταμὸν Ἰππιν ἐπειδὴ δὲ ταῦτα Γουβάζης τε, ὁ Κόλχων βασιλεὺς, ἔμαθε καὶ Δαγισθαῖος, ὅσπερ ἡγείτο τοῦ Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ, ἐπικόινα βουλευσάμενοι ἦγον

¹ ἐς ἔδαφος καθελὼν, ἡνίκα ἐξεῖλεν K. ἐξελὼν L.

² θάρβαροι οἱ Comparetti. βάρβαροι MSS.

³ ἀδεῶς Comparetti. καὶ ἀδεῶς MSS.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. vii. 10-viii. 1

So Chosroes, having failed in this attempt, as I have said, came to the conclusion that, even if he should be able to gain some other Roman city, he would still never be able to establish himself in the midst of the Romans while many strongholds were left behind in the hands of his enemy. Indeed it was for this reason that he razed Antioch to the ground when he captured it and so departed from Roman soil. Consequently his thoughts soared aloft and were carried toward more distant hopes as he sought after impossible things. For having learned by report how those barbarians on the left of the Euxine Sea who dwell about the Maeotic Lake overrun fearlessly the Roman domain, he kept saying that it would be possible for the Persians, if they held Lazica, to go, whenever they wished, straight to Byzantium with no trouble and without crossing the sea at all, just as the other barbarian nations who are settled in that region are constantly doing. For this reason, then, the Persians are trying to gain Lazica. But I shall return to the point where I made this digression from the narrative.¹

VIII

CHORIANES, then, and the Median army had made their camp near the Hippis River. And when Gubazes, the Colchian king, and Dagisthaeus, who commanded the Roman army, learned this, they

¹ Chap 1 7

⁴ ἀδεῶς—γῆν L om. K.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους τὸ Ῥωμαίων καὶ Λαζῶν
 2 στράτευμα. γενόμενοί τε Ἰππιδος τοῦ ποταμοῦ
 ἐπὶ θάτερα καὶ αὐτοῦ ἐνστρατοπεδευσάμενοι τὰ
 παρόντα ἐν βουλῇ εἶχον, πότερα μένουσί τε
 αὐτοῖς καὶ δεχομένοις ἐπιόντας τοὺς πολεμίους
 ξυνοίσει μᾶλλον ἢ ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους σφίσιν
 ἰτέον, ὅπως δὴ θάρσους τοῦ σφετέρου ποιησά-
 μενοι ἐπίδειξιν Πέρσαις, ἔνδηλά τε τοῖς ἐναντίοις
 καταστησάμενοι ὡς καταφρονήματι ἐπ' αὐτοὺς
 ἴωσι, τῆς τε ξυμβολῆς αὐτῆς ἄρχοντες ¹ δουλῶσαι
 τῶν ἀνθισταμένων τὸ φρόνημα ἱκανοὶ εἶεν ἐπειδὴ
 3 τε ἡ γνώμη ἐνῖκα τῶν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους παρα-
 καλούντων, ὥρμητο ἐπ' αὐτοὺς εὐθὺς ἅπαντες.
 ἐνταῦθα Λαζοὶ Ῥωμαίοις ξυντάσσεσθαι οὐκέτι
 ἠξίου, προτεινόμενοι ὅτι δὴ Ῥωμαῖοι μὲν οὔτε
 πατρίδος οὔτε τῶν ἀναγκαιοτάτων προκινδυ-
 νεύοντες ἐς τὸν ἀγῶνα καθίστανται, αὐτοῖς δὲ
 ὑπὲρ τε παίδων καὶ γυναικῶν καὶ γῆς τῆς
 πατρώας ὁ κίνδυνός ἐστιν· ὥστε καὶ γυναῖκας
 4 τὰς σφετέρας ἐρυθριῶεν, εἰ σφίσι πρὸς τῶν
 ἐναντίων ξυμβαίῃ κρατεῖσθαι. ταύτῃ δὴ τῇ
 ἀνάγκῃ τὴν οὐκ οὔσαν αὐτοῖς ἀρετὴν αὐτοσχε-
 5 διάσειν ὑπώπτευνον· πρῶτοί τε αὐτοὶ κατὰ μόνας
 ὥργων τοῖς πολεμίοις ὁμόσε ἰέναι, ὅπως αὐτοὺς
 μὴ ξυνταράξωσιν ἐν τῷ ἔργῳ Ῥωμαῖοι, οὐχ
 ὅμοια σφίσιν ἐς τὸν κίνδυνον προθυμούμενοι.
 6 ταῦτα νεανιευσαμένων Λαζῶν περιχαρὴς ὁ
 Γουβάξης γενόμενος μικρὸν τε ἄποθεν Ῥωμαίων
 αὐτοὺς ξυγκαλέσας τοιάδε παρεκελεύσατο

¹ αὐτῆς ἄρχοντες K. αὐτοὶ ἄρξονται καὶ L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. viii 1-6

formed a common plan and led forth the Roman and Lazi army against the enemy. And when they had come to the opposite side of the Hippis River and had made their camp there, they began to consider the situation, debating whether it would be more to their advantage to wait there and receive the enemy's attack or whether they should advance upon their enemy, in order, of course, that by displaying their daring to the Persians and by making it obvious to their opponents that they were filled with contempt as they went against them, they might, by assuming the offensive in the combat, be able to humble the spirit of the men arrayed against them. And since the opinion of those prevailed who urged an advance upon the enemy, the whole army straightway hastened toward them. Thereupon the Lazi would no longer consent to fight beside the Romans, putting forth the objection that the Romans, on the one hand, in entering the struggle, were not risking their lives for their fatherland or their most precious possessions, while for them the danger involved their children and their wives and their ancestral land, so that they would have to blush before their own women, if it should so fall out that they were defeated by their opponents. Indeed they imagined that under this stress they would improvise the valour which was not in them. And they were filled with zeal to engage with the enemy by themselves first, so that the Romans might not throw them into confusion during the action through not having the same zeal as they had in meeting the danger. After the Lazi had begun to shew this spirit of bravado, Gubazes became well pleased, and calling them together a little apart from the Romans he exhorted them as follows.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 7 “Παραίνεσιν μὲν ἐς εὐψυχίαν ὀρμῶσαν οὐκ οἶδα εἴ τινα δεῖ¹ πρὸς ὑμᾶς, ὧ ἄνδρες, ποιεῖσθαι. οἷς γὰρ ἡ τῶν πραγμάτων ἀνάγκη τὴν προθυμίαν ἀνίστησι, παρακελεύσεως ἂν οὐδεμιᾶς προσδεῖν οἶομαι, ὅπερ καὶ ἡμῖν ἔν γε τῷ παρόντι τετύχη-
- 8 κεν. ὑπὲρ γυναικῶν γὰρ καὶ παίδων καὶ γῆς τῆς πατρώας καὶ ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν ὑπὲρ τῶν ὅλων ὁ κίνδυνός ἐστιν, ὑπὲρ ὧν ἡμῖν ἐπίασι Πέρσαι.
- 9 τοῖς δέ τι ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τῶν ὑπαρχόντων βιαζομένοις οὐδεὶς τῶν πάντων παραχωρεῖ, ὑπερμάχεσθαι² τῶν προσηκόντων ἀναγκαζούσης τῆς φύσεως. οὐκ ἀγνοεῖτε δὲ ὡς Πέρσαις³ τὴν πλεονεξίαν οὐδὲν ἴστησιν, ἐν ἐξουσίᾳ γεγονόσι⁴ τοῦ δύνασθαι, οὐδὲ ἄρξουσιν μόνον ἡμῶν ἢ τάξουσιν φόρους ἢ τὰ ἄλλα κατηκόους ποιήσονται, εἴ τι μὴ ἐπιλελήσμεθα ὧν Χοσρόης ἐγκεχειρήκεν ἐφ’ ἡμῖν οὐ πολλῷ πρότερον, ἣν νῦν περιέσονται
- 11 ἡμῶν τῷ πολέμῳ. ἀλλὰ μηδὲ ἄχρι τοῦ λόγου προιέτω μοι τὰ τῆς Περσῶν πείρας, μηδὲ διαλιπέτω τὸ Λαζῶν ὄνομα. οὐ χαλεπὸς δέ, ὧ ἄνδρες, ἡμῖν ὁ πρὸς Μήδους ἀγὼν, πολλάκις αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐς χεῖρας ἐλθοῦσι καὶ ὑπερβαλλομένοις τῇ μάχῃ.
- 12 τῷ γὰρ ξυνειθισμένῳ τὸ δύσκολον οὐδαμῇ πάρεστι, προδαπανηθείσης τῆς τοῦ ἔργου ταλαιπωρίας μελέτῃ καὶ πείρᾳ. ὥστε διὰ τοῦτο καὶ καταφρονεῖν τῶν πολεμίων ἅτε νενικημένων ἐν ξυμβολαῖς καὶ οὐχ ὁμοίως θρασυνομένων ἡμᾶς⁵

¹ εἴ τινα δεῖ ὅτι δὴ K

² ὑπερμάχεσθαι Haury: ἐπεὶ μάχεσθαι K, ἐπιμάχεσθαι L.

³ Πέρσαις Maltietus: περσῶν MSS

⁴ γεγονόσι L om K

⁵ ἡμᾶς L: ἡμῶν K, ἡμῖν Scaliger.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. viii. 7-12

“Fellow-men, I know not whether it is necessary to address any exhortation to you to impel you to be of good courage. For those men whose enthusiasm is upheld by the necessity of circumstances would, I think, need no further exhortation, and this is the case with us, in the present crisis at any rate. For it is your women and children and your ancestral land, and, to speak plainly, your all, which is involved in this danger, for it is to secure these that the Persians are coming upon us. For no one in the whole world gives way to those who are seeking by violence to rob him of any of his possessions, for nature compels him to fight for his property. And you are not ignorant that nothing stops the avarice of the Persians when they have come to have power in their grasp, and if at the present time they prevail over us in the war, they will not stop with simply ruling us or imposing taxes or treating us in other matters as subjects,—a statement which we can test by our own memory of what Chosroes attempted upon us not long ago. But let me not even so much as mention the experience we have had with the Persians, and let not the name of the Lazi come to an end. And the struggle against the Medes, my fellow-men, is not a hard one for us who have many times grappled with them and prevailed over them in the fight. For a task which has become thoroughly familiar entails no difficulty whatever, the necessary labour having been previously expended in practice and experience. Consequently we shall be obliged because of this fact actually to despise the enemy as having been defeated in previous combats and having no such ground for courage as you have. For when

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 13 δεήσει. φρόνημα γὰρ δουλωθὲν ἅπαξ παλινδρομεῖν ἤκιστα εἴωθε. ταῦτα τοίνυν ἐκλογιζόμενοι μετὰ τῆς ἀγαθῆς ἐλπίδος τοῖς ἐναντίοις ὁμόσε χωρεῖτε.”
- 14 Τοσαῦτα Γουβάξης εἰπὼν ἐξῆγε τὸ Λαζῶν στράτευμα, καὶ ἐτάξαντο ὧδε. πρῶτοι μὲν οἱ Λαζῶν ἵππεῖς τεταγμένοι ἀπ’ ἐναντίας ἦσαν, ὅπισθεν δὲ οὐκ ἄγχιστά πη, ἀλλ’ ὡς ἀπωτάτω,
- 15 ἡ Ῥωμαίων ἵππος αὐτοῖς εἶπετο. τούτων δὲ δὴ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἡγοῦντο Φιλήγαγός τε, Γήπαις γένος, δραστήριος ἀνὴρ, καὶ Ἰωάννης Ἀρμένιος, διαφερόντως ἀγαθὸς τὰ πολέμια, Θωμᾶ υἱός, ὃνπερ ἐπὶ κλησιν ἐκάλουν Γούζην, οὗ δὲ καὶ τοῖς
- 16 ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις ἐμνήσθην. ἐν ὑστέρῳ δὲ Γουβάξης τε ὁ Λαζῶν βασιλεὺς καὶ Δαγισθαῖος ὁ Ῥωμαίων στρατηγὸς ξὺν τοῖς ἀμφοτέρων πεζοῖς εἶποντο, λογισάμενοι ὡς, εἰ τοῖς ἵππεῦσι τραπήναι ξυμβαίῃ, ἐς αὐτοὺς ῥᾶστα σωθήσονται.
- 17 Ῥωμαῖοι μὲν οὖν καὶ Λαζοὶ τῷ τρόπῳ τούτῳ ἐτάξαντο, Χοριάνης δὲ ἀνδρας μὲν χιλίους τῶν οἱ ἐπομένων ἀπολεξάμενος τεθωρακισμένους τε καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἐξοπλισμένους ὡς ἄριστα, πρόσω ἐπὶ κατασκοπῇ ἔπεμψεν, αὐτὸς δὲ παντὶ τῷ ἄλλῳ στρατῷ ὅπισθεν ἦει, φυλακτῆριον ὀλίγων
- 18 τινῶν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἀπολιπών. προτερήσασα δὲ ἡ Λαζῶν ἵππος ἀτιμάζει τὰς ἐπαγγελίας οἷς ἔδρασεν, ἐπὶ τῶν ἔργων διαβαλοῦσα τὰς πρόσθεν
- 19 ἐλπίδας. τοῖς γὰρ τῶν πολεμίων προδρόμοις ἐντετυχηκότες ἐξαπιναίως οὐκ ἐνεγκόντες τε τὴν

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. VIII 12-19

the spirit has been humbled, it is by no means wont to mount again. Holding these thoughts then before your minds, advance with high hopes to close with the enemy ”

After making such a speech Gubazes led out the army of the Lazi, and they arrayed themselves as follows. As a vanguard the cavalry of the Lazi advanced in order against the foe, while the Roman cavalry followed them, not at a short interval, but very far in the rear. This particular Roman force was under the leadership of Philegagus, a Gepaid by birth and an energetic man, and of John the Armenian, son of Thomas, an exceptionally able warrior who was known by the surname Guzes, and who has been mentioned already in the previous narrative¹. Behind these followed Gubazes, the king of the Lazi, and Dagisthaeus, the general of the Romans, with the infantry of both armies, reasoning that, should it come about that the cavalry were routed, they would be saved very easily by falling back on them. So the Romans and the Lazi arrayed themselves in this manner, Chorianes meanwhile selected from his army a thousand men equipped with the coiselet and in all other respects most thoroughly armed, and sent them forward as a scouting party, while he himself with all the rest of the army marched in the rear, leaving behind in the camp a garrison of only a few men. Now the cavalry of the Lazi which had gone ahead shewed in what they did scant regard for their professions, denouncing by their actions the hopes which they had previously aroused. For when they came suddenly upon the advance party of the enemy, they did not bear the sight of them, but straightway

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- αὐτῶν ὄψιν, τρέψαντες αὐτίκα τοὺς ἵππους, κόσμῳ οὐδενὶ ὀπίσω ἀνέστρεφον, τοῖς τε Ῥωμαίοις ἐπειγόμενοι¹ ἀνεμίγνυντο, ἐς αὐτοὺς οὐκ ἀπαξιούντες καταφυγεῖν οἷς δὴ ξυντάσσεσθαι τὰ
- 20 πρότερα ὥκνουν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀμφοτέροι ἀλλήλων ἄγχιστα ἴκοντο, χειρῶν μὲν τὰ πρότερα οὐδέτεροι² ἦρχον οὐδὲ ξυνέμισγον, ἀλλὰ τῶν ἐναντίων ἑκάτεροι ἐπιόντων μὲν ἀνεπόδιζον, ὑποχωρούντων δὲ ἐπεβάτευον, ἐς τε ὑπαγωγὰς καὶ παλινδιώξεις καὶ ἀγχιστρόφους μεταβολὰς πολὺν τινα κατέτριψαν χρόνον.
- 21 Ἦν δέ τις Ἀρταβάνης ὄνομα ἐν τούτῳ τῷ Ῥωμαίων στρατῷ, Περσαρμένιος γένος, ὅσπερ ἐς Ἀρμενίου τοὺς Ῥωμαίων κατηκόους πολλῷ πρότερον ἀπηντομοληκῶς ἔτυχεν, οὐχ ἀπλῶς, ἀλλὰ φόνῳ Περσῶν εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατὸν ἀνδρῶν μαχίμων Ῥωμαίοις τὴν ἐς αὐτοὺς πίστιν πεποιη-
- 22 μένος ἐχέγγουν. Βαλεριανῷ γὰρ τότε στρατηγούντι ἐν Ἀρμενίοις ἐς ὄψιν ἐλθὼν ἄνδρας πεντήκοντα Ῥωμαίους οἱ αὐτῷ διδόναι ἐδεῖτο· τυχῶν τε ὧνπερ ἐβούλετο, ἐς φρούριον ἐν
- 23 Περσαρμενίοις κείμενον ἦει οὗ δὴ ἑκατὸν τε καὶ εἴκοσι³ Περσῶν φυλακτῆριον ὑπὸ⁴ τῷ φρουρίῳ αὐτὸν ξὺν τοῖς ἐπομένοις ἐδέξαντο, οὐπω ἐνδηλον ὄντα ὅτι δὴ μεταπορευθεὶς τὴν πολιτείαν νεωτε-
- 24 ρίζει. ὁ δὲ τοὺς τε εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατὸν κτείνας καὶ ξύμπαντα ληισάμενος τὰ ἐν τῷ φρουρίῳ χρήματα, μεγάλα ὑπερφυῶς ὄντα, παρὰ Βαλεριανὸν καὶ τὸ Ῥωμαίων στράτευμα ἦλθε,⁵ πιστὸς τε σφίσιν

¹ ἐπειγόμενοι L ἐπιγινόμενοι K

² πρότερα οὐδέτεροι πρότερα οὐδ' ἕτεροι K, πρῶτα οὐδέτεροι L

³ εἴκοσιν K. εἴκοσι ἦν Comparetti.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. viii. 19-24

wheeled then horses and began to gallop back to the rear in complete disorder ; and pressing onward they mingled with the Romans, not declining to take refuge with the very men beside whom they had previously been unwilling to array themselves. But when the two forces came close to each other, neither side at first opened the attack or joined battle, but each army drew back as their opponents advanced and in turn followed them as they retired, and they consumed much time in retreats and counter-pursuits and swiftly executed changes of front

But there was a certain Artabanus in that Roman army, a Persarmenian¹ by birth, who had, as it happened, deserted long before to the Armenians who are subjects of the Romans, not as a simple deserter however, but by the slaughter of one hundred and twenty Persian warriors he had given the Romans a pledge of his loyalty to them. For he had come before Valerian, who at that time was a general in Armenia and requested him to give him fifty Romans, and upon getting what he wished he proceeded to a fortress situated in Persarmenia. There a garrison of one hundred and twenty Persians received him with his company into the fortress, it not being as yet clear that he had changed his allegiance and gone over to the enemy. He then slew the hundred and twenty men and plundered all the money in the fortress—and there was an enormous quantity of it—and so came to Valerian and the Roman army, and having thus proved

¹ Persarmenia was the portion of Armenia subject to Persia.

⁴ ὑπό L ὑπέρ K, οἴπερ Comparetti

⁵ ἦλθε K ἦει L.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἀπ' αὐτοῦ φανείς Ῥωμαίοις τὸ λοιπὸν ξυνε-
 25 στρατεύεν. οὗτος Ἀρταβάνης ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ
 μάχῃ δύο ξὺν αὐτῷ τῶν Ῥωμαίων στρατιωτῶν
 ἐπαγόμενος ἐν μεταίχμιῳ ἐγένετο, οὗ δὴ ἀφίκοντο
 26 καὶ τῶν πολεμίων τινές. ἐφ' οὓς Ἀρταβάνης
 ὀρμήσας, τῶν Περσῶν ἕνα, ψυχῆς τε ἀρετῇ καὶ
 σώματος ἀλκῇ ἐπιεικῶς μέγαν, τῷ δόρατι εὐθὺς
 ἔκτεινεν, ἐκ τε τοῦ ἵππου ῥίψας προσουδίξει
 27 χαμαί. τῶν δέ τις βαρβάρων παρὰ τῷ πεπτω-
 κότι ἐστὼς ξίφει κατὰ κόρρης τὸν Ἀρταβάνην
 ἐπάταξεν οὐ καιρίαν πληγὴν. ἄτερός τε τῶν τῷ
 Ἀρταβάνῃ ἐπισπομένων, Γότθος γένος, τοῦτον δὴ
 τὸν ἄνδρα, τὴν χεῖρα ἔτι ἐν τῇ τοῦ Ἀρταβάνου
 κεφαλῇ ἔχοντα, κατὰ λαγόνα ἐπιτυχὼν τὴν
 28 εὐώνυμον διεχρήσατο. καὶ οἱ χίλιοι τοῖς ξυμπε-
 πτωκόσιν ἐκπεπληγμένοι ὀπίσω ἐχώρουν, τὸν τε
 Χοριάνην σὺν τῷ ἄλλῳ Περσῶν τε καὶ Ἀλανῶν
 στρατῷ ἔμενον καὶ οὐκ ἐς μακρὰν ἀνεμίγνυντο
 σφίσιν.
 29 Ἦδη δὲ καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Γουβάζην καὶ Δαγισθαῖον
 πεζοὶ ἐς ἵππεῖς τοὺς σφετέρους ἀφίκοντο καὶ ἡ
 30 μάχῃ ἐν χερσὶν ἀμφοτέρωθεν ἦν τότε δὴ
 Φιλήγαγός τε καὶ Ἰωάννης, ἐλάσσους εἶναι ἢ
 ἐνεγκεῖν ἐπιούσαν τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων ἵππον
 οἴομενοι, μάλιστα ἐπεὶ ἀπέγνωσαν¹ τὴν Λαζῶν
 δύναμιν, ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων ἀποθορόντες ταῦτό
 ποιεῖν ἀναγκάζουσι Ῥωμαίους τε καὶ Λαζοὺς
 31 ἅπαντας. ἐς φάλαγγά τε ὥς βαθυτάτην ταξά-
 μενοι πεζοὶ μετωπηδὸν ἀντίοι τοῖς πολεμίοις
 ἕστησαν ἅπαντες, τὰ δόρατα ἐπανατεινόμενοι
 32 σφίσιν. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι οὐκ ἔχοντες ὅ τι γένων-

¹ ἀπέγνωσαν K ἐπέγνωσαν L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. viii. 24-32

himself faithful to them, he thereafter marched with the Romans. This Artabanus in the present battle placed himself in the space between the armies, taking with him two of the Roman soldiers, and thither came some of the enemy also. Artabanus charged these men, and engaging with one of the Persians who was a man of high valour and great bodily prowess, he straightway slew him with his spear and throwing him from his horse brought him down to the ground. But one of the barbarians standing beside the fallen man smote Artabanus on the head with a sword, but not with a mortal stroke. Then one of the followers of Artabanus, a Goth by birth, attacked this man, and while he still held his hand at Artabanus' head, smote him with a well-directed blow in the left flank and laid him low. Thereupon the thousand, being terrified at what had taken place, began to withdraw to the rear, where they awaited Chorianes and the rest of the army of Persians and Alani, and in a short time mingled with them.

By this time the infantry under Gubazes and Dagisthaeus also came up with their cavalry and both armies closed to a hand-to-hand encounter. At this point Philegagus and John, thinking they were too few to bear the onset of the barbarian horse, particularly because they had no confidence in the power of the Lazi, leaped from their horses and compelled all to do the same, both Romans and Lazi. They then arrayed themselves on foot in a very deep phalanx, and all stood with a front facing the enemy and thrusting out their spears against them. But the barbarians knew not what to make of it, for they

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ται (οὔτε γὰρ ἐπιδραμεῖν πεζοῖς γε οὔσι τοῖς ἐναντίοις ἐδύναντο οὔτε αὐτῶν ξυνταράξαι τὴν φάλαγγα οἷοί τε ἦσαν) ἐπεὶ αὐτοῖς οἱ ἵπποι ταῖς τε τῶν δοράτων αἰχμαῖς καὶ τῷ τῶν ἀσπίδων πατάγῳ ἀχθόμενοι ἀνεχαίτιζον, ἐπὶ τὰ τόξα ἔβλεπον ἅπαντες, ἐλπίδι θαρσύνοντες ὡς πλήθει βελῶν ῥᾶστα τοὺς πολεμίους ἐς φυγὴν τρέψονται.
- 33 καὶ Ῥωμαῖοι ξὺν Λαζοῖς ἅπασι ταῦτὸ τοῦτο ἐποιοῦν. ἐκατέρωθεν τε συχνὰ ἐς ἀλλήλους τοξεύματα ἦει, ἕκ τε ἀμφοτέρων πολλοὶ ἐπιπτον.
- 34 Πέρσαι μὲν οὖν καὶ Ἀλανοὶ μάλιστα συνεχῇ τὰ βέλη πολλῷ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἢ οἱ ἐναντίοι ἀφίεσαν. ἀλλ' αὐτῶν τὰ πολλὰ τὰς¹ ἀσπίδας ξυνέβαινε ἀποκρούεσθαι.
- Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ πολέμῳ Χοριάνῃ τῷ Περσῶν
- 35 ἄρχοντι βεβλήσθαι ξυνέβη. ὑφ' ἑτῶ μέντοι οὗτος ἀνὴρ ~~βληθείς~~ φανερόν οὐδενὶ γέγονε· τύχῃ γάρ τινι² ἐκ τοῦ ὀμίλου ἰὼν ὁ ἄτρακτος ἐς τε τοῦ ἀνθρώπου τὸν αὐχένα παγείς εὐθυωρὸν αὐτὸν διεχρήσατο, ἐνός τε θανάτῳ ἀνδρὸς ἢ τε μάχῃ ἐκλίθη καὶ πρὸς τοὺς Ῥωμαίους ἡ νίκη
- 36 ἐχώρει. ὁ μὲν γὰρ ἐκ τοῦ ἵππου ἐς τὸ ἔδαφος ἐπὶ στόμα πεσὼν ἔκειτο, δρόμῳ δὲ πολλῷ ἐπὶ τὸ χαράκωμα οἱ βάρβαροι ἦσαν, οἳ τε Ῥωμαῖοι ξὺν τοῖς Λαζοῖς ἐπισπόμενοι πολλοὺς ἐκτείνον, ἐλπίδα ἔχοντες αἰρήσειν αὐτοβοεῖ τὸ τῶν ἐναν-
- 37 τίων στρατόπεδον. ἀλλὰ τις τῶν Ἀλανῶν εὐψυχίας³ πέρι καὶ σώματος ἰσχύος⁴ εὖ ἦκων,⁵ τοξεύειν τε συχνὰ ἐφ' ἐκάτερα διαφερόντως ἐξεπιστάμενος, ἐς τοῦ χάρακος τὴν εἴσοδον στενο-

¹ τὰς Haury. ἐς τὰς MSS.

² τύχῃ γάρ τινι K ἐπεὶ οὕτω πως L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII viii. 32-37

were neither able to charge their opponents, who were now on foot, nor could they break up their phalanx, because the horses, annoyed by the points of the spears and the clashing of the shields, balked ; and so they all resorted to their bows, emboldened by the hope that by a multitude of missiles they would very easily turn their enemy to flight. The Romans likewise and all the Lazı began to do exactly the same thing. So from each side the arrows were flying in great numbers into both armies, and on both sides many men were falling. Now the Persians and Alani were discharging their missiles in a practically continuous stream and much faster than their opponents. However, the Roman shields checked the most of them.

In the course of this battle Chorianes, the commander of the Persians, happened to be hit. But by whom this man was wounded was not clear to anyone, for some chance guided the shaft as it came out of a crowded mass of men, fastened itself in the man's neck, and killed him outright, and by one man's death the battle was inclined and victory fell to the Romans. For as he fell from his horse to the ground on his face and lay there, the barbarians went in a wild rush to their stockade, while the Romans with the Lazı followed upon their heels and slew many, hoping to capture with one rush the camp of their opponents. But one of the Alani, who was a man of great courage and bodily strength and who knew unusually well how to shoot rapidly to either side, took his stand at the entrance of the

³ εὐψυχίας Haury : ἐς εὐψυχίας MSS

⁴ εὐψυχίας—ισχύος K. εὐψυχίαν σώματος ισχύι L

⁵ εὖ ἤκων Dindorf ἤκων MSS.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- τάτην οὖσαν εἰστήκει, ἐμπόδιός τε τοῖς ἐπιούσι
 38 παρὰ δόξαν ἐπὶ πλεῖστον ἐγίνετο. Ἰωάννης δέ,
 ὁ τοῦ Θωμᾶ παῖς, μόνος ὡς ἀγχοτάτω παρ'
 αὐτὸν ἦκων ἐξαπιναίως τὸν ἄνθρωπον δόρατι
 ἔκτεινεν, οὕτω τε Ῥωμαῖοι καὶ Λαζοὶ τοῦ
 στρατοπέδου ἐκράτησαν. καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων
 πλεῖστοι μὲν αὐτοῦ διεφθάρησαν, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ
 ἀπεκομίσθησαν ἐς τὰ πάτρια ἦθη, ὡς ἐκάστω
 39 δυνατὰ γέγονεν. αὕτη μὲν οὖν ἡ Περσῶν ἐσβολὴ
 ἐς γῆν τὴν Κολχίδα γενομένη ἐς τοῦτο ἐτελεύτα.
 καὶ ἄλλη δὲ Περσῶν στρατιὰ τοὺς ἐν Πέτρα
 φρουροὺς τῷ τε τῶν ἐπιτηδείων πλήθει καὶ πᾶσι
 τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐπιρρώσαντες ἀνεχώρησαν.

IX

- Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τάδε ξυνηνέχθη γενέσθαι. Λαζοὶ
 Δαγισθαῖον ἐς βασιλέα διέβαλλον, ἐς Βυζάντιον
 ἦκοντες,¹ προδοσίαν τε καὶ μηδισμὸν ἐπιφέροντες.
 2 Πέρσαις γὰρ αὐτὸν ἰσχυρίζοντο ἀναπεισθέντα οὐ
 βεβουλήσθαι καταπεπτωκότος τοῦ Πέτρας περι-
 βόλου ἐπιβατεῦσαι, τοὺς τε πολεμίους θυλάκους
 μεταξὺ ψάμμου ἐμπλησαμένους καὶ αὐτῶν τὰς
 ἐπιβολὰς ἀντὶ λίθων ποιησαμένους τοῦ περιβόλου
 3 ὅσα καταπεπτῶκει ταύτῃ κρατύνασθαι. ἔλεγόν
 τε ὡς Δαγισθαῖος, εἴτε χρήμασιν εἴτε ὀλιγωρίᾳ
 ἐς τοῦτο ἡγμένος, τὴν ἐπίθεσιν ἐς ἕτερόν τινα
 χρόνον ἀπέθετο, καὶ τοῦ καιροῦ τὴν ἀκμὴν
 ἐν τῷ παραυτίκα μεθῆκεν, ἧς γε οὐκέτι ἀντι-
 4 λαβέσθαι οἶός τε ἐγεγόνει. αὐτὸν οὖν βασι-
 λεὺς ἐν τῷ οἰκήματι καθεύδων ἐτήρει· Βέσσαν

¹ ἦκοντες L ἦκοντα K.

stockade, which was very narrow, and unexpectedly blocked the way for the oncoming Romans for a long time. But John, the son of Thomas, approached alone very close to him and slew the man with a spear, and thus the Romans and Lazi captured the camp. And great numbers indeed of the barbarians were destroyed there, and the remainder betook themselves away to their native land, each one as he found it possible to get there. So this invasion of the Persians into the land of Colchis ended in this way. Meanwhile another Persian army, after fortifying the garrison at Petra with an abundance of provisions and all other supplies, had departed on their way.

IX

IN the meantime the following took place. The Lazi began to slander Dagisthaeus to the emperor, going to Byzantium to do so, charging him with treason and Medizing. For they declared that he had yielded to the persuasion of the Persians in refusing to establish himself inside the fallen circuit-wall of Petra, while the enemy in the interval had filled bags with sand and laid courses with them instead of stones, and thus had made secure such parts of the circuit-wall as had fallen down. And they stated that Dagisthaeus, whether impelled to do so by a bribe or through negligence, had postponed the attack to some other time, and had thus let slip for the moment the precious opportunity which, of course, he had never again been able to grasp. The emperor consequently confined him in the prison and kept him under guard; he then appointed

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- δέ, ἐξ Ἰταλίας οὐ πολλῶ ἔμπροσθεν ἦκοντα, στρατηγὸν Ἀρμενίων καταστησάμενος ἐς Λαζικήν πέμπει, ἄρχειν ἐπαγγείλας τοῦ ἐνταῦθα Ῥωμαίων
 5 στρατοῦ. οὗ δὲ καὶ Βενίλος, ὁ Βούζου ἀδελφός, ξὺν στρατῷ ἤδη σταλὲς ἔτυχε καὶ Ὀδόναχός τε καὶ ὁ Βάβας ἐκ Θράκης καὶ Οὐλίγαγος Ἐρουλος γένος.
- 6 Ὁ τε Ναβέδης ἐσβαλὼν ἐς Λαζικήν στρατῷ ἄλλο μὲν τι λόγου ἄξιον οὐδὲν ἔδρασεν, Ἀβασγοῖς δὲ ἀποστᾶσιν ἀπὸ τε Ῥωμαίων καὶ Λαζῶν ἐπιχωριάσας τῇ στρατιᾷ ταύτῃ, παῖδας τῶν ἐν σφίσι λογίμων ἐξήκοντα ἐν ὁμήρων λόγῳ πρὸς
 7 αὐτῶν ἔλαβε. τότε δὲ ποιούμενος ὁ Ναβέδης ὁδοῦ πάρεργον, καὶ Θεοδώραν Ὀψίτη ξυνοικήσασαν (ὃς ἐγεγόνει Γουβάζου μὲν θεῖος, Λαζῶν δὲ βασιλεὺς) εὐρὼν ἐν Ἀψιλίοις εἶλεν, ἐς τε τὰ
 8 Περσῶν ἦθη ἀπήνεγκε. Ῥωμαῖα δὲ γένος ἢ γυνὴ ἐτύγχανεν οὔσα, ἐπεὶ ἐκ παλαιοῦ οἱ Λαζῶν βασιλεῖς ἐς Βυζάντιον πέμποντες βασιλέως τε γνώμῃ ξυνιόντες ἐς κῆδός τισι τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς γυναῖκας ἐνθένδε γαμετὰς
 9 ἐκομίζοντο. καὶ Γουβάζης ἀμέλει Ῥωμαῖας γυναικὸς ἐγεγόνει γένος.¹ ὅτου δὲ ἔνεκα οἱ Ἀβασγοὶ οὗτοι ἐς ἀπόστασιν εἶδον, ἐγὼ δηλώσω.
- 10 Ἐπειδὴ βασιλεῖς τοὺς σφετέρους καθεῖλον, ἥπέρ μοι ἔναγχος δεδιήγηται, στρατιῶται Ῥωμαίων πρὸς βασιλέως στελλόμενοι ἐπεχωρίαζόν τε αὐτοῖς ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον καὶ προσποιεῖσθαι τῇ Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ τὴν χώραν ἡξίου, καινά τε
 11 αὐτοῖς ἅττα ἐπέταττον. οἷσπερ Ἀβασγοὶ βιαιότεροις οὔσιν ἀτεχνῶς ἤχθοντο. δέισαντες οὖν μὴ

¹ γένος K γόνος L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. ix. 4-11

Bessas, who had returned not long before from Italy, General of Armenia and sent him to Lazica with instructions to command the Roman army there Venilus, the brother of Buzes, had also been sent there already with an army, as well as Odonachus, Babas from Thrace, and Uligagus of the Eruli.

Now Nabedes had invaded Lazica with an army, but he accomplished nothing of consequence beyond spending some time with this army among the Abasgi, who had revolted from the Romans and Lazi, and taking from them sixty children of their notables as hostages. It was at that time that Nabedes as an incident of his journey captured Theodora, the consort of Opsites (he was uncle of Gubazes and king of the Lazi), finding her among the Apsili, and he carried her off to the land of Persia. Now this woman happened to be a Roman by birth, for the kings of the Lazi from ancient times had been sending to Byzantium, and, with the consent of the emperor, arranging marriages with some of the senators and taking home their wives from there. In fact Gubazes was sprung from a Roman family on his mother's side. But the reason why these Abasgi turned to revolt I shall now set forth.

When they had removed from power their own kings, as has been told by me above,¹ Roman soldiers sent by the emperor began to be quartered among them very generally, and they sought to annex the land to the Roman empire, imposing certain new regulations upon them. But because these were rather severe the Abasgi became exceedingly wroth. Fearing, consequently, that they would be mere

¹ Chap. iii. 21

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- Ῥωμαίων δοῦλοι τὸ λοιπὸν ἔσονται, τοὺς ἄρχοντας αὐθις κατεστήσαντο σφίσιν Ὀψίτην μὲν ὄνομα ἐς τῆς χώρας τὰ πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα ἥλιον,
- 12 Σκεπαρνᾶν δὲ ἐς τὰ πρὸς ἐσπέραν. ἐς ἀγαθῶν γὰρ ἐκπεπτωκότες ἀπόγνωσιν τὰ πρότερον δόξαντα σφίσι μοχθηρὰ εἶναι τῶν ἐπιγενομένων ἅτε πονηροτέρων ὄντων, ὥς τὸ εἶκός, ἀντηλλάσσοντο, δύναμιν τε ἀπ' αὐτοῦ τὴν Ῥωμαίων δειμαίνοντες Πέρσαις ὡς λαθραιότατα προσεχώρησαν. ἅπερ ἐπεὶ βασιλεὺς Ἰουστινιανὸς ἤκουσε, Βέσσαν ἐκέλευε στράτευμα λόγου ἄξιον¹ ἐπ' αὐτοὺς
- 13 στείλαι.² ὁ δὲ πολλοὺς ἀπολεξάμενος τοῦ Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ, καὶ ἄρχοντας ἐπιστήσας αὐτοῖς Οὐλίγαγόν τε καὶ Ἰωάννην τὸν Θωμᾶ υἱόν, αὐτίκα ἐπὶ τοὺς Ἀβασγοὺς ναυσὶν ἔπεμψεν³ ἐτύγχανε δὲ ἄτερος μὲν τῶν ἐν Ἀβασγοῖς ἡγουμένων, Σκεπαρνᾶς ὄνομα, ἐν Πέρσαις τινὰ
- 14 διατριβὴν ἔχων· μετάπεμπτos γὰρ ὀλίγῳ πρότερον παρὰ Χοσρόην ἀφίκτο.⁴ ὁ δὲ δὴ ἕτερος, τὴν Ῥωμαίων μαθὼν ἔφοδον, τοὺς τε Ἀβασγοὺς ἅπαντας ἤγειρε καὶ ὑπαντιάζειν διὰ σπουδῆς εἶχεν.
- 15 Ἔστι δὲ χώρος μετὰ τοὺς Ἀψιλίας ὄρους ἐν τῇ ἐς τὴν Ἀβασγίαν εἰσόδῳ τοιόσδε· ὄρος ὑψηλὸν ἐκ τῶν Καυκασίων ἀρχόμενον καὶ κατὰ βραχὺ ἐλασσούμενόν τε καὶ ὑπολήγον ὥσπερ τις κλῖμαξ κατατείνει καὶ τελευτᾷ ἐς τὸν Εὐ-
- 16 ξεινον Πόντον. καὶ φρούριον μὲν ἐχυρώτατόν τε καὶ μεγέθους πέρι ἀξιολογώτατον ἐκ παλαιοῦ Ἀβασγοὶ ἐν τῇ ὑπωρεΐᾳ τοῦ ὄρους τούτου

¹ ἄξιον. om K, ἄξιον ἐπαγόμενον L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. IX. 11-16

slaves of the Romans thereafter, they again put their rulers in power, one named Opsites in the eastern part of their country, and Sceparnas in the western part. Thus, because they had fallen into despair of good things, they naturally enough sought to regain the status which had previously seemed to them grievous in place of their later estate, seeing this had been worse, and in consequence of this change they were in fear of the power of the Romans and as secretly as possible went over to the Persians. When the Emperor Justinian heard this, he commanded Bessas to send a strong army against them. He accordingly selected a large number from the Roman army, appointed to command them Uligagus and John the son of Thomas, and immediately sent them by sea against the Abasgi. Now it happened that one of the rulers of the Abasgi, the one named Sceparnas, was away for some reason among the Persians, for he had gone under summons not long before to Chosroes. But the other ruler, learning of the inroad of the Romans, mustered all the Abasgi and made haste to encounter them.

Now there is a place beyond the boundary of Apsilia on the road into Abasgia of the following description: a lofty ridge runs out from the Caucasus, and gradually sinks, as it runs along, to a lower level, resembling in a way a ladder, until it comes to an end at the Euxine Sea. And the Abasgi in ancient times built an exceedingly strong fortress of very considerable size on the lower slope of this mountain.

² στείλαι K. ἰέναι L

³ ναυσὶν ἐπεμψεν K. ἤει L

⁴ ἀφίκετο Dindorf: ἀφίκετο MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 17 ἐδείμαντο. οὐ δὴ καταφεύγοντες ἐκκρούουσιν αἰεὶ τὰς τῶν πολεμίων ἐφόδους, οὐδαμῇ ἐχόντων τὴν δυσχωρίαν βιάζεσθαι. μία δὲ εἴσοδος εἰσάγουσά ἐστιν ἔς τε τὸ φρούριον τοῦτο καὶ ἐς τὴν ἄλλην Ἀβασγῶν χώραν, ἥπερ ἀνδράσι σύνδυο ἐρχομένοις ἀπόρευτος τυγχάνει οὔσα.
- 18 μηχανὴ γὰρ οὐδεμία ἐστὶν ὅτι μὴ κατ' ἀνδρα καὶ μόλις πεζεύοντα ἐνθένδε ἰέναι. τῆς τε ἀτραποῦ ταύτης ὑπέρκειται φάραγξ ἐσάγαν σκληρὰ ἐκ τοῦ φρουρίου διήκουσα μέχρι ἐς τὴν
- 19 θάλασσαν. φέρεται δὲ καὶ προσηγορίαν τῆς φάραγγος ἀξίαν ὁ χῶρος, ἐπεὶ αὐτὸν ἐλληνίζοντες οἱ τῇδε ἄνθρωποι τὰ Τραχέα¹ καλοῦσιν.
- 20 Ὁ μὲν οὖν Ῥωμαίων στόλος μεταξὺ ὀρίων τῶν τε Ἀβασγῶν καὶ Ἀψιλίων κατέπλευσεν, Ἰωάννης δὲ καὶ Οὐλίγαγος ἐς τὴν γῆν τοὺς στρατιώτας ἀποβιβάσαντες πεζῇ ἐχώρουν, οἳ τε ναῦται ταῖς ἀκάτοις ὑπάσαις παρὰ τὴν ἡῖονα
- 21 τῷ στρατῷ εἶποντο. ἐπειδὴ δὲ τῶν Τραχέων ὡς ἀγχοτάτῳ ἐγένοντο, ἐξωπλισμένους τε ὀρώσιν Ἀβασγοὺς ἅπαντας καὶ τῆς ἀτραποῦ ὑπερθεν ἥς ἄρτι ἐμνήσθην κατὰ τὴν φάραγγα ὅλην ἐν τάξει ἐστῶτας, ἀμηχανία τε πολλῇ εἶχοντο θέσθαι² τὰ σφίσι παρόντα οὐδαμῇ ἔχοντες, ἕως ἐν αὐτῷ πολλὰ λογισάμενος Ἰωάννης ἄκεσιν
- 22 τινα τοῦ κακοῦ εὔρε. τὸν γὰρ Οὐλίγαγον ξὺν τῷ ἡμίσει τοῦ στρατοῦ ἐνταῦθα ἐύσας αὐτὸς τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπαγόμενος τὰς ἀκάτους ἐπλήρου. ἐρέσσοντές τε χῶρον τὸν τῶν Τραχέων περιηλθόν τε καὶ διέβησαν ὅλον καὶ κατὰ νώτου τῶν
- 23 πολεμίων ταύτῃ ἐγένοντο. ἄραντες οὖν τὰ σημεῖα ἐς αὐτοὺς ἤεσαν. Ἀβασγοὶ δὲ τοὺς πολεμίους

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. ix. 16-23

Here they always take refuge and repel the inroads of their enemies, who are in no way able to storm the difficult position. Indeed there is only one path leading to this fortress and to the rest of the land of the Abasgi, and this happens to be impassable for men marching by twos. For there is no possibility of getting along there except in single file and on foot, and that with difficulty. Above this path rises the side of an exceedingly rough gorge which extends from the fortress to the sea. And the place bears a name worthy of the gorge, for the inhabitants call it Trachea,¹ using a Greek word.

So the Roman fleet put in between the boundaries of the Abasgi and Apsili, and John and Uligagus disembarked their troops and proceeded on foot, while the sailors followed the army along the coast with all the boats. And when they came close to Trachea, they beheld the entire force of the Abasgi fully armed and standing in order along the whole gorge above the path which I have just mentioned, whereupon they fell into great perplexity because they were quite unable to handle the situation before them, until John, after reasoning long with himself, discovered a remedy for the trouble. For leaving Uligagus there with the half of the army, he himself took the others and manned the boats. And by rowing they rounded the place where Trachea was and passed it entirely and thus got in the rear of the enemy. Thereupon the Romans raised their standards and advanced. The Abasgi, then,

¹ "Rugged"

¹ ο' τῇδε ἄνθρωποι τὰ τραχέα L οὕτω δὴ K

² θέσθαι K. ὅπη θέσθαι L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- σφίσιν ἐκατέρωθεν ἐγκειμένους ἰδόντες ἐς ἀλκὴν
 μὲν οὐκέτι ἔβλεπον, οὐδὲ τὴν τάξιν ἐφύλασσαν,
 ἐς ὑπαγωγὴν δὲ. ξὺν πολλῇ ἀκοσμία τραπόμενοι
 πρόσω ἐχώρουν,¹ οὕτω τῷ δέει καὶ τῇ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ
 ἀμνηχανία συμποδιζόμενοι ὥστε οὔτε τὴν πατρίαν
 σφίσι δυσχωρίαν ἔτι διαγινώσκειν ἐδύναντο οὔτε
 24 πῃ εὐπετῶς ἐνθένδε ἰέναι Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ αὐτοῖς
 ἐκατέρωθεν ἐπισπόμενοί τε καὶ καταλαβόντες
 πολλοὺς ἔκτειναν. δρόμῳ τε ξὺν τοῖς φεύγουσιν
 ἐς τὸ φρούριον ἀφικόμενοι ἀνακεκλιμένης ἔτι
 ἐπιτυγχάνουσι τῆς ταύτης πυλίδος· οἱ γὰρ φύ-
 λακες ἐπιθεῖναι τὰς θύρας οὐδαμῇ εἶχον,² ἀλλὰ
 25 τοὺς φεύγοντας ἔτι ἐδέχοντο. τῶν τε φυγόντων
 τοῖς διώκουσιν ἀναμιχθέντων ἐπὶ τὰς πύλας
 ἵενται ἅπαντες, οἱ μὲν ἐπιθυμία τοῦ σώζεσθαι,
 26 οἱ δὲ τοῦ τὸ φρούριον ἐξελεῖν. ἀνακεκλιμένας
 οὖν τὰς πύλας εὐρόντες συνεισέβαλον³ ἐς ταύτας
 ἀλλήλοις. οἱ γὰρ πυλωροὶ οὔτε διακρίνειν ἀπὸ
 τῶν πολεμίων τοὺς Ἀβασγοὺς εἶχον οὔτε τὰς
 πύλας ὑπερβιαζόμενου τοῦ ὀμίλου ἐπιτιθεῖναι.
 27 Καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἀβασγοὶ ἄσμενοι ἐντὸς τοῦ
 περιβόλου γενόμενοι ξὺν τῷ φρουρίῳ ἠλίσκοντο,
 Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ τῶν ἐναντίων κεκρατηκέναι οἰόμενοι
 28 πόνῳ δυσκολωτέρῳ ἐνταῦθα ὀμίλουν. τῶν γὰρ
 οἰκίων συχνῶν τε οὐσῶν καὶ οὐ λίαν διεχουσῶν
 ἀλλήλων, ἀλλὰ καὶ τρόπον τείχους πανταχόθεν
 συμπεφραγμένων, Ἀβασγοὶ ἐς αὐτὰς ἀναβάντες
 καὶ σθένει παντὶ ἀμυνόμενοι, τοὺς πολεμίους
 κατὰ κορυφὴν ἔβαλλον, πόνῳ⁴ καὶ φόβῳ καὶ

¹ πρόσω ἐχώρουν L προσεχώρουν K ² εἶχον K ἰσχυρον L

³ εὐρόντες συνεισέβαλον K ὀρῶντες ξυνεισέβαλλον L.

⁴ πόνῳ K. δέει L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. ix. 23-28

seeing their enemy pressing upon them from both sides, no longer offered resistance nor even kept their ranks, but turning to withdraw in a very disorderly retreat they kept moving forward, but so impeded were they by their fear and the helplessness resulting therefrom that they were no longer able to find their way about the rough terrain of their native haunts, nor could they easily get away from the place. The Romans meanwhile were following them up from either side and caught and killed many. And they reached the fortress on the run together with the fugitives and found the small gate there still open, for the guards could by no means shut the gates, since they were still taking in the fugitives. So pursued and pursuers mingled together were all rushing toward the gate, the former eager to save themselves, the latter to capture the fortress. Finding then the gates open, they charged through them together: for the gate-keepers were neither able to distinguish the Abasgi from the enemy nor to shut the gates to with the throng overpowering them.

And the Abasgi for their part, though feeling relief at getting inside the fortress, were actually being captured with the fortress, while the Romans, thinking they had mastered their opponents, found themselves involved there in a more difficult struggle. For the houses were numerous and not very far apart from each other—indeed they were even crowded close enough together so that they resembled a wall all round, and the Abasgi mounted them and defended themselves with all their strength by hurling missiles upon the heads of their enemy, struggling with might and main and filled with

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- τῷ ἐς παῖδάς τε καὶ γυναῖκας ἐλέω καὶ τῇ
ἐνθένδε ἀπορία ἐχόμενοι, ἕως Ῥωμαίοις ἐμπρῆσαι
29 τὰς οἰκίας ἐς ἔννοιαν ἦλθε. πῦρ τοίνυν αὐταῖς
πανταχόθεν ἀνάψαντες τοῦ ἀγῶνος παντάπασι
τούτου ἐκράτησαν. Ὀψίτης μὲν οὖν, ὁ τῶν
Ἀβασγῶν ἄρχων, ξὺν ὀλίγοις τισὶ φυγεῖν
ἴσχυσεν, ἔς τε Οὐννους τοὺς πλησιοχώρους καὶ
30 ὄρος τὸ Καυκάσιον ἀνεχώρησε. τοῖς δὲ δὴ
ἄλλοις ἢ ξὺν ταῖς οἰκίαις ἐξηνθρακωμένοις τε-
τεφρῶσθαι ξυνέβη, ἢ ὑπὸ ταῖς τῶν πολεμίων
γεγονέναι χερσίν. ἐζώγρησαν δὲ Ῥωμαῖοι κί-
τὰς τῶν ἀρχόντων γυναῖκας ξὺν γόνυ παντὶ,
τοῦ τε φρουρίου τὸν περίβολον ἐς ἔδαφος
καθεῖλον καὶ τὴν χώραν ἔρημον κατεστήσαντο
ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον Ἀβασγοῖς μὲν οὖν τὰ
τῆς ἀποστάσεως ἐς τοῦτο ἐτελεύτα· ἐν δὲ
Ἀψιλίοις ἐγένετο τάδε.

X

- Ἀψίλιοι μὲν ἐκ παλαιοῦ κατήκοοι Λαζῶν
τυγχάνουσιν ὄντες. ἔστι δέ τι φρούριον ἐν
ταύτῃ τῇ χώρᾳ ἐχυρὸν μάλιστα. Τζιβιλὴν
2 αὐτὸ καλοῦσιν οἱ ἐπιχώριοι τῶν δὲ τις ἐν
Λαζοῖς λογίμων, Τερδέτης ὄνομα, ὅσπερ εἶχε
τὴν τοῦ καλουμένου μαγίστρου ἀρχὴν ἐν τούτῳ
τῷ ἔθνει, Γουβάζῃ τῷ τῶν Λαζῶν βασιλεῖ
προσκεκρουκῶς τε καὶ χαλεπῶς ἔχων, Πέρσαις
ὡμολόγησε λάθρα τοῦτο δὴ ἐνδώσειν τὸ φρού-
ριον, στράτευμά τε Περσῶν ἐπαγόμενος ἐπὶ
3 ταύτῃ τῇ πράξει ἐς Ἀψιλίαν ἦει. καὶ ἐπεὶ

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII ix. 28-x. 3

terror and with pity for their children and women, and consequently overcome with despair, until it occurred to the Romans to fire the houses. They accordingly set fire to them on all sides, and thus were completely victorious in this struggle. Now Opsites, the ruler of the Abasgi, succeeded in making his escape with only a few men, and withdrew to the neighbouring Huns and the Caucasus mountains. But the others were either charred and burned to ashes with their houses or fell into the hands of their enemy. The Romans also captured the women of their rulers with all their offspring, razed the defences of the fortress to the ground, and rendered the land desolate to a great distance. For the Abasgi, then, this was the result of their revolution. But among the Apsili the following took place

X

THE Apsili have been subjects of the Lazi from ancient times. Now there is in this country an exceedingly strong fortress which the natives call Tzibile. But one among the notables of the Lazi, Teidetes by name, who held the office of "magister,"¹ as it is called, in this nation, had had a falling out with Gubazes, the king of the Lazi, and was hostile to him, accordingly he secretly promised the Persians to hand over this particular fortress to them, and he came into Apsilia leading an army of Persians to accomplish this object. Then, when they came

¹ A military title equivalent to "General."

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἄγχιστα τοῦ φρουρίου ἐγένοντο, προτερήσας αὐτὸς ξὺν τοῖς ἐπομένοις οἱ Λαζοῖς ἐντὸς τοῦ περιβόλου ἐγένετο, ἐπεὶ οἱ τὸ φυλακτήριον ταύτῃ ἔχοντες ἀπιστεῖν τῷ Λαζῶν ἄρχοντι οὐδαμῇ εἶχον, οὐδεμιᾶ ἐς αὐτὸν ὑποψία ἐχόμενοι. οὕτω τε ἀφικόμενον τὸ Περσῶν στράτευμα τῷ φρουρίῳ
- 4 ὁ Τερδέτης ἐδέξατο. καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ Μῆδοι οὐ Λαζικὴν μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ Ἀψιλίαν ἔχεσθαι τότε πρὸς αὐτῶν ᾤοντο. οὔτε δέ¹ Ῥωμαῖοι οὔτε Λαζοὶ ἀσχολία τῇ ἀμφὶ Πέτρα τε καὶ τῷ Μήδων στρατῷ πιεζόμενοι Ἀψιλίοις ἐπαμύνειν ἔσχον
- 5 Ἦν δέ τις γυνὴ τῷ ἄρχοντι τοῦ ἐνταῦθα φυλακτηρίου, Ἀψιλία γένος, τὴν ὄψιν εὐπρεπῆς μάλιστα. ταύτης δὴ τῆς γυναικὸς ἐκτόπως ἐρασθεῖς² ἐξαπιναίως ὁ τοῦ Περσῶν στρατεύματος ἄρχων τὰ μὲν πρῶτα πειρᾶν ἤρξατο, ἔπειτα δέ, ἐπεὶ οἱ πρὸς τῆς γυναικὸς οὐδὲν προὔχῳρει, βιάζεσθαι μελλήσει αὐτὴν οὐδεμιᾶ
- 6 ἐνεχείρησεν. οἷς δὴ ὀξυθυμῶθεις ὁ τῆς γυναικὸς ἀνὴρ, αὐτὸν τε νύκτωρ καὶ τοὺς ξὺν αὐτῷ ἐς τὸ φρούριον εἰσεληλυθότας ἅπαντας ἔκτεινε, παρανάλωμα τῆς τοῦ ἄρχοντος ἐπιθυμίας γεγεννημένους, καὶ τὸ φρούριον ἔσχευ αὐτός. Ἀψιλιοὶ τε Κόλχων διὰ τοῦτο ἀπέστησαν, ἐπικαλοῦντες ὅτι δὴ σφᾶς πρὸς Περσῶν κακουμένους³ προσποιεῖσθαι οὐδαμῇ ἠθέλον.⁴
- 7 ἀλλὰ Γουβάξης Ῥωμαίων χιλίους καὶ Ἰωάννην τὸν Θωμᾶ υἱόν, οὐπερ ἑναγχος ἐπεμνήσθην, ἐπ'

¹ δέ MSS. Haury would prefer γάρ

² ἐρασθεῖς K ὑπερασθεῖς L

³ κακουμένους K καλουμένους L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. x. 3-7

close to the fortress, he himself went ahead with his Lazic followers and got inside the fortifications, because those keeping guard there could in no way disobey the commander of the Lazı, feeling as they did no suspicion of him. Thus when the Persian army arrived Terdetes received it into the fortress. And as a result of this the Medes considered that not Lazica alone, but also Apsilia was held by them. Meanwhile neither the Romans nor the Lazı were in a position to defend the Apsili, being hard pressed, as they were, by the task of dealing with Petra and the Median army.

But there was a certain woman who was the wife of the commander of the garrison there, one of the Apsili, an exceedingly comely person to look upon. With this woman the commander of the Persian army suddenly fell violently in love, and at first he began to make advances, but after that, since he met with no encouragement from the woman, he attempted with no hesitation to force her. At this the husband of the woman became exceedingly enraged, and at night he slew both the commander and all those who had entered the fortress with him, who thus became incidentally victims of their commander's lust, and he himself took charge of the fortress. On account of this affair the Apsili revolted from the Colchians,¹ alleging against them that, whilst the Apsili were being oppressed by the Persians, they had been altogether unwilling to champion their cause. But Gubazes sent a thousand Romans and John the son of Thomas, whom I have

¹ i.e. the Lazı, cf. chap. i. 10

⁴ προσποιεῖσθαι οὐδαμῇ ἡθελον K οὐδαμῇ ἡμυνον L.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

αὐτοὺς ἔπεμψεν· ὅσπερ αὐτοὺς πολλὰ τιθασ-
σεύων ἐπαγαγέσθαι ἀμαχητὶ ἔσχε καὶ Λαζῶν
κατηκόους κατεστήσατο αὐθις. τὰ μὲν οὖν
ἀμφί τε Ἀψιλίοις καὶ Τζιβιλῇ τῷ φρουρίῳ
τῇδε ἐχώρησεν.

- 8 Ὑπὸ τοῦτον δὲ τὸν χρόνον Χοσρόη ξυνέβη
μηδὲ τὸν γόνον τῇ ἀπανθρωπία τῇ αὐτοῦ ἀνέ-
παφον μεῖναι.¹ τῶν γάρ οἱ παίδων ὁ πρεσβύ-
τατος Ἀνασώζαδος ὄνομα (δύναται δὲ τοῦτο τῇ
Περσῶν φωνῇ ἀθανατίζων) προσκεκρουκῶς αὐτῷ
ἔτυχεν, ἄλλα τε πολλὰ τῇ ἐς τὴν δίαιταν παρα-
νομία ἐξαμαρτῶν καὶ ταῖς γυναιξὶ τοῦ πατρὸς
ὀκνήσει οὐδεμιᾷ ἐς εὐνὴν συνιών. τὰ μὲν οὖν
πρῶτα φυγῇ τὸν παῖδα τοῦτον ὁ Χοσρόης ἐξ-
9 μίωσεν. ἔστι δέ τις ἐν Πέρσαις Οὐαζαίνῃ χώρα,
ἀγαθὴ μάλιστα, οὐ δὲ πόλις Βηλαπατῶν κα-
λουμένη οἰκεῖται, ἐπτὰ ἡμερῶν ὁδῷ Κτησιφῶντος
10 διέχουσα. ἐνταῦθα τοῦ πατρὸς ἐπαγγείλαντος²
Ἀνασώζαδος οὗτος διατριβὴν εἶχε.

- Τότε δὲ τῷ Χοσρόη χαλεπώτατα νοσῆσαι
ξυνέβη, ὥστε καὶ ἐλέχθη ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἀφα-
νισθῆναι· νοσώδης γὰρ ἦν ὁ Χοσρόης φύσει.
11 ἀμέλει καὶ τοὺς ἰατροὺς πανταχόθεν πολλάκις
ἀμφ' αὐτὸν ἡγειρεν, ἐν τοῖς καὶ Τριβοῦνος ὁ
12 ἰατρὸς ἦν, Παλαιστίνος γένος. ὁ δὲ Τριβοῦνος
οὗτος λόγιος μὲν ἦν καὶ τὰ ἐς τέχνην τὴν
ἰατρικὴν οὐδενὸς ἥσσω, ἄλλως δὲ σώφρων τε
καὶ θεοφιλὴς καὶ τῆς ἐπιεικειᾶς ἐς ἄκρον ἦκων.
13 καὶ ποτε Χοσρόην κακῶς τοῦ σώματος ἔχοντα
ἰασάμενος ἀπηλλάγη ἐκ τῆς Περσῶν χώρας,

¹ μεῖναι K; εἶναι L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. x 7-13

recently mentioned, against them; this man succeeded, after long efforts at conciliation, in winning them over without a fight and made them once more subjects of the Lazi. Such was the story of the Apsili and the fortress of Tzibile

At about this time it came about that Chosroes through his inhumanity did not remain unscathed even as regards his own offspring. For the eldest of his sons named Anasozadus (this means in the Persian tongue "Immortal") chanced to have a falling out with him, having been guilty of many breaches of conduct, and in particular having consorted with the wives of his father without the least hesitation. At first then Chosroes punished his son by banishment. Now there is a certain land in Persia called Vazaine, an exceedingly good country, in which the city named Belapaton is situated, seven days' journey distant from Ctesiphon. There at the command of his father this Anasozadus was living

But at that time it so fell out that Chosroes became very violently ill, so that it was actually said that he had passed from the world; for Chosroes was by nature of a sickly disposition. Certain it is that he often gathered around him physicians from all parts, among whom was the physician Tribunus, a Palestinian by birth. This Tribunus was a man of great learning and inferior to none in medical skill, and was furthermore a temperate and God-fearing man of the highest worth. On one occasion he had cured Chosroes of a serious illness, and when he departed from the land of the Persians, he carried

² ἐπαγγέλαντος Herwerden ἀπαγγέλαντος MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- δῶρα πολλά τε καὶ λόγου ἄξια πρὸς τοῦ
14 ἀνθρώπου κεκομισμένος. ἡνίκα τοίνυν ἡ ταύ-
της¹ προτέρα ἐκεχειρία ἐγένετο, Ἰουστινιανὸν
βασιλέα Χοσρόης τὸν ἱατρὸν τοῦτον συνδιαι-
τησόμενον αὐτῷ ἐς ἐνιαυτὸν ᾗτησε δοῦναι. τῆς
τέ οἱ αἰτήσεως² ἐπιτελεσθείσης, ὥσπερ μοι
ἐμπροσθεν εἴρηται, ἐκέλευσε τὸν Τριβούνον ὁ
15 Χοσρόης αἰτεῖσθαι ὅτου ἂν δέηται. ὁ δὲ ἄλλο
οὐδὲν ᾗτει τῶν πάντων χρημάτων ἢ ὥστε οἱ
Ῥωμαίων τῶν αἰχμαλώτων τινὰς³ Χοσρόην
16 ἀφείναι. ὁ δὲ οἱ ἄλλους τε τρισχιλίους ἀφήκε
καὶ ὅσους πρὸς ὄνομα ἐξητήσατο ἐν τοῖς αἰχμα-
λώτοις λογίμους ὄντας, κλέος τε μέγα ἐκ τοῦ
ἔργου τούτου ἐς πάντας ἀνθρώπους ὁ Τριβούνος
ἔσχε. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν τῇδε ξυνηνέχθη γενέσθαι
17 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ Ἀνασώζαδος τὰ Χοσρόη τῷ πατρὶ
ἀμφὶ τῇ νόσῳ ξυμπεσόντα ἔγνω, τῆς βασιλείας
18 ἐπιβατεύων, νεώτερα πράγματα ἔπρασσε. τοῦ
τε πατρός οἱ ῥαίσαντος, οὐδὲν τι ᾗσσον τὴν τε
πόλιν αὐτὸς ἀποστήσας καὶ ὅπλα ἀντάρας ἐς
19 τὸν πόλεμον ἀκμάζων ᾗει. ταῦτα ὁ Χοσρόης
ἀκούσας στρατιάν τε καὶ στρατηγὸν Φάβριζον
ἐπ' αὐτὸν ἔπεμψε. νικήσας οὖν τῇ μάχῃ ὁ
Φάβριζος ὑποχείριόν τε τὸν Ἀνασώζαδον πε-
ποιημένος παρὰ Χοσρόην οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον
20 ᾗνεγκε. καὶ ὃς τοὺς τοῦ παιδὸς ὀφθαλμοὺς
ἐλωβήσατο, οὐ τὰς ὀψεις ἀφελόμενος, ἀλλὰ
βλέφαρά τε ἄνω καὶ κάτω ἀκοσμία πολλῇ
21 ἀντιστρέψας. περόνην γὰρ σιδηρᾶν πυρακτώσας
τινὰ καὶ ταύτῃ μύοντοιν τοῖν τοῦ παιδὸς ὀφ-
θαλμοῖν τὰ ἔξω χρίσας, οὕτω δὲ τῶν βλεφάρων

¹ ταύτης MSS ταύτῃ editors

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII x 13-21

with him many and notable gifts from his patient. When, accordingly, the truce preceding the present one was made, Chosroes demanded of the Emperor Justinian that he give him this Tribunus to live with him for a year. This demand having been granted him, as stated by me above,¹ Chosroes bade Tribunus ask for whatever he wanted. And he asked for nothing else in the world except that Chosroes should release for him some of the Roman captives. So he released three thousand for him, and besides these all whom he requested by name as being notable men among the captives, and as a result of this incident Tribunus won great renown among all men. Thus did these events take place.

When Anasozadus learned of the disease which had fallen upon his father, he began to stir up a revolution by way of usurping the royal power. And though his father recovered, he nevertheless set the city in revolt himself, and taking up arms against him went forth fully prepared for battle. When Chosroes heard this, he sent against him an army with Phabrizus as general. So Phabrizus having been victorious in the battle made Anasozadus captive and brought him before Chosroes not long afterward. And he caused the eyes of his son to be disfigured, not destroying their sight but distorting both the upper and lower lids in a very ugly fashion. For he heated a sort of iron needle in the fire and with this seared the outside of his son's eyes when

¹ Book II xxviii 10

² αἰτήσεως K ξυνδιατήσεως L

³ τινάς Maltretus: τινά MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

22 τὸν κόσμον λωβήσασθαι¹ ἔσχε. ταῦτα δὲ Χοσρόης τούτου δὴ ἔνεκα ἐποίει μόνον, ὅπως ἂν τῷ παιδὶ ἀναστέλληται ἢ ἐπὶ τῇ βασιλείᾳ ἐλπίς. ἄνδρα γὰρ λώβῃ ἐχόμενον οὐκέτι ὁ νόμος ἐφίησι βασιλέα καθίστασθαι Πέρσαις, ὥσπερ καὶ τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις ἐρρήθη.

XI

Τῷ μὲν οὖν Ἀνασωζάδῳ τά τε τῆς τύχης καὶ τοῦ τρόπου ἐς τοῦτο ἐτελεύτα· τὸ δὲ πέμπτον
2 ἔτος τῆς ἐκεχειρίας διήνυστο. καὶ Πέτρον μὲν ἄνδρα πατρίκιον, τὴν τοῦ μαγίστρου ἀρχὴν ἔχοντα, παρὰ Χοσρόην Ἰουστινιανὸς βασιλεὺς ἔστελλεν, ἐφ' ᾧ τὰς σπονδὰς ἀμφὶ τῇ ἐφ' α
3 παντάπασι διοικήσονται.² ὁ δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπεπέμψατο, ἔψεσθαί οἱ ἄνδρα οὐκ ἐς μακρὰν ὑποσχόμενος τὸν ταῦτα διαθησόμενον, ὅπῃ ἐκατέροις
4 ξυνοίσειν μέλλει. Ἰσδιγούσναν τε αὖθις οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον ἔπεμψεν, ὁφρυνάζοντά τε καὶ ἀλαζονεῖα τινὶ ἀμυθῇτῳ ἐχόμενον, οὗ δὲ ὅ τε τύφος καὶ τὸ φύσημα φορητὸν εἶναι Ῥωμαίων
5 οὐδενὶ ἔδοξεν ἐπήγετο δὲ τὴν τε γυναῖκα καὶ τὰς παῖδας καὶ τὸν ἀδελφόν, ἐπομένων τε καὶ θεραπευόντων³ πάμπλου πληθός. εἵκασεν ἂν
6 τις ἐς παράταξιν τοὺς ἄνδρας ἰέναι. εἶποντο δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ δύο τῶν ἐν Πέρσαις λογιμωτάτων, οἳ δὴ καὶ διαδήματα ἐπὶ τῶν κεφαλῶν χρυσᾷ
7 ἐφόρουν. ἔδακνέ τε τοὺς ἐν Βυζαντίῳ ἀνθρώπους,

¹ λωβήσασθαι L βιάζεσθαι K.

² διοικήσονται: διοικήσωνται KH, διοικῆσεται L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. x 21-xi. 7

they were shut, thus marring the beauty of the lids. Now Chosroes did this with only one end in view, that his son's hope of achieving the royal power might be frustrated. For the law does not permit a man who has a disfigurement to become king over the Persians, as has been stated by me in the preceding narrative also.¹

XI

As for Anasozadus, then, his fortune and his character brought him to this. And when the fifth year of the truce had now come to an end, the 350 A D Emperor Justinian sent Petius, a patrician and holding the office of "Magister," to Chosroes, in order that they might arrange in every detail the treaty for the settlement of the East. But Chosroes sent him away, promising that after no long time he would be followed by the man who would arrange these matters in a manner advantageous to both parties. And not long afterwards he sent Isdigousnas for the second time, a man of pretentious demeanour and filled with a kind of unspeakable villainy, whose pompous puffing and blowing no one of the Romans could bear. And he brought with him his wife and daughters and his brother, and was followed by a huge throng of retainers. One would have supposed that the good men were going out for battle. In his company also were two of the most notable men among the Persians, who actually wore golden diadems on their heads. And it irritated the people

¹ Book I xi 4.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ὅτι δὴ αὐτὸν Ἰουστινιανὸς βασιλεὺς οὐ κατὰ
 πρεσβευτήν, ἀλλὰ πολλῷ ἔτι μᾶλλον φιλοφρο-
 σύνης τε καὶ μεγαλοπρεπείας ἡξίωσε.
- 8 Βραδούκιος μέντοι ξὺν αὐτῷ ἐς Βυζάντιον
 οὐκέτι ἦλθεν, ἐπεὶ Χοσρόην φασὶν αὐτὸν ἐξ
 ἀνθρώπων ἀφανίσαι, ἄλλο οὐδὲν τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ
 ἐπενεγκόντα, πλήν γε δὴ ὅτι ὁμοτράπεζος τῷ
- 9 Ῥωμαίων βασιλεῖ γέγονεν. “οὐ γὰρ ἄν,” ἔφη,
 “ἐρμηνεύς γε ὢν ἐς τοῦτο ἀξιώματος πρὸς βασι-
 λέως ἀφίκετο, εἰ μὴ καταπροδοὺς ἔτυχε τὰ
 Περσῶν πράγματα.” τινὲς δὲ τὸν Ἰσδιγούσαναν
 αὐτὸν διαβαλεῖν φασίν, ὡς λάθρα Ῥωμαίοις ἐς
- 10 λόγους ἔλθοι. τὰ δὲ πρῶτα ὁ πρεσβευτὴς οὗτος
 βασιλεῖ ἐντυχὼν οὐ μικρὸν ἀμφὶ τῇ εἰρήνῃ, οὐ
 μέγα εἶπεν, ἀλλ’ ἡτιάτο Ῥωμαίους¹ ἐς τὴν
 ἐκχειρίαν ἡδίκηκέναι, Ἀρέθαν τε καὶ Σαρακηνοὺς
 τοὺς Ῥωμαίων ἐνσπόνδους Ἀλαμουνδάρῳ ἐν
 σπονδαῖς λυμήνασθαι φάσκων, ἄλλα τε οὐκ
 ἀξιόλογα ἐπιφέρων² ἐγκλήματα, ὧν πέρ μοι
 ἐπιμνησθῆναι οὐτι ἀναγκαῖον ἔδοξεν εἶναι.³
- 11 Ἐν μὲν οὖν Βυζαντίῳ ταῦτα ἐπράσσετο.
 Βέσσας δὲ παντὶ τῷ Ῥωμαίων στρατῷ Πέτρας
 ἐς πολιορκίαν καθίστατο. Ῥωμαῖοι μὲν οὖν⁴
 ἀμφὶ τὸ τεῖχος διώρυσσον, ἵνα δὴ καὶ Δαγισθαῖος
 τὰ πρότερα τὴν διώρυχα πεποιημένος τὸν περίβο-
 λον ταύτῃ καθεῖλεν. ὅτου δὲ δὴ ἔνεκα ἐς τὸν
- 12 αὐτὸν χῶρον ὥρυσσον, ἐγὼ δηλώσω οἱ τὴν
 πόλιν τὸ ἐξ ἀρχῆς ταύτην δειμύμενοι, ἐπὶ πέτρας
 μὲν ἔθεντο ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον τὰ τοῦ περιβόλου

¹ Ῥωμαίους Hoeschel : ῥωμαίοις MSS.

² ἐπιφέρων W : φέρων KL

³ οὐτι ἀναγκαῖον ἔδοξεν εἶναι οὐκ ἀναγκαῖον W.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xi 7-12

of Byzantium that the Emperor Justinian did not receive him simply as an ambassador, but counted him worthy of much more friendly attention and magnificence

But Biaducius¹ did not come again with him to Byzantium, for they say that Chosroes had removed him from the world, laying no other charge against the man than that he had been a table-companion of the Roman emperor. "For," said he, "as a mere interpreter he would not have achieved such high honour from the emperor, unless he had betrayed the cause of the Persians." But some say that Isdigousnas slandered him, asserting that he had conversed secretly with the Romans. Now when this ambassador met the emperor for the first time, he spoke no word either small or great about peace, but he made the charge that the Romans had violated the truce, alleging that Ariethas² and the Saracens, who were allies of the Romans, had outraged Alamundarus in time of peace, and advancing other charges of no consequence which it has seemed to me not at all necessary to mention.

While these negotiations were going on in Byzantium, Bessas with the whole Roman army was entering upon the siege of Petra. First the Romans dug a trench along the wall just where Dagisthaeus had made his ditch when he pulled the wall down there.³ Now the reason why they dug in the same place I shall explain. Those who built this city originally placed the foundations of the circuit-wall for the

¹ Cf. Book II xxviii 41.

² Cf. Book II i 3-7

³ Book II xxix 36

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- θεμέλια, ἐνιαχῇ δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ χώματος αὐτὰ
 13 ξυνέβαινε κείσθαι. ἦν δέ τις τοῦ τείχους μοῖρα
 ἐς τῆς πόλεως τὰ πρὸς ἐσπέραν οὐ λίαν εὐρεία,
 ἣς δὴ ἐκατέρωθεν ἐπὶ πέτρας τινὸς σκληρᾶς τε
 καὶ ἀμυχάνου¹ τοῦ περιβόλου τὰ θεμέλια ἐτεκ-
 14 τήναντο. ταύτην τοίνυν τὴν μοῖραν Δαγισθαῖός
 τε τὰ πρότερα καὶ τανῦν Βέσσας διώρυσσον
 ὁμοίως, οὐκ ἐφειείσης² τῆς τοῦ χωρίου φύσεως
 σφίσι περαιτέρω ἵεναι, ἀλλὰ τὸ τῆς διώρυχος
 μήκος συμμετρούσης τε αὐτοῖς³ καὶ πρυτανευού-
 σης εἰκότως.
 15 Ἡνίκα οὖν Πέρσαι μετὰ τὴν Δαγισθαίου ὑπα-
 γωγὴν τὸ καταπεπτωκὸς τοῦτο τοῦ τείχους
 ἀνοικοδομήσασθαι ἤθελον, οὐ κατὰ τὰ πρότερα
 τὴν οἰκοδομίαν πεποιήνται, ἀλλὰ τρόπῳ τοιῷδε.
 16 κάχληκος τὸν κενωθέντα ἐμπλησάμενοι χῶρον
 δοκοὺς παχείας αὐτοῦ ὑπερθεῖν ἔθεντο, ὥσπερ
 ἐνδελεχέστατα ξύσαντες ὁμαλὰς τε παντάπασι
 καταστησάμενοι ἔξευξαν μὲν ἐς ἀλλήλας ἐς
 μέγα τι εὖρος, κρηπίδα δὲ αὐτὰς ἀντὶ θεμε-
 λίων ποιησάμενοι τοῦ περιβόλου καθύπερθε
 αὐτῶν ἐτεκτήναντο τὴν οἰκοδομίαν ἐμπείρως.
 17 ποιεῖσθαι τὴν διώρυχα ᾤοντο. καὶ τὸν χῶρον
 κενώσαντες ὅλον ἐκ τῶν δοκῶν ὧν περ ἐπεμνήσθη
 ἀρτίως ἐπὶ πλείστον τῆς γῆς τὸν μὲν περίβολον
 κατασεῖσαι κατὰ πολὺ ἴσχυσαν, μοῖρά τε αὐτοῦ
 ἐξαπινάως κατεπεπτώκει, οὐ μέντοι οὔτε πη ἐπὶ
 θάτερα τὸ πεπτωκὸς τοῦτο ἐκλίθη οὔτε τις αὐτῷ
 τῶν λίθων ἐπιβολὴ ξυνεταράχθη, ἀλλ' ἀκραιφνές

¹ ἀμυχάνου L : ἀμυχάνου ὀρύσσεσθαι K

² ἐφειείσης Suidas : ἀφειείσης K, ἐνδιδοῦσης L

most part upon rock, but here and there they were allowed to rest upon earth. And there was such a portion of the wall on the west side of the city of no great extent, on either side of which they had constructed the foundations of the circuit-wall upon hard, unyielding rock. This was the portion which Dagisthaeus on the previous occasion and now Bessas likewise undermined, the character of the ground not permitting them to go further, but quite naturally determining the length of the trench for them and controlling it naturally.

Consequently when the Persians, after the withdrawal of Dagisthaeus, wished to build up this part of the wall which had fallen down, they did not follow the previous plan in its construction, but did as follows. Filling the excavated space with gravel, they laid upon it heavy timbers which they had planed very thoroughly, making them entirely smooth, and then they bound them together so as to cover a wide space, these then they used as a base instead of foundation stones, and upon them they skilfully carried out the construction of the circuit-wall. This was not understood by the Romans and they thought they were making their ditch under the foundations. But by excavating the entire space under the timbers which I have just mentioned and carrying their work across most of the ground they did succeed in damaging the wall seriously, and a portion of it had actually dropped down suddenly, but nevertheless this fallen part did not incline at all to either side nor was one of the courses of stone deranged, but the whole section

³ ἀντοῖς Suidas ἀντούς K, αὐτό L.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ὅλον εὐθείᾳ τινὶ καταβάσει, ὥσπερ ἐκ μηχανῆς,
 ἐς τὸν κενωθέντα χώρον καταβὰν ἔστη, καὶ τὴν
 οἰκίαν ἐφύλασσε χώραν, οὐκ ἐς ὕψος ὅσον τὰ
 18 πρότερα, ἀλλ' ἐς τι¹ ἦσσαν. κενωθέντος οὖν
 παντὸς τοῦ τῶν δοκῶν ἐνερθεν χώρου ὑφίζανειν
 αὐτὰς ἐνταῦθα ξὺν τῇ ὑπὲρ αὐτὰς οἰκοδομία
 πάσῃ ξυνέβη.
- 19 Τοῖς δὲ Ῥωμαίοις οὐδ' ὥς ἐσβατὸν ἐγεγόνει τὸ
 τεῖχος. ὁ γὰρ τῶν Περσῶν ὄμιλος, ἥνικα πολὺς
 ξὺν τῷ Μερμερόῃ ἐνταῦθα ἦλθε, μέγα τι χρῆμα
 τῇ πρόσθεν οἰκοδομίᾳ ἐνθέμενοι ὑψηλὸν ἐσάγαν
 20 τὸν περίβολον ἐτεκτήναντο Ῥωμαῖοι μὲν οὖν,
 ἐπειδὴ τοῦ περιβόλου τὸ κατασεισθὲν αὐθις
 ἔστηκός εἶδον, διηποροῦντό τε καὶ ἀμηχανία
 21 πολλῇ εἶχοντο. οὐτε γὰρ διορύσσειν ἔτι ἠδύναντο,
 ἐς τοῦτο ἀποκεκριμένης² τῆς κατώρυχος σφίσι,
 κριῶ τε χρῆσθαι οὐδαμῇ εἶχον, ἐπεὶ ἐν μὲν τῷ
 ἀνάντει ἐτειχομάχουν, ἡ δὲ μηχανὴ αὕτη ἐφέλ-
 κεσθαι οὐχ οἷα τέ ἐστιν ὅτι μὴ ἐν χωρίῳ ὁμαλῷ
 τε καὶ λίαν ὑπτίῳ.
- 22 Τύχῃ δέ τινι ξυνεκύρησεν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ Ῥωμαίων
 στρατῷ εἶναι βαρβάρων τῶν Σαβείρων ὀλίγους
 23 τινὰς ἐξ αἰτίας τοιαύσδε. οἱ Σάβειροι ἔθνος μὲν
 ἐστὶν Οὐννικόν, ὥκηνται δὲ ἀμφὶ τὰ Καυκάσια
 ὄρη, πάμπολυ πλῆθος μὲν ἐσάγαν ὄντες, ἐς
 24 ἀρχὰς δὲ πολλὰς ἐπιεικῶς διηρημένοι. τούτων
 δὲ τῶν ἀρχόντων οἱ μὲν τινὲς εἰσι τῷ Ῥωμαίων
 αὐτοκράτορι, οἱ δὲ τῷ Περσῶν βασιλεῖ ἐκ
 παλαιοῦ γνῶριμοι. τοῖν τε βασιλείοιν ἐκάτερος
 χρυσίου εἰώθει τακτὸν τοῖς αὐτοῦ ἐνσπόνδοις
 προίεσθαι, οὐκ ἐπέτειον μέντοι, ἀλλ' ἥνικα ἂν ἐς
 25 τοῦτο αὐτὸν ἡ χρεία ἐνάγοι. τότε οὖν Ἰου-

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xi 17-25

descended intact in a direct line, as if let down by a machine, into the excavated space and stopped there, keeping its proper position, though not with the same height as before, but somewhat less. So when the whole space under the timbers had been excavated, it came about that they settled into it with the entire wall on them.

But even so the wall did not become accessible to the Romans. For when Mermeroes had come there with his great throng of Persians, they had added a great deal to the earlier masonry and so built the circuit-wall exceedingly high. So the Romans, when they saw the part of the wall which had been shaken down still standing, were at a loss and found themselves involved in great perplexity. For neither could they mine any longer, seeing their digging had brought such a result, nor were they able at all to employ the ram, for they were fighting against a wall on a slope, and this engine cannot be brought up to a wall except on smooth and very flat ground.

Now by some chance it so fell out that there were in this Roman army a small number of the barbarians called Sabini, for the following reason. The Sabini are a Hunnic nation and live in the region of the Caucasus, being a very numerous people and properly divided among many different rulers. And some of the rulers from ancient times have had relations with the Roman emperor, and others with the king of Persia. And each of these two sovereigns was accustomed to pay a fixed amount of gold to those in alliance with him, not annually, however, but only as need impelled him to do so. At that time, accord-

¹ ἔς τι Haury ἔτι MSS

² ἀποκεκρυμμένης Braun ἀποκεκρυμμένης MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- στινιανὸς βασιλεὺς τῶν Σαβείρων τοὺς οἱ ἐπιτηδείους ἐς τὴν ὁμαιχμίαν παρακαλῶν ἔστειλέ
 26 τινα τὸν τὰ χρήματα παρ' αὐτοὺς κομιοῦντα. ὁ δὲ (πολεμίων γὰρ μεταξὺ ὄντων ἐς ὄρη τὰ Καυκάσια ἰέναι ξὺν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ ἄλλως τε καὶ χρήματα ἐπαγόμενος οὐδαμῇ εἶχεν) ἀφικνεῖται μὲν παρά τε τὸν Βέσσαν καὶ τὸ Ῥωμαίων στρατόπεδον, ὅπερ ἐς τὴν Πέτρας πολιορκίαν καθίστατο, παρὰ δὲ τοὺς Σαβείρους πέμψας ἐκέλευσεν αὐτῶν τινὰς ὅτι τάχιστα τοὺς τὰ χρήματα ληψομένους παρ' αὐτὸν ἤκειν, οἳ τε βάρβαροι τρεῖς ἀπολεξάμενοι τῶν ἐν σφίσιν ἀρχόντων, ξὺν ὀλίγοις τισὶν ἐς Λαζικὴν εὐθύς ἔπεμψαν· οἱ δὲ ἐνταῦθα γενόμενοι ξὺν τῷ Ῥωμαίων στρατῷ ἐς τήνδε τὴν τειχομαχίαν κατέστησαν.
- 27 Οὗτοι ἐπειδὴ Ῥωμαίους εἶδον ἀπογνόντας, τε καὶ ἀπορουμένους τὸ παρὸν θέσθαι¹. μηχανὴν τινα ἐπετεχνήσαντο, οἷα οὐτε Ῥωμαίων οὐτε Περσῶν τινί, ἐξ οὗ γεγόνασιν ἄνθρωποι, ἐς ἔννοιαν ἦλθε· καίτοι τεχνιτῶν μὲν πολὺς ὄμιλος ἐν ἑκατέρᾳ
 28 πολιτείᾳ γέγονέ τε αἰεὶ καὶ τανῦν ἔστιν. ἐς χρεῖαν δὲ πολλάκις ἐς τὸν πάντα αἰῶνα κατέστησαν τῆς μηχανῆς ἑκάτεροι ταύτης, ἐς ἐρύματα τειχομαχοῦντες ἐν χωρίοις σκληροῖς καὶ δυσβάτοις τισὶ κείμενα· ἀλλ' αὐτῶν οὐδενὶ τὸ ἐνθύμημα τοῦτο γεγένηται ὅπερ τούτοις δὴ τοῖς βαρβάροις τανῦν γέγονεν· οὕτως αἰεὶ προιοῦντι τῷ χρόνῳ συννεωτερίζειν τῶν πραγμάτων τὰς ἐπινοίας
 29 φιλεῖ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἢ φύσις. κριὸν γὰρ αὐτοσχεδιάζουσιν οἱ Σάβειροι οὗτοι, οὐχ ἥπερ εἰώθει,
 30 ἀλλὰ καινουργήσαντες ἐτέρῳ τῷ τρόπῳ. οὐ γὰρ

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xi. 25-30

ingly, the Emperor Justinian, by way of inviting those of the Sabiri who were friendly to him to a fighting alliance, had sent a man who was to convey the money to them. But this man, seeing that, with enemies between, he could in no wise travel in safety into the Caucasus region, particularly when carrying money, went only as far as Bessas and the Roman army that was engaged in besieging Petia, and from there he sent to the Sabiri, bidding some of them who were to receive the money to come to him with all speed, whereupon the Sabiri selected three of their leading men and straightway sent them with a small escort into Lazica. These, then, were the men who, upon arriving there, had entered into the attack on the wall with the Roman army.

Now when these Sabiri saw that the Romans were in despair and at a loss how to handle the situation, they devised a contrivance, such as had never been conceived by anyone else of the Romans or of the Persians since men have existed, although there have always been and now are great numbers of engineers in both countries. And though both nations have often been in need of this device throughout their history, in storming the walls of fortresses situated on any rough and difficult ground, yet not to a single one of them has come this idea which now occurred to these barbarians. Thus as time goes on human ingenuity is ever wont to keep pace with it by discovering new devices. For these Sabiri improvised a ram, not in the customary form, but using a new method which was their innovation. They did not

¹ ἀπογνόντας—θέσθαι K ἀπογνόντας, ἐς τειχομαχίαν κατέστησαν ἑαυτοὺς καὶ ῥωμαίων ἀπορουμένων καὶ μὴ ἔχόντων εἰς αὐτοὺς τὸ παρὸν θέσθαι σάβειροι L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

δοκοὺς ἐς τὴν μηχανὴν ταύτην, οὐκ ὀρθάς, οὐκ ἐγκαρσίας ἐμβέβληνται, ἀλλὰ ῥάβδους παχείας τινὰς ἐς ἀλλήλας ξυνδέοντες, καὶ αὐτὰς ἀντὶ τῶν δοκῶν πανταχόθι ἐναρμοσάμενοι, βύρσαις τε τὴν μηχανὴν καλύψαντες ὅλην τὸ τοῦ κριοῦ διεσώσαντο σχῆμα, μίαν δοκὸν μόνην, ἥπερ εἴθισται, κατὰ μέσσην τὴν μηχανὴν ἀλύσεσιν ἀναρτήσαντες χαλαραῖς τισίν, ἥσπερ τὸ ἄκρον ὀξύ γεγεννημένον καὶ σιδήρῳ περικαλυφθὲν ὥσπερ βέλους ἀκὴς ἐμελλε συχὰ κατὰ τοῦ περιβόλου ἐμβάλλεσθαι.

31 οὕτω δὲ κούφην τὴν μηχανὴν ἀπειργάσαντο, ὥστε οὐκέτι αὐτὴν πρὸς ἀνδρῶν τῶν ἔνδον ὄντων ἐφέλκεσθαι ἢ διωθεῖσθαι ἀναγκαῖον ἐγίνετο, ἀλλ' ἄνδρες τεσσαράκοντα, οἳ καὶ τὴν δοκὸν ἀνασύρουν τε καὶ κατὰ τοῦ περιβόλου ἐμβάλλεσθαι ἐμελλον, ἔνδον τῆς μηχανῆς ὄντες καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν βυρσῶν καλυπτόμενοι ἔφερον τὸν κριὸν ἐπὶ τῶν ὤμων οὐδενὶ πόνῳ.

32 Τρεῖς μὲν οὗτοι οἱ βάρβαροι μηχανὰς τοιαύτας εἰργάσαντο, τὰς δοκοὺς ξὺν τῷ σιδήρῳ ἐκ τῶν κριῶν ἀφελόμενοι, οὓς δὲ Ῥωμαῖοι ἐν παρασκευῇ ἔχοντες οὐχ οἳ τε ἦσαν ἐς τὸ τεῖχος ἐφέλκουν ὑποδύντες δὲ αὐτῶν ἐκάστην οὐχ ἥσους ἢ κατὰ τεσσαράκοντα στρατιῶται Ῥωμαῖοι ἀριστίνδην ἀπολεχθέντες ὡς ἀγχοτάτῳ τοῦ τεύχους ἔθεντο

33 ἐκατέρωθεν δὲ μηχανῆς ἐκάστης ἕτεροι ἴσταντο, τεθωρακισμένοι τε καὶ κράνεσι τὰς κεφαλὰς ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς κεκαλυμμένοι καὶ κοντοὺς ἔχοντες, ὧν περ τὰ ἄκρα σιδηρίοις ἀγκιστροειδέσιν ἐρήρειστο, τούτου δὲ παρεσκευασμένων¹ αὐτοῖς ἕνεκα,² ὅπως, ἐπειδὴν ἡ τοῦ κριοῦ ἐς τὸν περίβολον ἐμβολὴ ξυγχέῃ τὰς τῶν λίθων ἐπιβολὰς, τούτοις δὲ τοῖς

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xi 30-33

put any beams into this engine, either upright or transverse, but they bound together some rather thick wands and fitted them in place everywhere instead of the beams, then they covered the entire engine with hides and so kept the shape of a ram, and hung a single beam by loose chains, as is customary, in the centre of the engine, and the head of this, having been made sharp and covered over with iron like the barb of a missile, was intended to deal repeated blows to the circuit-wall. And they made the engine so light that it was no longer necessary that it be dragged or pushed along by the men inside, but forty men, who were also destined to draw back the beam and thrust it forward against the wall, being inside the engine and concealed by the hides, could carry the ram upon their shoulders with no difficulty.

These barbarians made three such engines, taking the beams with their iron heads from the rams which the Romans had in readiness but were unable to draw up to the wall. And Roman soldiers chosen for their valour in groups of not less than forty went inside each one of them and set them down very close to the wall. And others were standing on either side of each engine, armed with the corselet and having their heads carefully covered by helmets and carrying poles, the ends of which were fitted with hook-shaped irons, now the purpose for which these had been provided was this, that as soon as the impact of the ram on the wall should break up the courses of the stones, they might be able with these

¹ τοῦτου δὴ παρεσκευασμένων L. τοῦτον δὴ παρεσκευασμένον K

² ἔνεκα L. ἤνεγκαν K

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- κοντοῖς περιαιρεῖν τε τοὺς ξυγχεσμένους τῶν λίθων
 34 καὶ ἀπορρίπτειν δυνατοὶ εἶν. Ῥωμαῖοι μὲν οὖν
 ἔργου εἶχοντο καὶ τὸ τεῖχος ἤδη συχναῖς ταῖς
 ἐμβολαῖς κατεσείετο, οἱ δὲ τῶν μηχανῶν ἐφ'
 ἑκάτερα ὄντες τοῖς ἀγκιστροειδέσι κοντοῖς τῶν
 λίθων τοὺς ξυνταρασσομένους ἀπὸ τῆς κατὰ τὴν
 οἰκοδομίαν ξυνθήκης ἐρρίπτουν, ἀλώσεσθαί τε ἡ
 πόλις αὐτίκα δὴ μάλα ἐπίδοξος ἦν.
 35 Οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι ἐπενόουν τάδε. ξύλινον πύργον,
 ὅσπερ αὐτοῖς ἐκ παλαιοῦ παρεσκεύαστο, καθύ-
 περθεν τοῦ περιβόλου ἐτίθεντο, ἀνδρῶν ἔμπλεων
 τῶν ἐν σφίσι μαχιμωτάτων, ἥλοις τε σιδηροῖς
 καὶ θώραξι τὰς τε κεφαλὰς καὶ τὸ ἄλλο σῶμα
 36 περιβαλόντων. ἀγγεῖα δὲ θείου τε καὶ ἀσφάλτου
 ἐμπλησάμενοι καὶ φαρμάκου ὅπερ Μῆδοι μὲν
 νάφθαν καλοῦσιν, Ἕλληνες δὲ Μηδείας ἔλαιον,
 πυρί τε ταῦτα ὑφάψαντες ἐπὶ τὰς μηχανὰς τῶν
 κριῶν ἔβαλλον, ὥσπερ ὀλίγου ἐμπιπράναι πάσας
 37 ἐδέησαν¹ ἀλλ' οἱ παρὰ ταύτας, ὥσπερ μοι
 ἐρρήθη, ἐστῶτες, τοῖς κοντοῖς, ὥνπερ ἐπεμνήσθην
 ἀρτίως, ἐνδελεχέστατα περιαιροῦντες τὰ βαλ-
 λόμενα καὶ περικαθαίροντες, ἅπαντα ἐς τὸ ἔδαφος
 38 ἐκ τῶν μηχανῶν εὐθὺς ἐρρίπτουν. οὐκ ἐπὶ πολὺ
 δὲ πρὸς τὸ ἔργον τοῦτο ἀνθέξειν ὑπώπτευον· τὸ
 γὰρ πῦρ οὐ προσψεύσειεν ἐνεπίμπρα αὐτίκα, εἰ
 μὴ εὐθυρὸν ἀποβληθείη. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἐπράσ-
 σετο τῇδε
 39 Βέσσας δὲ αὐτὸς τεθωρακισμένος καὶ ἅπαν
 ἐξοπλίσας τὸ στράτευμα κλίμακας πολλὰς ἐς τὸ
 40 πεπτωκὸς τοῦ τείχους προῆγε. καὶ λόγῳ τοσοῦ-

¹ ἐδέησαν Haury ἐδέησεν MSS

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xi. 33-40

poles to loosen and pull down such stones as were dislodged. So the Romans set to work and the wall was already being shaken by frequent blows, while those who were on both sides of the engines, using then hooked poles, were pulling down the stones as they were dislodged from their setting in the masonry, and it seemed certain that the city would be captured instantly.

But the Persians hit on the following plan. They placed on the top of the circuit-wall a wooden tower which had been made ready by them long before, filling it with their most valiant men, who had their heads and the rest of their bodies protected by iron nails and corselets. And they had filled pots with sulphur and bitumen and the substance which the Persians call "naphtha"¹ and the Greeks "Medea's oil," and they now set fire to these and commenced to throw them upon the sheds of the rams, and they came within a little of burning them all. But the men standing beside them, as I have said, by means of the poles which I have just mentioned kept removing these missiles with the greatest determination and clearing them off, so that they hauled everything down to the ground from the engines as soon as it fell. But they could not expect to hold out long in this work, for the fire kindled instantly whatever it touched, unless it was immediately thrown off. Such then was the course of events here.

But Bessas, who had himself donned his corselet and put his whole army under arms, began to move forward many ladders to the part of the wall which had sunk. And after stirring their courage with a

¹ Bitumen and naphtha were Persian products.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- τον παραθαρρύνας, ὅσον μὴ ἀμβλύναι τοῦ καιροῦ τὴν ἀκμήν, ἔργοις τῆς παρακελεύσεως τὰ λοιπὰ ἐνείμεν. ἀνὴρ γὰρ πλέον ἢ ἐβδομήκοντα γεγυῶς ἐτῶν καὶ παντάπασιν ἔξωρος ὧν ἡδὴ
- 41 πρῶτος ἐπέβη τῆς κλίμακος. ἐνταῦθα μάχῃ καὶ ἀρετῆς ἐπίδειξις γίνεται Ῥωμαίοις τε καὶ Πέρσαις οἷαν ἔγωγε κατὰ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον οὐδαμῇ οἶμαι
- 42 ξυνενεχθῆναι. τὸ μὲν γὰρ βαρβάρων πλήθος εἰς δισχιλίους καὶ τριακοσίους ξυνῆει, Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ ἐς
- 43 ἑξακισχιλίους ἐτύγχανον ὄντες. καὶ αὐτῶν ἑκατέρωθεν ὅσοι οὐ διεφθάρησαν τραυματαῖαι σχεδόν τι γεγόνασι πάντες, ὀλίγοις τε λίαν ἐπ' ἀθώοις τοῖς σώμασι περιεῖναι ξυνέβη. Ῥωμαῖοι μὲν οὖν τὴν ἀνάβασιν ἐβιάζοντο δυνάμει τῇ πάσῃ, Πέρσαι
- 44 δὲ αὐτοὺς πόνῳ πολλῷ ἀπεκρούοντο. ἀμφοτέρωθεν δὲ κτεινομένων πολλῶν οὐ μακράν που ἐγένοντο τοῦ ἀπεῶσθαι τὸν κίνδυνον Πέρσαι· ὠθισμοῦ γὰρ πολλοῦ ἐν τῇ τῶν κλιμάκων ὑπερβολῇ γεγεννημένου ἄλλοι τε Ῥωμαίων συχνοὶ ἅτε πολεμίοις καθύπερθεν οὔσι μαχόμενοι ἔθνησκον καὶ Βέσσας ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐς τὸ ἔδαφος πεσὼν¹
- 45 ἔκειτο. καὶ τότε δὴ κραυγῆς ἐξαισίας πρὸς ἀμφοτέρων γεγεννημένης οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι πανταχόθεν ξυρρέοντες ἐπ' αὐτὸν ἔβαλον, οἱ δὲ δορυφόροι ξυνέστησάν τε σπουδῇ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν καὶ κράνη μὲν ἐν ταῖς κεφαλαῖς ἔχοντες, θώρακας δὲ ἀμπεχόμενοι πάντες, ἔτι μέντοι καθύπερθεν ταῖς ἀσπίσι φραξάμενοι καὶ ἐν χρῶ ξυνιόντες ἀλλήλοις, ὀροφῆς αὐτῷ σχῆμα ἐποιοῦν καὶ τὸν τε στρατηγὸν ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα ἔκρυσαν καὶ τὰ
- 46 βαλλόμενα παντὶ σθένει ἀπεκρούοντο. καὶ

¹ πεσὼν K: ἐκπεσὼν L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xi. 40-46

speech of only such length as not to blunt the point of the opportunity, he devoted the remainder of his exhortation to action. For though he was a man of more than seventy years and already well past his prime, he was the first to mount the ladder. There a battle took place and a display of valour by both Romans and Persians such as I at least believe has never once been seen in these times. For while the number of the barbarians amounted to two thousand three hundred, the Romans counted as many as six thousand. And practically all those on both sides who were not killed received wounds, and it proved true that exceedingly few survived with their bodies intact. So the Romans, for their part, were struggling with all their strength to force the ascent, while the Persians on their side were beating them back with great vigour. Thus many were being slain on both sides and the Persians were not far from repelling the danger. For at the tops of the ladders a violent struggle for position took place, and many of the Romans, fighting as they were with an enemy above them, were being slain, and Bessas the general also fell to the ground and lay there. And at that point a tremendous shout arose from both armies as the barbarians rushed together from all sides and shot at him, and his bodyguard gathered hastily about him, all of them having helmets on the heads and wearing corselets, and by holding their shields close together over their heads and crowding in so as to touch one another, they made a sort of roof over him and concealed their general in complete safety, and kept fending off the missiles with all their strength. And a great din arose from

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- πάταγος μὲν τῶν αἰὲ πεμπομένων κὰν ταῖς ἀσπίσιν τε καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ὅπλοις ἀποκαυλιζομένων πολὺς ἐγεγόνει, κραυγῇ δὲ καὶ ἄσθματι
- 47 καὶ ταλαιπωρίᾳ ἕκαστος εἶχετο. Ῥωμαῖοί τε ἅπαντες τῷ στρατηγῷ ἀμύνειν ἐν σπουδῇ ἔχοντες ἔβαλλον¹ ἐς τὸ τεῖχος, οὐδένα ἀνιέντες καιρόν, καὶ ταύτῃ τοὺς πολεμίους ἀνέστελλον.
- 48 Τότε δὴ ὁ Βέσσας (οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐξανίστασθαι εἶχε, τῆς ὀπλίσεως ἀντιστατούσης, ἄλλως τε καὶ τοῦ σώματός οἱ οὐκ εὐσταλοῦς ὄντος, ἦν γὰρ οὗτος ἀνὴρ εὖσαρκός τε καί, ὅπερ ἐρρήθη, ἐσχατογέρων) οὐκ ἐς ἀμηχανίαν ἐξέπεσε, καίπερ ἐς τοσοῦτον κινδύνου ἦκων, ἀλλὰ βουλευεταί τι ἐκ τοῦ αἰφνιδίου ὧπερ² αὐτόν τε καὶ τὰ Ῥωμαίων πράγματα
- 49 διασώσασθαι ἔσχε. τοῖς γὰρ δορυφόροις ἐπέστελλε σύρειν τε αὐτὸν ἐκ ποδὸς καὶ ὡς ἀπωτάτω
- 50 τοῦ τεύχους ἐφέλκειν. οἱ δὲ κατὰ ταῦτα ἐποιοῦν. καὶ αὐτὸν οἱ μὲν ἔσυρον, οἱ³ δὲ ξὺν αὐτῷ ὑπεχώρουν, τὰς μὲν ἀσπίδας ὑπερθεν ἐπ' ἀλλήλους ἔχοντες, τοσαύτην δὲ ποιούμενοι βάδισιν ὅσον ἐκείνος ἐσύρετο, ὡς μὴ ἀπαρακάλυπτος γεγονὼς πρὸς τῶν
- 51 πολεμίων βληθεῖη. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὁ Βέσσας ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ ἐγεγόνει, ἐξανίστατό τε καὶ παρακελευσάμενος ἐπὶ τὸ τεῖχος ἦει, τῆς τε κλίμακος ἐπιβατεύσας
- 52 αὐτῆς ἐπὶ τὴν ἀνάβασιν ὥρμητο. ἐπισπόμενοι δὲ Ῥωμαῖοι πάντες ἔργα ἐς τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπεδείκνυντο ἀρετῆς ἄξια περίφοβοί τε γενόμενοι Πέρσαι καιρὸν σφίσι τινὰ τοὺς ἐναντίους διδόναι
- 53 τὴν πόλιν ἐνδόντες. Βέσσας δὲ δολώσεις αὐτοὺς

¹ ἔβαλλον L. ἔβαλον K

² ὧπερ: ὅπερ K.

³ κατὰ—ἔσυρον, οἱ K. αὐτὸν μὲν ἔσυρον καὶ αὐτοὶ L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII xi. 46-53

the missiles which were thrown continually and blunted on the shields and other armour, and at the same time each man was shouting and panting and exerting himself to the utmost. Meanwhile all the Romans, in their eagerness to defend their general, were shooting at the wall, stopping not for an instant, seeking thus to check the enemy.

In this crisis Bessas distinguished himself, though he could not get on his feet on account of the impediment of his armour and also because his body was not nimble (for this man was fleshy and, as said, very old), still he did not yield to helpless despair, even when he had come into such great danger, but formed a plan on the spur of the moment by which he succeeded in saving both himself and the Roman cause. For he directed his bodyguards to drag him by the foot and thus pull him very far from the wall, and they carried out this order. And so, while some were dragging him, others were retreating with him, holding their shields above him and toward each other, and walking at the same speed as he was being dragged, so that he might not, though becoming uncovered, be hit by the enemy. Then as soon as Bessas had reached safety, he got on his feet, and urging his men forward went toward the wall, and setting foot on the ladder once more made haste to mount it. And all the Romans following behind him made a display of real heroism against the enemy. Then the Persians became terrified and begged their opponents to give them some time, in order that they might pack up and get out of the way when they handed over the city. But Bessas suspected

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

ἐπιτεχνάσασθαι¹ ὑποτοπάζων, ὅπως μεταξὺ κρατύνωνται τὸ τοῦ περιβόλου ὀχύρωμα, τὴν μὲν ξυμβολὴν καταπαύειν ἔφη οὐχ οἶός τε εἶναι, τοὺς δὲ ἀμφὶ τῇ ὁμολογίᾳ βουλομένους αὐτῷ ξυγγενέσθαι, τῶν στρατοπέδων μαχομένων, οὐδέν τι ἥσσουν εἰς ἑτέραν τινὰ ξὺν αὐτῷ ἰέναι τοῦ τείχους μοῖραν δείξας τι² χωρίον αὐτοῖς.

- 54 Τῶν δὲ οὐκ ἐνδεχομένων τὸν λόγον γίνεται μὲν αὖθις καρτερά τις μάχη καὶ ὠθισμὸς πολὺς, ἔτι δὲ ἀγχωμάλου τῆς ξυμβολῆς οὐσης ξυνηνέχθη τὸ τεῖχος ἑτέρωθι, οὐπερ διορύξαντες Ῥωμαῖοι πρότερον ἔτυχον, ἐξαπιναιῶς καταπεσεῖν. ἐνταῦθα
- 55 οὖν πολλοὶ ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων ξυνέρρεον. καὶ Ῥωμαῖοι μὲν πλήθει τοὺς πολεμίους παρὰ πολὺ ὑπεραίρουντες, καίπερ δίχα διηρημένοι, πολλῷ ἔτι μᾶλλον βάλλοντές τε καὶ ὠθοῦντες καρτερώ-
- 56 τατα τοῖς ἐναντίοις ἐνέκειντο. Πέρσαι δὲ οὐκέτι ὁμοίως ἀντεῖχον, ἐκατέρωθι βιαζόμενοι, ἀλλὰ διαιρεθεῖσα ἡ ὀλιγανθρωπία ἐς ἄμφω τὰ μέρη
- 57 διαφανῆς ἦν. οὕτω δὲ πονουμένων³ ἀμφοτέρων ἔτι τῶν στρατευμάτων καὶ οὔτε Περσῶν ἀποκρούεσθαι δυναμένων ἐγκειμένους σφίσι τοὺς πολεμίους οὔτε Ῥωμαίων βιάζεσθαι παντάπασιν τὴν εἴσοδον οἷον τε ὄντων, νεανίας ἀνὴρ, Ἀρμένιος γένος, Ἰωάννης ὄνομα, Θωμᾶ υἱὸς οὐπερ ἐπὶ κλησιν ἐκάλουν Γούζην, τὰ μὲν καταπεπτωκότα τοῦ περιβόλου καὶ τοὺς ἐνταῦθα ὠθισμοὺς εἶασεν, Ἀρμενίων δὲ

¹ ἐπιτεχνάσασθαι K ὑποτεχνᾶσθαι L.

² τι Braun . τό MSS ³ πονουμένων K ποιουμένα γ L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xi. 53-57

that they had contrived some trickery, to the end that in the interval they might increase the strength of the circuit-wall, and so he said that he was unable to put a stop to the fighting, but those who wished to meet him to discuss terms could, while the armies were fighting, nevertheless proceed with him to another part of the wall, and he designated a certain spot to them.

This proposal, however, was not accepted by them, and once more fierce fighting commenced, involving a violent tussle; but while the conflict was still indecisive, it so fell out that the wall at another point, where the Romans had previously undermined it, suddenly toppled over. Consequently many from both armies rushed together at that spot. And now the Romans shewed their great numerical superiority over the enemy, though they were divided into two parts, and they kept pressing the battle against their opponents, shooting faster than ever and pushing forward with the greatest force. The Persians, on the other hand, no longer resisted with the same strength as before, assailed violently as they were at both points, and the smallness of their numbers thus divided between two fronts was conspicuous. Now while both the armies were still struggling thus, and the Persians, on the one hand, could not repulse their enemy as they pressed upon them, and the Romans, on the other hand, were unable completely to force their entrance, a young man of the Armenian race named John, son of Thomas, whom they were wont to call Guzes, abandoned the downfallen part of the circuit-wall and the struggles there, and, taking with him some few of his Armenian followers, ascended by the

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREÆ

- τῶν οἱ ἐπομένων ἐπαγαγόμενος ὀλίγους τινὰς διὰ τοῦ κρημνώδους, ἥπερ ἅπαντες τὴν πόλιν ἀνάλωτον εἶναι ὑπώπτευν, βιασάμενος ἀνέβη τοὺς
- 58 ταύτη φρουρούς. κατὰ τε τὰς ἐπάλξεις γενόμενος ἓνα Περσῶν τῶν τῇδε ἀμυνομένων, ὅσπερ μαχιμώτατος ἐδόκει εἶναι, δόρατι ἐκτευνεν. ἐσβατόν τε Ῥωμαίοις ξυνηνέχθη τρόπῳ τοιῷδε.
- 59 Πέρσαι οἱ ἐν πύργῳ τῷ ξυλίνῳ ἐστήκεσαν μέγα τι χρῆμα τῶν πυρφόρων ἀγγείων ὑψήσαν, ὅπως τῶν βαλλομένων τῷ περιόντι καταφλέξαι αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσι τὰς μηχανὰς οἷοί τε ὦσιν, οὐ δυναμένων τῶν ἀμυνομένων ἅπαντα τοῖς κοντοῖς
- 60 διωθεῖσθαι.¹ πνεῦμα δὲ νότου σκληρόν τε καὶ ὑπερφυῆς ἄγαν ἐξαπιναίως ἐξ ἐναντίας αὐτοῖς ξὺν πολλῷ πατάγῳ ἐπιπесόν, τῶν τοῦ πύργου
- 61 σανίδων ἀμηγέπη μιᾷς ἦψατο. οὐ ξυνιέντων δὲ αὐτίκα τῶν ἐνταῦθα Περσῶν (πόνῳ γὰρ καὶ θορύβῳ καὶ δέει καὶ ταραχῇ ἀμέτρῳ εἶχοντο ἅπαντες, ἥ τε ἀνάγκη αὐτοῖς παρηρεῖτο τὴν αἰσθησιν) ἢ φλόξ κατὰ βραχὺ αἰρομένη τῷ τε τῆς Μηδείας ἐπωνύμῳ ἐλαίῳ καὶ οἷσπερ ἄλλοις ἐξήρτυτο τὸν πύργον ὅλον καὶ Πέρσας τοὺς ἐνταῦθα
- 62 ἐνέπρησεν. ἐξηνθρακωμένοι τε ἅπαντες ἔπεσον, οἱ μὲν ἐντὸς τοῦ περιβόλου, οἱ δὲ τούτου² ἐκτός, ἵνα δὴ αἷ τε μηχαναι καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτὰς Ῥωμαῖοι ἐστήκεσαν· οὕτω δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ῥωμαῖοι, ὅσοι δὴ ἐς τοῦ περιβόλου τὰ καταπεπτωκότα ἐμάχοντο, ἐνδιδόντων σφίσι τῶν πολεμίων ἔς τε ὀλιγωρίαν ἐμπεπτωκότων, ἐντὸς τοῦ περιβόλου ἐγένοντο, καὶ κατ' ἄκρας ἢ Πέτρα ἐάλω.
- 63 Τῶν μὲν οὖν Περσῶν ἐς πεντακοσίους ἐς τὴν

¹ διωθεῖσθαι L διαθεῖσθαι K.

² τούτου K : που L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. XL 57-63

precipice, where all considered the city to be impregnable, having overpowered the guards at that point. Then, after getting on the parapet, he slew with his spear one of the Persian defenders there, who appeared to be the most warlike. In this manner an entry was made possible for the Romans.

Now the Persians who were posted in the wooden tower had kindled a huge number of fire-bearing pots, in order that they might be able by the very number of their missiles to burn up the engines, men and all, their defenders being unable to push them all aside with their poles. But suddenly there sprang up from the south a wind of extraordinary violence and blew against them with a great roar, and in some way or other it set fire to one of the planks of the tower. But the Persians there did not immediately comprehend this, for they were every man of them working and shouting immoderately, being filled with fear and in the midst of wild confusion, and the urgency of the moment had robbed them of their senses, so the flame rising little by little, fed by the oil which bears Medea's name and all the other things with which the tower was supplied, consumed the whole tower and the Persians who were in it. These were all burned to death, and their charred bodies fell, some inside the wall, others outside where the engines stood with the Romans about them. Then the other Romans also who were fighting at the fallen part of the wall, since the enemy were giving way before them in utter despair and strove no longer to resist, got inside the fortifications, and Petia was captured completely.

So about five hundred of the Persians ran up

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

ἀκρόπολιν ἀναδραμόντες καὶ τὸ ἐκείνη καταλαβόντες ὀχύρωμα ἡσυχῇ ἔμενον, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους Ῥωμαῖοι, ὅσους οὐκ ἔκτειναν ἐν τῇ ξυμβολῇ, ἐξώγησαν ἅπαντας ἐς τριάκοντα καὶ ἑπτακοσίους
 64 μάλιστα ὄντας. καὶ αὐτῶν ὀκτὼ μὲν καὶ δέκα ἀκραιφνεῖς εὗρον, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἅπαντες τραυματαῖαι ὄντες ἐτύγχανον. ἔπεσον δὲ καὶ Ῥωμαίων πολλοί τε καὶ ἄριστοι, καὶ Ἰωάννης ὁ Θωμᾶ υἱός, λίθῳ τὴν κεφαλὴν ἐν τῇ ἐς τὴν πόλιν εἰσόδῳ πρὸς τοῦ τῶν βαρβάρων βληθεὶς ἔργα τε θαυμαστά ἐς τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπιδειξάμενος.

XII

Τῇ δὲ ἐπιγενομένη ἡμέρᾳ Ῥωμαῖοι τῶν βαρβάρων τοὺς τῇ ἀκρόπολιν καταλαβόντας¹ πολιορκοῦντες λόγους προὔφερον, τὴν τε σωτηρίαν αὐτοῖς προτεινόμενοι καὶ τὰ πιστὰ δώσειν ὑπὲρ τούτων ὁμολογοῦντες, ταύτῃ Πέρσας караδο-
 2 κοῦντες σφᾶς αὐτοὺς ἐγχειριεῖν σφίσιν. οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν οὐκ ἐνδεχόμενοι τοὺς λόγους ἐς ἀντίστασιν εἶδον, καίπερ οὐκ ἐπὶ πολὺ ἀνθέξειν τῇ ταλαιπωρίᾳ οἰόμενοι, ἀλλὰ δι' ἀρετὴν θανατῶντες.
 3 Βέσσας δὲ αὐτοὺς ἀποστήσαι τῆς γνώμης ἐθέλων ἀντικαταστήσαι τε ἐς τὴν τῆς σωτηρίας ἐπιθυμίαν, τῶν τινὰ Ῥωμαίων στρατιωτῶν ὡς πλησιαίτατα αὐτοῖς ἵεναι κελεύει παραίνεσίν τέ τινα ἐς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ποιήσασθαι, δηλώσας ὅσα δὴ ἐς αὐτοὺς εἰπεῖν βούλοιο.
 4 Καὶ ὃς ἀγχοτάτω γενόμενος ἔλεξε τοιάδε· “ Τί πεπονθότες ἐφ’ ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς, ὦ βέλτιστοι Πέρσαι,

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xi. 63-xii. 4

to the acropolis, and seizing the stronghold there remained quiet, but the Romans made prisoners of all the others, such as they had not slain in the fighting, amounting to about seven hundred and thirty. And among these they found only eighteen unhurt, all the rest having been wounded. There fell too many of the best of the Romans, and among them John the son of Thomas, who, while entering the city, was hit on the head by a stone thrown by one of the barbarians, but only after he had made a display of marvellous deeds against the enemy.

XII

On the following day the Romans, while besieging those barbarians who had seized the acropolis, made a proposal, offering them personal safety and promising to give them pledges to that effect, thinking that the Persians would submit on this basis. But they did not receive the suggestion and prepared to resist, not thinking that they would hold out long in their desperate situation, but courting a heroic death. But Bessas, wishing to dissuade them from this purpose and to turn them instead to a longing for safety, commanded one of the Roman soldiers to go up as close as he could to them and make a kind of exhortation to the men, and he stated what he wished him to say to them.

This man then came up close to the fortress and spoke as follows: "Most noble Persians, what has

¹ καταλαβόντας L καταλιπόντας K

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

τὸν ὄλεθρον διατείνεσθε τοῦτον, ἐπιτηδεύοντες τὰ
 θανάσιμα σπουδῇ ἀλογίστῳ καὶ τῆς ἀρετῆς τὰ
 ἐπιτηδεύματα διαφανῶς ἀτιμάζοντες; οὐ γάρ
 ἐστὶν ἀνδρεῖον¹ τὸ τοῖς ἀμηχάνοις ἀντιστατεῖν,
 οὐδὲ ξυνετὸν² τὸ μὴ βούλεσθαι τοῖς κεκρατηκό-
 σιν ὑπέκειν· οὐδὲ μὴν ἄδοξον τὸ τύχῃ τῇ παρούσῃ
 5 ἐπομένους βιώναι. ἀνάγκη γὰρ οὐδὲ ἀγαθῆς
 τινὸς ἐλπίδος τυχοῦσα τὴν ἀτιμίαν ἐκφεύγει
 δικαίως, ἣν καὶ τῶν ἔργων περιβάλλεται τὰ
 αἰσχροτάτα· κακῶ γὰρ τῷ ἀμηχάνῳ τὸ σύγνωμον
 6 ἔπescθαι πέφυκε. μὴ τοίνυν τὴν ἀπόνοιαν ἐν
 προὔπτῳ ζηλοῦτε κινδύνῳ, μηδὲ τῆς σωτηρίας
 τὴν ἀλαζονείαν ἀλλάξασθε, ἀλλ' ἐνθυμεῖσθε ὡς
 ἀναβιώσεσθαι μὲν τοὺς τετελευτηκότας ἀδύνατον,
 οἱ δὲ περιόντες καὶ χρόνῳ διαχρήσονται³ σφᾶς
 αὐτοὺς ὕστερον, ἣν γε τοῦτο κρεῖσσον εἶναι δοκῇ.
 7 βουλευσασθε οὖν τὴν ὑστάτην βουλὴν καὶ περι-
 σκοπέισθε τὰ ξύμφορα, ἐκεῖνο εἰδότες,⁴ ὡς ταῦτα
 ἂν τῶν βουλευμάτων τὰ βέλτιστα εἴη ἐν οἷς τὸ
 μεταμέλειν τοῖς βουλευσαμένοις ἐν ἐξουσίᾳ ἔσται.
 8 ὡς ἡμεῖς γε ὑμᾶς καὶ ζυγομαχοῦντας οἰκτείρομεν
 καὶ θανατῶντων φειδόμεθα καὶ πρὸς τὸν βίον
 ἐνδιαθρυπτομένους τε καὶ βλακεύοντας ἐλεεῖν
 9 ἀξιούμεν, ἢ Ῥωμαίοις Χριστιανοῖς νόμος. ἄλλο
 τε ὑμῖν περιέσται⁵ οὐδέν, πλήν γε δὴ ὅτι τὴν
 πολιτείαν ἐπὶ τὰ βελτίω μεταβαλόντες Ἰου-
 στινιανὸν ἀντὶ Χοσρόου κύριον ἔξετε· ὑπὲρ γὰρ
 τούτων ὑμῖν καὶ τὰ πιστὰ δώσειν ὁμολογοῦμεν.

¹ ἀνδρεῖον L: ἀνδρείων K.

² ξυνετὸν L ξυνετῶν K.

³ διαχρήσονται K διαθήσονται L.

⁴ εἰδότες L: ἰδόντες K.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII LII. 4-9

come over you that you are stubbornly holding to this course of destruction, bending your energies with unreasonableness to accomplish a certain death and conspicuously dishonouring the practice of valour.⁵ For it is not a manly thing to array oneself against the inevitable, nor a wise thing to refuse to bow to those who have won the mastery, nor, on the other hand, is it inglorious to live by falling in with the situation chance has brought. For man, in the grip of necessity which is relieved by no hope of rescue, is thereby justly acquitted of the charge of dishonour, even if he is involved in the most shameful actions, for evil, when it is unavoidable, is naturally followed by forgiveness. Do not, therefore, emulate madmen in the midst of obvious danger, and do not barter your safety for wanton folly, but rather call to mind that it is impossible for the dead to come to life, while the living can destroy themselves at a later time, if indeed this seems best. Make, then, your final deliberation and consider well your interests, recalling the fact that those decisions would be the best in which reversal shall still be within the power of those who have made the decision. For we on our part do pity you, though you are fighting against your own friends, and spare you when you are courting death, and we expect, as is customary for Christian Romans, to feel compassion for you though you throw life to the winds, and look upon it as a trivial matter. And the result for you will be simply this, that by shifting your citizenship for the better you will have Justinian instead of Chosroes as master; in-

⁵ ὑμῖν περιέσται K : ὑμῖν περιούσι προσέσται L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 10 μὴ τοίνυν ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς διαχρήσησθε, παρὸν
 σώζεσθαι οὐ γὰρ εὐτυχὲς ἐμφιλοχωρεῖν τοῖς
 δεινοῖς ἐπ' οὐδεμιᾷ τὸ παράπαν ὀνήσει, ἐπεὶ οὐκ
 ἀνδραγαθίζεσθαι, ἀλλὰ θανατῶν τοῦτό γε.
- 11 γενναῖος δὲ ὃς ἂν ἐγκαρτερῇ τὰ δεινότατα, ἥνικα
 τι προσδοκᾷ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ χρήσιμον. οὐ γὰρ
 ἐπαινοῦσι τὴν ἐκούσιον τελευτὴν ἄνθρωποι, ἔνθα
 δὴ τις ἐπὶ κείται κρείσσων τῷ κατ' αὐτὴν κινδύνῳ
 ἐλπίς, ἀλλὰ βίου¹ μὲν καταστροφὴ ἄχρηστος²
 ἄνοια προπετής, τὸ δὲ εἰς θάνατον ἀνόητον
 θράσος τοῦ δραστηρίου πρόσχημα οὐκ εὐπρεπὲς
- 12 τοῖς γε σώφροσιν εἶναι δοκεῖ καίτοι καὶ τοῦτο
 ἐκλογίζεσθαι χρή, μὴ τι δόξητε καὶ εἰς τὸ θεῖον
 ἀγνωμονεῖν. εἰ γὰρ ἀπολεῖν³ ἐβούλετο, ὧ
 ἄνδρες, ὑμᾶς, οὐκ ἂν, οἶμαι, παραδεδώκει τοῖς
- 13 διασώζειν ἐφιεμένοις. τὰ μὲν οὖν παρ' ἡμῶν
 τοιαῦτά ἐστι, βουλευέσεσθε⁴ δὲ ὑμεῖς δηλονότι
 ὧν περ ἀξίοις ὑμῖν ξυμβαίνει εἶναι”
- 14 Ἡ μὲν παραίνεσις ταύτῃ πη εἶχε. Πέρσαι δὲ
 τοὺς λόγους οὐδὲ ὅσον ἀκοῇ δέχεσθαι ἤθελον,
 ἀλλ' ἐθέλοκωφοῦντες ὅτι δὴ οὐκ ἐπαίοιεν προ-
- 15 σεποιοῦντο. καὶ τότε, τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἐγκελευσα-
 μένου, Ῥωμαῖοι πῦρ τῇ ἀκροπόλει ἐμβέβληνται,
 τῷ τρόπῳ τούτῳ ἐνδώσειν τὰ σώματα σφίσι τοὺς
- 16 πολεμίους οἰόμενοι. τῆς δὲ φλογὸς ἐπὶ μέγα
 χωρούσης οἱ βάρβαροι, τοῦ πάθους αὐτοῖς ἐν
 ὀφθαλμοῖς ὄντος, ἐξεπιστάμενοι ὅτι δὴ σφίσιν
 αὐτίκα δὴ μάλα τετεφρῶσθαι ξυμβήσεται, ἐλπίδα

¹ βίου K βίαιος L.

² ἄχρηστος K ἄχρηστος καὶ L

³ ἀπολεῖν Hoeschel ἀπολλύειν Herwerden, ἀπόλλειν MSS.

⁴ βουλευέσεσθε Dindorf βουλεύσοισθε K, βουλεύσησθε L

deed we agree to give you pledges to make this promise binding. Do not then destroy yourselves when it is possible to be saved. For it is not a glorious thing to linger fondly in danger for no advantage whatsoever, since this is not playing the part of brave men, but simply courting death. But noble is he who steels himself to endure the most severe fortune, when he can anticipate from it some benefit. For men do not applaud voluntary death in a situation where even the surrounding danger gives ground for some stronger hope, but a useless destruction of life is downright folly, and senseless daring which leads to death, when held out as a pretence of high seriousness, merits no praise, at least in the judgment of thinking men. Furthermore, you are bound also to take into consideration that you may seem to be shewing some ingratitude toward Heaven. For if God wished to destroy you, my men, he would not, I think, have put you into the hands of those who are striving to preserve you. Seeing then that such is our stand in the matter, it will clearly be for you to decide what it is fitting should befall you."

Such was the exhortation. The Persians, however, were unwilling even to listen to the discourse, but wilfully shutting their ears pretended that they did not understand. Then finally, at the command of the general, the Romans hurled fire into the acropolis, thinking that in this way the enemy would be constrained to surrender themselves. Then, as the flames spread in great volume, the barbarians, with disaster before their eyes, and knowing full well that they would speedily be burned to ashes, and having no hope, nor yet seeing

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- οὐδεμίαν ἔχοντες, οὐδὲ εἰδότες καθ' ὃ τι σωθή-
 σονται ἀμυνόμενοι, οὐδ' ὥς ὑποχείριοι τοῖς πολε-
 μίοις γενέσθαι ἠθέλον, ἀλλὰ ξὺν τῇ ἀκροπόλει
 εὐθὺς ἅπαντες, θαυμάζοντος τὰ ποιούμενα τοῦ
 Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ, καταφλεγόμενοι διεφθάρησαν.
 17 δι' ὅσης τε¹ σπουδῆς ὁ Χοσρόης Λαζικὴν ἤγε
 τηνικάδε φανερόν γέγονεν· ὅς γε στρατιώτας μὲν
 τοὺς πάντων λογιμωτάτους ἀπολεξάμενος ἐν τῷ
 τῆς Πέτρας κατεστήσατο φυλακτηρίῳ, ὅπλα δὲ
 κατέθετο τοσαῦτα τὸ πλήθος, ὥστε ληισαμένων
 αὐτὰ Ῥωμαίων στρατιώτῃ ἐκάστῳ πέντε ἀνδρῶν
 ἐπιβαλεῖν σκευήν, καίτοι κὰν τῇ ἀκροπόλει
 18 πολλὰ καυθῆναι ξυνέβη. εὗρηται δὲ καὶ σίτου
 καὶ τεταριχευμένων κρεῶν μέγα τι χρήμα καὶ
 τῶν ἄλλων ἐπιτηδείων, ὅσα δὴ ἔμελλε πενταετὲς
 19 τοῖς πολιορκουμένοις πᾶσιν ἐπαρκέσειν. οἶνον δὲ
 οὐκ ἔτυχον ἐνταῦθα καταθέμενοι Πέρσαι, πλήν
 20 γε ὅτι τὸν τε ὀξίνην καὶ διαρκὴ κύαμον. ἐπεὶ
 δὲ καὶ ὕδωρ ἐκ τοῦ ὀχετοῦ ἐπίρρεον ἐνταῦθα
 Ῥωμαῖοι εὗρον, ἐν θαύματι μεγάλῳ γενόμενοι
 διηποροῦντο, ἕως τὸν πάντα λόγον ἀμφὶ τοῖς
 κρυφίοις ὀχετοῖς ἔμαθον. ὃ τι δὲ τοῦτό ἐστιν
 αὐτίκα δηλώσω.
 21 Ἡνίκα Πέτραν ὁ Χοσρόης ἔλων τῇδε τὸ
 φυλακτήριον κατεστήσατο, εὖ εἰδὼς ὥς Ῥωμαῖοι
 προσεδρεύουσιν μὲν αὐτῇ μηχανῇ πάσῃ, εὐθὺς δὲ
 διελεῖν τὴν ὀχεταγωγίαν μελλήσῃ οὐδεμιᾷ
 22 ἐγχειρήσουσιν, ἐπενόει τοιάδε. τοῦτο δὴ τὸ
 ὕδωρ ὅπερ ἐς τὴν πόλιν εἰσήγετο ἐς τρεῖς διελὼν
 μοίρας κατ' ὥρυχά τε βαθεῖαν κομιδῇ ποιησάμενος,

¹ δι' ὅσης τε K διέσεισέ τε (followed by a lacuna of three words) L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. XII 16-22

any possibility of saving themselves by fighting, still even in that situation would not consent to fall into the power of their enemy, but they were immediately burned to death, every man of them, together with the acropolis, while the Roman army marvelled at what was taking place. And at that time it became manifest how much importance Chosroes placed upon Lazica, for he had chosen out the most notable of all his soldiers and assigned them to the garrison of Petra, and deposited there such an abundance of weapons that when the Romans took possession of them as plunder, five men's equipment fell to each soldier, and this too in spite of the fact that many weapons had been burned on the acropolis. There was also found a vast quantity of grain and of cured meat as well as all other provisions, which were indeed sufficient to keep all the besieged adequately supplied for five years. But the Persians had not, as it happened, stored wine there other than sour wine, but they had brought in an ample supply of beans. But when the Romans actually found water there flowing from the aqueduct, they were greatly astonished and perplexed, until they learned the whole truth about the concealed pipes. And I shall now explain what these were.

At the time when Chosroes established the garrison in Petra after capturing it, knowing well as he did that the Romans would assail it with every means in their power, and would straightway attempt without a moment's hesitation to cut the aqueduct, he contrived the following plan. The water which was being carried into the city he divided into three parts and had a very deep trench dug, in which he constructed three pipe-lines, one lying on the very

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ὀχετοὺς ἐτεκτήνατο τρεῖς, τὸν ἓνα μὲν κάτω ἐς
 τῆς κατώρυχος ταύτης τὰ ἔσχατα, κόπρω¹ καὶ
 λίθοις καλύψας ἄχρι ἐς τὰ τῆς κατώρυχος μέσα·
 ἐνταῦθά τε κρύψας τὸν δεύτερον, ὑπερθεύ τὸν
 τρίτον ἐδείματο, ὑπὲρ γῆς τε ὄντα καὶ ὄρατὸν
 23 εἶναι. ὥνπερ οὐ ξυνέντες κατ' ἀρχὰς τῆς πολιορ-
 κίας Ῥωμαῖοι τοῦτον δὴ τὸν διαφανῆ ὀχετὸν
 διελόντες, ἐπίπροσθέν τε οὐκ ἐπεξαγαγόντες τὸν
 ἐπὶ διώρυχι³ πόνον, ἀλλὰ τοῦ ἔργου πρὸ τῆς
 ἐνθένδε ἀπωλείας ἀποπαυσάμενοι, ᾤοντο εἰδεῖν
 τοῖς πολιορκουμένοις τὸ ὕδωρ, σφαλλούσης αὐτοῖς
 τὴν διάνοιαν τῆς παρὰ τὸ πονεῖσθαι ὀλιγωρίας.
 24 τῆς δὲ προσεδρείας μηχανομένης, τῶν τινὰς
 πολεμίων λαβόντες Ῥωμαῖοι ἔμαθον ἐκ τοῦ ὀχετοῦ
 25 τοὺς πολιορκουμένους ὑδρεύεσθαι κατορύξαντες
 τοῖνυν τὸν χῶρον εὐρίσκουσι τὸν δεύτερον ὀχετὸν
 ἐνταῦθά πη ὄντα, καὶ τοῦτον διελόντες αὐτίκα
 ᾤοντο ταύτῃ πᾶσαν κατειργάσθαι τῶν πολεμίων
 τὴν δύναμιν, οὐδὲ τοῖς δευτέροις ἐν τῇ ἀπ' αὐτῶν
 26 διδασκαλίᾳ παιδευθέντες τὰ πρότερα.⁴ ἐπεὶ δὲ
 καὶ τὴν πόλιν ἐλόντες ἐπίρρεον, ὥσπερ μοι
 ἐρρήθη, ἐκ τοῦ ὀχετοῦ τὸ ὕδωρ εἶδον, ἐθαύμαζόν
 27 τε καὶ ἀπορίᾳ πολλῇ εἶχοντο. τὸ δὲ γεγονὸς
 παρὰ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ἀκούσαντες, τῆς τε τῶν
 πολεμίων ἐς τὰ ἔργα ἐπιμελείας καὶ τῆς σφετέρας
 παρὰ τοὺς πόνους ὀλιγωρίας ὀπίσω τῶν πραγ-
 μάτων ἡσθάνοντο
 28 Τοὺς μὲν οὖν αἰχμαλώτους ἅπαντας ὁ Βέσσας
 εὐθὺς βασιλεῖ ἐπεμψε, τὸν δὲ Πέτρας περὶβολον

¹ κόπρω K: κόπρω δὲ αὐτόν L.

bottom of this trench, and this he covered with mud and stones up to the middle of the trench, at that level he concealed the second pipe-line, and above it built the third, which was above ground and visible to all, so the piping was on three levels, but this fact was concealed. This the Romans at the beginning of the siege did not understand, and so, after they had cut this obvious pipe-line, they did not carry forward their work on the trench, but gave up the labour before the next pipe-line was destroyed, and thought that the besieged were in want of water, their minds being deceived by their own slipshod methods. But as the siege was prolonged, the Romans by capturing some of the enemy learned that the besieged were drawing water from the aqueduct. Accordingly they dug down into the ground and found there the second pipe-line, which they cut immediately, and they thought that they had thus crippled the enemy completely, not having learned even the second time from the lesson before them the real meaning of their previous experience. But when they had captured the city and saw, as I have said, the water flowing in from the pipe, they began to marvel and were greatly perplexed. And hearing from their captives what had been done, they came to realize after the event the case shewn by the enemy in their work and the futility of their own feeble efforts.

Bessas now straightway sent all the prisoners to the emperor and razed the circuit-wall of Petra to

² *κεκρυμμένως κεκρυμμένος* K, *ἐγκεκρυμμένως* L

³ *διώρυγι* K: *τὸν διώρυχα* L

⁴ *οὐδέ—πρότερα* om K

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

29 ἐς ἑδαφος καθεῖλεν, ὥς μὴ πράγματα οἱ πολέμιοι
 σφίσιν αὐθις παρέχονται.¹ καὶ αὐτὸν βασιλεὺς
 ἀποδεδειγμένης² τῆς ἀρετῆς ἐπήνεσεν ἐς τὰ
 30 μάλιστα καὶ τῆς εὐβουλίας, ὅτι δὴ ὅλον καθεῖλε
 τὸ τεῖχος. γέγονεν οὖν ὁ Βέσσας αὐθις οἷς τε
 31 εὐημέρησεν οἷς τε ἀρετῆς πεποίηται δῆλωσιν ἀπό-
 λεπτος ἐς πάντας ἀνθρώπους ἡνίκα μὲν γὰρ
 ἐπὶ τῷ Ῥώμης φυλακτηρίῳ ἐτέτακτο, ἐλπίδα
 Ῥωμαῖοι πολλὴν ἐπ' αὐτῷ εἶχον ἅτε ἀνδρειο-
 32 τάτῳ³ διαγεγονότι τὰ πρότερα. ἐπεὶ δὲ αὐτῷ
 ἐνταῦθα δεδυστυχηκέναι ξυνέπεσε, Ῥώμης τε
 οὕτω τοῖς Γότθοις ἀλούσης, ὥσπερ μοι ἐν τοῖς
 ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις ἐρρήθη, καὶ διεφθαρμένου ἐκ
 τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον Ῥωμαίων τοῦ γένους, βασιλεὺς
 μὲν Ἰουστινιανὸς οὕτω δὴ ἐς Βυζάντιον ἀνα-
 στρέψαντα στρατηγὸν κατεστήσατο ἐπὶ Πέρσας
 33 αὐτόν. διέσυρον δὲ τὴν πρᾶξιν ὥς εἰπεῖν ἅπαντες
 καὶ τὰ βασιλεῖ βεβουλευμένα ἐχλεύαζον, εἰ τῷ
 Βέσσᾳ τούτῳ, Γότθων τε ἡσσηθέντι κατὰ κράτος
 καὶ τυμβογέροντι γεγεννημένῳ, πόλεμον τὸν Μηδι-
 34 κὸν ἐγχειρίσειεν ἐπὶ δυσμαῖς βίου. ἀλλὰ τούτων
 σχεδὸν τι ἅπασι δεδογμένων, εὐτυχία τε καὶ
 ἀρετῇ τοιαῦδε τῷ στρατηγῷ τῷδε ξυνηρέχθη
 χρῆσθαι. οὕτως ἄρα οὐχ ἥπερ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις
 δοκεῖ, ἀλλὰ τῇ ἐκ θεοῦ ῥοπῇ πρυτανεύεται τὰ
 ἀνθρώπεια, ὃ δὴ τύχην εἰώθασι καλεῖν ἀνθρωποι,
 οὐκ εἰδότες ὅτου δὴ ἔνεκα ταύτῃ πρόεισι τὰ
 35 ξυμβαίνοντα ἥπερ⁴ αὐτοῖς ἐνδηλα⁵ γίνεται. τῷ

¹ παρέχονται Dindorf from a late MS . παρέχονται MSS

² ἀποδεδειγμένης K ἀποδεξάμενος L.

³ ἀνδρειοτάτῳ Braun · ἀνδρειότατα MSS

⁴ ἥπερ ἥπερ K εἶπερ Suidas

⁵ ἐνδηλα MSS οὐκ ἐνδηλα Suidas

the ground in order that the enemy might not again make trouble for them. And the emperor praised him particularly for the valour he had displayed and for his wisdom in tearing down the whole wall. Thus Bessas became once more,¹ both because of the good fortune he had enjoyed and also because of the valour he had displayed, an object of respectful admiration among all men. For previously, when he was appointed to command the garrison of Rome, the Romans had great hopes of him, since before that time he had consistently shewn himself a man of the highest courage. But when it came about that he met with ill fortune there, Rome being captured as it was by the Goths, as I have recounted in the previous narrative,² and the race of the Romans being in large part destroyed, still the Emperor Justinian, when he returned after this to Byzantium, appointed him General against the Persians. Now practically everyone bitterly criticized this act and scoffed at the emperor's decision, if he was going to entrust the Median war to this Bessas in his closing years, after he had been defeated decisively by the Goths and had now become a doddering old man. But although this was the feeling of practically all men, it actually fell out that this general met with the good fortune and displayed the valour which I have described. Thus it is that human affairs proceed not according to the judgment of men, but are subject to the power and authority of God, which men are wont to call fortune, knowing not why in the world events proceed in the manner in which they manifest themselves to them.

¹ He had previously won distinction in the defence of Rome under Belisarius. See Book V

² Book VII xx

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

γὰρ παραλόγῳ δοκοῦντι εἶναι φιλεῖ τὸ τῆς τύχης ὄνομα προσχωρεῖν. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ὥς πη ἐκάστῳ φίλον, ταύτῃ δοκεῖτω.

XIII

- Μερμερόης δέ, δείσας μή τι Πέτρα τε καὶ Πέρσαις τοῖς τῇδε ἀπολελειμμένοις φλαῦρον διὰ χρόνου μῆκος ξυμβαίῃ, ἄρας παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ ἐνταῦθα ἦει, ἐπεὶ αὐτὸν ὁ καιρὸς μετὰ τὴν τοῦ
- 2 χειμῶνος ὥραν ἐς τοῦτο ἐνῆγε. μεταξὺ δὲ τὰ ξυμπεσόντα μαθὼν ἅπαντα τῆς μὲν ὁδοῦ ταύτης τὸ παράπαν ἀπέσχετο, εὖ εἰδὼς ὅτι δὴ ἐκτὸς ποταμοῦ Φάσιδος ἄλλο τι χωρίον Λαζοῖς ὅτι
- 3 μὴ τὸ ἐν Πέτρα οὐκ ἦν.¹ ἀναστρέψας δὲ καὶ καταλαβὼν τὰς ἐξ Ἰβηρίας ἐπὶ γῆν τὴν Κολχίδα εἰσόδους, ἵνα δὴ ὁ Φᾶσις διαβατός ἐστιν, αὐτὸν τε πεζῇ διαμείψας καὶ οὐχ ἥκιστα ποταμόν, ῥέοντα ὄνομα, οὐδὲ αὐτὸν ἐκείνῃ ναυσίπορον ὄντα, τοῦ τε Φάσιδος ἐν δεξιᾷ ταύτῃ γενόμενος ἐπὶ πόλιν, Ἀρχαίοπολιν ὄνομα, ἥ πρώτη τε καὶ μεγίστη ἐν Λαζοῖς ἐστίν, ἐπῆγε τὸ στράτευμα.
- 4 ἦσαν δὲ ὀλίγων χωρὶς ἵππεῖς ἅπαντες, καὶ αὐτοῖς ἐλέφαντες ὅκτῳ εἶποντο. ἐφ' ὧν δὴ ἔμελλον ἰστάμενοι² Πέρσαι τοὺς πολεμίους ὥσπερ ἐκ
- 5 πύργων κατὰ κορυφῆς ἐνθένδε βάλλειν ὥστε εἰκότως ἂν τις Περσῶν τὴν ἐς τοὺς πολέμους³ ταλαιπωρίαν τε καὶ ἐπιτέχνησιν ἀγασθείη, οἳ γε τὴν ἐξ Ἰβηρίας ἐς τὴν Κολχίδα ὁδὸν φέρουσιν, κρημνώδεσιν τε νάπαις καὶ δυσχωρίαις λοχμῶδεσιν

¹ οὐκ ἦν L οἰκεῖ K

² ἰστάμενοι K ἐνιστάμενοι L.

³ πολέμους MSS πόρους Maltretus.

For the name of fortune is wont to attach to that which appears to be contrary to reason. But as regards this matter, let each man think as he wishes.

XIII

Now Mermeroes, fearing that in the course of a long time some mishap should befall Petra and the Persians left there, had set his whole army in motion and marched in that direction, being further influenced to do so by the season, seeing it was now past winter. But in the course of this journey he learned all that had befallen and abandoned this march entirely, knowing well that the Lazi had no fortress beyond the Phasis River excepting only the one at Petra. He then returned and seized the passes from Iberia into the land of Colchis, where the Phasis can be forded, and he not only crossed this river on foot but also another river of no less difficulty, named the Rheon, which is likewise not navigable there, and thus getting on the right of the Phasis, he led his army forward against a city named Archaeopolis, which is the first and greatest city in Lazica. Now this army, apart from a few men, was all cavalry, and they had with them eight elephants, upon which the Persians were to stand and shoot down upon the heads of their enemy just as from towers. Indeed one might be led with good reason to marvel at the assiduity and resourcefulness of the Persians in the prosecution of their wars, for it was they who took in hand the road leading from Iberia into Colchis, which was everywhere impeded by precipitous ravines and difficult

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- πανταχόθι ξυνεχομένην, ὕλαις τε οὕτως ἀμφι-
 λαφείσι καλυπτομένην, ὥς καὶ ἀνδρὶ εὐζώνῳ
 δοκεῖν ἀπόρευτον τὰ πρότερα εἶναι, οὕτως ὁμαλῇ
 κατεστήσαντο ὥστε οὐχ ὅσον τὴν ἵππον αὐτῶν
 ὅλην πόνῳ οὐδενὶ ἐνθένδε ἰέναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν
 ἐλεφάντων ὅσους¹ βούλονται ἐπαγομένους ταύτη
 6 στρατεύειν. ἦλθον δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ σύμμαχοι
 Οὐῖνοι ἐκ τῶν Σαβείρων καλουμένων δισχίλιοί
 7 τε καὶ μύριοι. ἀλλὰ δείσας ὁ Μερμερόης μὴ
 ἐς πλήθος τοσοῦτον ὄντες οἱ βάρβαροι οὔτοι
 μήτε τι αὐτῷ ὑπακούειν ἐπαγγέλλονται ἐβελήσω-
 σιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τι ἀνήκεστον ἐς τὸ Περσῶν
 στράτευμα δράσωσι, τετρακισχιλίους μὲν ξυστρα-
 τεύεσθαι σφίσιν εἶασε, τοὺς δὲ λοιποὺς χρήμασι
 πολλοῖς δωρησάμενος ἐς τὰ πάτρια ἦθη ἀφήκεν
 ἰέναι.
- 8 Ὁ δὲ Ῥωμαίων στρατὸς δισχίλιοι μὲν καὶ
 μύριοι ἦσαν, οὐ μὴν ἀγῆγηρμένοι ἐς ταὐτὸ ἅπαντες,
 ἀλλ' ἐν μὲν τῷ ἐν Ἀρχαιοπόλει φυλακτηρίῳ
 9 ἦρχον, ἄμφω ἀγαθοὶ τὰ πολέμια· οἱ δὲ δὴ ἄλλοι
 ἐντὸς τῶν ἐκβολῶν ποταμοῦ Φάσιδος ἐνστρατο-
 πεδευσάμενοι ἔμενον, ἐκεῖνο διανοοῦμενοι, ὥστε
 ἦν πη ἐπισκῆψῃ ὁ τῶν πολεμίων στρατός, αὐτοὶ
 ἐνθένδε ἐξαυστάμενοι βοηθοῖεν δυνάμει τῇ πάσῃ.
- 10 ἦρχον δὲ αὐτῶν Βενίλος τε καὶ Οὐλίγαγος· ξυνῆν
 δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ Οὐαράζης ὁ Περσαρμένιος, ἄρτι
 ἐξ Ἰταλίας ἦκων, ᾧ δὴ Τζάνοι ὀκτακόσιοι εἶποντο.
- 11 Βέσσας γάρ, ἐπειδὴ τάχιστα τὴν Πέτραν εἶλε,
 πονεῖν μὲν ἔτι οὐδαμῇ ἠθέλεν, ἐς δὲ Ποντικούς
 καὶ Ἀρμενίους ἀποχωρήσας ἐπεμελεῖτο ὥς ἐνι

¹ ὅσους Hoeschel ὅσοις MSS.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. XLII. 5-11

ground covered with brush, and concealed by forests of wide-spreading trees, so that even for an unencumbered traveller the way had seemed impassable previously, and they made it so smooth that not only did their entire cavalry pass that way with no difficulty, but they also actually marched over that road taking with them as many of their elephants as they wished. And Huns also came to them as allies from the nation of the Sabui, as they are called, to the number of twelve thousand. But Meimeioes, fearing lest these barbarians, being in such numbers, would not only be altogether unwilling to obey his commands, but would actually do some terrible thing to the Persian army, permitted only four thousand to march with him, while he sent all the rest away to their homes after making them a generous present of money.

Now the Roman army numbered twelve thousand, they were not, however, all concentrated in one place, for there were only three thousand in the garrison at Archaeopolis under command of Odonachus and Babas, both able warriors, while all the rest were waiting in camp on the other side of the Phasis River, having in mind that, if the enemy's army should make an attack at any point, they themselves would move out from there and go to the rescue in full force. These were commanded by Venilus and Uligagus; and Varazes the Persarmenian was also with them, having recently returned from Italy and having eight hundred Tzani under his command. As for Bessas, as soon as he had captured Petra, he was quite unwilling to continue the struggle, but withdrew to the Pontici and the Armenians and was giving the closest possible atten-

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- μάλιστα τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς αὐτοῦ πόρων, ταύτη
 τε τῇ σμικρολογίᾳ τὰ Ῥωμαίων αὐθις πράγματα
 12 ἔσφηλεν. εἰ γὰρ εὐθὺς τότε νενικηκώς, ἥπέρ μοι
 εἴρηται, καὶ τὴν Πέτραν ἐλὼν ἐς τὰ Λαζῶν τε
 καὶ Ἰβήρων ὄρια ἦλθε καὶ τὰς ἐκείνη δυσχωρίας
 ἐφράξατο, οὐκ ἂν, μοι δοκεῖ, ἔτι Περσῶν στρά-
 13 τευμα ἐς Λαζικὴν ἦει. νῦν δὲ ὁ στρατηγὸς οὗτος
 τοῦ πόνου τούτου ὀλιγορήσας μόνον οὐχὶ τοῖς
 πολεμίοις Λαζικὴν αὐτοχειρὶ παραδέδωκε, τῆς ἐκ
 14 βασιλέως ὀργῆς ὀλίγα φροντίσας. εἰώθει γὰρ
 Ἰουστινιανὸς βασιλεὺς ἐπιχωρεῖν τὰ πολλὰ τοῖς
 ἀρχουσιν ἁμαρτάνουσι, καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ ἔς τε τὴν
 δαίταν καὶ τὴν πολιτείαν ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον
 παρανομοῦντες ἡλίσκοντο.
- 15 Ἦν δὲ Λαζῶν φρούρια δύο πρὸς αὐτοῖς μάλιστα
 τοῖς Ἰβηρίας ὀρίοις, Σκάνδα τε καὶ Σαραπανίς.
 ἅπερ ἐν δυσχωρίαις κείμενα χαλεπαῖς τισὶ καὶ
 ὅλως δυσκόλοις δυσπρόσοδα ὑπερφυῶς ὄντα
 16 ἐτύγγανε. ταῦτα Λαζοὶ μὲν τὸ παλαιὸν πόνῳ
 πολλῷ ἐφρούρουν, ἐπεὶ ἐνταῦθα τῶν ἐδωδίμων
 τὸ παράπαν οὐδὲν φύεται, ἀλλὰ φέροντες ἄνθρω-
 ποι ἐπὶ τῶν ὤμων¹ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐσεκομίζοντο.
- 17 βασιλεὺς δὲ Ἰουστινιανὸς κατ' ἀρχὰς τοῦδε τοῦ
 πολέμου Λαζοὺς ἀναστήσας ἐνθένδε Ῥωμαίων
 18 φρουρὰν στρατιωτῶν κατεστήσατο. οἱ δὲ οὐ
 πολλῷ ὕστερον, πιεζόμενοι τῶν ἀναγκαίων τῇ
 ἀπορίᾳ, τὰ φρούρια ταῦτα ἐξέλιπον, ἐπεὶ αὐτοὶ
 μὲν ἐλύμοις ἀποζῆν ὥσπερ οἱ Κόλχοι ἐς πλείω
 χρόνον, οὐκ εἰωθὸς σφίσιν,² ὥς ἤκιστα εἶχον,
 Λαζοὶ δὲ αὐτοῖς μακρὰν ὁδὸν πορευόμενοι φέροντές

¹ ἐπὶ τῶν ὤμων K. ἀνὰ τὸν ὄμων L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xiii 11-18

tion to the revenues from his territory, and by this niggardly policy he again wrecked the cause of the Romans. For if, straightway after that victory which I have described and his capture of Petra, he had gone to the boundaries of Lazica and Iberia and barricaded the passes there, never again, as it seems to me, would a Persian army have entered Lazica. But in fact this general, by slighting this task, all but surrendered Lazica to the enemy with his own hand, paying little heed to the emperor's wrath. For the Emperor Justinian was accustomed to condone, for the most part, the mistakes of his commanders, and consequently they were found very generally to be guilty of offences both in private life and against the state.

Now there were two fortresses of the Lazi almost exactly on the boundary of Iberia, Scanda and Saipanis. These, being situated in extremely rugged and difficult country, were extraordinarily hard of access. They used to be garrisoned by the Lazi in ancient times with great difficulty, for no food at all grows there, and supplies had to be brought in by men who carried them on their shoulders. But the Emperor Justinian at the beginning of this war had removed the Lazi from these fortresses and substituted a garrison of Roman soldiers. These soldiers, then, not long afterwards, being hard pressed by the lack of necessary supplies, abandoned these fortresses because they were quite unable to live for any considerable time on millet, as the Colchians did, since it was not familiar to them, and the Lazi no longer persevered in travel-

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 19 τε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πάντα οὐκέτι ἀντεῖχον. Πέρσαι
δὲ αὐτὰ καταλαβόντες ἔσχον, ἐν τε ταῖς σπονδαῖς
αὐτὰ Ῥωμαῖοι ἀπέλαβον τὰς ἀντιδόσεις Βώλου¹
τε τοῦ φρουρίου καὶ τοῦ Φαραγγίου² πεποιη-
μένοι, ὥσπερ μοι ταῦτα ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις
20 πάντα ἐρρήθη. Λαζοὶ μὲν οὖν ταῦτα τὰ φρούρια
ἐς ἔδαφος καθεῖλον, ὡς μὴ αὐτὰ Πέρσαι ἐπιτειχί-
σματα κατὰ σφῶν ἔχοιεν. Πέρσαι δὲ αὐτοῖν
θάτερον, ὅπερ Σκάνδα καλοῦσιν, αὐθις οἰκοδομη-
σάμενοι ἔσχον, ὃ τε Μερμερόης ἐπίπροσθεν ἦγε
τὸν Μήδων στρατόν.
- 21 Ἦν δὲ πόλις ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, Ῥοδόπολις ὄνομα,
ἥπερ ὑπηγνῆταζε πρώτη τοῖς ἐς τὴν Κολχίδα ἐξ
Ἰβηρίας ἐσβάλλουσιν, εὐέφοδος τε καὶ ἐπιμαχ-
22 τάτη ἐς τὰ μάλιστα. διὸ δὴ αὐτὴν πολλῶ πρό-
τερον δείσαντες Λαζοὶ τὴν Περσῶν ἔφοδον ἐς
ἔδαφος καθεῖλον. ὅπερ ἐπεὶ οἱ Πέρσαι ἔμαθον,
23 εὐθὺ Ἀρχαιοπόλεως ἦσαν. γνούς δὲ ὁ Μερ-
μερόης τοὺς πολεμίους ἀμφὶ τὰς ἐκβολὰς ἐν στρα-
τοπεδεύεσθαι ποταμοῦ Φάσιδος ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἤλαυ-
24 νεν. ἄμεινον γάρ οἱ ἔδοξεν εἶναι τούτους πρότερον
ἐξελύντι οὕτω δὴ ἐς τῆς Ἀρχαιοπόλεως τὴν πο-
λιορκίαν καθίστασθαι, ὡς μὴ ὀπισθεν αὐτοὶ ἰόντες
25 κακουργήσωσι τὸ Περσῶν στρατεύμα. ὡς ἀγχο-
τάτῳ δὲ τοῦ Ἀρχαιοπόλεως περιβόλου γενόμενος
ἡσπάσατο ἐρεσχελῶν τε τοὺς ταύτῃ Ῥωμαίους,
καὶ τι νεαινενσάμενος ὡς αὐτίκα δὴ μάλα³
26 ἐπανήξει σφίσι. βουλομένῳ γάρ οἱ αὐτῷ ἔφασκεν
εἶναι Ῥωμαίους τοὺς ἄλλους προσειπεῖν πρότερον,
οἳ δὴ ἐν στρατοπεδεύονται ἀμφὶ ποταμὸν Φᾶσιν.

¹ Βώλου Maltretus βόλον K, Βώλων L

ing the long journey to bring them all their supplies Whereupon the Persians occupied and held them, but in the treaty the Romans got them back in exchange for the fortress of Bolum and Phaiangium, as I have told in detail in the preceding narrative¹ The Lazi accordingly razed these fortresses to the ground, in order that the Persians might not hold them as outposts against them But the Persians rebuilt and held the one of the two which they call Scanda, and Mermeroes led the Medic army forward

There had been a city in the plain called Rhodopolis, which lay first in the way of those invading Colchis from Iberia, so situated as to be easily accessible and altogether open to attack. For this reason the Lazi had long before, in fear of the Persian invasion, razed it to the ground When the Persians learned this, they proceeded straight for Archaeopolis. But Mermeroes learned that his enemy was encamped near the mouth of the Phasis River, and he advanced upon them. For it seemed to him better first to capture this force and then to undertake the siege of Archaeopolis, in order that they might not come from the rear and do harm to the Persian army And he went close by the fortifications of Archaeopolis and gave a mocking salutation to the Romans there, and with something of a swagger said that he would come back to them at the earliest moment For, said he, he wished to address his greetings to the other Romans first who were encamped near the Phasis River And the

¹ Book I xxi 18

² τε τοῦ—Φαραγγίου L τε τὸ φρούριον καὶ τὸ φραγγίον K

³ μάλα L μάλλον K

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 27 οἱ δὲ ἀποκρινάμενοι ἵέναι μὲν αὐτὸν ἐκέλευον
 ὅπη βούλοιτο, ἰσχυρίσαντο μέντοι ὥς, ἣν τοῖς
 ἐκείνη Ῥωμαίοις ἐντύχη, οὐ μὴ ποτε αὐτοῖς
 28 ἐπανήξει. ταῦτα ἐπεὶ οἱ τοῦ Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ
 ἄρχοντες ἔμαθον, κατωρρώδησάν τε καὶ ἥσους
 οἰόμενοι εἶναι ἢ φέρειν τῶν ἐπιόντων τὴν δύναμιν
 ἐς τὰς σφίσι παρεσκευασμένας ἀκάτους ἐμβάντες
 ποταμὸν Φᾶσιν διεπορθμεύσαντο ἅπαντες, τῶν
 σφίσι παρόντων ἐπιτηδείων, ὅσα μὲν διακομίζειν
 οἰοί τε ἦσαν, ἐν ταῖς ἀκάτοις ἐνθέμενοι, τὰ δὲ
 ἄλλα ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν ἐμβεβλημένοι, ὅπως μὴ
 29 αὐτοῖς οἱ πολέμιοι τρυφᾶν δύνωνται. γενόμενος
 οὖν ἐνταῦθα παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ ὁ Μερμερόης οὐ
 πολλῷ ὕστερον, ἔρημόν τε παντάπασιν¹ ἰδὼν
 τὸ τῶν πολεμίων στρατόπεδον ἥσχαλλε τε καὶ
 30 ἀπορούμενος ἐδυσφορεῖτο. καύσας τε τὸ Ῥωμαίων
 χαράκωμα καὶ τῷ θυμῷ ζέων ἀνέστρεφεν αὐτίκα
 καὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἀρχαιοπόλιν ἦγε

XIV

- Κεῖται δὲ Ἀρχαιοπόλις ἐπὶ λόφου τινὸς σκλη-
 ροῦ ἐσάγαν, καὶ ποταμὸς αὐτὴν παραρρεῖ ἐξ
 ὄρων κατιῶν ἅπερ τῆς πόλεως καθύπερθεν ἐστὶ.
 2 πύλαι δὲ αὐτῇ αἱ μὲν κάτω εἰσὶ, φέρουσαι παρὰ
 τοῦ λόφου τὴν ὑπώρειαν, οὐκ ἀπρόσοδοι μέντοι,
 ἀλλ' ὅσον ἄνοδον ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου τινα ἐς αὐτὰς
 οὐχ ὁμαλὴ εἶναι· αἱ δὲ ἄνω ἐς τὸ κρημνῶδες
 ἐξάγουσαι² δυσπρόσοδοι ἐσάγαν εἰσὶ. χῶροι γὰρ
 λοχμῶδεις πρὸ τούτων τῶν πυλῶν εἰσὶν, ἐπὶ
 3 πλείστον διήκοντες. ἐπεὶ τε ὕδατος ἄλλου τοῖς

¹ παντάπασιν L πάντη παντάπασιν K.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xiii 27-xiv. 3

Romans, by way of answer, bade him go wherever he wished, but they declared that if he came upon the Romans there he would never return to them. When the commanders of the Roman army learned this, they became thoroughly frightened and, thinking themselves too few to withstand the force of their assailants, embarked on the boats which they had ready and ferried across the Phasis River, every man of them, placing their supplies of provisions on the boats, as much at least as they were able to carry, and throwing the rest into the river in order that the enemy might not be able to revel in them. So when Mermeroes arrived there with his whole army not long afterward, and saw the enemy's camp entirely abandoned, he was vexed and filled with resentment at the baffling situation. He then fired the Roman stockade, and boiling with fury turned back immediately and led his army against Archaeopolis.

XIV

THE city of Archaeopolis is situated on an exceedingly rugged hill, and a river flows by, coming down from the mountains which are above the city. And it has two gates, one of which is below, opening on the base of the hill, but this one is not inaccessible except in so far that the ascent to it from the plain is not smooth; but the upper gate leads out to the steep slope and is extremely difficult to approach, for the ground before this gate is covered with brush which extends to an indefinite distance. And since

² ἐξάγουσαι Braun ἐξάγουσαι αὐτὰς MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

τῇδε ὥκημένοις οὐδαμῇ μέτεστι, τείχη δύο ἐν-
θένδε οἱ τὴν πόλιν δειμάμενοι ἄχρι ἐς τὸν ποτα-
μὸν ἐτεκτῆναντο, ὅπως ἂν σφίσιν ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ
τὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὕδωρ ἀρύεσθαι δυνατὰ εἴη.

- Μερμερόης οὖν παντὶ σθένει τειχομαχεῖν
ἐνταῦθα σπουδάζων τε καὶ διατεινόμενος ἐποίει
- 4 τὰδε πρῶτα μὲν τοῖς Σαβείροις ἐπήγειλε
κριοὺς παμπληθεῖς ἐργάζεσθαι, οἷους ἂν φέρειν
ἄνθρωποι ἐπὶ τῶν ὤμων δυνατοὶ εἶεν, ἐπεὶ μηχανὰς
μὲν τὰς συνειθισμένας τρόπῳ οὐδενὶ ἐς Ἀρχαιο-
πόλεως τὸν περίβολον ἐπάγεσθαι εἶχε, κατὰ τὸν
τοῦ ὄρους πρόποδα κείμενον, ἡκηκόει δὲ ὅσα τοῖς
Ῥωμαίων ἐνσπόνδοις Σαβείροις ἀμφὶ τὸ Πέτρας
τείχος ἐργασθείη οὐ πολλῷ ἔμπροσθεν, καὶ τοῖς
ἐπινενοημένοις ἐπόμενος τὴν ἐκ τῆς πείρας ὠφέ-
λειαν μετῇ. οἱ δὲ τὰ ἐπαγγελλλόμενα ἐποιοῦν.
- 5 κριοὺς τε αὐτίκα συχνοὺς ἐτεκτῆναντο, ἥπέρ μοι
ἐναγχος Ῥωμαίοις εἰργάσθαι Σαβείρους ἐρρήθη.
ἔπειτα δὲ τοὺς μὲν Δολομίτας καλουμένους κατὰ
τῆς πόλεως τὰ κρημνώδη στέλλει ἐνοχλεῖν ἐπι-
στείλας τοὺς ταύτῃ πολεμίους δυνάμει τῇ πάσῃ.
- 6 οἱ δὲ Δολομίται οὗτοι βάρβαροι μὲν εἰσιν, ὥκη-
μένοι ἐν Πέρσαις μέσοις, οὐ μὴν κατήκοοι γεγόνασι
- 7 βασιλέως τοῦ Περσῶν πώποτε. ἰδρυμένοι γὰρ
ἐν ὄρεσιν ἀποτόμοις τε καὶ ὅλως ἀβάτοις αὐτό-
νομοι ὄντες ἐκ παλαιοῦ διαγεγόνασιν ἐς τόδε
τοῦ χρόνου· μισθαρνοῦντες δὲ αἰὲρ συστρατεύουσι
- 8 Πέρσαις ἐπὶ πολεμίους τοὺς σφετέρους ἰοῦσι. καὶ
πεζοὶ μὲν εἰσιν ἅπαντες, ξίφος τε καὶ ἀσπίδα
φέρων ἕκαστος καὶ ἀκόντια ἐν ταῖς χερσὶ τρία.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xiv. 3-8

the inhabitants of this city can get no other water, those who built it constructed two walls which extend from the city all the way to the river, in order that it might be possible for them to draw water from it in safety.

Mermeroës, consequently, being eager and determined to assault the wall there with his whole strength, did as follows. He first commanded the Sabiri to build a great number of rams, of the sort which men would be able to carry on their shoulders, because he was quite unable to bring up the customary engines to the circuit-wall of Archaeopolis, lying as it did along the lower slopes of the hill; for he had heard what had been achieved by the Sabiri who were allies of the Romans at the wall of Petra not long before, and he sought by following out the method discovered by them to reap the advantage of their experience. And they carried out his orders, constructing immediately a large number of rams, such as I have said were recently made for the Romans by the Sabiri. Next he sent the Dolomites, as they are called, to the precipitous parts of the city, directing them to harass the enemy there with all their strength. These Dolomites are barbarians who live indeed in the middle of Persia, but have never become subject to the king of the Persians. For their abode is on sheer mountainsides which are altogether inaccessible, and so they have continued to be autonomous from ancient times down to the present day, but they always march with the Persians as mercenaries when they go against their enemies. And they are all foot-soldiers, each man carrying a sword and shield and three javelins in his hand. But they shew extra-

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 9 θεῖν δὲ λίαν ἔν τε τοῖς κρημνοῖς καὶ τῶν ὀρῶν
ταῖς ὑπερβολαῖς ἐξεπίστανται, ὥσπερ ἐν πεδίῳ
10 ὑπτίῳ. καὶ διὰ τοῦτο Μερμερόης αὐτοὺς τῇδε
τειχομαχεῖν ἔταξεν, αὐτὸς δὲ παντὶ τῷ ἄλλῳ
στρατῷ ἐπὶ πύλας τὰς κάτω τοὺς τε κριοὺς καὶ
11 τοὺς ἐλέφαντας ἐπαγόμενος ἦει οἱ μὲν οὖν
Πέρσαι ξὺν τοῖς Σαβείροις ἐς τὸ τεῖχος συχνὰ
βάλλοντες, τοῖς τε τοξεύμασι καλύψαντες τὸν
ταύτη ἀέρα, οὐ μακρὰν που ἐγένοντο ἀναγκάσαι
τοὺς ἐνταῦθα Ῥωμαίους ἐκλιπεῖν τὰς ἐπάλξεις.
12 οἱ δὲ Δολομίται τὰ δοράτια ἐκ τῶν κρημνῶν
ἐκτὸς τοῦ περιβόλου ἐσακοντίζοντες πολλῷ ἔτι
μᾶλλον τοὺς κατ' αὐτοὺς πολεμίους ἐλύπουν.
13 πανταχόθι τε Ῥωμαίοις τὰ πράγματα πονηρά τε
καὶ κινδύνων ἔμπλεα ἐγεγόνει, ἔσχατα ἔσχάτων
κακὰ πάσχουσι.
- 14 Τότε δὴ Ὀδόναχός τε καὶ Βάβας, εἴτε ἀρετὴν
ἐνδεικνύμενοι εἴτε τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἀποπειρᾶσθαι
βουλόμενοι, ἣ καὶ τι αὐτοὺς θεῖον ἐκίνησεν,
εἶσαν μὲν τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὀλίγους τινάς, οἷς
δὴ ἐπέστελλον ἀπὸ τῶν ἐπάλξεων τοὺς τειχο-
μαχοῦντας ἀμύνασθαι,¹ τοὺς πλείστους δὲ
ξυγκαλέσαντες βραχεῖάν τινα παρακέλευσιν
ἐποίησαντο καὶ ἔλεξαν τάδε· “Τὸν μὲν παρόντα
κίνδυνον, ἄνδρες συστρατιῶται, καὶ τὴν περιλα-
15 βοῦσαν ἡμᾶς ἀνάγκην ὁρᾶτε δεῖ δὲ ἡμᾶς τού-
τοις δὴ τοῖς κακοῖς ὡς ἥκιστα εἴκειν. τοὺς γὰρ
εἰς ἀπόγνωσιν σωτηρίας ἐλθόντας τοῦτο ἂν
διασώσασθαι δύναίτο μόνον, τὸ μὴ τῆς σωτηρίας
ἐφίεσθαι· ἐπεὶ τῷ φιλοψύχῳ τὸ διαφθεῖρεσθαι
16 ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον ἔπεσθαι πέφυκε. καὶ τότε
δὲ ὑμᾶς ἐννοεῖν ἐν τοῖς παροῦσι δεινοῖς δεήσει, ὡς

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xiv. 9-16

ordinary nimbleness in running over cliffs and peaks of mountains, just as on a level plain. For this reason Mermeroes assigned them to attack the wall there, while he with the rest of the army went against the lower gate, bunting up the rams and the elephants. So then the Persians and Sabiri together, by shooting rapidly at the wall so that they filled the air round about it with their arrows, came not far from compelling the Romans there to abandon the parapet. And the Dolomites, hurling in their javelins from the crags outside the circuit-wall, were inflicting still more harm upon the Romans facing them. On every side, indeed, the situation of the Romans had become bad and full of danger, for they were in an extremely evil plight.

At that point Odonachus and Babas, either as making a display of valour or wishing to test the soldiers, or it may even be that some divine influence moved them, left only a few of the soldiers where they were, directing them to ward off the assailants of the wall from the parapet, and meanwhile called together the greater part of them and made a short exhortation, speaking as follows. "Fellow-soldiers, you perceive the danger which is upon us and the necessity in which we are involved. But it is incumbent upon us not to yield in the least to these evils. For those who come into a situation where safety is despaired of could be saved only by not counting safety; for a fondness for life is wont in most cases to be followed by destruction. And you will be obliged to consider this fact also in our

¹ ἀμύνεσθαι K : ἀμύνεσθαι L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἐκ τῶν ἐπάλξεων τῶνδε ἀμυνομένοις τοὺς πολεμίους¹ οὐκ ἐν βεβαίῳ τὰ τῆς σωτηρίας ἡμῶν κείσεται, ἣν καὶ τὴν ἀγωνίαν ὡς προθυμότερα
- 17 διενέγκωμεν. μάχη γὰρ ἐκ διεστηκότων ξυνισταμένη ἀνδραγαθίζεσθαι οὐδενὶ ξυγχωρεῖ, ἀλλ' ἐς τὸ τῆς τύχης² ὡς τὰ πολλὰ περιίσταται κράτος.
- 18 ἦν μέντοι ἡ ξυμβολὴ ξυσταδὸν γένηται, τὰ τε τῆς προθυμίας ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον κρατήσῃ καὶ
- 19 μετὰ τῆς ἀνδρίας ἡ νίκη χωρήσῃ. ἄνευ δὲ τούτων εὐημερήσαντες μὲν ἐν τῇ ξυμβολῇ οἱ ἀπὸ τοῦ περιβόλου μαχόμενοι οὐδὲν ἂν τι τῆς εἰημερίας ἀπόναιντο μέγα, ἐπεὶ ἐν μὲν τῷ παραυτίκα τοὺς πολεμίους σφίσιν ἀπεῶσθαι ξυμβαίνει, ἐς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίαν ὁ κίνδυνος αὐτοῖς ἐν ἀκμῇ γίνεται, καὶ κατὰ μικρὸν δὲ σφαλέντες αὐτοῖς, ὡς τὸ εἶκος,
- 20 συνδιαφθείρονται τοῖς ὀχυρώμασιν. ἐκ χειρὸς δὲ τοὺς ἐναντίους νενικηκότες ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ τὴν σωτηρίαν τὸ λοιπὸν ἔξουσιν. ὧν ἐνθυμηθέντες ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους προθυμῶς τῇ πάσῃ, τὴν ἀνῶθεν ἐπικουρίαν ἐπαγαγόμενοι, εὐέλπιδες τε τῇ προσπεσούσῃ ταυτὶ ἀπογνώσει γεγεννημένοι.
- 21 τοὺς γὰρ ἐλπίδα σωτηρίας τινὸς ἐν σφίσιν αὐτοῖς οὐδαμῇ ἔχοντας τὸ θεῖον αἰεὶ διασώζεσθαι μάλιστα εἴωθε."
- 22 Τοσαῦτα Ὀδόναχος τε καὶ Βάβας παρακελευσάμενοι τὰς τε πύλας ἀνέωγον καὶ τὸ στράτευμα δρόμῳ ἐξήγον, ὀλίγων ἀπολελειμμένων
- 23 ἐνταῦθ' αὖτις ἐξ αἰτίας τοιαύσδε. τῶν τις Λαζῶν τῇ προτεραίᾳ, λόγιμος μὲν ὧν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ ἔθνει, ἐν Ἀρχαιοπόλει δὲ ὥκημένος, ἔπρασε πρὸς
- 24 Μερμερόν ἐπὶ τῇ πατρίδι προδοσίας πέρι. ὁ δὲ

¹ τοὺς πολεμίους Haury · τοῖς πολεμίοις MSS

present stress, that by simply warding off the enemy from this parapet your safety will by no means be firmly established, even though we carry forward the struggle with the greatest zeal. For a battle which is waged between armies standing apart gives no one opportunity to shew himself a brave man, but the issue as a general thing is determined by chance. If, however, the conflict becomes a hand-to-hand struggle, enthusiasm will in most cases prevail, and victory will appear where valour lies. And apart from this, even in the case of success in the conflict, men fighting from the wall would reap no great benefit from this success, because, while they have for the moment succeeded in repulsing the enemy, the danger will again be acute on the morrow, and, on the other hand, if they fail even by a little, they are naturally destroyed along with their defences. But once having conquered their opponents in hand-to-hand combat they will thereafter have their safety assured. Let us then with these thoughts in mind advance against the enemy with all zeal, calling to our aid the assistance from above, and with our hopes raised high by that desperate situation which has now fallen to us. For God is ever wont to save those men above all others who find no hope of safety in themselves."

After Odonachus and Babas had thus encouraged the soldiers, they opened the gates and led the army forth on the run, leaving a few men behind for the following reason. One of the Lazı, who was a man of note in this nation, an inhabitant of Archaeopolis, had on the previous day negotiated with Mermeroes for the betrayal of his native land

² τρύχης Maltretus ψυχῆς MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- οἱ ἄλλο οὐδὲν ἐπήγγελλε χαρίζεσθαι Πέρσαις, πλὴν γε δὴ ὅπως, ἥνικα ἐς τειχομαχίαν καθισ-
 τῶνται, τὰ οἰκία ἐμπρήσῃ λάθρα, ἔνθα¹ ὃ τε
 σίτος καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων ἀπέκειτο.²
- 25 ἐπέστελλε δὲ ταῦτα, δυοῖν γενήσεσθαι τὸ ἕτερον
 λογισάμενος· ἥ γὰρ Ῥωμαίους περὶ τὸ πῦρ τοῦτο
 σπουδάζοντάς³ τε καὶ διατριβὴν ποιουμένους
 ἐνδώσειν σφίσι κατ' ἐξουσίαν ἐπιβατεύειν τοῦ
 περιβόλου, ἣ τειχομαχοῦντας ἀποκρούεσθαι βου-
 λομένους Πέρσας ταῦτα δὴ τὰ οἰκία ἐν ὀλιγορίᾳ
- 26 ποιήσεσθαι.⁴ καιομένων δὲ τῷ τρόπῳ τούτῳ τοῦ
 τε σίτου καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἐπιτηδείων πόνῳ σφᾶς
 οὐδενὶ πολιορκίᾳ ἐν χρόνῳ ὀλίγῳ Ἀρχαίοπολιν
- 27 ἐξαιρήσειν. τοιαύτη μὲν γνώμη ὁ Μερμερόης
 τούτῳ δὴ τῷ Λαζῷ ταῦτα ἐπέστελλεν· ὁ δὲ οἱ
 τὴν ἐπίταξιν ὡμολόγει ἐπιτελῆ δράσειν, ἥνικα⁵
 τὴν τειχομαχίαν ἀκμάζουσιν ἴδῃ,⁶ πῦρ ὡς λαθ-
- 28 ραιότατα τοῖς δωματίοις τούτοις ἐνάψας.⁷ αἰρο-
 μένην δὲ τὴν φλόγα ἐξαπιναίως Ῥωμαῖοι ἰδόντες
 ὀλίγοι μὲν τινες ἐβοήθουν ἐνταῦθα, καὶ πόνῳ
 πολλῷ τὸ πῦρ ἔσβεσαν ἀμηγέπη λυμηνάμενον,
 οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἅπαντες, ὥσπερ ἐρρήθη, ἐπὶ τοὺς
 πολεμίους ἐχώρησαν.
- 29 Ἐμπεσόντες δὲ αὐτοῖς ἐκ τοῦ αἰφνιδίου καὶ τῷ
 ἀπροσδοκῆτῳ ἐκπλήξαντες πολλοὺς ἔκτεινον,
 οὔτε ἀμυνομένους οὔτε χεῖρας αὐτοῖς ἀνταίρειν
- 30 τολμῶντας. Πέρσαι γὰρ ὀλίγους κομιδῇ τοὺς
 πολεμίους ὄντας ἐπεξιέναι σφίσιν ἐν ἐλπίδι
 οὐδεμιᾷ ἔχοντες ἀλλήλων διεστηκότες ὡς ἐς

¹ ἔνθα Haury · ἦν δὲ K, οἷς δὴ L

² ἀπέκειτο L om K

³ σπουδάζοντας K: σφαδάζοντας L

⁴ ποιήσεσθαι Hoeschel: ποιήσασθαι MSS.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. XIV. 24-30

Now Mermeroes had sent word to him to render the Persians only this service, that, whenever they began the assault on the wall, he should secretly set fire to the buildings where the grain and the rest of the provisions were stored. And he directed him to do this, reasoning that one of two things would happen, either that the Romans being concerned about this fire and devoting their attention to it would give his men opportunity to scale the circuit-wall unmolested, or that in their eagerness to repulse the Persians storming the wall they would pay no attention to these buildings; and if in this way the grain and other provisions were burned, he would with no difficulty capture Archaeopolis in a short time. With such purpose did Mermeroes give these instructions to this Laz; and he, for his part, agreed to carry out the order when he saw the storming of the wall at its height, by setting fire as secretly as possible to these buildings. And when the Romans saw the flames rising suddenly, some few of them went to the rescue and with great difficulty quenched the fire, which had done a certain amount of damage, but all the rest, as stated, went forth against the enemy.

This force, by falling upon them suddenly and terrifying them by the unexpectedness of their attack, slew many, for the Persians offered no resistance; indeed they did not even dare raise a hand against them. This was because the Persians, having no expectation that their enemy, who were few in number, would make a sally against them, had taken up positions apart from one another with a view to

⁵ ἡνίκα K: ἡνίκα γούν L

⁶ ἰδῆ K εἶδε L

⁷ ἐνάψας K. ἐνῆψε L.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 31 τειχομαχίαν ἐτετάχατο ξὺν ἁκοσμίᾳ. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν ὧμων τοὺς κριοὺς φέροντες ἄνοπλοι τε καὶ τὰ ἐς μάχην ἀπαράσκευοι, ὥς τὸ εἰκός, ἦσαν, οἱ δὲ δὴ ἄλλοι τὰ τόξα ἐντεταμένα ἐν χερσὶν ἔχοντες συσταδὸν ἐγκειμένους τοὺς πολεμίους
- 32 ἀμύνεσθαι μηχανῇ οὐδεμιᾷ εἶχον. οὕτω δὴ κόπτοιτες Ῥωμαῖοι ἐπιστροφάδην αὐτοὺς διε-
χρῶντο. ξυνέβη δὲ τότε καὶ τῶν ἐλεφάντων ἓνα πληγέντα,¹ ὥς ἔνιοί φασιν, ἢ ἀπὸ ταῦτο-
μάτου ξυνταραχθέντα, περιστρέφεσθαι τε οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ καὶ ἀναχαιτίζειν, καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἐπιβάτας
- 33 ῥίπτειν, τῶν δὲ δὴ ἄλλων τὴν τάξιν ἐκλύειν. καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι ἀνεπὸδιζον, Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ ἀδεέστερον τοὺς ἐν ποσὶν αἰεὶ διε-
34 χρῶντο. θαυμάσειε δ' ἂν τις ἐνταῦθα δικαίως, εἰ Ῥωμαῖοι μὲν, ἐξεπιστάμενοι καθ' ὃ τι χρή ἀποκρούσασθαι τῶν πολεμίων τὴν διὰ τῶν ἐλεφάντων ἐπίθεσιν, τῶν δεόντων οὐδὲν ἔδρασαν, τοῖς παροῦσι δηλονότι ξυνταραχθέντες, ἀπὸ ταῦτομάτου δὲ τὸ τοιοῦτον σφίσι ξυννηνέχθη γενέσθαι. ὃ τι δὲ τοῦτό ἐστιν, αὐτίκα δηλώσω
- 35 Ἡνίκα Χοσρόης τε καὶ ὁ Μήδων στρατὸς ἐτειχομάχουν ἀμφὶ τὸν Ἐδέσσης περίβολον, τῶν τις ἐλεφάντων, ἐπιβεβηκότος οἱ ὁμίλου πολλοῦ τῶν ἐν Πέρσαις μαχιμωτάτων, ἀγχοῦ τοῦ περι-
βόλου γενόμενος ἐπίδοξος ἦν ὅτι δὴ δι' ὀλίγου βιασάμενος τοὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐκείνη πύργου ἀμυνο-
μένους ἄτε κατὰ κορυφὴν συχνὰ βαλλομένους
- 33 τὴν πόλιν αἰρήσει.² ἐδόκει γάρ τις μηχανὴ τὸ τοιοῦτον ἐλέπολις εἶναι. ἀλλὰ Ῥωμαῖοι χοῖρον

¹ πληγέντα K πληγῆναι L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xiv. 30-36

storming the wall and so were not in battle array. And those who were carrying the iams upon their shoulders were quite naturally both unarmed and unprepared for battle, while the others, with only strung bows in their hands, were entirely unable to ward off an enemy pressing upon them in close array. Thus the Romans, slashing and turning from side to side, kept destroying them. At that moment also it so happened that one of the elephants, because he was wounded, some say, or simply because he became excited, wheeled round out of control and reared up, thus throwing his riders and breaking up the lines of the others. As a result of this the barbarians began to retreat, while the Romans continued without fear to destroy those who from time to time fell in their way. And one might wonder at this point that the Romans, though knowing well by what means they ought to repel a hostile attack by elephants, did none of the necessary things, being obviously confused by the situation, and yet this result was achieved without effort on their part. And what this is I shall now make clear.

When Chosroes and the Medic army were storming the fortifications of Edessa, one of the elephants, mounted by a great number of the most warlike men among the Persians, came close to the circuit-wall and made it seem that in a short space he would overpower the men defending the tower at that point, seeing they were exposed to missiles falling thickly from above, and would thus take the city. For it seemed that this was, in fact, an engine for the capture of cities. The Romans, however, by

² αἰρήσει Hoeschel αἰρήσειν MSS.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἐκ τοῦ πύργου ἐπικρεμάσαντες τὸν κίνδυνον τοῦ-
 37 του διέφυγον. κραυγμὸν¹ γάρ τινα, ὦν, ὡς τὸ
 εἰκός, ἡρτημένος, ὁ χοῖρος ἐνθένδε ἤφiei, ὅνπερ²
 ὁ ἐλέφας ἀχθόμενος ἀνεχαίτιζε καὶ κατὰ βραχὺ
 ἀναποδίξων ὀπίσω ἐχώρει. ἐκεῖνο μὲν οὖν ταύτη
 38 ἐχώρησε. νῦν δὲ τὸ παρειμένον τῇ Ῥωμαίων
 ὀλιγωρία ἢ τύχῃ ἐπλήρου. ἀλλ' ἐπειδὴ Ἑδέσσης
 ἐμνήσθην, οὐ σιωπήσομαι τὸ ἐκεῖνη τέρας πρὸ
 39 τοῦδε τοῦ πολέμου ξυνενεχθέν. ἡνίκα γὰρ ὁ
 Χοσρόης λύειν ἔμελλε τὰς ἀπεράντους καλου-
 μένας σπονδάς, γυνή τις ἐν πόλει βρέφος ἐκῦει
 τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἐπιεικῶς ἀνθρωπόμορφον, δύο δέ τοι
 κεφαλὰς ἔχον. ὃ δὴ τοῖς ἀποβεβηκόσι φανερόν
 40 γέγονεν. Ἑδεσσά τε γὰρ καὶ ἡ ἐφ' ἃ σχεδόν τι
 πᾶσα καὶ πρὸς βορρᾶν ἄνεμον³ ἢ πολλὴ Ῥω-
 μαίων ἀρχὴ βασιλεῦσι περιμάχητος δυοῖν γέγονε
 ταῦτα μὲν οὖν τῇδε ξυνέπεσεν. ἐγὼ δὲ ὅθενπερ
 ἐξέβην ἐπάνειμι
 41 Τῆς δὲαραχῆς οὕτως ἐπιπεσούσης τῷ Μήδων
 στρατῷ, ὅσοι δὴ αὐτῶν ὀπισθεν ἐτετάχατο, τὴν
 μὲναραχὴν τῶν ἔμπροσθεν ὄντων θεώμενοι, τὸ
 δὲ ξυμβεβηκὸς οὐδαμῇ πεπυσμένοι, κατωρρώ-
 δησαν, ἔς τε ὑπαγωγὴν ξὺν πολλῇ ἀκοσμία
 42 ἐτράποντο. ταῦτὸ δὲ τοῦτο καὶ οἱ Δολομίται
 παθόντες (ἐξ ὑπερδεξίων γὰρ μαχόμενοι τὰ
 ποιούμενα πάντα ἐώρων) αἰσχροῦ τινα φυγὴν
 43 ἔφευγον, ἣ τε τροπὴ λαμπρά⁴ ἐγεγονέι. καὶ
 τετρακισχίλιοι μὲν τῶν βαρβάρων αὐτοῦ ἔπεσον,
 ἐν τοῖς καὶ τῶν ἀρχόντων τρεῖς τετύχηκεν εἶναι,

¹ κραυγμὸν—εἰκός L: καὶ κραυγῆς γάρ τινος, καὶ ὦν ὡς
 εἰκός K.

² ὅνπερ L. om. K.

suspending a pig from the tower escaped this peril. For as the pig was hanging there, he very naturally gave vent to sundry squeals, and this angered the elephant so that he got out of control and, stepping back little by little, moved off to the rear. Such was the outcome of that situation. But in the present case the omission due to the thoughtlessness of the Romans was made good by chance. But now that I have mentioned Edessa, I shall not be silent as to the portent which appeared there before this present war. When Chosroes was about to break the so-called endless peace, a certain woman in the city gave birth to an infant which in other respects was a normally formed human being, but had two heads. And the meaning of this was made clear by the events which followed, for both Edessa and practically the whole East and the greater part of the Roman empire to the north came to be fought for by two sovereigns. Thus did these things happen. But I shall return to the point from which I strayed.

When confusion thus fell upon the Medic army, those stationed in the rear, seeing the confusion of those before them, but having no real knowledge of what had happened, became panic-stricken and turned to retreat in great disorder. And the Dolomites also experienced a like panic (for they were fighting from the higher positions and could see everything which transpired), and they too began to flee in a disgraceful manner, so that the rout became decisive. Four thousand of the barbarians fell there, among whom, as it happened, were three

³ πρὸς θορρᾶν ἀνεμὸν Haury: πρὸς MSS

⁴ λαμπρά K: om. L.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- τέσσαρα δὲ τῶν Περσικῶν σημείων Ῥωμαῖοι
 εἶλον, ἅπερ εὐθὺς ἐς Βυζάντιον βασιλεῖ ἔπεμψαν.
- 44 ἵππους δὲ φασιν αὐτῶν οὐχ ἥσσους ἢ ἐς δις-
 μυρίους ἀπολωλέναι, οὐ βληθέντας οὐδὲ πλη-
 γέντας πρὸς τῶν πολεμίων, ἀλλὰ μακρὰν μὲν
 ὁδὸν πορευθέντας, κόπῳ δὲ ὠμιληκότας ἐν ταύτῃ
 πολλῶ, τροφῶν δέ, ἐπεὶ ἐν Λαζικῇ ἐγένοντο, ὥς
 ἥκιστα ἐς κόρον ἐλθόντας, οὕτω τε λιμῶ καὶ
 ἀσθενείᾳ πιεζομένους πολλῇ διεφθάρθαι.
- 45 Ταύτης δὲ τῆς πείρας ὁ Μερμερόης ἀποτυχῶν
 παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ ἐς Μοχήρησιν ἀπεχώρησεν,
 ἐπεὶ καὶ Ἀρχαιοπόλεως ἀποτυχόντες, Λαζικῆς
 τῆς ἄλλης τὴν ἐπικράτησιν ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον
- 46 οἱ Πέρσαι εἶχον. Ἀρχαιοπόλεως δὲ ἡ Μο-
 χήρησις ἡμέρας μιᾶς ὁδῷ ἀπέχει, πολλὰς καὶ
 πολυανθρώπους κώμας ἔχουσα—καὶ γῆς τῆς
 Κολχίδος αὕτη μάλιστα ἡ ἀρίστη ἐστίν· ἐπεὶ
 καὶ οἶνος ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι καρποὶ ἀγαθοὶ
 φύονται, καίτοι τά γε ἄλλα τῆς Λαζικῆς οὐ ταύτη
- 47 ἔχει. ταύτην παραρρεῖ τὴν χώραν ποταμός,
 Ῥέων ὄνομα, οὗ δὴ καὶ¹ φρούριον ὠκοδομήσαντο
 ἐκ παλαιοῦ Κόλχοι, οὐπερ ὕστερον αὐτοὶ τὸ
 πλείστον ἐς ἔδαφος καθεῖλον, ἐπεὶ ἐν πεδίῳ
 κείμενον ἐσάγαν ὑπτίῳ εὐέφοδον σφίσιν ἔδοξεν
- 48 εἶναι. Κοτιάιον δὲ τότε τὸ φρούριον ὠνομάζετο
 τῇ Ἑλλήνων φωνῇ, νῦν μέντοι Κόταις αὐτὸ
 καλοῦσι Λαζοὶ τῇ τῆς φωνῆς ἀγνοίᾳ τὴν τοῦ
 ὀνόματος διαφθείροντες ἀρμονίαν. ταῦτα μὲν
- 49 Ἀριανὸς οὕτως ἱστόρησεν. ἕτεροι δὲ φασὶ πόλιν
 τε γεγενέσθαι ἐν τοῖς ἄνω χρόνοις τὸ χωρίον

¹ δὴ καὶ K: δὴ τὸ L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xiv. 43-49

of the commanders, and the Romans captured four of the Persian standards, which they immediately sent to Byzantium for the emperor. They say, moreover, that not less than twenty thousand of their horses perished, not from wounds inflicted by their enemy's missiles or swords, but because in travelling a great distance they had become utterly exhausted and then had found no sufficiency of fodder since the time they had come into Lazica; and so, they say, under the stress of both starvation and weakness they succumbed.

Having thus failed in this attempt, Mermeroes withdrew with his whole army to Mocheresis; for, even though they had failed of getting Archæopolis, the Persians still held the mastery of the greater part of the rest of Lazica. Now Mocheresis is one day's journey distant from Archæopolis, a district which includes many populous villages. And this is really the best land in Colchis, for both wine and the other good things are produced there, though the rest of Lazica, to be sure, is not of such a sort. Along by this district flows a river called Rheon, and on it the Colchians in ancient times built a fortress, but in later times they themselves razed the greater part of it to the ground, because, lying as it did in a very flat plain, it seemed to them easy of access. In those times the fortress was named Cotiaion in the Greek language, but now the Lazi call it Cotaïs,¹ having corrupted the true sound of the name because of their ignorance of the language. Such is the account given by Arrian.² But others say that the place was a city in ancient times and was called

¹ Probably Cytaea, modern Cutaïs

² This statement is not found in the extant works of Arrian

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

καὶ Κοίταιον καλεῖσθαι· ἔνθεν τε τὸν Αἰήτην
ὠρμήσθαι,¹ καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ τοὺς ποιητὰς αὐτόν
τε Κοιταῖα καὶ γῆν τὴν Κολχίδα Κοιταῖδα
καλεῖν.

- 50 Τοῦτο Μερμερόης ταυῦν ἀνοικοδομήσασθαι ²
ἐν σπουδῇ ἔχων, ἐπεὶ οὐδεμίαν παρασκευὴν τοῦ
ἔργου εἶχεν, ἅμα δὲ καὶ ὁ χειμὼν ἤδη ἐνέκειτο,
ξύλινα τοῦ φρουρίου ὅσα καταπεπτῶκει ὡς
51 τάχιστα ποιησάμενος αὐτοῦ ἔμενε. τοῦ δὲ
Κόταις ἄγχιστα φρούριον ἐχυρώτατόν ἐστιν,
Οὔθιμέρεος ὄνομα· ἐν ᾧ δὴ φυλακτήριον ἐς τὸ
52 ἀκριβὲς οἱ Λαῖοι εἶχον. μετεῖχον δὲ σφίσι τῆς
τοῦ φρουρίου φυλακῆς καὶ Ῥωμαῖοι στρατιῶται
53 ὀλίγοι τινές. ὁ μὲν οὖν Μερμερόης τῷ παντὶ
στρατῷ ἐνταῦθα καθῆστο, γῆς τε τῆς Κολχίδος
τὰ κάλλιστα ἔχων, ἐμπόδιός τε τοῖς ἐναντίοις
γινόμενος ἐς τὸ Οὔθιμέρεος φρούριον τῶν ἐπιτη-
δείων τι ἐσκομίζεσθαι, ἢ ἐς χώραν τὴν τε
Σουανίαν καὶ τὴν Σκυμνίαν καλουμένην ἰέναι,
54 καίπερ σφίσιν αὐτῆς κατηκόου οὔσης πολεμίων
γὰρ ἐν Μοχηρήσιδι ὄντων, Λαῖοις τε καὶ
Ῥωμαίοις ὁδοῦ ἀποκεκλείσθαι τῆς εἰς τὰ ταύτη
χωρία ξυμβαίνει· τὰ μὲν οὖν στρατόπεδα ἐπὶ
Λαζικῆς ἐφέρετο τῇδε.

XV

Ἐν δὲ Βυζαντίῳ ὁ Χοσρόου πρεσβευτῆς Ἰσδι-
γούσνας ἀμφὶ τῇ εἰρήνῃ ἐς λόγους Ἰουστινιανῷ
βασιλεῖ ξυνιῶν πολὺ τι χρόνου κατέτριψε μῆκος.

¹ ὠρμήσθαι Maltretus from an inferior MS . ὀρμᾶσθαι KL.
206

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xiv 49-xv 1

Coetaeon; and that Aeetes was born there, and as a result of this the poets both called him a Coetaean and applied the same name to the land of Colchis.

This place Mermeroes was now eager to rebuild, but, since he had no equipment for the task, and because at the same time the winter was already setting in, he replaced with wood as quickly as possible such parts of the fortress as had fallen down and remained there. But very close to Cotaïs is an exceedingly strong fortress, Uthimereos by name, in this the Lazî were maintaining strict guard. And a small number of Roman soldiers also were sharing with them the defence of the fortress. So Mermeroes settled there with his whole army, holding the fairest part of the land of Colchis, and preventing his opponents from carrying any provisions into the fortress of Uthimereos, or from going into the district of Suania and Scymnia, as it is called, though this was subject to them. For when an enemy is in Mocheresis, the road into this region is thereby cut off for both Lazî and Romans. Thus were the armies engaged in Lazica.

XV

IN Byzantium, meanwhile, Chosroes' envoy Isdigousnas, in conferring with the Emperor Justinian regarding the peace, wasted a vast amount of time

² ἀνοικοδομήσασθαι Haury οἰκοδομήσασθαι MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 2 πολλά τε διαφιλονεικήσαντες ἐν ὑστάτῳ ξυνέ-
βησαν, ἐφ' ᾧ πενταετὴ μὲν τὴν ἐκεχειρίαν ἐν τῇ
ἐκατέρου βασιλείᾳ ἐπικρατεία εἶναι, φοιτῶντας
δὲ παρ' ἀλλήλους ἐκατέρωθεν καὶ ἀδεῶς ἐπι-
κηρυκευομένους ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ¹ τὰ τε ἀμφὶ
Λαζικῇ καὶ Σαρακηνοῖς διάφορα² διοικήσασθαι.
3 ξυνέκειτο δὲ Πέρσας πρὸς Ῥωμαίων λαβεῖν ὑπὲρ
μὲν τῆς ἐκεχειρίας τῶν πέντε τούτων ἐνιαυτῶν
κεντηνάρια χρυσοῦ εἴκοσιν, ὑπὲρ δὲ μηνῶν
ὀκτωκαίδεκα,³ οὓς δὴ μετὰ τὴν προτέραν ἐκε-
χειρίαν ἐς ταύτην διαδραμεῖν μεταξὺ ἔτυχεν,
ἕως ἐκάτεροι παρ' ἀλλήλους ἐπρέσβευον, ἕτερα
4 κεντηνάρια ἕξ. ἐπὶ τούτῳ γὰρ ἔφασκον Πέρσαι
καὶ τοὺς ὑπὲρ τῶν σπονδῶν λόγους ξυγκεχωρη-
5 κέναι γενέσθαι. ταῦτα δὲ τὰ εἴκοσι κεντηνάρια
Ἰσδιγούσνας μὲν αὐτόθεν ἡξίου κομίζεσθαι,
βασιλεὺς δὲ ἤθελεν ἐς ἕκαστον ἔτος τέτταρα
δοῦναι, τούτου δὴ ἕνεκα, τοῦ μὴ παραβῆναι τὰς
6 ξυνθήκας Χοσρόην ἐνέχυρον ἔχειν. ὕστερον
μέντοι τὸ ξυγκείμενον ἅπαν χρυσίον Ῥωμαῖοι
Πέρσαις εὐθὺς ἔδοσαν, τοῦ μὴ δοκεῖν δασμοὺς
7 ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος αὐτοῖς ἀποφέρειν. τὰ γὰρ αἰσχρὰ
ὀνόματα, οὐ τὰ πράγματα, εἰώθασιν ἄνθρωποι ἐκ
τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον αἰσχύνεσθαι.
8 Ἦν δέ τις ἐν Πέρσαις Βερσαβοῦς ὄνομα,
λόγιμός τε διαφερόντως καὶ Χοσρόη βασιλεῖ
9 ἐς τὰ μάλιστα φίλος. ὥνπερ ποτὲ Βαλεριανὸς
ἐν Ἀρμενίοις παραπεπτωκότα ἐν ξυμβολῇ δο-
ρυάλωτον εἶλεν, ἕς τε Βυζάντιον αὐτίκα βασιλεῖ

¹ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ KL: om W

² τὰ—διάφορα K τὰς—διαφοράς L, τὰ W.

³ ὀκτωκαίδεκα KL δώδεκα W.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII xv. 2-9

And it was only after long-continued debates that they finally reached an agreement that for five years the truce should be observed in the realms of both sovereigns, while envoys passed back and forth from each country to the other, fearlessly carrying on negotiations for peace during this period until they should settle the points of disagreement regarding both Lazica and the Saracens. It was further agreed that the Persians receive from the Romans for this five-year truce twenty centenaria¹ of gold, and for eighteen months which had elapsed between the expiration of the former truce and the time when they had commenced negotiations with each other in the present case, six centenaria more. For the Persians declared that only on this understanding had they permitted negotiations for the treaty to proceed. Isdighousias further demanded that he should receive these twenty centenaria on the spot, but the emperor wished to give four each year, his purpose, of course, being that he might have surety that Chosroes would not violate the agreement. Later, however, the Romans gave the Persians outright the entire amount of gold agreed upon, in order not to appear to be paying them tribute each year. For it is the disgraceful name, and not the fact, which men are wont as a general thing to be ashamed of.

Now there was a certain man among the Persians named Bersabus, a person of especial note and a very close friend of King Chosroes. Valerian had once happened upon this man in a battle in Armenia, and he took him prisoner and immediately sent him

¹ See Book III. vi 2, note.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 10 ἔπεμψε. καὶ αὐτῷ χρόνος πολὺς φυλασσομένῳ
ἐνταῦθα ἐτρίβη. βουλομένῳ τε ἦν τῷ Χοσρόῳ
χρημάτων ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ προίεσθαι πλήθος, ὅπως
τὸν Βερσαβούν ἐπανήκοντα ἴδη ἐς τὰ Περσῶν
11 ἦθη. ἀλλὰ νῦν ἐξαιτησαμένου αὐτὸν Ἰσδι-
γούσνα Ἰουστινιανὸς βασιλεὺς τὸν ἄνδρα ἀφῆ-
κεν.¹ ἐπηγγέλλετο γὰρ βασιλεῖ ὁ πρεσβευτῆς
οὗτος ἀναπέσειν Χοσρόην ἐκ τῆς Λαζικῆς ἀνα-
12 στήσαι τὸ Περσῶν στράτευμα. ἐγένετο δὲ ἡ
ἐκχειρία ἥδε Ῥωμαίοις τε καὶ Πέρσαις, πέμπτον
τε καὶ εἰκοστὸν ἐνιαυτὸν Ἰουστινιανοῦ βασιλέως
13 τὴν αὐτοκράτορα ἀρχὴν ἔχοντος ταύταις δὲ
ταῖς σπονδαῖς Ῥωμαίων οἱ πλείστοι ἐπιεικῶς
ἦχθοντο. καὶ εἰ μὲν δικαίαν τινα ἢ ἀλόγιστον
ἐποιοῦντο τὴν μέμφιν, οἶά γε τὰ τῶν ἀρχομένων,
οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν.
14 Ἐλεγον δὲ ὅτι δὴ Λαζικῆς βεβαιότατα πρὸς
Περσῶν ἀρχομένης² αἱ ξυνθήκαι αὗται γεγό-
νασιν, ὥς μή τις πενταετες αὐτοὺς ἐνοχλήσῃ,
ἀλλ' ἀδεέστερόν τε καὶ ἀπονώτερον γῆς τῆς
Κολχίδος τὰ κάλλιστα πάντα τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον
15 ἐνοικεῖν δύνωνται. ὅθεν αὐτοὺς τὸ λοιπὸν ἐξε-
λάσαι οὐδεμιᾷ Ῥωμαῖοι ἐς ἅπαντα τὸν αἰῶνα
μηχανῇ³ ἐξούσιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ Βυζάντιον ἐν-
θένδε Πέρσαις εὐέφοδον τὸ λοιπὸν ἔσται. ταῦτα
οὖν ἀποσκοποῦντες οἱ πολλοὶ ἥσχαλλον καὶ
16 δυσφορούμενοι διηποροῦντο· καὶ ὅτι Πέρσαι τὸ
ἐκ παλαιοῦ μὲν σφίσιν ἐν σπουδῇ γεγονός, δόξαν
δὲ οὔτε πολέμῳ κρατήσῃν⁴ οὔτε τῷ ἄλλῳ τρόπῳ

¹ ἀφῆκεν W : ἐφῆκεν KL

² ἀρχομένης KL : ἐχομένης W

³ οὐδεμιᾷ—μηχανῇ LW : οὐδεμίαν—μηχανήν K.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII xv. 9-16

to the emperor at Byzantium. And a long time passed while he was being kept under guard there. Now Chosroes was willing to advance a great amount of money for him, in order that he might see Bersabuz returned to the land of Persia. But on the present occasion the Emperor Justinian released the man at the request of Isdigousnas; for this ambassador promised the emperor to persuade Chosroes to remove the Persian army from Lazica. Thus this armistice was arranged by the Romans and Persians in the twenty-fifth year of the reign of the Emperor Justinian. Now the majority of the Romans were thoroughly displeased with this treaty; but whether the reproach they made was in some measure justified or as unreasonable as the complaints of subjects commonly are, I am unable to say.

These objectors kept saying that this peace had been made while Lazica was most firmly in the power of the Persians, whose purpose was that for five years no one might molest them, but that during this time they might be able without fear or hardship to occupy all the finest parts of the land of Colchis; and the Romans thereafter would be utterly unable to dislodge them from there in all time, but thenceforth Byzantium itself would be easily accessible to the Persians from that point. Such was the general view, and the people were consequently vexed and irritated and utterly pessimistic. They were also moved by the fact that the very thing which the Persians had been striving for from ancient times, but which had seemed impossible of achievement either by war or by any other

⁴ κρατήσιν W κρατεῖν KL.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- δυνατὸν ἔσσεσθαι, λέγω δέ, ὅπως ἐς δασμοῦ ἀπαγωγὴν ὑπόφοροι αὐτῶν Ῥωμαῖοι ἔσονται, ἰσχυρότατα ἐν τῷ παρόντι τῷ τῆς ἐκεχειρίας ὀνόματι
- 17 ἐκρατύναντο. τάξας γάρ ὁ Χοσρόης Ῥωμαῖοις κεντηναρίων ἐπέτειον τεσσάρων δασμόν, οὐπερ γλιχόμενος τὸ ἐξ ἀρχῆς διαφανῆς ἦν, ἐς ἔνδεκα ἔτη ταυῦν καὶ μῆνας ἕξ εὐπρεπεῖ λόγῳ ἕξ καὶ τεσσαράκοντα κεντηνάρια τῇ τῆς ἐκεχειρίας κεκόμισται¹ σκήψει, ὄνομα τῷ δασμῷ τὰς σπονδὰς θέμενος, καίπερ ἐπὶ Λαζικῆς μεταξὺ² βιαζόμενός τε
- 18 καὶ πολεμῶν, ἥπερ ἐρρήθη. ὥνπερ Ῥωμαῖοι σφᾶς αὐτοὺς ῥύσασθαι ἐς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον ἐν ἐλπίδι³ τὸ λοιπὸν οὐδεμιᾷ εἶχον, ἀλλὰ φόρου ὑποτελεῖς Πέρσαις ἦσθοντο οὐ κεκρυμμένως γεγεννημένοι.
- 19 ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ταύτῃ ἐπέπρακτο.

- Ἰσδιγούσνας δὲ χρήματά τε περιβαλόμενος ὅσα οὐδεὶς πρέσβων πώποτε, καὶ πάντων, οἶμαι, πλουσιώτατος Περσῶν γεγυνώς ἐπ' οἴκου ἀπεκομίσθη, ἐπεὶ αὐτὸν Ἰουστινιανὸς βασιλεὺς ἐτετιμῆκει τε⁴ ἐν τοῖς μάλιστα καὶ χρήμασι
- 20 μεγάλους δωρησάμενος ἀπεπέμψατο. μόνος δὲ πρέσβων ἀπάντων οὗτος ἐς πείραν φυλακῆς οὐδεμιᾷς ἦλθεν, ἀλλ' αὐτός τε καὶ ὅσοι αὐτῷ βάρβαροι εἶποντο πολλοὶ ἐσάγαν ὄντες ἐν πολλῇ ἐξουσίᾳ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ χρόνου μῆκος ἐντυγχάνειν τε καὶ ξυγγίνεσθαι οἷς ἂν βούλονται, καὶ τῆς πόλεως πανταχόσε περιπάτους ποιεῖσθαι,⁵ ὠνεῖσθαι τε καὶ ἀποδίδοσθαι ὅσα ἦν βουλομένοις

¹ κεκόμισται LW κεκόσμηται K.

² μεταξύ W. om. KL.

³ ἐν ἐλπίδι—οὐδεμιᾷ Haurý: ἐλπίδι—οὐδεμιᾷ MSS ἐλπίδα—οὐδεμίαν editors

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xv. 16-20

means,—that is to say, having the Romans subject to the payment of tribute to them—this had been most firmly achieved at the present juncture in the name of an armistice. For Chosroes, by imposing upon the Romans an annual tribute of four centenaria, the very thing he had clearly been bent upon having from the first, has up to the present time in a space of eleven years and six months speciously gathered in forty-six centenaria on the pretext of the armistice, giving to the tribute the name of treaty, although in the meantime he has, as stated, been carrying on a campaign of violence and war in Lazica. From this plight the Romans had not the least hope of rescuing themselves in the future, but they perceived that they had in no hidden sense become tributary to the Persians. Thus were these things done.

But Isdigiousnas, in possession of money such as no envoy ever carried and having become, I suppose, the wealthiest of all the Persians, departed on the homeward way, for the Emperor Justinian had honoured him in a signal manner and presented him with huge sums of money before his dismissal. And this man, unlike all other ambassadors, did not have the experience of being under guard in any sense, but both he himself and all who followed him—and they were an exceedingly numerous company—enjoyed complete freedom for a long period of time in meeting and associating with whom they wished, walking about in every part of the city, buying and selling whatever they

⁴ ἐτετίμηκεν τε LW τετίμηκεν K

⁵ περιπάτους ποιῆσθαι KW περιών L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

σφίσι, καὶ ξυμβόλαια ποιεῖσθαι πάντα¹ ἐργασίᾳ
 τε τῇ περὶ ταῦτα² ἐνδιατρίβειν ξὺν πάσῃ ἀδείᾳ,
 καθάπερ ἐν πόλει αὐτῶν ἰδίᾳ, Ῥωμαίων αὐτοῖς
 οὐδενὸς ἐπομένου ἢ ξυνόντος ὅλως ἢ τηρεῖν
 ἀξιούντος, ἥπερ εἰώθει.

- 21 Ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ τετύχηκέ τι τῶν οὐπω
 πρότερον, ὅσα γε ἡμᾶς εἰδέναι, γεγονότων ξυνε-
 νεχθῆναι. τοῦ μὲν γὰρ ἔτους μετόπωρον ἦν, αὐχ-
 μὸς δὲ καὶ πυγμὸς ὥσπερ θέρους μέσου ἐγένετο
 θαυμαστὸν ὅσον· ὥστε ἀμέλει ρόδων μὲν πλήθος
 ἅτε ἥρος ὄντος ἐφύη, τῶν εἰωθότων οὐδενὶ τὸ
 22 παράπαν διαλλασσόντων. καρπούς δὲ τὰ δέν-
 δρα σχεδὸν τι ἅπαντα νέους τινὰς αὖθις ἤνεγκε,
 κὰν ταῖς ἀμπέλαις οὐδέν τι ἥσσον ἐγένοντο
 βότρυνες, καίπερ τοῦ τρυγῆτου γεγενημένου ἡμέ-
 23 ραις ἤδη οὐ πολλαῖς ἐμπροσθεν. οἷς δὲ οἱ ταῦτα
 δεινοὶ τεκμηριούμενοι προὔλεγον ἀπροσδόκητον
 μέγα τι ἔσεσθαι, οἱ μὲν ἀγαθόν, οἱ δὲ τοῦναντίον.
 24 ἐγὼ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν κατὰ τι ξυμβεβηκὸς γεγονέναι
 οἶμαι, νότων ἐπὶ πλείστον ἀνέμων, ἥπερ εἰώθει,
 ἐπιπесόντων καὶ θέρμης ἐνθένδε παρὰ τὰ ξυ-
 νειθισμένα πολλῆς τε καὶ οὐ κατὰ φύσιν τῆς
 25 ὥρας ἐπιγενομένης τῇ χώρᾳ. εἰ δέ τι, ὥσπερ
 οὐτοί φασι, καὶ σημαίνει παρὰ δόξαν ἐσόμενον,
 βεβαιότατα ἐκ τῶν ἀποβησομένων εἰσόμεθα.

¹ πάντα KL ταῦτα W

² ταῦτα KL πάντα W

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xv. 20-25

pleased, and carrying on all manner of transactions and devoting themselves with complete unconcern to the business connected therewith, just as they would in a city of their own, with not a Roman following or accompanying them at all or deigning to watch them, as is customary.

At this time an event occurred which has never happened before, as far at least as we know. For though the season of the year was late autumn, there was a very remarkable period of drought and hot weather as in the middle of summer, so that a great quantity of roses actually came out, as if it were spring, differing in no way at all from ordinary roses. And practically all the trees brought forth new fruit again, while the clusters likewise appeared on the vines, although the vintage had already been gathered not many days before. From these things those that are clever in such matters drew sundry conclusions, saying that some great and unexpected thing would take place, some that it would be good and others the opposite. But I for my part think that this was the result of a sort of coincidence, the usual south winds having prevailed for a very long period, and great heat having consequently come upon the land beyond what is customary and not in keeping with the season. But if it really does, as they say, indicate that some unexpected event will happen, we shall know most certainly from the future outcome

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

XVI

- Ἐν ᾧ δὲ τάδε ἀμφὶ ταῖς σπονδαῖς Ῥωμαίοις
 τε καὶ Πέρσαις ἐν Βυζαντίῳ ἐπράσσετο, ἐν
 τούτῳ ἐπὶ Λαζικῆς¹ τάδε ξυνηνέχθη γενέσθαι.
 2 Γουβάζης ὁ Λαζῶν βασιλεὺς Ῥωμαίοις εὐνοικῶς
 ἔσχευ, ἐπεὶ οἱ Χοσρόην, ὥσπερ μοι ἐν τοῖς
 ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις ἐρρήθη, ἐπιβουλεύειν θάνατον
 3 ἤσθετο. τῶν δὲ ἄλλων Λαζῶν οἱ πλείστοι
 ἀνῆκεστα πρὸς τῶν Ῥωμαίων στρατιωτῶν δεινὰ
 πύσχοντες καὶ διαφερόντως τοῖς ἄρχουσι τοῦ
 στρατοῦ ἀχθόμενοι ἐμῆδιζον ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλεῖ-
 στον, οὐ τὰ Περσῶν ἀσπαζόμενοι, ἀλλ' ἀπαλ-
 λαξείοντες τῆς Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς καὶ τῶν δυσ-
 4 χερῶν τὰ τέως μὴ παρόντα αἰρούμενοι. ἦν δέ
 τις ἐν Λαζοῖς οὐκ ἀφανὴς ἀνὴρ Θεοφόβιος ὄνομα,
 ὅσπερ τῷ Μερμερόῳ λσθραιότατα ἐς λόγους
 ξυμμίξας φρούριον ἐνδώσειν τὸ Οὐθιμέρεος
 5 ὡμολόγησεν. ὁ δὲ αὐτὸν ἐλπίσι μεγάλαις
 ἐπάρας ἐς τὴν πρᾶξιν ὥρμησε ταύτην, φίλου
 μὲν αὐτὸν ἐν τοῖς μάλιστα Χοσρόῳ βασιλεῖ²
 ἐκ τοῦ ἔργου τούτου ἰσχυρισάμενος ἔσεσθαι,
 Πέρσαις δὲ ἀνάγραφτον ἐπ' εὐεργεσίᾳ ἐς τὸν
 πάντα αἰῶνα, καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ δόξῃ τε καὶ πλούτῳ
 καὶ δυνάμει αὐτὸν γενήσεσθαι μέγαν. οἷς δὴ
 Θεοφόβιος ἐπαρθεὶς πολλῶ ἔτι μᾶλλον εἰς τὸ
 ἔργον ἠπείγετο.
- 6 Καὶ ἦν γὰρ οὐδεμία ἐπιμιξία Ῥωμαίοις τε
 καὶ Λαζοῖς τότε, ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν Πέρσαις πολλῇ
 ἐξουσίᾳ πανταχόσε περιήρχοντο τῶν ταύτῃ

¹ Λαζικῆς Hoeschel λαζικῇ K λαζικοῖς L

² χοσρόῳ βασιλεῖ L: χοσρόην βασιλέα K.

XVI

WHILE these negotiations were taking place in Byzantium between the Romans and Persians regarding the treaty, meantime the following took place in Lazica. Gubazes, the king of the Lazi, was well disposed toward the Romans, for he perceived that Chosroes, as I have stated in the previous narrative,¹ was plotting his death. But the most of the other Lazi, being subjected to outrageous treatment at the hands of the Roman soldiers, and being particularly angry with the commanders of the army, began to favour the Medes as a general thing, not because they preferred the cause of the Persians, but because they wished to be rid of the Roman rule and preferred those difficulties which were not for the moment present. Now there was a man of no mean station among the Lazi, Theophobius by name, who conferred very secretly with Mermerioes and promised to put the fortress of Uthimereos into his hands. And he filled the man with great hopes and urged him to accomplish this, declaring that as a result of this deed he would not only be a very close friend of King Chosroes, but would also be inscribed by the Persians as a benefactor for all time, and consequently would become great in renown and in wealth and power. Theophobius was elated by these promises and kept working still more eagerly for the accomplishment of his purpose.

Now there was at that time no free movement of the Romans and Lazi, but, while the Persians were going about everywhere in that country with

¹ Book II. xxix 2.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

χωρίων, Ῥωμαίων δὲ καὶ Λαζῶν οἱ μὲν παρὰ
 ποταμὸν Φᾶσιν ἐλάνθανον, οἱ δὲ Ἀρχαιοπόλιν
 ἢ ἄλλο τι τῶν ἐκείνῃ ὀχυρωμάτων καταλαβόντες
 ἐκρύπτοντο· καὶ Γουβάξης αὐτός, ὁ Λαζῶν
 βασιλεύς, ἐς τῶν ὀρῶν τὰς ὑπερβολὰς ἡσυχῇ
 7 ἔμενε. πόνῳ γοῦν ὁ Θεοφόβιος οὐδενὶ ἴσχυσε
 τὴν ὑπόσχεσιν τῷ Μερμερόῃ ἐπιτελέσαι· ἐν
 γὰρ τῷ φρουρίῳ γενόμενος ἔφασκε Λαζοῖς τε
 καὶ Ῥωμαίοις οἱ τὸ ἐνταῦθα φυλακτήριον εἶχον
 ὡς ἅπας μὲν ὁ Ῥωμαίων στρατὸς ἀπολώλει,
 Γουβάξῃ δὲ βασιλεῖ καὶ Λαζοῖς τοῖς ἄμφ' αὐτὸν
 ἅπασι διαφθαρείῃ τὰ πράγματα, Κολχίς δὲ
 ξύμπασα πρὸς Περσῶν ἔχοιτο, καὶ οὐδέ τις
 ἐλπίς Ῥωμαίοις¹ ποτὲ ἢ τῷ Γουβάξῃ² ἀνα-
 8 σωθῆσθαι τῆς χώρας τὸ κράτος. τὰ μὲν γὰρ
 πρότερα κατὰ μόνας ταῦτα τὸν Μερμερόην δια-
 πεπρᾶχθαι, μυριάδας τε πλέον ἐπτὰ ἐπαγαγό-
 μενον Περσῶν μαχίμων ἀνδρῶν καὶ βαρβάρους
 Σαβείρους παμπληθεῖς· νῦν δὲ καὶ βασιλέα
 Χοσρόην στρατῷ ἀμυθήτῳ ἐνθάδε ἤκουτα ἐξα-
 πιναίως αὐτοῖς ἀναμεμίσχθαι καὶ οὐκ ἂν τὸ λοιπὸν
 οὐδὲ αὐτὴν Κόλχων τῇ στρατιᾷ ταύτῃ τὴν γῆν
 9 ἐπαρκέσειν. ταῦτα τερατευσάμενος Θεοφόβιος
 ἐς δέος μέγα καὶ ἀμηχανίαν κατεστήσατο τοὺς
 10 ἐνταῦθα φρουρούς. καὶ αὐτὸν ἐλιπάρουν πρὸς
 θεοῦ τοῦ πατρῷου ἰκετεύοντες τὰ παρόντα ὅση
 11 δύναμις εὖ θέσθαι σφίσι. καὶ ὃς αὐτοῖς³ ὡμο-
 λόγει πρὸς τοῦ Χοσρόου ἄμφι τῇ σωτηρίᾳ τὰ
 πιστὰ οἴσειν, ἐφ' ᾧ τὸ φρούριον ἐνδώσουσι
 Πέρσαις.

¹ Ῥωμαίοις K. ἐς Ῥωμαίους L

² τῷ γουβάξῃ K. τὸν γουβάξην L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xvi. 6-11

complete liberty, some of the Romans and Lazı were hiding by the Phasis River, while others had seized Archaeopolis or some other one of the strongholds there and were concealing themselves therein. Meanwhile Gubazes himself, the king of the Lazı, was remaining quietly at the summit of the mountains. Consequently Theophobius was able with no difficulty to make good his promise to Mermeroes. For he went inside the fortress and stated to the Lazı and Romans who were keeping guard there that the whole Roman army had perished, that the cause of King Gubazes and of all the Lazı about him had been utterly lost, and that all Colchis was held by the Persians, and there was not one single hope for the Romans or Gubazes ever to win back the rule of the land. For formerly, he pointed out, Mermeroes had accomplished this alone, bringing with him more than seventy thousand fighting men of the Persians and vast numbers of barbarian Sabiri, but now, he said, King Chosroes himself had actually come there with an unnumbered host and suddenly joined forces with them, and henceforth not even the whole land of the Colchians would suffice for this army. With these high-flown words Theophobius reduced the guards there to a state of terror and helplessness. And they besought him with entreaties in the name of their ancestral god to use all his power to turn the present situation to their advantage. He then promised them that he would bring from Chosroes pledges for their safety, on condition that they surrender the fortress to the Persians.

³ καὶ ὅς αὐτοῖς L καὶ αὐτός K

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- Ἐπεὶ τε τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ταῦτα ἤρεσκεν,
 αὐτίκα ἐνθένδε ἀπαλλαγεῖς αὐθίς τε τῷ Μερμε-
 12 ρῷ ἐς ὄψιν ἤκων ἅπαντα ἔφραζεν. ὁ δὲ Περσῶν
 ἄνδρας τοὺς δοκιμωτάτους¹ ἀπολεξάμενος ξὺν
 αὐτῷ ἐς τὸ Οὐθιμέρεος ἔπεμψε, τά τε πιστὰ
 παρεξομένους ἀμφὶ τε τοῖς χρήμασι καὶ τῇ
 σωτηρίᾳ τοῖς τῇδε φρουροῖς καὶ τὸ φρούριον
 13 τοῦτο καθέξοντας. οὕτω μὲν Πέρσαι τὸ Οὐ-
 θιμέρεος φρούριον ἔσχον καὶ Λαζικῆς τὴν ἐπι-
 14 κράτησιν ἰσχυρότατα ἐκρατύναντο. οὐ μόνην
 δὲ Λαζικὴν ταύτην² οἱ Πέρσαι ὑποχειρίαν πε-
 ποίηνται, ἀλλὰ καὶ Σκυμνίαν τε καὶ Σουανίαν,
 ἐκ δὲ³ Μοχρηήσιδος ἄχρι ἐς Ἰβηρίαν ἄβατα
 Ῥωμαίοις τε καὶ τῷ Λαζῶν βασιλεῖ ξύμπαντα
 τὰ ἐκείνη χωρία τῷ τρόπῳ τούτῳ ἐγένετο.
 15 ἀμύνεσθαι δὲ τοὺς πολεμίους οὔτε Ῥωμαῖοι οὔτε
 Λαζοὶ εἶχον, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲ καταβαίνειν ἐκ τῶν
 ὀρώων ἢ τῶν ὀχυρωμάτων ἐτόλμων οὐδέ πη τοῖς
 πολεμίους⁴ ἐπέξιέναι.
- 16 Μερμερόης δὲ τῆς τοῦ χειμῶνος ἐγκειμένης
 ὥρας ξύλινον μὲν τείχος ἐν Κόταις ἐτεκτῆνατο,
 φρουράν τε Περσῶν τῶν μαχίμων οὐχ ἥσσουν
 ἢ τρισχιλίων ἐνταῦθα καταστησάμενος, ἐν τε τῷ
 17 Οὐθιμέρεος ἄνδρας αὐτάρκεις ἀπολιπὼν οἰκο-
 δομησάμενος δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄλλο Λαζῶν φρούριον,
 ὃ δὴ καλοῦσι Σαραπανίν, πρὸς αὐτοῖς μάλιστα
 τοῖς ἐσχάτοις ὀρίοις Λαζικῆς κείμενον, αὐτοῦ
 18 ἔμενεν. ἔπειτα δὲ Ῥωμαίους τε καὶ Λαζοὺς
 ἀγείρεσθαί τε μαθὼν καὶ ἀμφὶ τὰς ἐκβολὰς
 ἐνστρατοπεδεύεσθαι ποταμοῦ Φάσιδος, παντὶ τῷ
 19 στρατῷ ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἦει. ὅπερ ἐπεὶ Γουβάζης
 τε καὶ οἱ τοῦ Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ ἄρχοντες ἔμαθον,

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xvi. 11-19

The men were delighted with these terms and he immediately departed from the place, and coming again before Mermeroes explained everything. Then Mermeroes selected the most notable men of the Persians and sent them with him to Uthimeiros, for the purpose of arranging pledges both for the money and for the lives of the guards of the place and so taking possession of that fortress. Thus did the Persians gain the fortress of Uthimeiros and thereby secured the mastery of Lazica most firmly. But not only did the Persians bring this land of Lazica under their sway, but also Scymnia and Suania, and in this way the whole territory from Mocheresis as far as Iberia became inaccessible to the Romans and the king of the Lazi. And neither the Romans nor the Lazi were able to ward off the enemy, for they did not even dare to descend from the mountains or their strongholds, nor to make any advances against the enemy.

Mermeioes, as the winter season came on, built a wooden wall at Cotais and established there a guard of warlike Persians no less than three thousand strong, and he also left a sufficient force of men in Uthimeiros. And he also built up the other fortress of the Lazi which they call Saipanis, situated at the very limit of the territory of Lazica, and remained there. But later, upon learning that the Romans and Lazi were gathering and making camp at the mouth of the Phasis River, he moved against them with his whole army. When Gubazes and the commanders of the Roman army learned this, re-

¹ ἀνδρας τοὺς δοκιμωτάτους K: τοὺς δοκιμωτάτους ἅπαντας L.

² ταύτην L ταύτη K ³ ἐκ δὲ Maltietus ἐκ MSS

⁴ οὐδὲ πη τοῖς πολεμίοις L: οὐδ' ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους K.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- οὐχ ὑποστάντες τῶν πολεμίων τὴν ἔφοδον διελύθησάν τε καὶ διεσώθησαν¹ ὥς πη ἐκάστω
- 20 δυνατὰ γέγονεν. ὃ τε Γουβάζης ἀναδραμὼν ἐς τῶν ὁρῶν τὰς ὑπερβολὰς διεχέιμαζε ξύν τε τοῖς παισὶ καὶ τῇ γυναικὶ καὶ τοῖς ἐς τὰ μάλιστα ἐπιτηδείοις, τῇ μὲν ἀμηχανία τῶν παρόντων κακῶν διαμαχόμενος πρὸς τὴν ἀπὸ τῆς ὥρας ἀνάγκην, ἐλπίδι δὲ τοῦ Βυζαντίου ἐς τὸν μέλλοντα χρόνον θαρσῶν, ταύτῃ τε τὴν τύχην παρηγορῶν τὴν τότε παροῦσαν, οἷά γε τὰ ἀν-
- 21 θρώπεια, καὶ караδοκῶν τὰ βελτίω καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ Λαζοὶ τῇ πρὸς βασιλέα Γουβάζην αἰδοῖ τὴν τοῦ χειμῶνος ὥραν οὐδέν τι ἥσσουν ἐν τοῖς σκοπέλοις κατέτριβον, δύσκολον μὲν ἐνταῦθα οὐδέν πρὸς τῶν πολεμίων δειμαίνοντες, ἐπεὶ τοῖς ἐπιβουλεύουσιν, ἄλλως τε καὶ κατὰ τὸν χειμῶνα, ταῦτα τὰ ὄρη ἀμήχανά τε καὶ ὅλως ἀπρόσοδα ξυμβαίνει εἶναι, λιμῶ δὲ καὶ ψύχει καὶ τῇ ἄλλῃ κακοπαθείᾳ δυσθανατῶντες.
- 22 Ὁ δὲ Μερμερόης οἰκία τε πολλὰ κατ' ἐξουσίαν ὠκοδομήσατο ἐν ταῖς κατὰ τὴν Μοχήρησιν κώμαις καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πανταχόθι καταστησάμενος τῶν τῇδε χωρίων, τῶν τε αὐτομόλων περιπέμπων τινὰς ἐς τῶν ὁρῶν τὰς ἀκρωρείας καὶ τὰ πιστὰ παρεχόμενος ἐπαγαγέσθαι πολλοὺς ἴσχυσεν· οἷς δὴ καὶ τῶν ἀναγκαίων ἀπορουμένοις ἐχορήγει συχνὰ καὶ ὥς οἰκείων ἐπεμελεῖτο, τὰ τε ἄλλα διφκεῖτο ξύν ἀδείᾳ πολλῇ
- 23 ἅτε τῆς χώρας γεγονὼς κύριος. καὶ πρὸς Γουβάζην ἔγραψε τάδε· “Δύο ταῦτα ῥυθμίζει τοῖς ἀνθρώποις τὸν βίον, δύναμις τε καὶ φρόνησις. οἱ μὲν γὰρ τῷ δυνατῷ περιόντες τῶν πέλας

fusing to withstand the enemy's attack they dispersed and saved themselves as each found it possible. As for Gubazes, he ran up to the summit of the mountains and there proceeded to pass the winter along with his children and his wife and those particularly intimate with him, putting up with the rigours of winter because of the hopelessness of his present evil situation, but confident of the future because of his hope in Byzantium, and in this way finding consolation for the fortune then present, as men are wont to do, and looking for a better day. And the rest of the Lazi likewise, ashamed to be outdone by King Gubazes, were passing the winter as well as he among the crags, fearing indeed no difficulty from the enemy there, for these mountains are at all times impracticable and wholly inaccessible for an attacking force, and particularly during the winter, but forced to endure mortal suffering through hunger, cold, and the other hardships.

Meanwhile Mermeroes at his leisure built many houses in the villages throughout Mocherensis and established stores of supplies everywhere among these places, then by sending some of the deserters to the heights of the mountains and offering pledges he succeeded in winning over many, these were naturally in want of provisions, and he supplied them in generous measure and cared for them as his own, indeed he carried on the whole administration with an air of complete security, as having become lord of the land. And he wrote the following letter to Gubazes: "Two things there are which harmonize the lives of men, power and wisdom. For some, who, by reason of their power, are superior to their

¹ διεσώθησαν K διεσώζοντο L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- αὐτοί τε βιοτεύουσι κατ' ἐξουσίαν καὶ ὅπη
 βούλονται τοὺς καταδεεστέρους ἐσαεὶ ἄγουσιν,
 οἱ δὲ διὰ τὴν ἀσθένειαν δεδουλωμένοι τοῖς κρείτ-
 τοσι, τῷ ξυνετῷ τὴν ἀδυναμίαν ἰώμενοι, θωπεῖα
 τοὺς κρατοῦντας μετίασι καὶ οὐδέν τι ἥσσον ἐν
 τοῖς οἰκείοις βιοῦν δύνανται, πάντων ἀπολαύον-
 τες¹ τῇ κολακείᾳ ὥνπερ αὐτοῖς διὰ τὴν ἀ-
 24 σθένειαν στερεῖσθαι² ξυμβαίνει. καὶ ταῦτα οὐ
 παρὰ μὲν τῶν ἐθνῶν τισὶ σφίσι φέρεται οὕτως,
 παρὰ δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις οὐ ταύτῃ πῃ ἔχει, ἀλλὰ
 ἀνθρώποις ὡς εἰπεῖν ἅπασι πανταχούτι γῆς τῆς
 οἰκουμένης ὥσπερ ἄλλο τι ἐμπέπηγε φύσει.
 25 καὶ σὺ τοίνυν, ὦ φίλε Γουβάξῃ, ἣν μὲν οἶει
 περιέσεσθαι Περσῶν τῷ πολέμῳ, μήτε μέλλε
 26 μήτε σοι ἐμπόδιον γινέσθω μηδέν³ εὐρήσεις γὰρ
 ἡμᾶς τῆς Λαζικῆς ἔνθα ἂν βούλοιο ὑφισταμένους
 τε τὴν σὴν ἔφοδον καὶ ἀντιπαραταττομένους
 ὑπὲρ χώρας τῆσδε ὅση δύναμις· ὥστε παρέσται
 σοι διαγωνιζομένῳ ἀνδραγαθίζεσθαι πρὸς ἡμᾶς.
 27 εἰ μέντοι ἀδύνατος ὢν⁴ Περσῶν τῇ δυνάμει
 ἀντιτάσσεσθαι καὶ αὐτὸς οἶδας, σὺ δέ, ὦ ἄγαθέ,
 τὸ δεύτερον διαχείριζε, τὸ γνῶθι σαυτόν, καὶ
 προσκύνει τὸν σαυτοῦ δεσπότην Χοσρόην ἅτε
 28 βασιλέα καὶ νενικηκότα καὶ κύριον. αἶτει τέ
 σοι τῶν πεπραγμένων ἱλεων εἶναι, ὅπως ἂν τὸ
 λοιπὸν δυνατὸς εἴης τῶν ἐνοχλούντων ἀπηλ-
 29 λάχθαι κακῶν. ὡς ἔγωγε ἀναδέχομαι βασιλέα
 Χοσρόην ἱλεῶν τέ σοι γενήσεσθαι καὶ τὰ πιστὰ

¹ ἀπολαύοντες K: ἀπολάβοντες L

² στερεῖσθαι L: τηρεῖσθαι K

³ μήτε σοι—μηδέν K: om L.

neighbours, both live themselves according to their own desires and also never fail to lead where they wish those less powerful than themselves, while others, though enslaved to the stronger through their weakness, can still remedy their impotence by discretion, and by courting the powerful with flattery are still able to live with their own possessions, enjoying by means of their conciliatory attitude everything of which they are deprived by their weakness. And this does not hold only for some of the nations of men, while it is otherwise in other nations, but one might say that this is implanted in human experience universally in every part of the inhabited world like any other natural characteristic. Do you, accordingly, my dear Gubazes, if you think you are going to overcome the Persians in the war, neither hesitate nor let anything stand in your way. For you will find us in any part of Lazica you may choose ready to meet your attack and prepared in battle-array to fight for this land with all our might, so that in waging a decisive struggle you will have the opportunity to display your valour against us. If, however, even you yourself realize that you are unable to array yourself against the might of the Persians, then do you, good Sir, take the second alternative and 'know thyself,' and bow down before your master Chosroes as king and victor and lord. And beg that he be merciful to you in spite of your acts, in order that you may be able henceforth to escape the evils which harass you. For I personally promise that King Chosroes will be merciful to you and will give

⁴ εἰ μέντοι ἀδύνατος ὢν K. ὥς μὲν γὰρ ἀδύνατος εἶ L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- δώσειν, ὁμήρους σοι παρεχόμενον¹ παῖδας τῶν ἐν Πέρσαις λογίμων ἀρχόντων, ὡς τά τε ἄλλα καὶ τὴν σωτηρίαν καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν τὴν σὴν
- 30 τὸν πάντα αἰῶνα ἐν ἀσφαλείᾳ ἔξεις. εἰ δέ σοι τούτων οὐδέτερον βουλομένῳ ἐστίν, ἀλλὰ σὺ ἔς τινα ἑτέραν ἀπιὼν χώραν δὸς τοῖς διὰ τὴν σὴν ἀβουλίαν ταλαιπώροις γενομένοις Λαζοῖς ἀναπνεῦσαί ποτε καὶ ἀπὸ δυσκόλων τῶν αὐτοῖς ἐγκειμένων ἀνευεγκεῖν, μηδὲ αὐτοῖς ἀπέραντον ὄλεθρον τόνδε προστρίβεσθαι βούλου ἐπὶ σφαλερᾶς τῆς ἐλπίδος ὀχούμενος· λέγω δὲ τῆς
- 31 Ῥωμαίων ἐπικουρίας. οὐ γάρ σοι τιμωρεῖν ποτὲ δυνατοὶ ἔσονται, ὥσπερ οὐδὲ ἄχρι ἐς τὴν ἡμέραν δεδύνηνται τήνδε.” Μερμερόης μὲν ταῦτα ἔ-
- 32 γραψε. Γουβάζην δὲ οὐδ’ ὥς ἔπειθεν, ἀλλ’ ἐν τοῖς τῶν ὁρῶν κολωνοῖς ἔμενε, караδοκῶν τὴν ἐκ Ῥωμαίων ἐπικουρίαν καὶ τῷ ἐς τὸν Χοσρόην ἔχθει ὡς ἥκιστα ἐς τὴν Ῥωμαίων ἀπόγνωσιν
- 33 ἐγκλίνειν² ἐθέλων. οἱ γὰρ ἄνθρωποι τὴν διάνοιαν ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον πρὸς τὴν τοῦ βουλήματος ἀρμόζονται χρεῖαν, καὶ λόγῳ μὲν τῷ ἀρέσκοντι αὐτοὺς αἰὲν προσχωροῦσι, καὶ προσίενται τὰ ἐξ αὐτοῦ πάντα, οὐ διασκοπούμενοι μὴ ψευδὴς εἶη, τῷ δὲ λυποῦντι χαλεπῶς ἔχοντες ἀπιστοῦσιν, οὐ διερευνώμενοι μὴ ἀληθὴς εἶη.

XVII

Ἐπὶ τούτῳ τὸν χρόνον τῶν τινὲς μοναχῶν ἐξ Ἰνδῶν ἤκουτες, γινόντες τε ὡς Ἰουστινιανῷ

¹ ὁμήρους σοι παρεχόμενον K: καὶ ὁμήρους σοι παρέχομαι L.

² ἐγκλίνειν L: ἐκκλίνειν K.

pledges, furnishing you as hostages sons of the notable rulers in Persia, that you will have your safety and your kingdom and everything else in security for all time. But if neither of these things meets your wish, do you at least go off to some other land and thus grant to the Lazi, who have been reduced to wretchedness through your folly, recovery at length and respite from the difficulties which press upon them, and do not wish to inflict upon them this lingering destruction, being carried on by a deceptive hope, by which I mean assistance from the Romans. For they will never be able to defend you, just as they have not been able up to the present day." Thus wrote Mermeroes. But even so he did not persuade Gubazes, who remained among the summits of the mountains, awaiting the assistance to come from the Romans and, by reason of his hostility to Chosroes, absolutely unwilling to incline to despair of the Romans. For men as a general thing adapt their decisions to the dictates of their desire, and while, on the one hand, they incline toward the argument which pleases them and espouse all its consequences, not investigating to see whether it may be false, they, on the other hand, are outraged by the one which annoys them and they distrust it, never searching out to see whether it may not be true

XVII

¹ At about this time certain monks, coming from India and learning that the Emperor Justinian

¹ Cf. Gibbon, *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, chap. xl

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

βασιλεῖ διὰ σπουδῆς εἴη μηκέτι πρὸς Περσῶν
 τὴν μέταξαν ὠνεῖσθαι Ῥωμαίους, ἐς βασιλέα
 γενόμενοι οὕτω δὴ τὰ ἀμφὶ τῇ μετᾶξῃ διοική-
 σεσθαι¹ ὡμολόγουν, ὥς μηκέτι Ῥωμαῖοι ἐκ
 Περσῶν τῶν σφίσι πολεμίων ἢ ἄλλου του
 2 ἔθνους τὸ ἐμπόλημα τοῦτο ποιήσονται· χρόνου
 γὰρ κατατρίψαι μῆκος ἐν χώρᾳ ὑπὲρ Ἰνδῶν ἔθνη
 τὰ πολλὰ οὔση, ἥπερ Σηρίνδα ὀνομάζεται, ταύτη
 τε ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς ἐκμεμαθηκέναι ὁποῖα ποτὲ
 μηχανῇ γίνεσθαι τὴν μέταξαν ἐν γῇ τῇ Ῥωμαίων
 3 δυνατὰ εἶη. ἐνδελεχέστατα δὲ διερευνωμένῳ τῷ βα-
 σιλεῖ καὶ ἀναπυνθανομένῳ εἰ ὁ λόγος ἀληθὴς² εἴη
 ἔφασκον οἱ μοναχοὶ σκώληκας τινὰς τῆς μετᾶξης
 δημιουργοὺς εἶναι, τῆς φύσεως αὐτοῖς διδασκάλου
 τε οὔσης καὶ διηνεκῶς ἀναγκαζούσης ἐργάζεσθαι.
 4 ἀλλὰ τοὺς μὲν σκώληκας ἐνθάδε ζῶντας διακο-
 μίζειν ἀμήχανα εἶναι, τὸν δὲ αὐτῶν γόνον εὐπορόν
 τε καὶ ῥάδιον ὅλως. εἶναι δὲ τῶν σκωλήκων
 5 τῶνδε τὸν γόνον ὥς ἐκάστου ἀνάρριθμα. ταῦτα
 δὲ τὰ ὥς χρόνῳ πολλῷ τῆς γονῆς ὕστερον κόπρῳ
 καλύψαντες ἄνθρωποι ταύτη τε διαρκῇ θερμῇ-
 6 ναντες χρόνον³ ζῶα ποιοῦσι. ταῦτα εἰπόντας ὁ
 βασιλεὺς μεγάλους τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς δωρή-
 σασθαι ὁμολογήσας τῷ ἔργῳ πείθει ἐπιρρώσαι
 7 τὸν λόγον. οἱ δὲ γενόμενοι ἐν Σηρίνδῃ⁴ αὖθις τά
 τε ὥς μετήνεγκαν ἐς Βυζάντιον, ἐς σκώληκας τε
 αὐτὰ τρόπῳ ὥπερ⁵ ἐρρήθη μεταπεφυκέναι δια-
 πραξάμενοι τρέφουσί τε συκαμίνου φύλλοις, καὶ

¹ διοικήσεσθαι K διοικήσασθαι L

² ἀληθὴς K ὑγιής L

³ διαρκῇ—χρόνον K διαρκῶς—χρόνῳ L

⁴ Σηρίνδῃ . συρίνδῃ K, Ἰνδία L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII ΛVII 1-7

entertained the desire that the Romans should no longer purchase their silk from the Persians, came before the emperor and promised so to settle the silk question that the Romans would no longer purchase this article from their enemies, the Persians, nor indeed from any other nation, for they had, they said, spent a long time in the country situated north of the numerous nations of India—a country called Serinda—and there they had learned accurately by what means it was possible for silk to be produced in the land of the Romans. Whereupon the emperor made very diligent enquiries and asked them many questions to see whether their statements were true, and the monks explained to him that certain worms are the manufacturers of silk, nature being their teacher and compelling them to work continually. And while it was impossible to convey the worms thither¹ alive, it was still practicable and altogether easy to convey their offspring. Now the offspring of these worms, they said, consisted of innumerable eggs from each one. And men bury these eggs, long after the time when they are produced, in dung, and, after thus heating them for a sufficient time, they bring forth the living creatures. After they had thus spoken, the emperor promised to reward them with large gifts and urged them to confirm their account in action. They then once more went to Serinda and brought back the eggs to Byzantium, and in the manner described caused them to be transformed into worms, which they fed on the leaves of the mulberry, and thus

¹ To Byzantium

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἀπ' αὐτοῦ γίνεσθαι μέταξαν τὸ λοιπὸν κατεστή-
 8 σαντο ἐν Ῥωμαίων τῇ γῇ τότε μὲν οὖν τά τε
 κατὰ τὸν πόλεμον πράγματα Ῥωμαίοις τε καὶ
 Πέρσαις καὶ τὰ ἀμφὶ μετάξῃ ταύτῃ πῃ ἔσχε.
- 9 Μετὰ δὲ τὴν τοῦ χειμῶνος ὥραν ἀφικόμενος
 παρὰ Χοσρόην σὺν τοῖς χρήμασιν Ἰσδιγούσνας
 τὰ ξυγκείμενα σφίσιν ἐσήγγελλε. καὶ ὃς τὰ
 μὲν χρήματα κεκομισμένος τὴν ἐκεχειρίαν μελ-
 λήσει οὐδεμιᾷ ἐπεσφράγισε, Λαζικῆς δὲ μεθίεσ-
 10 θαι οὐδαμῇ ἤθελεν. ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς χρήμασι τού-
 τοις Οὐννων τῶν Σαβείρων ἐταιρισάμενος μέγα
 τι χρῆμα ξὺν Πέρσαις τισὶ τῷ Μερμερόῃ εὐθὺς
 ἔπεμψεν. ᾧ δὲ ἐπέστελλεν ἔργου ἔχεσθαι
 δυνάμει τῇ πάσῃ, καὶ μὴν καὶ ἐλέφαντάς οἱ
 πολλοὺς ἔστειλε
- 11 Μερμερόης δὲ παντὶ τῷ Περσῶν τε καὶ Οὐννων
 στρατῷ ἐκ Μοχηρήσιδος ἀναστὰς ἐπὶ τὰ Λαζῶν
 ὀχυρώματα ἦει, τοὺς ἐλέφαντας ἐπαγόμενος.
- 12 Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ οὐδαμῇ ὑπηντίαζον, ἀλλ' ἀμφὶ τὰς
 ἐκβολὰς Φάσιδος ποταμοῦ, Μαρτίνου ἡγουμένου
 σφίσι, χωρίου ἰσχύι σφᾶς αὐτοὺς ὡς ἀσφαλέσ-
 13 τατα κρατυνάμενοι ἡσυχῇ ἔμενον. ξυνῆν δὲ
 αὐτοῖς καὶ Γουβάξης ὁ Λαζῶν βασιλεύς. οὗτος
 δὲ ὁ Μήδων στρατός, τύχης αὐτῷ ξυμβάσης
 τινός, οὐδὲν ἄχαρι οὔτε Ῥωμαίων οὔτε Λαζῶν
 14 τινὰ¹ ἔδρασε. τὰ μὲν γὰρ πρῶτα ὁ Μερμερόης ἐν
 φρουρίῳ τῷ μαθὼν τὴν Γουβάξου ἀδελφὴν εἶναι
 ἐπ' αὐτὸ² ἐπῆγε τὸ στράτευμα ὡς ἐξαιρήσων

¹ τινὰ K τινί L

² αὐτό K: αὐτῇ L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xvii 7-14

they made possible from that time forth the production of silk in the land of the Romans¹ At that time then matters stood thus between the Romans and the Persians, both as touching the war and in regard to silk

After the winter season Isdigousnas arrived at the court of Chosroes with the money and announced the terms agreed upon by them And Chosroes, upon receiving the money, confirmed the armistice without any hesitation, but he was utterly unwilling to relinquish Lazica. In fact he actually used this money to purchase the alliance of a vast horde of the Sabiri Huns, and he sent them immediately with some Persians to Mermeroes, whom he directed to pursue his task with all the power at his disposal, and he sent him, furthermore, a large number of elephants

Mermeroes, accordingly, accompanied by the whole army of Persians and Huns, departed from Mocheesis and moved against the strongholds of the Lazi, taking the elephants with him The Romans, however, offered no resistance whatever, but under the leadership of Martinus they made themselves as secure as possible in a naturally strong position near the mouth of the Phasis River and there remained quiet And Gubazes, the king of the Lazi, was also with them But this Medic army, because of a certain chance which befell it, did no harm to anyone either of the Romans or of the Lazi. For in the first place Mermeroes, learning that the sister of Gubazes was in a certain fortress, led his army against this with the intention of capturing it

¹ Silk has been manufactured in Asia Minor, notably at Broussa (Piusa), up to the present day

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 15 μηχανῇ πάσῃ. καρτερώτατα δὲ ἀμυνομένων τῶν
ταύτῃ φρουρῶν καὶ χωρίου σφίσι ξυλλαμβανούσης
τῆς φύσεως ὀχυρότητι¹ ἄπρακτοι ἐνθένδε ἀπο-
κρουσθέντες οἱ βάρβαροι ἀνεχώρησαν· ἔπειτα
16 ἐπὶ Ἀβασγούς σπουδῇ ἵεντο. Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ οἱ ἐν
Τξιβιλῇ φρουρὰν ἔχοντες τὴν δίοδον κατα-
λαμβάνοντες στενοτάτῃν τε καὶ κρημνώδη οὔσαν,
ἥπερ μοι ἔμπροσθεν εἴρηται, τὸ παράπαν τε
17 ἀδιέξοδον, ἐμπόδιοι σφίσιν ἐγένοντο. διὸ δὴ οὐκ
ἔχων ὁ Μερμερόης καθ' ὃ τι τοὺς ἀνθισταμένους
βιάζεται, ὑπήγεν ὀπίσω τὸ στράτευμα ἐπὶ τε
Ἀρχαίοπολιν ὡς πολιορκήσων αὐτίκα ἦει. τοῦ
τε περιβόλου ἀποπειρασάμενος, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲν
18 προὔχῳρει, ἀνέστρεφεν αὐθις. Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ
ἀναχωροῦσιν ἐπισπόμενοι τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐν
δυσχωρίᾳ πολλοὺς ἐκτείνον, ἐν τοῖς καὶ τῶν
19 Σαβείρων τὸν ἄρχοντα ξυνηνέχθη πεσεῖν. μάχης
τε καρτερᾶς ἀμφὶ τῷ νεκρῷ² γενομένης ὕστερον
Πέρσαι περὶ λύχων ἀφ' ἃς βιασάμενοι τοὺς
ἐναντίους ἐτρέψαντο, ἐπὶ τε Κόταις καὶ Μοχή-
ρησιν ἀπεχώρησαν. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν Ῥωμαίοις τε
καὶ Πέρσαις ἐπέπρακτο τῇδε.
20 Τὰ μέντοι ἐπὶ Λιβύης ἅπαντα Ῥωμαίοις εὖ τε
καὶ καλῶς καθειστήκει. τῷ γὰρ Ἰωάννῃ, ὄνπερ
ἐνταῦθα βασιλεὺς Ἰουστινιανὸς στρατηγὸν κατε-
στήσατο, εὐτυχήματα λόγου τε καὶ ἀκοῆς κρείσσω
21 ξυνηνέχθη γενέσθαι. ὃς δὴ ἓνα τῶν ἐν Μαυ-
ρουσίοις ἀρχόντων ἐταιρισάμενος, Κουτζίναν
ὄνομα, τά τε πρότερα μάχῃ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐνίκησε
καὶ οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον Ἀντάλαν τε καὶ Ἰαύδαν,

¹ ὀχυρότητι K om. L

² τῷ νεκρῷ K: τὸν νεκρόν L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII xvii. 14-21

at all hazards. But because the guards of that place offered a most valiant resistance and also because the naturally strong position gave them material assistance, the barbarians were repulsed from the town without accomplishing their purpose and withdrew; whereupon they hastily directed their course against the Abasgi. But the Romans keeping guard in Tzibile seized the pass, which was very narrow and precipitous, as I have stated previously,¹ and quite impossible to force, and thus they blocked their way. Consequently Mermeroes, having no means of dislodging his opponents by force, led his army back and straightway moved on Archaeopolis with the purpose of besieging it. But, upon making trial of the circuit-wall, he met with no success and consequently turned back again. But the Romans followed up the retreating enemy and in a dangerous pass began to slay many of them, among those who fell being, as it chanced, the commander of the Sabiri. And a fierce battle taking place over the corpse, the Persians finally, at dusk, forced back their opponents and routed them, after which they retired to Cotaïs and Mocheïesis. Such then were the fortunes of the Romans and the Persians.

In Libya, on the other hand, affairs had taken an altogether favourable turn for the Romans. For it so fell out that John, whom the Emperor Justinian had appointed General there, met with a number of incredible pieces of good fortune, since after securing the allegiance of one of the Moorish rulers, Cutzinas by name, he first defeated the others in battle, and not long afterwards reduced to subjection

¹ Chap. x 1, above

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

οὐ Μαυρουσίων τῶν ἐν Βυζακίῳ τε καὶ Νουμιδίᾳ
 τὸ κράτος εἶχον, ὑποχειρίους πεποιήται, εἶποντό
 22 τε αὐτῷ ἐν ἀνδραπόδων λόγῳ. καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ
 πολέμιον Ῥωμαίοις οὐδὲν ὑπὸ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον
 ἔν γε Λιβύῃ ἐγένετο. τοῖς μέντοι φθάσασι
 πολέμοις τε καὶ στάσεσιν ἔρημος ἀνθρώπων ἡ
 χώρα ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον οὔσα διέμεινεν.

XVIII

Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπράσσετο τῇδε, ἐν τούτῳ τὰδε
 ξυνηνέχθη ἐν Εὐρώπῃ γενέσθαι. Γήπαιδες μὲν,
 ὥσπερ μοι ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις ἐρρήθη, τὰς
 σπονδὰς θέμενοι πρὸς Λαγγοβάρδας τοὺς σφίσι
 2 πολεμίους ὄντας ἐτύγγανον. παντάπασι δὲ οὐχ
 οἰοί τε ὄντες τὰ διάφορα πρὸς αὐτοὺς διαλῦσαι
 πολεμητέα σφίσιν οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον ᾤοντο εἶναι.
 3 Γήπαιδες μὲν οὖν καὶ Λαγγοβάρδαι πανδημεῖ
 ἐπ' ἀλλήλους τῷ πολέμῳ ἀκμάζοντες ἦσαν.
 4 ἡγείτο δὲ τῶν μὲν Γηπαίδων Θορισίν, τῶν δὲ
 Λαγγοβαρδῶν Αὐδουὶν ὄνομα, καὶ αὐτῶν ἑκατέρῳ
 ἀνδρῶν μυριάδες πολλαὶ εἶποντο. ἤδη μὲν οὖν
 ἀγχιστά πη ἀμφότεροι ἦλθον, οὐπω δὲ τὰ
 5 στρατόπεδα πρὸς ἀλλήλων καθεωρῶντο. δείματα
 δὲ τὰ πανικὰ καλούμενα ἐξαπιναίως ἑκατέροις
 ἐπιπεσόντα φεύγοντας ἀπ' αἰτίας οὐδεμιᾶς
 ἅπαντας ὀπίσω ἀπήνεγκε, μόνων τῶν ἀρχόντων
 6 αὐτοῦ ἀπολελειμμένων ξὺν ὀλίγοις τισίν. οἵπερ
 αὐτοὺς ἀνθέλκειν τε καὶ τῆς ὑπαγωγῆς ἀναχαι-
 τίζειν ἀποπειρασάμενοι οὐδὲν ἡνυον οὔτε θωπείαις
 οἰκτραῖς οὔτε ἀπειλαῖς φοβεραῖς χρώμενοι.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xvii. 21-xviii. 6

Antalas and Iaudas, who held the sovereignty over the Moors of Byzacium and Numidia, and they joined his train in the position of slaves. And as a result of this the Romans had for the time no enemy in Libya at any rate. But by reason of the previous wars and insurrections the land remained for the most part destitute of human habitation.

XVIII

WHILE these events were taking place as described, meanwhile the following transpired in Europe. The Gepaedes had in the first place, as I have stated in the previous narrative,¹ confirmed a treaty with their enemies the Lombards. But being utterly unable to compose their differences with them, they decided not much later that they must make war. So the Gepaedes and the Lombards advanced in full force against each other, both being fully prepared for the war. And the commanders were, on the side of the Gepaedes, Thorisin, and on that of the Lombards, Auduin, each of them being followed by many myriads of men. Now they had already come close to one another, but the two armies could not yet see each other. But that fright which is called panic suddenly fell upon both armies and carried the men all backward in a flight which had no real cause, only the commanders being left where they were with a small number of men. And though they strove to draw their men back and check the retreat, they could accomplish nothing either by the use of abject entreaty or by fearful threats.

¹ Book VII xxxiv 45

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 7 Περιδεῆς οὖν γεγονὼς Αὐδοῦν ὁρῶν διασκε-
 δαννυμένους ἀκόσμως¹ οὕτως (οὐ γὰρ ᾗδει τοὺς
 πολεμίους τὴν ὁμοίαν κεκληρῶσθαι τύχην) τῶν
 οἱ ἐπομένων τινὰς ἐπὶ πρεσβείᾳ παρὰ τοὺς
 ἐναντίους εὐθὺς ἔπεμψε τὴν εἰρήνην αἰτησο-
 8 μένους. οἵπερ, ἐπεὶ παρὰ τὸν ἄρχοντα τῶν
 Γηπαίδων Θορισὶν ἀφικόμενοι τὰ πρᾶσσόμενα
 εἶδον, ἔκ τε τῶν ἐν σφίσιν αὐτοῖς τετυχηκότων
 κατενόησαν τὰ τοῖς πολεμίοις ξυνενεχθέντα καὶ
 τῷ Θορισὶν ἐς ὄψιν ἐλθόντες ἀνεπυνθάνοντο
 αὐτοῦ ὅπῃ ποτὲ οἱ γῆς τῶν ἀρχομένων τὸ πλήθος
 9 εἶη. καὶ ὡς τῶν ξυμπεπτωκότων οὐδὲν ἀρνηθεῖς
 “Φεύγουσιν² οὐδενὸς διώκοντος” ἔφη οἱ δὲ
 ὑπολαβόντες “Ταὐτὸ τοῦτο,” φασί, “Λαγγο-
 βάρδαι πεπόνθασιν ἀληθιζομένῳ γάρ σοι, ὦ
 βασιλεῦ, οὐδέν τι τῶν ἡμετέρων ἀποκρυψόμεθα
 10 οὐκοῦν ἐπειδὴ τὰ γένη ταῦτα διολωλέναι ὡς
 ἥκιστα βουλομένῳ τῷ θεῷ ἐστὶ καὶ ἀπ’ αὐτοῦ
 διέλυσε τὴν παράταξιν, σωτήριον ἀμφοτέροις
 ἐπιβαλὼν δέος, φέρε δὴ καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐπιχωρήσωμεν
 τῇ τοῦ θεοῦ γνώμῃ, τὸν πόλεμον καταλύοντες”
 “Ἔστω, γινέσθω ταῦτα,” ὁ Θορισὶν ἔφη δυοῖν
 11 τε οὕτως ἐνιαυτοῖν ἐκεχειρίαν πεποίνηται, ὅπως
 μεταξὺ ἐπικηρυκευόμενοί τε καὶ παρ’ ἀλλήλους
 αἰεὶ φοιτῶντες ἅπαντα ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς τὰ διάφορα
 διαλύσωσι. τότε μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἐκάτεροι ἀνεχώ-
 12 ρησαν
- Ἐν δὲ τῇ ἐκεχειρίᾳ ταύτῃ οὐχ οἰοί τε γεγενη-
 μένοι ἐς τῶν ἀντιλεγομένων τὴν διάλυσιν ἀλλή-

¹ ὁρῶν διασκεδαννυμένους ἀκόσμως K: οἷς οἱ περί τε αὐτῶ
 διασκεδαννύμενοι ἀκόσμως ἤσαν L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII viii. 7-12

So Auduin became thoroughly frightened at seeing the men taking to their heels in this disorderly manner (for he did not know that the enemy had shared the same fate), and straightway sent some of his followers on an embassy to his opponents to beg for peace. But these men, when they came to Thorisin, the commander of the Gepaedes, and observed what was taking place and understood from their own experience what had befallen their enemies, enquired of Thorisin, when they came into his presence, where in the world the host of his subjects was. And he, for his part, without making any denial of what had happened, said, "They are fleeing, though no man pursues." Thereupon the envoys said to him in reply "This is the very thing which has happened to the Lombards also. For seeing that you speak the truth, O king, we shall conceal nothing on our side. Accordingly, since it is not at all the will of God that these nations should utterly perish, and since for this reason He dissolved the battle lines, smiting both armies with a saving fear, come now, let us too yield to the will of God by putting an end to the war." "Very well, let it be so," said Thorisin. Thus they made a two years' truce, to the end that by maintaining diplomatic relations and keeping constantly in communication with one another in the interval, they might make a thorough settlement of all their differences. So at that time they each withdrew with this understanding.

But finding themselves unable during this truce to come to such terms with each other as to reach a

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- λοις ξυμβῆναι, αὐθις ἐπὶ τὰ πολέμια ἔργα χωρεῖν
 13 ἔμελλον. δειμαίνοντές τε Γήπαιδες τὴν Ῥωμαίων
 ἀρχὴν (ἐπίδοξοι γὰρ ἦσαν ὡς Λαγγοβάρδαις
 ξυντάσσονται) τῶν τινὰς Οὐννων ἐς τὴν ὁμαιχμίαν
 14 ἐπάγεσθαι διανοοῦντο ἔπεμψαν οὖν παρὰ τῶν
 Κουτριγούρων τοὺς ἄρχοντας, οἳ δὲ ἐνθένδε
 ὤκνηται Λίμνης τῆς Μαιώτιδος, καὶ αὐτῶν ἐ-
 δέοντο πόλεμον τὸν πρὸς Λαγγοβάρδας ξυνδιε-
 15 νεγκεῖν σφίσιν. οἳ δὲ αὐτοῖς δισχιλίους τε καὶ
 μυρίους εὐθὺς ἔπεμψαν, ὧν ἄλλοι τε ἡγοῦντο καὶ
 Χινιαλῶν, ἀνὴρ διαφερόντως ἀγαθὸς τὰ πολέμια¹
 16 Γήπαιδες δὲ τούτων δὴ τῶν βαρβάρων τῇ
 παρουσίᾳ ἐν τῷ παρόντι ἀχθόμενοι, ἐπεὶ οὐπω
 ὁ τῆς μάχης ἐνειστήκει καιρὸς, ἀλλ' ἐνιαυτὸς ταῖς
 ξυνθήκαις ἔτι ἐλέλειπτο,² πείθουσιν αὐτοὺς
 καταθεῖν μεταξὺ τὴν βασιλέως γῆν,³ πάρεργον
 τῆς σφετέρας ἀκαιρίας πεποιημένοι τὴν ἐς
 17 Ῥωμαίους ἐπιβουλήν. ἐπεὶ δὲ Ῥωμαῖοι τὴν
 διάβασιν ποταμοῦ Ἰστρου ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς ἐν τε
 Ἰλλυριοῖς καὶ τοῖς ἐπὶ Θράκης χωρίοις ἐφρούρουν,
 αὐτοὶ τούτους δὴ τοὺς Οὐννους ἐν χώρᾳ τῇ κατ'
 αὐτοὺς⁴ διαπορθμεύσαντες ποταμὸν Ἰστρον ἐς τὰ
 18 Ῥωμαίων ἦθη ἀφίεσαν
- Καὶ οἳ μὲν⁵ πάντα σχεδὸν τι⁶ ἐληίσαντο τὰ
 ἐκείνη χωρία, βασιλεὺς δὲ Ἰουστινιανὸς ἐπενόει
 τάδε. πέμψας παρὰ Οὐννων τῶν Οὐτιγούρων
 τοὺς ἄρχοντας, οἳ δὲ ἐπέκεινα Λίμνης ὤκνηται τῆς

¹ ὧν ἄλλοι—τὰ πολέμια KL. om. H.

² ἀλλ'—ἐλέλειπτο KL: om. H.

³ τὴν β γῆν LH τῆς β. γῆς K, τὴν Ῥωμαίων χώρα
 Suidas

⁴ τούτους—κατ' αὐτούς L; om. K.

settlement of the disputed points, they were once more on the point of resorting to warfare. But the Gepaedes, fearing the Roman power (for it was expected that the Romans would array themselves with the Lombards), were purposing to invite some of the Huns to an offensive and defensive alliance. They sent, accordingly, to the rulers of the Cutrigurs, who live on the western side of the Maeotic Lake, and begged that they assist them in carrying on the war against the Lombards. And these Huns straightway sent them twelve thousand men, under different commanders, among whom was Chimalon, an especially capable warrior. But the Gepaedes were for the moment embarrassed by the presence of these barbarians, since the time had not yet arrived when a battle could be fought, for the truce still had a year to run, and so they persuaded them to overrun the emperor's land in the interval, thus turning their embarrassment to their profit by delivering this attack on the Romans. But since the Romans were guarding carefully the crossing of the Ister River both in Illyricum and in the land of Thiae, they themselves ferried these Huns across the Ister at the point where their own territory touched the river and turned them loose in the Roman domain.

And they had indeed plundered practically the whole country there, when the Emperor Justinian hit upon the following plan. Sending to the rulers of the Utigur Huns, who live on the eastern side of the Maeotic Lake, he reproached them and branded as

⁵ διαπορθμέσαντες—οἱ μὲν L διεπórθμευσάν τε ποταμὸν ἴστρον καὶ K.

⁶ ἐπεὶ δὲ—σχεδόν τι οἱ δὲ H

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- Μαιώτιδος, ἐμέμφετό τε καὶ ἄδικον αὐτῶν ἀπε-
 κάλει¹ τὴν ἐς Κουτρίγούρους ἀπραγμοσύνην, εἴπερ
 τὸ τοὺς φίλους διαφθειρομένους περιορᾶν ἐν τοῖς
 τῶν ἔργων ἀδικωτάτοις καταλέγειν δεήσει. αὐτῶν
 19 γὰρ Κουτρίγουροι, ἔφη, πλησιοχώρων² ὄντων³
 ἀφροντιστήσαντες, καὶ ταῦτα ἐκ Βυζαντίου
 χρήματα μεγάλα κομιζόμενοι ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος,
 τρόπῳ οὐδενὶ τῆς ἐς Ῥωμαίους ἀδικίας οὐ θέλου-
 σιν ἀποπαύεσθαι, ἀλλ' ὅσημέραι καταθέουσὶ τε
 20 καὶ ληίζονται αὐτοὺς οὐδενὶ λόγῳ τούτων δὲ
 αὐτοὶ⁴ οὐδὲν τὸ μέρος κερδαίνοντες, οὐδὲ τῆς
 λείας Κουτρίγούροις διαλαγχάνοντες, οὐ προσ-
 ποιοῦνται κακουμένους Ῥωμαίους, καίπερ αὐτοῖς⁵
 21 φίλοι ἐκ παλαιοῦ ἐς τὰ μάλιστα ὄντες. ταῦτα
 σημήνας τοῖς Οὐτιγούροις Ἰουστινιανὸς βασιλεὺς
 καὶ χρήμασι μὲν αὐτοὺς⁶ δωρησάμενος, ὑπομνή-
 σας δὲ ὅσων δώρων καὶ πρότερον πολλάκις
 πρὸς αὐτοῦ ἔτυχον, ἀναπείθει σφᾶς ἔφοδον
 αὐτίκα ἐς τῶν Κουτρίγούρων τοὺς ὑπολελειμ-
 μένους ποιήσασθαι.
 22 Οἱ δὲ Γότθων τῶν σφίσι προσοίκων, οἳ δὴ
 Τετραξίται καλοῦνται, δισχιλίους ἐς ξυμμαχίαν
 ἐπαγόμενοι διέβησαν πανδημεὶ⁷ ποταμὸν Τάναιν.
 23 ἦρχε δὲ αὐτῶν Σανδίλ, ἀνὴρ ξυνετώτατος μὲν
 καὶ πολέμων πολλῶν ἔμπειρος, ἐς ἀλκὴν δὲ καὶ
 24 ἀνδρίαν ἱκανῶς πεφυκώς.⁸ ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
 τὴν διάβασιν ἐποίησαντο, τῶν Κουτρίγούρων

¹ ἀπεκόλει LH Suidas ἐπεκάλει K.

² πλησιοχώρων KH πλησιόχωροι L

³ ὄντων H ὄντες KL

⁴ αὐτοὶ H οὔτοι K, οἱτοι L

⁵ αὐτοῖς K οἱ αὐτῷ LH, αὐτῶν Suidas

unjust their inactivity with regard to the Cutrigurs, if indeed one ought to consider the act of watching without protest the destruction of one's friends as the height of injustice. "For the Cutrigurs," he said, "paying no heed to their neighbours, the Utigurs, and that too though they receive great sums of money every year from Byzantium, are unwilling in any degree to cease from their injustice toward the Romans, but they are every day raiding and plundering them for no good reason. And though the Utigurs themselves gain no portion of this plunder nor share in the booty with the Cutrigurs, they are not taking the side of the Romans who are being wronged, though they have been on terms of close friendship with them from ancient times." Thus the Emperor Justinian, by sending this message to the Utigurs, and not only making a gift of money to them but also reminding them of all the gifts they had previously received from him on many occasions, persuaded them immediately to make an attack upon those of the Cutrigurs who had been left behind.

So they first drew into alliance with them two thousand of the Goths called Tetravitae, who are their neighbours, and then crossed the Tanais River in full force. And they were commanded by Sandil, a man of the greatest cleverness and experienced in many wars, and one, moreover, well endowed with prowess and fortitude. So after they had made the crossing of the river, they engaged with a large

⁶ χρήμασι μὲν αὐτοὺς H· χρήματα μὲν αὐτοῖς K, χρήμασι μὲν αὐτοῖς L

⁷ πανδημίῃ K: om L

⁸ μὲν—πεφυκώς τὰ πολέμια H

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

πολλοῖς ὑπαντιάσασιν ἐς χεῖρας ἦλθον. ὥνπερ ἰσχυρότατα τοὺς ἐπιόντας ἀμυνομένων ἐπὶ μακρότατον μὲν ἢ μάχῃ ἐγεγόνει, μετὰ δὲ Οὐτίγουροι τρεψάμενοι τοὺς ἐναντίους πολλοὺς ἔκτειναν. ὀλίγοι δὲ τινες φεύγοντες, ὅπη αὐτῶν ἐκάστω δυνατὰ γέγονε,¹ διεσώθησαν. καὶ αὐτῶν οἱ πολέμιοι παῖδός τε καὶ γυναῖκας ἀνδραποδίσαντες ἐπ' οἴκου ἀπεκομίσθησαν.

XIX

Τούτων δὲ τῶν βαρβάρων τότε πρὸς ἀλλήλους² διαμαχομένων ἡπέρ μοι εἴρηται, τοῦ τε κινδύνου σφίσι κατὰ τὴν ἀγωνίαν ἀκμάζοντος,³ εὐτυχίᾳ² χρῆσθαι⁴ Ῥωμαίοις ξυνηνέχθη πολλῇ ὅσοι γὰρ αὐτῶν ὑπὸ Κουτρίγούροις ἐν αἰχμαλώτων λόγῳ ὄντες ἐτύγχανον,⁵ ἐς μυριάδας, ὡς φασι, ξυνιόντες πολλὰς, ἐν τῷ πόνῳ τούτῳ διαλαθόντες⁶ ἐνθένδε τε κατὰ τάχος ἐξαναστάντες οὐδενὸς σφίσιν ἐπισπομένου ἐς τὰ πάτρια ἦθη ἀφίκοντο, καὶ νίκης ἀλλοτρίας ἐν τοῖς ἀναγκαιοτάτοις ἀπώναντο.
³ βασιλεὺς δὲ Ἰουστινιανὸς Ἀράτιον στρατηγὸν στείλας παρά τε Χινιαλῶν καὶ Οὔννους τοὺς ἄλλους,⁷ ἀγγεῖλαι μὲν ἐκέλευε τὰ σφίσιν ἐν γῇ τῇ σφετέρᾳ αὐτῶν ξυνενεχθέντα, χρήματα δὲ αὐτοῖς προίεμενον πείσαι ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι ὅτι
⁴ τάχιστα ἐκ Ῥωμαίων τῆς γῆς. οἱ δὲ τῶν τε Οὐτιγούρων τὴν ἔφοδον γνόντες καὶ χρήματα μεγάλα

¹ ὅπη—γέγονε: μόλις H

² τῶν βαρβάρων—ἀλλήλους: οὔτω H

³ τοῦ τε—ἀκμάζοντος KH om L

⁴ χρῆσθαι KH om. L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xviii. 24—xix. 4

number of the Cutrigurs who disputed their advance. And since this force offered a most vigorous resistance to their assailants, the battle continued for a very long time, but finally the Utigurs routed their opponents and slew many. And only a small number of them, by fleeing wherever each man found it possible, saved themselves. Then their enemy made slaves of their women and children and so departed on their homeward way.

XIX

WHILE these barbarians were fighting it out with each other in the manner described, and when the struggle was now at the most violent point, it so fell out that great good fortune came to the Romans. For all those Romans who chanced to be among the Cutrigurs in the status of slaves, amounting, as they say, to many tens of thousands, during this struggle departed hastily from there without being detected, and, since no one followed them up, they reached their native land, thus profiting by another nation's victory at the time of their sorest need. The Emperor Justinian now sent to Chinialon and the other Huns the general Aratius, bidding him announce to them what had befallen in their own land and, by offering them money, persuade them to depart with all possible speed from the territory of the Romans. So these Huns, upon learning the misadventure of the Utigurs and receiving at the same time

⁵ ἐν αἰχμαλώτων—ἐτύγχανον KL αἰχμαλῶται ἦσαν H

⁶ διαλαθόντες KH διαλυθέντες L

⁷ παρὶ τε—ἄλλους παρὰ τοὺς οὐνοὺς ἤρχε χινιάλ· ν H

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- πρὸς τοῦ Ἀρατίου κεκομισμένοι ξυνέβησαν μήτε
 φόνον ἔτι ἐργάσασθαι μήτε ἀνδραποδιεῖν Ῥωμαίων
 μηδένα μήτε τι ἄλλο ἄχαρι δράσειν, ἀλλὰ τὴν
 ἀναχώρησιν ἄτε διὰ φίλων ποιήσεσθαι τῶν τῇδε
 5 ἀνθρώπων. ξυνέκειτο δὲ καὶ τοῦτο, ὥστε, εἰ μὲν
 δυνατοὶ εἶεν οἱ βάρβαροι οὗτοι ἐν γῇ τῇ πατρίᾳ
 ἐπανιόντες ἰδρύεσθαι, μένειν τε αὐτοῦ καὶ πίστεως
 τῆς ἐς Ῥωμαίους τὸ λοιπὸν ἔχασθαι· ἦν δέ γε
 αὐτοῖς ἐν ταύτῃ¹ μένειν ἀδύνατα ἦ, ἐπανέναι μὲν
 αὐθις αὐτοὺς ἐς γῆν τὴν Ῥωμαίων, βασιλέα δὲ
 σφᾶς δωρήσασθαι· τισι τῶν ἐπὶ Θράκης χωρίων,
 ἐφ' ᾧ ἐνταῦθα ἐνοικησάμενοι ἐνσπονδοὶ τε τὸν
 πάντα αἰῶνα Ῥωμαίοις ἔσονται καὶ τὴν χώραν ἐς
 τὸ ἀκριβὲς ξυμφυλάξουσιν ἐκ πάντων βαρβάρων.
 6 Ἦδη δὲ καὶ Οὐννων τῶν ἡσσημένων ἐν τῇ ξυμ-
 βολῇ καὶ διαφυγόντων τοὺς Οὐτιγούρους δισχιλίοι
 ἦλθον ἐς Ῥωμαίων τὴν γῆν, παῖδάς τε καὶ γυναῖ-
 7 κας ἐπαγόμενοι· ἡγοῦντο δὲ αὐτῶν ἄλλοι τε
 καὶ Σιννίων, ὅσπερ ξὺν Βελισαρίῳ πολλῶ πρό-
 τερον ἐπὶ τε Γελίμερα καὶ Βανδίλους ἐστράτευσε·
 γίνονται τε Ἰουστινιανοῦ βασιλέως ἰκέται.² καὶ
 ὃς αὐτοὺς ὑπεδέξατο προθυμία τῇ πάσῃ, ἐν τε
 χωρίοις ἰδρύσασθαι τοῖς ἐπὶ Θράκης ἐκέλευσεν.
 8 ἅπερ ἐπεὶ Σανδὶλ, ὁ τῶν Οὐτιγούρων βασιλεὺς,
 ἔμαθε, παρωξυσμένος τε καὶ περιωργισμένος, εἰ
 αὐτὸς μὲν Κουτριγούρους ὁμογενεῖς ὄντας ἀδικίας
 τῆς ἐς Ῥωμαίους τιννύμενος ἐξ ἡθῶν ἀναστήσειεν
 αὐτοὺς τῶν πατρίων, οἱ δὲ βασιλέως σφᾶς ἐν-
 δεξαμένου ἐνοικησάμενοι ἐν Ῥωμαίων τῇ γῇ

¹ ἐν ταύτῃ KH· ἐνταῦθα L

² ἰκέται K corr., W οἰκέται K pr m, L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xix 4-8

a large sum of money from Aratius, made an agreement that they would commit no further bloodshed nor enslave any one of the Romans nor do any other harm, but would make their withdrawal, treating the people on the way as friends. And this also was agreed upon, that if, on the one hand, these barbarians should be able to return and settle in their own country, they would both remain there and hold fast for the future their allegiance to the Romans; but if, on the other hand, it should be impossible for them to remain in that land, they were to return once more to Roman territory, and the emperor would confer upon them some district in Thrace, to the end that they should establish their homes there and be for ever at peace with the Romans while they assisted in guarding the land carefully against all barbarians.

By this time two thousand of the Huns who had been defeated in the battle and escaped the Utigurs had entered the Roman empire, bringing their wives and children; and among their several leaders was Sinnion, who long before¹ had marched with Belisarius against Gelimer and the Vandals, and they now made themselves suppliants of the Emperor Justinian. He received them with all kindness and bade them settle on Thracian soil. But when Sandil, the king of the Utigurs, learned this, he was exasperated and filled with anger, seeing that, while he himself, by way of punishing the Cutigurs who were his kinsmen for the wrong they had done the Romans, had driven them from their ancestral abode, they for their part had been received by the emperor, had settled in the land of the Romans, and were going to

¹ Cf. Book III xi 12

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

πολλῷ ἄμεινον βιοτεύουσιν, ἔπεμψε¹ πρέσβεις ἐς βασιλέα τὰ πεπραγμένα ὀνειδιούντας, οὐκ ἐπιστολὴν αὐτοῖς τινὰ ἐγχειρίσας (ἐπεὶ γραμμάτων παντάπασιν Οὐννοὶ ἀνήκοοί τε καὶ ἀμελέηται ἐς τόδε εἰσὶ καὶ οὔτε γραμματιστὴν τινα ἔχουσιν οὔτε τῷ περὶ τὰ γράμματα πόνῳ συναύξεται αὐτοῖς τὰ παιδία),² βαρβαρικώτερον δὲ ἅπαντα ἀποστοματιοῦντας ὅσα δὴ αὐτὸς ἐπisteύει σφίσι.

- 9 Ἀφικόμενοι οὖν οἱ πρέσβεις ἐς ὄψιν Ἰουστινιανῷ βασιλεῖ λέγειν οἱ ἔφασαν δι' αὐτῶν ὡς ἐν ἐπιστολῇ τάδε βασιλέα Σανδὶλ. “Παροιμίαν τινὰ ἐκ παιδὸς ἀκηκοὼς οἶδα, καὶ εἴ τι μὴ αὐτῆς ἐπιλέλησμαι, τοιαύτη τις ἢ παροιμία τυγχάνει οὔσα. τὸ
10 θηρίον ὁ λύκος τῆς μὲν τριχός, φασίν, ἴσως ἂν τι καὶ παραλλάξαι οὐκ ἀδύνατος εἴη, τὴν μέντοι γνώμην οὐ μεταστρέφει,³ οὐκ ἀφίεσις αὐτῷ
11 μεθαρμοσαμένῳ ταύτην τῆς φύσεως. ταῦτα μὲν,” παροιμιαζόμενός φησιν⁴ ὁ Σανδὶλ, “τῶν πρεσβυτέρων ἀκήκοα, πλαγίῳ τινὶ παραδηλούντων τὰ ἀνθρώπινα λόγῳ. οἶδα δέ τι καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς πείρας μαθών, οἷα εἰκὸς ἦν ἀγροικιζόμενον βάρ-
12 βαρον ἐκμαθεῖν· τοὺς κύνας οἱ ποιμένες ἐπιτιτθίους⁵ ὄντας ἀναιρούμενοι οὐκ ἀπημελημένως οἴκοι ἐκτρέφουσιν, εὐγνώμον δὲ τοῖς σιτίζουσι ζῶον ὁ κύων καὶ τὰ ἐς χάριν μνημονικώτατον. πράσσεται οὖν ταῦτα τοῖς ποιμέσι τούτου δὴ ἕνεκα,

¹ ἔπεμψε L ἔπεμψεν οὖν K, ἔπεμψε τε W.

² καὶ οὔτε—παιδία om W

³ μεταστρέφει K μετατρέψει L, μεταστρέψαι W

⁴ ἀφίεσις—φησιν W ἀφίεσις αὐτῷ μεθαρμοσαμένῳ τῇ φύσεως οὕτως K, ἀφυῶς αὐτὸ μεθαρμοσαμένων φησὶν L.

live much more comfortably; he accordingly sent envoys to the emperor to remonstrate at what had been done, not putting any letter into their hands (for the Huns are absolutely unacquainted with writing and unskilled in it up to the present time, and they neither have any writing-master nor do the children among them toil over their letters at all as they grow up), but instructing them rather to deliver by word of mouth in the barbarian fashion everything which he enjoined upon them

So when these envoys came into the presence of the Emperor Justinian, they stated that their king Sandil spoke through them as by a letter as follows "I know a certain proverb which I have heard from my boyhood, and if I have not forgotten it, the proverb runs somewhat as follows That wild beast, the wolf, might, they say, possibly not be unable actually to change in some degree the colour of his fur, but his character he doth not transform, nature not permitting him to change this This proverb," says Sandil, "have I heard from my elders, who thus hinted at the ways of men by means of a dark saying ¹ And I know something also which I have learned from experience, one of those things which it would be natural that a rough barbarian should learn the shepherds take dogs when they are still suckling and rear them with no lack of care in the house, and the dog is an animal grateful to those who feed it and most mindful of kindness Now this is obviously done by the shepherds with this purpose, that

¹ Literally "a slanting, or indirect, statement"

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- τοῦ τῶν λύκων ἐπιόντων ποτὲ διακρούεσθαι τὰς ἐκείνων ἐφόδους τοὺς κύνας παραστάτας τε καὶ σωτήρας τοῖς προβατίοις καθισταμένους. καὶ
- 13 ταῦτα ἐν γῇ τῇ πάσῃ γίνεσθαι οἶμαι. τεθέαται γὰρ τῶν πάντων οὐδεὶς οὔτε ποίμνη κύνας ἐπιβουλεύσαντας οὔτε λύκους ἀμυνομένους αὐτῆς¹ πώποτε, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ τινὰ τοῦτον ἡ φύσις θεσμὸν κυσί τε καὶ προβάτοις καὶ λύκοις νομοθετήσασα
- 14 ἔθετο. οἶμαι δὲ καὶ τῇ βασιλείᾳ τῇ σῇ, οὐ δὲ² πραγμάτων ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον ἀπάντων, τάχα δέ που καὶ τῶν ἀμηχάνων, περιουσίαν ξυμβαίνει εἶναι, παράλλαξιν τούτων τινὰ οὐδαμῇ γίγνεσθαι.
- 15 ἢ γοῦν τοῖς πρέσβεσι τοῖς ἐμοῖς δεῖξατε ὅπως ἂν τι καὶ τῶν οὐκ εἰωθότων ἐπὶ γήραος οὐδὲ μάθοιμεν· εἰ δὲ ἀραρότως ταῦτα πανταχῇ πέφυκεν, οὐ καλὸν σοί ἐστι Κουτριγούρων τὸ γένος ξεναγεῖσθαι, οἶμαι, τεθολωμένον ἐπαγαγομένῳ γειτόνημα, καὶ οὓς ὄντας ὑπερορίους οὐκ ἤνεγκας, τανῦν³
- 16 ἐνδύημους πεποιημένῳ. αὐτοὶ τε γὰρ τρόπον ἐς Ῥωμαίους τὸν οἰκεῖον ἐνδείξονται οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον, καὶ τούτου χωρὶς οὔτε πολέμιος ἐπιλείψει διαφθείρων τὴν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχήν, ἐλπίδι τοῦ ἡσσηθεὶς ἀμείνων ἔσεσθαι παρὰ σοί, οὔτε φίλος περιέσται Ῥωμαίοις, ἐμπόδιός ποτε τοῖς καταθέουσι γῆν τὴν ὑμετέραν ἐσόμενος, δέει τοῦ μή, ἐπειδὰν φέρεται παρὰ τῆς τύχης τὰ κράτιστα, τοὺς ἡσσημένους ἐπιδεῖν ἐπιφανέστερον αὐτοῦ⁴ παρ' ὑμῖν πράσσοντας, εἴ γε ἡμεῖς μὲν ἐν χώρᾳ ἐρήμῳ τε⁵ καὶ ἄλλως ἀγόνῳ τὰ διαιτητήρια

¹ αὐτῆς W αὐτὴν K, αὐτοῖς L

² οὐ δὲ W οὐ δὲ K, εἰ καὶ L ³ τανῦν KW : τούτους L.

⁴ αὐτοῦ Hauray : αὐτοῦς KL, αὐτοῦ W.

when the wolves attack the flock at any time, the dogs may check their attacks, standing over the sheep as guardians and saviours. And I think this takes place throughout the whole world. For no man in the world has at any time seen dogs attacking a flock nor wolves defending it, but nature as a law-maker has established this as a kind of ordinance, as it were, for dogs and sheep and wolves. And I think that even in your empire, where practically everything is found in abundance, including doubtless even impossible things, there is not the slightest variation from this rule. Otherwise make a demonstration to my envoys in order that on the threshold of old age we may actually learn something new to our experience. But if these things are by nature everywhere fixed, it is not, I think, a fair thing for you to receive hospitably the nation of the Cutigurs, inviting in a foul set of neighbours, and making people at home with you now whom you have not endured beyond your boundaries. For they will, after no long delay, shew their own true character toward the Romans, and apart from this, neither will an enemy be lacking who will prey upon the Roman domain in the hope that, if defeated, he will be better off at your hands, nor will a friend be left the Romans who some day will stand in the way of those who would overrun your land, through fear lest, when he gains the mastery by the gift of fortune, he may see the vanquished faring more splendidly than himself at your hands, seeing that while *we* eke out our existence in a deserted and thoroughly unproductive

⁵ εἴ γε—ἐρήμω τε KW. om. L.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἔχομεν, τοῖς δὲ¹ Κουτρίγούροις σιτωνεῖν τε καὶ
 τοῖς οἰνώσι κατακραιπαλᾶν ἐν ἐξουσίᾳ ἐστὶ καὶ
 17 παροψίδας αἰρεῖσθαι πάσας πάντως δέ πη
 καὶ βαλανείων αὐτοῖς μέτεστι, καὶ χρυσοφο-
 ροῦσιν οἱ πλανῆται καὶ ἱματίων οὐκ ἀμοιροῦσι
 λεπτῶν τε καὶ πεποικιλμένων καὶ καταληλειμ-
 μένων² χρυσῷ. καίτοι Κουτρίγουροι μὲν Ῥωμαίων
 18 ἀνάριθμα πλήθη ἐξηνδραποδικότες τὰ πρότερα
 19 μετήνεγκαν ἐς γῆν τὴν σφετέραν. οἷς δὲ τὰ
 ἀνδραποδώδη πάντα ἐπέχειν οὐ πάρεργον τοῖς
 καταράτοις ἐγένετο, ἀλλὰ καὶ μάστιγας οὐχ
 ἡμαρτηκόσιν ἐντεῖναι καὶ θανατοῦν ἴσως πρόχειρον
 ἦν, καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα δεσπότη βαρβάρῳ ὃ τε τρόπος
 20 καὶ ἡ ἐξουσία ἐφίησιν ἡμεῖς δὲ πόνοις τε
 ἡμετέροις καὶ κινδύνοις ἐς ψυχὴν φέρουσι
 τύχης αὐτοὺς ἀπαλλάξαντες τῆς τότε κρατούσης
 τοῖς γειναμένοις ἀπέδομεν, διαπονήματα ἡμῖν τοῦ
 21 πολέμου γεγεννημένους. ὧν δὲ τὰς ἀμοιβὰς πρὸς
 ὑμῶν ἀπ' ἐναντίας ἐκάτεροι κεκομίσμεθα, εἴ γε
 ἡμεῖς μὲν ἀπολαύομεν³ ἐτι τῶν πατρίων κακῶν,
 οἱ δὲ τοῖς δι' ἀρετὴν ἡμετέραν ἀποφυγοῦσι τὴν
 αὐτῶν δούλωσιν χώρας τῆς ἐκείνων ἰσομοιροῦντες
 22 διαλαγχάνουσι" τοσαῦτα μὲν Οὐτιγούρων οἱ
 πρέσβεις εἶπον. βασιλεὺς δὲ αὐτοὺς πολλὰ
 τιθασσεύσας καὶ δώρων πλήθει παρηγορήσας οὐκ
 ἐς μακρὰν ἀπεπέμψατο. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν τῇδε
 ξυνηνέχθη γενέσθαι.

¹ δέ KW γάρ L

² καταληλειμένων K. κατακεκαλυμμένων L, κατειλημμένων W

³ ἀπολαύομεν KW ἀπολάβομεν L

land, the Cutigurs are at liberty to traffic in corn and to revel in their wine-cellars and live on the fat of the land. And doubtless they have access to baths too and are wearing gold—the vagabonds—and have no lack of fine clothes embroidered and overlaid with gold. Yet another point the Cutigurs had previously enslaved countless thousands of Romans and carried them off to their own land. And these cursed rascals have been at no slight pains to impose all the indignities of slavery upon these victims, for they were doubtless ever ready even to apply the lash to those who had done no wrong or to put them to death, and they practised such other cruelties as natural inclination and opportunity suggest to a barbarian master. We, on the other hand, by our struggles and perils which involved our lives in danger, delivered them from the fate which then enchained them and restored them to their parents, so that they came to represent for us the object, it proves, of all our labours in the war. And for these things we and they have each of us received from you for these different actions rewards of an opposite nature, if it is true that *we*, on the one hand, still partake of our ancestral woes, but they are allotted an equal share in the land of those who by our valour escaped from being their slaves.” Thus spoke the envoys of the Utigurs. But the emperor, after wheedling them with many words and comforting them with a quantity of gifts, sent them away not long afterwards. Such was the course of these events.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

XX

Κατὰ δὲ τὸν χρόνον τοῦτον τῷ τε Οὐάρων
 ἔθνει καὶ στρατιώταις νησιώταις οὐ δὴ ἐν νήσῳ
 τῇ Βριττία καλουμένῃ ᾠκνῶνται, πόλεμος καὶ
 2 μάχῃ ἐγένετο ἐξ αἰτίας τοιαύτης. Οὐάρνοι μὲν
 ὑπὲρ Ἰστρον ποταμὸν ἵδρυνται, διήκουσι δὲ
 ἄχρι ἐς Ὀκεανὸν τὸν ἀρκτῶν καὶ ποταμὸν
 Ῥήνον, ὅσπερ αὐτοὺς τε διορίζει καὶ Φράγγους
 3 καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἔθνη ἃ ταύτῃ ἵδρυνται. οὗτοι
 ἅπαντες, ὅσοι τὸ παλαιὸν ἀμφὶ Ῥήνον ἐκατέρω-
 θεν ποταμὸν ᾠκνῶντο, ἰδίου μὲν τινος ὀνόματος
 ἕκαστοι μετελάγχανον,¹ ἐπὶ κοινῇ δὲ Γερμανοὶ
 4 ἐκαλοῦντο ἅπαντες. Βριττία δὲ ἡ νήσος ἐπὶ τούτου
 μὲν Ὀκεανοῦ κεῖται, τῆς ἡϊόνος οὐ πολλῷ ἄποθεν,
 ἀλλ' ὅσον ἀπὸ σταδίων διακοσίων καταντικρὺ
 τῶν τοῦ Ῥήνου ἐκβολῶν μάλιστα, Βρεττανίας δὲ
 5 καὶ Θούλης τῆς νήσου μεταξύ ἐστίν. ἐπεὶ Βρετ-
 τανία μὲν πρὸς δύοντά που κεῖται ἥλιον κατὰ τῆς
 Ἰσπανῶν τὰ ἔσχατα χώρας, ἀμφὶ σταδίου οὐχ
 ἥσσον ἢ ἐς τετρακισχιλίους τῆς ἡπείρου διέχουσα,
 Βριττία δὲ ἐς τῆς Γαλλίας τὰ ὀπισθεν, ἃ δὴ πρὸς
 Ὀκεανὸν τετραμμένα, Ἰσπανίας δηλονότι καὶ
 6 Βρεττανίας πρὸς βορρᾶν ἄνεμον. Θούλη δέ, ὅσα
 γε ἀνθρώπους εἶδέναι, ἐς Ὀκεανοῦ τοῦ πρὸς τῇ
 ἄρκτῳ τὰ ἔσχατα κεῖται. ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν ἀμφὶ
 Βρεττανία καὶ Θούλη ἐν² τοῖς ἔμπροσθέν μοι
 λόγοις ἐρρήθη· Βριττίαν δὲ τὴν νήσον ἔθνη τρία
 πολυανθρωπότατα ἔχουσι, βασιλεὺς τε εἰς αὐτῶν

¹ μετελάγχανον Christ. μετελάγχανον ὡν δὴ ἔθνος ἐν Γερμανοὶ
 ὀνομάζονται L; μετελάγχανον ὃ δὴ ἔθνος γερμανοὶ ὀνομάζονται
 ἐπικοινωνοῦντες τὸ ὄνομα K: Haury proposes, following
 K, ὅλον δὲ ἔθνος Γερμανοὶ κτλ

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xx. 1-6

XX

At about this time war and fighting sprang up between the nation of the Varni and soldiers who live on the island called Brittia;¹ and it came about from the following cause. The Varni dwell beyond the Ister River, and extend as far as the northern ocean along the river Rhine, which separates them from the Franks and the other nations who dwell in that region. Now among all these nations which in ancient times dwelt on both sides of the Rhine river each people had its own particular name, but the whole group was called in common Germans. The island of Brittia lies in this part of the ocean not far from the coast, being about two hundred stades off and approximately opposite the mouth of the Rhine, and between the islands of Britain and Thule. For while Britain lies to the west about in line with the extreme end of Spain,² separated from the continent by a distance which at the least is about four hundred stades, Brittia is towards the rear of Gaul, that side namely which faces the ocean, being, that is, to the north of both Spain and Britain. And Thule, as far as men know at any rate, is situated towards the extremity of the northern ocean. But the description of Britain and of Thule has been set down by me in the preceding narrative.³ The island of Brittia is inhabited by three very

¹ Probably modern Denmark

² Procopius imagines England roughly five degrees too far to the west

³ See Book VI xv. 4 ff

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 7 ἐκάστω ἐφέστηκε. καὶ ὀνόματα κεῖται τοῖς
 8 ἔθνεσι τούτοις Ἀγγίλοι τε καὶ Φρίσσονες καὶ οἱ
 τῇ νήσῳ ὁμώνυμοι Βρίττωνες. τοσαύτη δὲ ἡ
 τῶνδε τῶν ἐθνῶν πολυανθρωπία φαίνεται οὔσα,
 ὥστε ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος κατὰ πολλοὺς ἐνθένδε μετανισ-
 9 τάμενοι ξὺν γυναιξὶ καὶ παισὶν ἐς Φράγγους
 χωροῦσιν. οἱ δὲ αὐτοὺς ἐνοικίζουσιν ἐς γῆς τῆς
 σφετέρας τὴν ἐρημοτέραν δοκοῦσαν εἶναι, καὶ ἀπ’
 10 αὐτοῦ τὴν νῆσον προσποιεῖσθαι φασιν ὥστε ἀμέ-
 λει οὐ πολλῷ πρότερον ὁ Φράγγων βασιλεὺς ἐπὶ
 πρεσβείᾳ τῶν οἱ ἐπιτηδείων τινὰς παρὰ βασιλέα
 Ἰουστινιανὸν ἐς Βυζάντιον στείλας ἄνδρας αὐτοῖς
 ἐκ τῶν Ἀγγίλων ξυνέπεμψε, φιλοτιμούμενος ὡς
 καὶ ἡ νῆσος ἦδε πρὸς αὐτοῦ ἄρχεται τὰ μὲν
 οὖν κατὰ τὴν Βριττίαν καλουμένην νῆσον τοιαυτὰ
 ἐστὶ
- 11 Τῶν δὲ Οὐάρνων ἀνὴρ τις οὐ πολλῷ πρότερον,
 Ἑρμεγίσκλος ὄνομα, ἦρχεν. ὥσπερ τὴν βασιλείαν
 κρατύνασθαι διὰ σπουδῆς ἔχων, τὴν Θευδιβέρτου
 ἀδελφὴν τοῦ Φράγγων ἄρχοντος γυναῖκα γαμετὴν
 12 ἐποίησατο. τετελευτήκει γὰρ αὐτῷ ἑναγχος ἡ
 πρότερον ξυνοικοῦσα γυνή, παιδὸς ἐνὸς γενομένη
 μήτηρ ὃν καὶ ἀπέλιπε τῷ πατρὶ Ῥάδιγιν ὄνομα,
 ᾧ δὴ ὁ πατὴρ παρθένου κόρης, γένους Βριττίας,
 ἐμνήστευσε γάμον, ἥσπερ ἀδελφὸς βασιλεὺς ἦν
 τότε Ἀγγίλων τοῦ ἐθνους, χρήματα μεγάλα τῷ
 13 τῆς μνηστείας αὐτῇ δεδοκὼς λόγῳ. οὗτος ἀνὴρ
 ξὺν Οὐάρνων τοῖς λογιμωτάτοις ἐν χωρίῳ τῷ
 ἱππευόμενος ὄρνιν τινὰ ἐπὶ δένδρου τε καθήμενον
 14 εἶδε καὶ πολλὰ κρώζοντα. εἶτε δὲ τοῦ ὄρνιθος
 τῆς φωνῆς ξυνεῖς εἶτε ἄλλο μὲν τι ἐξεπιστάμενος,
 ξυνεῖναι δὲ τοῦ ὄρνιθος μαντευομένου τερατευ-
 254

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII xx 6-14

numerous nations, each having one king over it. And the names of these nations are Angli, Frisones, and Brittones, the last being named from the island itself. And so great appears to be the population of these nations that every year they emigrate thence in large companies with their women and children and go to the land of the Franks. And the Franks allow them to settle in the part of their land which appears to be more deserted, and by this means they say they are winning over the island. Thus it actually happened that not long ago the king of the Franks, in sending some of his intimates on an embassy to the Emperor Justinian in Byzantium, sent with them some of the Angli, thus seeking to establish his claim that this island was ruled by him. Such then are the facts relating to the island that is called Brittia.

The Varni, not long ago, were ruled by a man named Hermegisclus. He, being eager to strengthen his kingdom, had made the sister of Theudibert, ruler of the Franks, his wedded wife. For his previous wife had died recently, having been the mother of one child, Radigis by name, whom she left to his father, and he sought a marriage for this child with a maiden born in Brittia, whose brother was then king of the nation of the Angli, and had given her a large sum of money because of his wooing. Now this man,¹ while riding with the most notable of the Varni in a certain place, saw a bird sitting in a tree and croaking loudly. And whether he really comprehended the bird's voice, or, possessing some other knowledge, simply made a mysterious pretence of comprehending the bird's

¹ The king

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- σάμενος, τοῖς παροῦσιν εὐθύς ἔφασκεν ὡς τε-
 15 θνήξεται τεσσαράκοντα ἡμέραις ὕστερον. τοῦτο
 γὰρ αὐτῷ τὴν τοῦ ὄρνιθος δηλοῦν πρόρρησιν.
 “Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν προορώμενος” ἔφη “ὅπως δὴ ὡς
 ἀσφαλέστατα ξὺν τῇ ἀπραγμοσύνῃ βιώσεσθε,¹
 τοῖς τε Φράγγοις ἐς κῆδος συνήλθον, γυναῖκα
 ἐνθένδε τὴν ἐμοὶ ξυνοικοῦσαν ἐπαγαγόμενος, καὶ
 τῷ παιδί τῷ ᾧ περιβέβλημαι τὴν Βριττίαν
 16 μνηστήν. ἀλλὰ νῦν, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ μὲν τεθνήξεσθαι
 ὑποτοπάζω αὐτίκα δὴ μάλα, εἰμὶ δὲ ἄπαις
 ἄρσενός τε καὶ θήλεος γόνου, ὅσα γε τὰ γυναικὸς
 τῆσδε, πρὸς δὲ καὶ ὁ παῖς ἀνυμέναιός τε καὶ
 ἀνυμφος ἔτι νῦν ἐστί, φέρε ὑμῖν ἐπικοινωνέσθαι
 τὴν ἐμὴν διάνοιαν, καὶ εἴ τι ὑμῖν οὐκ ἀσύμφορον
 δόξειεν εἶναι, ὑμεῖς δὲ αὐτήν, ἐπειδὰν ἀφίκωμαι
 τάχιστα ἐς τὸ μέτρον τοῦ βίου, τύχῃ ἀγαθῇ
 17 κατακυροῦντες διαπεραίνετε. οἶμαι τοίνυν Οὐάρ-
 νοις ξυνοίσειν τὴν κηδείαν ἐς Φράγγους μᾶλλον ἢ
 18 ἐς τοὺς νησιώτας ποιεῖσθαι. Βρίττιοι μὲν γὰρ
 οὐδὲ ὅσον ἐπιμίγνυσθαι ὑμῖν οἰοί τέ εἰσιν, ὅτι μὴ
 ὀψέ τε καὶ μόλις. Οὐάρνοι δὲ καὶ Φράγγοι τουτὶ
 μόνον τοῦ Ῥήνου τὸ ὕδωρ μεταξὺ ἔχουσιν, ὥστε
 αὐτοὺς ἐν γειτόνων μὲν ὡς πλησιαίτατα ὄντας
 ὑμῖν, ἐς δυνάμεως δὲ κεχωρηκότας μέγα τι χρήμα,
 ἐν προχείρῳ ἔχειν εὖ ποιεῖν τε ὑμᾶς καὶ λυ-
 μαίνεσθαι, ἥνικα ἂν αὐτοῖς βουλομένοις εἴη.
 19 λυμανοῦνται δὲ πάντως, ἣν μὴ τὸ κῆδος αὐτοῖς
 ἐμπόδιον ἔσται. βαρεῖα γὰρ φύσει τοῖς ἀνθρώποις
 ὑπερβάλλουσα αὐτοὺς τῶν πλησιοχώρων δύναμις
 γίνεται καὶ πρὸς ἀδικίαν ἐτοιμοτάτη, ἐπεὶ γείτονι
 δυνατῷ ῥάδιον ἐπὶ τοὺς πέλας οὐδὲν ἀδικοῦντας

¹ βιώσεσθε Dindorf βιώσησθε MSS

prophecy, he at any rate immediately told those with him that he would die forty days later. For this, he said, was revealed to him by the pronouncement of the bird. "Now I," he said, "making provision that you should live most securely and at your ease, have related myself with the Franks by taking from their country the wife who is now my consort, and I have bestowed Brittia upon my son by betrothal. But now, since I expect to die very shortly, and, as far as this wife is concerned, I am without issue male or female, and my son furthermore is still unwed and without his bride, come now, let me communicate my thought to you, and, if it should seem to you not without some profit, do you, as soon as I reach the term of my life, put upon it the seal of your approval and execute it. I think, then, that it will be more to the advantage of the Varni to make the alliance by marriage with the Franks than with the islanders. For the men of Brittia, on the one hand, are not even able to join forces with you except after a long and difficult journey, while the Varni and Franks, on the other hand, have only yonder water of the Rhine between them, so that they, being very close neighbours to you, and having achieved an enormous power, have the means ready at hand both to help you and to harm you whenever they wish; and they will undoubtedly harm you if the said marriage alliance shall not prevent them. For men naturally find a neighbouring state's power, when it surpasses their own, grievous and a most ready cause of injustice, for a powerful neighbour may with comparative ease secure causes of war against his neighbours who are doing no wrong. Since, then, the facts are these, let the island gulf

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 20 ἐκπορίζεσθαι πολέμου αἰτίας. ὅτε τοίνυν ταῦτα οὕτως ἔχει, παρείσθω μὲν ὑμῖν τοῦ παιδὸς τοῦδε νησιῶτις μνηστή, χρήματα πάντα ὅσα παρ' ἡμῶν κεκομισμένη τούτου δὴ ἔνεκα ἔτυχε τῆς ὑβρεως ἀπενεγκαμένη μισθόν, ἧ νόμος ἀνθρώπων ὁ κοινὸς βούλεται. Ῥάδιγίς δὲ ὁ παῖς ξυνοικιζέσθω τῇ μητρὶα τὸ λοιπὸν τῇ αὐτοῦ, καθάπερ ὁ πάτριος ἡμῖν ἐφήσι νόμος.”
- 21 Ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἰπὼν τῇ τεσσαρακοστῇ ἀπὸ τῆς προρρήσεως ἡμέρᾳ νοσήσας τὴν πεπρωμένην ἀνέπλησεν. ὁ δὲ τοῦ Ἑρμεγίσκλου υἱός, Οὐάρων τὴν βασιλείαν παραλαβὼν, γνώμῃ τῶν ἐν βαρβάροις τοῖσδε λογίμων ἀνδρῶν ἐπιτελῇ ἐποίει τὴν τοῦ τετελευτηκότος βουλὴν καὶ τὸν γάμον αὐτίκα τῇ μνηστῇ ἀπειπῶν¹ τῇ μητρὶα ξυνοικίζεται. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ταῦτα ἡ τοῦ Ῥαδίγιδος μνηστὴ ἔμαθεν, οὐκ ἐνεγκοῦσα τὴν τοῦ πράγματος συμφοράν, τίσασθαι αὐτὸν τῆς εἰς αὐτὴν ὑβρεως ὥρμητο. τίμιον γὰρ οὕτω τοῖς ἐκείνῃ βαρβάροις σωφροσύνη νομίζεται εἶναι, ὥστε δὴ μόνου παρ' αὐτοῖς ξυντετυχηκότος ὀνόματος γάμου, μὴ ἐπιγενομένου τοῦ ἔργου, δοκεῖ πεπορνεῦσθαι γυνή.
- 24 τὰ μὲν οὖν πρῶτα πέμψασα πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐπὶ πρεσβείᾳ τῶν οἱ ἐπιτηδείων τινὰς ἀνεπνυθάνετο ὅτου δὴ ὑβρίσειεν εἰς αὐτὴν ἔνεκα, οὔτε πεπορνευμένην οὔτε τι ἄλλο εἰργασμένην εἰς αὐτὸν² ἄχαρι.
- 25 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀνύτειν οὐδὲν ταύτῃ³ ἐδύνατο, τὸ ἀρρενωπὸν ἀνελομένη ἐπὶ πολέμια ἔργα ἐχώρει.
- 26 Ναὺς οὖν αὐτίκα τετρακοσίας ἀγείρας στράτευμά τε αὐταῖς ἐνθεμένη οὐχ ἡσσον ἢ

¹ ἀπειπῶν K : ἀπέειπε καὶ L.

² εἰς αὐτόν K αὐτῷ L

³ οὐδὲν ταύτῃ L ταῦτα οὐδαμῶς K

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII xv 19-26

who has been wooed for this boy¹ be given up by you, and all the money which she has received from us for this purpose,² let her retain as remuneration for the indignity, as the common law of mankind has it; but let my son Radigis be married to his own stepmother thenceforth, just as our ancestral law permits us "

So he spoke, and on the fortieth day from the pronouncement he fell sick and fulfilled his destiny. Then the son of Hermegisclus, after taking over the kingdom of the Varni, by the will of the notable men among these barbarians, carried out the counsel of the dead king, and straightway renouncing his marriage with his betrothed, became wedded to his step-mother. But when the betrothed of Radigis learned this, she could not bear the indignity of her position and undertook to secure revenge upon him for his insult to her. For so highly is virtue regarded among those barbarians, that when merely the name of marriage has been mentioned among them, though the fact has not been accomplished, the woman is considered to have lost her maidenhood. First, then, she sent an embassy to him of some of her kinsmen and inquired for what reason he had insulted her, though she had neither been unfaithful nor done him any other wrong. But since she was unable to accomplish anything by this means, she took up the duties of a man and proceeded to deeds of war.

She accordingly collected four hundred ships immediately and put on board them an army of not fewer

¹ i e Radigis

² i e as a dowry which she would bring to Radigis.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- μυριάδων δέκα μαχίμων ἀνδρῶν, αὐτὴ ἐξηγεῖτο
 27 ἐπὶ τοὺς Οὐάρνους τῇ στρατιᾷ ταύτῃ. ἐπήγετο
 δὲ καὶ τῶν ἀδελφῶν τῶν ἑαυτῆς ἕνα, ξυνδιοικη-
 σόμενον αὐτῇ τὰ παρόντα, οὐχ ὥς¹ μέντοι τὴν
 βασιλείαν ἔχειν,² ἀλλ' ἔτι³ ἐν ἰδιώτου τελούντα
 28 μοίρα. ἄλκιμοι δὲ εἰσι πάντων μάλιστα βαρ-
 βάρων ὧν ἡμεῖς ἴσμεν οἱ νησιῶται οὗτοι, ἔς τε
 29 τὰς ξυμβολὰς πεζοὶ ἴασιν. οὐ γὰρ ὅσον εἰς τοῦ
 ἵππεύεσθαι ἀμελέτητοι, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ ἵππον ὃ τι
 ποτὲ ἐστὶν ἐπίστασθαι σφίσι ξυμβαίνει, ἐπεὶ
 ἵππον ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ νήσῳ οὐδὲ ὅσα κατ' εἰκόνα
 θεῶνται.⁴ οὐ γὰρ ποτε τὸ ζῶον τοῦτο ἐν γε
 30 Βριττία γεγονὸς φαίνεται. εἰ δὲ ποτε αὐτῶν
 τισὶν ἐπὶ πρεσβείᾳ ἢ ἄλλου του ἔνεκα Ῥωμαίοις
 ἢ Φράγγοις ἢ ἄλλῳ τῷ ἵππους ἔχοντι ἐπιχω-
 ριάσασθαι ξυμβαίῃ, ἐνταῦθά τε ἵπποις ὀχεῖσθαι
 αὐτοῖς ἐπάναγκες εἴη, ἀναθρώσκειν μὲν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς
 οὐδεμιᾷ μηχανῇ ἔχουσιν, ἕτεροι δὲ αὐτοὺς μετεω-
 ρίζοντες ἀνθρωποὶ ἐπὶ τοὺς ἵππους ἀναβιβάζουσιν,
 ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι τε βουλομένους ἐνθένδε αὐθις
 31 αἴροντες ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς κατατίθενται. οὐ μὲν οὐδὲ
 Οὐαρνοὶ ἵππόται εἰσὶν, ἀλλὰ πεζοὶ καὶ αὐτοὶ
 ἅπαντες. οὗτοι μὲν οὖν οἱ βάρβαροι τοιοῖδε
 εἰσὶ περίνεως δὲ οὐκ ἦν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ στόλῳ,
 ἀλλ' αὐτερέται πάντες. οὐδὲ ἰστία τούτοις δὴ
 τοῖς νησιώταις τυγχάνει ὄντα, ἀλλ' ἐρέσσοντες
 αἰεὶ ναυτίλλονται μόνον.
 32 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ κατέπλευσαν εἰς τὴν ἡπειρον,
 παρθένος μὲν ἥπερ αὐτῶν ἦρχε, χαράκωμα
 ἐχυρὸν πηξαμένη παρ' αὐτὴν μάλιστα τὴν
 ἐκβολὴν ποταμοῦ Ῥήνου, ξὺν ὀλίγοις τισὶν αὐτοῦ

¹ ὥς K: ὅς L

² ἔχειν K: εἶχεν L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xx. 26-32

than one hundred thousand fighting men, and she in person led forth this expedition against the Varni. And she also took with her one of her brothers who was to assist her in settling the situation, not that he was holding the kingship, for he was still living in the position of a private citizen. Now these islanders are valiant beyond any of the barbarians we know, and they enter battle on foot. And this is not merely because they are unpractised in horsemanship, but the fact is that they do not even know what a horse is, since they never see so much as a picture of a horse on that island; for it is clear that this animal has in no time lived in Brittia. And whenever it happens that some of them on an embassy or some other mission make a visit among the Romans or the Franks or any other nation which has horses, and they are there constrained to ride on horseback, they are altogether unable to leap upon their backs, but other men lift them in the air and thus mount them on the horses, and when they wish to get off, they are again lifted and placed on the ground. Nor, in fact, are the Varni horsemen either, but they too all march on foot. Such, then, are these barbarians. And there were no supernumeraries in this fleet, for all the men rowed with their own hands. Nor do these islanders have sails, as it happens, but they always navigate by rowing alone.

When they came to land on the continent, the maiden who commanded them, having established a strong stockade close by the mouth of the Rhine River, remained there with a small number, but

³ ἀλλ' ἔτι K: ἀλλά γε τὸν L

⁴ θεῶνται K: τεθέανται L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἔμενε,¹ παντὶ δὲ τῷ ἄλλῳ στρατῷ τὸν ἀδελφὸν
 33 ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἐξηγεῖσθαι κελεύει. ἐστρα-
 τοπεδεύοντο δὲ Οὐαρνοὶ τότε τῆς τε Ὀκεανοῦ
 ἡϊόνος καὶ Ῥήνου ἐκβολῆς οὐ πολλῷ ἄποθεν.
 οὗ δὴ ἀφικομένων κατὰ τάχος Ἀγγέλων ξυνέμιξαν
 μὲν ἀμφότεροι ἐς χεῖρας ἀλλήλοις, ἥσσώνται δὲ
 34 κατὰ κράτος Οὐαρνοὶ. καὶ αὐτῶν πίπτουσι μὲν
 πολλοὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πόνῳ, οἱ λοιποὶ δὲ ξὺν τῷ
 βασιλεῖ ἐς ὑπαγωγὴν τρέπονται ἅπαντες, οἳ τε
 Ἀγγέλοι τὴν δίωξιν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς δι' ὀλίγου πεποιη-
 μένοι, ἧ θέμις πεζοῖς, ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀπε-
 35 χώρησαν. οὕσπερ ἐκάκιζεν ἐπανήκοντας ἐς
 αὐτὴν ἡ παρθένος, τῷ τε ἀδελφῷ ἐλοιδορεῖτο
 πικρότατα, οὐδὲν τῇ στρατιᾷ λόγου ἄξιον ἰσχυ-
 ριζομένη πεπρᾶχθαι, ἐπεὶ μὴ ἀγάγοιεν αὐτῇ
 ζῶντα Ῥάδιγιν.
 36 Καὶ αὐτῶν ἀπολεξαμένη τοὺς μάλιστα μαχιμω-
 τάτους εὐθὺς ἔστειλεν, ἀπαγγείλασα δορυάλωτον
 37 ἀγαγεῖν τὸν ἄνδρα μηχανῇ πάσῃ. οἱ δὲ τὴν
 αὐτῆς ἐπιτελοῦντες² ἐπίταξιν περιήρχοντο διερευ-
 νώμενοι ξύμπαντα ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς τὰ ἐκείνῃ χωρία,
 ἕως ἐν ὕλῃ ἀμφιλαφεῖ κρυπτόμενον Ῥάδιγιν
 εὔρου· δῆσαντές τε αὐτὸν τῇ παιδί ἀπεκόμισαν.
 38 καὶ ὁ μὲν αὐτῆς ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς εἰστήκει, τρέμων τε
 καὶ τεθυήξασθαι αὐτίκα δὴ μάλα ὑποτοπάζων
 θανάτῳ οἰκτίστῳ· ἡ δὲ αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ παραδόξου
 οὔτε ἀπέκτεινεν οὔτε τι ἄλλο ἄχαρι ἔδρασεν, ἀλλὰ
 ὀνειδίσασα τὴν ἐς αὐτὴν ὕβριν ἀνεπυνθάνετο τοῦ
 ἀνθρώπου ὅτου δὴ ἔνεκα ἡ λογηκῶς τὰ ξυγκείμενα
 ἑτέρα γυναικὶ ἐς εὐνὴν ξυνέλθοι, καὶ ταῦτα οὐ πε-

¹ ἔμενε K: ἀπέμεινε L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xx. 32-38

commanded her brother to lead forward all the rest of the army against the enemy. Now the Varni at that time were encamped not far from the shore of the ocean and the mouth of the Rhine. So when the Angli reached that place, marching swiftly, the two armies engaged in combat with one another, and the Varni were defeated decisively. And many of them fell in this struggle, while the entire number of those remaining, together with the king, turned to retreat, and the Angli, after keeping up the pursuit for only a short distance, as is customary for infantry, retired to their camp. But the maiden rebuked them when they returned to her and inveighed most vehemently against her brother, declaring that nothing worthy of mention had been achieved by the army, because they had not brought her Radigis alive.

She then selected the most warlike men among them and sent them off straightway, instructing them to bring the man captive without fail. Then, by way of carrying out her mission, these men went about searching that whole country thoroughly, until they found Radigis hiding in a dense wood, then they bound him and took him back to the gul. So he stood before her eyes trembling and expecting to die instantly by the most cruel death, she, however, contrary to his expectations, neither killed him nor inflicted any other harm upon him, but by way of reproaching him for his insult to her, enquired of the fellow why in the world he had made light of the agreement and allied himself to another woman, and that too though his betrothed had not been

² ἐπιτελοῦντες L: ὑποτελοῦντες K

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 39 πορνευμένης αὐτῷ τῆς μνηστήης. καὶ δς τὴν αἰτίαν ἀπολογούμενος τὰς τοῦ πατρὸς ἐντολὰς καὶ τὴν τῶν ἀρχομένων¹ σπουδὴν προὔφερεν, ἰκεσίους τε προὔτεινετο λόγους καὶ λιταῖς ἀνέμισγε τὴν ἀπολογίαν πολλαῖς, ἐς τὴν ἀνάγκην ἀναφέρων
- 40 τὸ ἔγκλημα. βουλομένη τε αὐτῇ ξυνοικισθῆ-
σεσθαι ὡμολόγει καὶ τὰ οὐκ ἐν δίκῃ τὸ πρότερόν
οἱ αὐτῷ πεπραγμένα τοῖς ἐπιγεννησομένοις ἰάσε-
- 41 σθαι.² ἐπεὶ δὲ τὴν παῖδα ταῦτα ἤρεσκε, τῶν τε
δεσμῶν ἀφεῖτο Ῥάδιγίς τῆς τε ἄλλης φιλοφρο-
σύνης ἡξιώτο, ἀποπέμπεται μὲν τὴν Θεудиβέρτου
εὐθὺς ἀδελφὴν, τὴν δὲ Βριττίαν ἐγγήματο. ταῦτα
μὲν τῇδε κεχώρηκεν.
- 42 Ἐν ταύτῃ δὲ τῇ Βριττίᾳ νήσῳ τεῖχος ἐδείμαντο
μακρὸν οἱ πάλοι ἄνθρωποι, δίχα τέμνον αὐτῆς
πολλὴν τινα μοῖραν· τοῦ δὲ τείχους ὃ τε ἀῆρ καὶ
ἡ γῆ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα³ πάντα οὐχ ὁμοίως ἐφ' ἐκάτερά
- 43 ἐστι. τὰ μὲν γὰρ τοῦ τείχους πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα
ἥλιον εὐεξία τε ἀέρων ἐστὶ συμμεταβαλλομένη
ταῖς ὥραις, θέρους μὲν μετρίως ἀλεεινὴ, ψυχρινῇ
- 44 δὲ χειμῶνος· καὶ ἄνθρωποι μὲν πολλοὶ ὥκηνται
κατὰ ταῦτὰ βιοτεύοντες τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀνθρώποις,
τά τε δένδρα καρποῖς ἐν ἐπιτηδεῖω γινομένοις
ὠραίοις ἀνθεῖ, τά τε λῆγια τῶν ἄλλων οὐδὲν κατα-
- 45 δεέστερον τέθηλεν· ἀλλὰ καὶ ὕδασιν ἡ χώρα
ἐναβρυνομένη διαρκῶς φαίνεται. πρὸς δύοντα
δὲ πᾶν τοῦναντίον, ὥστε ἀμέλει ἀνθρώπῳ μὲν
οὐδὲ ἡμιώριον δυνατόν ἐστιν ἐνταῦθα βιώναι,
ἔχισ δὲ καὶ⁴ ὄφεις ἀνάριθμοι καὶ ἄλλων θηρίων
παντοδαπὰ⁵ γένῃ διακεκλήρωται τὸν χῶρον

¹ ἀρχομένων K ἀρχόντων L.

unfaithful And he, seeking to defend himself against the charge, brought forward the commands of his father and the zeal of his subjects, and he uttered words of supplication and mingled many prayers with his defence, excusing his action by the stress of necessity And if it was her will that they should be married he promised that what he had done unjustly in the past would be repaired by his subsequent conduct Now when this was approved by the girl, and Radigis had been released from his bonds and received kind treatment in all other matters, he straightway dismissed the sister of Theudibert and wedded the girl from Brittia. Thus did these events take place.

Now in this island of Brittia the men of ancient times built a long wall, cutting off a large part of it; and the climate and the soil and everything else is not alike on the two sides of it For to the east of the wall there is a salubrious air, changing with the seasons, being moderately warm in summer and cool in winter And many people dwell there, living in the same fashion as other men, and the trees abound with fruits which ripen at the fitting season, and the corn-lands flourish as abundantly as any; furthermore, the land seems to display a genuine pride in an abundance of springs of water But on the west side everything is the reverse of this, so that it is actually impossible for a man to survive there even a half-hour, but countless snakes and serpents and every other kind of wild creature occupy this area as their own. And, strangest of

² ἐπιγενησομένοις ἰάσεσθαι K ἐπιγινομένοις ἰάσασθαι L

³ τοῦ—τὰ ἄλλα K ὅτι ἡ γῆ καὶ ὁ ἀὴρ καὶ τὰλλα L.

⁴ δὲ καὶ K ἐπεὶ καὶ L. ⁵ παντοδαπά K παντοδαπῶν L.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 46 ἐκείνον. καί, τὸ δὴ παραλογώτατον, οἱ ἐπι-
χώριοι λέγουσιν ὥς, εἴ τις ἄνθρωπος τὸ τεῖχος
ἀμείψας ἐπὶ θάτερα ἴοι, εὐθυωρὸν θνήσκει, τὸ
λοιμῶδες τῶν ἐκείνη ἀέρων ὥς ἥκιστα φέρων,
τοῖς τε θηρίοις ἐνθάδε ἰοῦσιν ὁ θάνατος εὐθὺς
ὑπαντιάζων ἐκδέχεται.
- 47 Ἐνταῦθα δέ μοι γενομένῳ τῆς ἱστορίας
ἐπάναγκές ἐστι λόγου μυθολογία ἐμφερεστάτου
ἐπιμνησθῆναι, ὃς δὴ μοι οὔτε πιστός¹ τὸ παράπαν
ἔδοξεν² εἶναι, καίπερ αἰεὶ πρὸς ἀνδρῶν ἐκφε-
ρόμενος ἀναρίθμων οἱ δὴ τῶν μὲν πρασσομένων
αὐτουργοί, τῶν δὲ λόγων αὐτήκοοι ἰσχυρίζοντο
γεγονέναι, οὔτε παριτέος παντάπασιν, ὥς μὴ τά
γε ἀμφὶ Βριττίᾳ τῇ νήσῳ ἀναγραφόμενος ἀγνοίας
τινὸς τῶν τῇδε ξυμβαινόντων διηνεκῶς ἀπενέγ-
κωμαι δόξαν.
- 48 Λέγουσιν οὖν τὰς τῶν ἀποβιούντων ἀνθρώπων
ψυχὰς εἰς τοῦτο αἰεὶ διακομίζεσθαι τὸ χωρίον
ὄντινα δὲ τρόπον, αὐτίκα δηλώσω, σπουδαιότατα
μὲν ἀπαγγελλόντων ἀκηκοὺς πολλάκις τῶν τῇδε
ἀνθρώπων, εἰς ὀνείρων δέ³ τινα δύναμιν ἀποκε-
- 49 κρίσθαι νενομικῶς τὰ θρυλλούμενα. παρὰ τὴν
ἄκτῃν τοῦ κατὰ τὴν Βριττίαν Ὠκεανοῦ νήσον
κώμας παμπληθεῖς ξυμβαίνει εἶναι. οἰκοῦσι δὲ
αὐτὰς ἄνθρωποι σαγηνεύοντές τε καὶ γῆν γεωρ-
γοῦντες καὶ ἐπ' ἐμπορίαν ναυτιλλόμενοι εἰς τήνδε
τὴν νήσον, τὰ μὲν ἄλλα Φράγγων κατήκοοι ὄντες,
φόρου μέντοι ἀπαγωγὴν οὐπώποτε παρασχόμενοι,
ὑφειμένου αὐτοῖς ἐκ παλαιοῦ τοῦδε τοῦ ἄχθους,
ὑπουργίας τινός, ὥς φασιν, ἔνεκα, ἥ μοι ἐν τῷ
παρόντι λελέγεται.

¹ οὔτε πιστός K : οὐτ' ἐπὶ L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII xx 45-49

all, the inhabitants say that if any man crosses this wall and goes to the other side, he dies straightway, being quite unable to support the pestilential air of that region, and wild animals, likewise, which go there are instantly met and taken by death.

Since I have reached this point in the history, it is necessary for me to record a story which bears a very close resemblance to mythology, a story which did not indeed seem to me at all trustworthy, although it was constantly being published by countless persons who maintained that they had done the thing with their own hands and had heard the words with their own ears, and yet it cannot be altogether passed over, lest, in writing an account of the island of Brittia, I gain a lasting reputation for ignorance of what takes place there.

They say, then, that the souls of men who die are always conveyed to this place. And as to the manner in which this is done, I shall presently explain, having many a time heard the people there most earnestly describe it, though I have come to the conclusion that the tales they tell are to be attributed to some power of dreams. Along the coast of the ocean which lies opposite the island of Brittia there are numerous villages. These are inhabited by men who fish with nets or till the soil or carry on a sea-trade with this island, being in other respects subject to the Franks, but never making them any payment of tribute, that burden having been remitted to them from ancient times on account, as they say, of a certain service, which will here be described by me.

² ἔδοξεν K. ἀληθὲς ἔδοξεν L.

³ ἀνείρων δέ. ἀνείρων δὲ K, ἀνείρωδη δέ L.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 50 Λέγουσιν οἱ ταύτη ἄνθρωποι ἐκ περιτροπῆς ἐπικείσθαι τὰς τῶν ψυχῶν παραπομπὰς σφίσιν. ὅσοις¹ οὖν τῇ ἐπιγενησομένη νυκτὶ ἐς τὸ ἐπιτήδευμα τοῦτο τῇ τῆς ὑπουργίας διαδοχῇ ἱτέον ἐστίν, οὗτοι δὴ, ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα ξυσκοτάξῃ, ἐς τὰς οἰκίας τὰς αὐτῶν ἀναχωροῦντες καθεύδουσι, προσδεχόμενοι τὸν συναγωγέα τοῦ πράγματος.
- 51 ἁπλῶς δὲ τῶν νυκτῶν² τῶν μὲν θυρῶν σφίσιν ἀρασσομένων αἰσθάνονται, φωνῆς δέ τινος ἀφανοῦς³ ἐπαίουσιν ἐπὶ τὸ ἔργον αὐτοὺς ξυγκα-
- 52 λούσης. αὐτοὶ τε ὀκνήσει οὐδεμιᾷ ἐκ τῶν στρωμάτων ἐξανιστάμενοι ἐπὶ τὴν ἡϊόνα βαδίζουσιν, οὐ ξυνιέντες μὲν ὅποια ποτὲ ἀνάγκη αὐτοὺς ἐς τοῦτο ἐνάγει, ἀλλ' ὅμως ἀναγκαζόμενοι.
- 53 ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἀκάτους παρεσκευασμένας ὁρῶσιν ἐρήμους τὸ παράπαν ἀνθρώπων, οὐ τὰς σφετέρας μέντοι, ἀλλ' ἐτέρας τινάς, ἐς ἃς δὴ ἐσβάντες τῶν
- 54 κωπῶν ἄπτονται. καὶ τῶν βάρων αἰσθάνονται ἀχθομένων μὲν ἐπιβατῶν πλήθει, ἄχρι δὲ ἐς σανίδας τε ἄκρας καὶ τῶν κωπῶν τὴν χώραν τῷ ῥοθίῳ βεβαπτισμένων, ἀποδεουσῶν τε τοῦ ὕδατος ὅσον⁴ οὐδὲ δάκτυλον ἕνα, αὐτοὶ μέντοι οὐδένα θεῶνται, ἀλλὰ καὶ μίαν ἐρέσσοντες ὥραν ἐς τὴν
- 55 Βριττίαν καταίρουσι. καίτοι ταῖς ἀκάτοις ἡνίκα ταῖς αὐτῶν ἰδίαις ναυτίλλονται, οὐχ ἰστίοις χρώμενοι, ἀλλ' ἐρέσσοντες,⁵ ἐς νύκτα τε καὶ ἡμέραν μόλις ἐνταῦθα διαπορθμεύονται. ἐς τὴν νῆσον δὲ καταπλεύσαντες ἀποφορτιζόμενοι ἀπαλλάσσονται αὐτίκα δὴ μάλα, τῶν βάρων σφίσι κούφων γινομένων ἐκ τοῦ αἰφνιδίου κακ τοῦ ῥοθίου ἐπαιρομένων ἔν τε τῷ ὕδατι καταδυομένων οὐδέν τι ἄλλο, πλὴν γε ὅσα ἐς τὴν τρόπιν αὐτὴν.⁶
- 268

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xx. 50-55

The men of this place say that the conduct of souls is laid upon them in turn. So the men who on the following night must go to do this work relieving others in the service, as soon as darkness comes on, retire to their own houses and sleep, awaiting him who is to assemble them for the enterprise. And at a late hour of the night they are conscious of a knocking at their doors and hear an indistinct voice calling them together for their task. And they with no hesitation rise from their beds and walk to the shore, not understanding what necessity leads them to do this, but compelled nevertheless. There they see skiffs in readiness with no man at all in them, not their own skiffs, however, but a different kind, in which they embark and lay hold of the oars. And they are aware that the boats are burdened with a large number of passengers and are wet by the waves to the edge of the planks and the oarlocks, having not so much as one finger's breadth above the water; they themselves, however, see no one, but after rowing a single hour they put in at Brittia. And yet when they make the voyage in their own skiffs, not using sails but rowing, they with difficulty make this passage in a night and a day. Then when they have reached the island and have been relieved of their burden, they depart with all speed, their boats now becoming suddenly light and rising above the waves, for they sink no further in the water than the keel itself.

¹ ὅσοις Braun: ὅσοις MSS.

² ἀφανούς L διαφανώς K.

³ ἐρέσσοντες K: om. L.

⁴ τῶν νυκτῶν K: νύκτωρ L.

⁵ ὅσον K: om L

⁶ ἐν τε—αὐτήν L om. K

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 56 Καὶ αὐτοὶ μὲν ἀνθρώπων οὐδένα ὀρώσιν οὔτε
 ξυμπλέοντα οὔτε ἀπαλλασσόμενον τῆς νηός,
 φωνῆς δὲ ἀκούειν τινὸς ἐνθένδε φασὶ τοῖς ὑπο-
 δεχομένοις ἀπαγγέλλειν δοκούσης πρὸς ὄνομα
 τῶν συμπεπλευκότων αὐτοῖς ἕκαστον, τά τε
 ἀξιώματα ἐπιλεγούσης οἷς πρώην ἐχρῶντο καὶ
 57 πατρόθεν αὐτοὺς ἀνακαλούσης. ἦν δὲ καὶ
 γυναῖκες ξυνδιαπορθμευσάμεναι αὐτοῖς τύχῳσι,
 τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἀποστοματίζουσι τὰ ὀνόματα οἷσπερ
 58 ξυνοικοῦσαι ἐβίων.¹ ταῦτα μὲν οὖν οἱ τῇδε
 ἄνθρωποι ξυμβαίνειν φασίν. ἐγὼ δὲ ἐπὶ τὸν
 πρότερον λόγον ἐπάνειμι.

XXI

- Οὕτω μὲν οὖν τὰ ² κατὰ τοὺς πολέμους ἐν
 χώρα ἐκάστη ξυνηνέχθη γενέσθαι. ὁ δὲ Γοτθικὸς
 πόλεμος ἐφέρετο ὧδε. Βελισάριον μὲν ἐς Βυζάν-
 τιον μεταπεμψάμενος ³ βασιλεύς, ἡπέρ μοι ἐν
 τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις ἐρρήθη, διὰ τιμῆς ἦγε, καὶ
 οὐδὲ Γερμανοῦ τετελευτηκότος πέμπειν αὐτὸν ἐς
 τὴν Ἰταλίαν διενοεῖτο, ἀλλὰ καὶ στρατηγὸν τῆς
 ἐφ᾽ αὐτὰ τῶν βασιλικῶν σωματοφυλάκων
 2 ἄρχοντα καταστησάμενος, αὐτοῦ κατεῖχεν. ἦν
 τε τῷ ἀξιώματι πρῶτος ὁ Βελισάριος Ῥωμαίων
 ἀπάντων, καίτοι τινὲς αὐτῶν πρότεροι ἀνάγραπ-
 τοί τε ἐς πατρικίους γενόνασι καὶ ἐς αὐτὸν
 3 ἀναβεβήκεσαν τῶν ὑπάτων τὸν δίφρον. ἀλλὰ

¹ ἦν δὲ—ἐβίων L om K

² οὕτω μὲν οὖν τά L τὰ μὲν οὖν K.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII xx. 56—xxi. 3

And they, for their part, neither see any man either sitting in the boat with them or departing from the boat, but they say that they hear a kind of voice from the island which seems to make announcement to those who take the souls in charge as each name is called of the passengers who have come over with them, telling over the positions of honour which they formerly held and calling out their fathers' names with their own. And if women also happen to be among those who have been ferried over, they utter the names of the men to whom they were married in life. This, then, is what the men of this country say takes place. But I shall return to the previous narrative.

XXI

SUCH was the progress of the wars in each land. And the Gothic War continued as follows. After the emperor had summoned Belisarius to Byzantium as stated in the preceding narrative,¹ he held him in honour, and not even at the death of Germanus did he purport to send him to Italy, but he actually appointed him commander of the imperial guards as being General of the East, and detained him there. And Belisarius was first of all the Romans in dignity, although some of them had been enrolled before him among the patricians and had actually ascended to the seat of the consuls. But even so they all yielded first place to him, being

¹ Book VII λxv 1

³ μεταπεμψάμενος Κ παραπεμψάμενος L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- καὶ ὡς αὐτῷ τῶν πρωτείων ἐξίσταντο πάντες, αἰσχυνόμενοι κατὰ τῆς ἀρετῆς τῷ νόμῳ χρῆσθαι καὶ τὸ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ δικαίωμα περιβάλλεσθαι.
- 4 ταῦτά τε βασιλέα κομιδῇ ἤρεσκειν. Ἰωάννης δὲ ὁ Βιταλιανοῦ διεχεύμαζεν ἐν Σάλωσι. προσδεχόμενοί τε αὐτὸν ἐν Ἰταλίᾳ τοῦτον δὴ τὸν χρόνον οἱ τοῦ Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ ἄρχοντες ἄπρακτοι ἔμενον. καὶ ὁ χειμὼν ἔληγε, καὶ τὸ ἑκκαίδεκατον¹ ἔτος ἐτελεύτα τῷ Γοτθικῷ πολέμῳ τῷδε, ὃν Προκόπιος ξυνέγραψε.
- 5 Τῷ δὲ ἐπιγενομένῳ ἐνιαυτῷ Ἰωάννης μὲν διενοεῖτο ἐκ Σαλώνων τε ἐξανίστασθαι καὶ τῷ στρατῷ ἐξηγεῖσθαι ὅτι τάχιστα ἐπὶ Τουτίλαν
- 6 τε καὶ Γόθους. βασιλεὺς δὲ αὐτὸν διεκώλυνεν, αὐτοῦ τε μένειν ἐπέστελλεν, ἕως Ναρσῆς ὁ εὐνοῦχος ἀφίκηται. αὐτὸν γὰρ τοῦδε αὐτοκράτορα καταστήσασθαι² τοῦ πολέμου ἐβούλευσεν.
- 7 ὅτου δὲ δὴ ἔνεκα ταῦτα βουλομένῳ βασιλεῖ εἴη διαρρήδην μὲν τῶν πάντων οὐδενὶ φανερόν γέγονε· βασιλέως γὰρ βούλευμα ἔκπυστον ὅτι μὴ αὐτοῦ ἐθελουσίῳ ἀμήχανά ἐστιν.³ ἃ δὲ ὑποπτεύοντες ἄνθρωποι ἔλεγον, ἐγὼ δηλώσω.
- 8 ἔννοια Ἰουστινιανῷ βασιλεῖ γέγονεν ὡς οἱ ἄλλοι τοῦ Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ ἄρχοντες Ἰωάννου ἐπακούειν ὡς ἡκιστα ἐθελήσουσιν, οὐκ ἀξιούντες
- 9 καταδεέστεροί τι αὐτοῦ τὸ⁴ ἀξίωμα εἶναι. καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ ἔδεισε μὴ διχοστατοῦντες τῇ γνώμῃ ἢ ἐθελοκακοῦντες τῷ φθόνῳ ξυγχέωσι τὰ πρασσόμενα.
- 10 Ἦκουσα δὲ⁵ καὶ τόνδε τὸν λόγον ἀπαγγέλλοντος Ῥωμαίου ἀνδρός, ἡνίκα ἐπὶ Ῥώμης δια-

¹ ἑκκαίδεκατον L: ἑπτακαίδεκατον K.

ashamed in view of his achievements to take advantage of the law and to claim the right which it conferred, a circumstance which pleased the emperor exceedingly. Meanwhile John, the nephew of Vitalian, was passing the winter in Salones. And during all this time the commanders of the Roman army, expecting him in Italy, remained inactive. And the winter drew to its close and the sixteenth year ended in this Gothic War, the history of which 551 A.D. Procopius has written.

When the following year opened, John was minded to depart from Salones and lead his army as quickly as possible against Totila and the Goths. But the emperor prevented him, bidding him remain there until Naisos the eunuch should arrive. For he had decided to appoint him commander-in-chief for this war. But the reason why this was the wish of the emperor was explicitly evident to no one in the world, for it is impossible that an emperor's purpose be discovered except by his own will, but the surmises which people expressed I shall here set down. The thought had occurred to the Emperor Justinian that the other commanders of the Roman army would be quite unwilling to take orders from John, not consenting to be in any way inferior to him in rank. And consequently he feared lest by being at cross purposes or by playing the coward through envy they might make havoc of their operations.

And I also heard the following account of the matter given by a Roman gentleman when I was

² καταστήσασθαι L καταστήσεσθαι K

³ ἐστίν K ἐστὶ γενέσθαι L

⁴ αὐτοῦ τό K αὐτοῖς τό L

⁵ δέ K δέ ποτε L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- τριβὴν εἶχον· ἦν δὲ οὗτος ἀνὴρ τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς
 11 συγκλήτου βουλῆς. ἔλεγεν οὖν ὁ Ῥωμαῖος
 οὗτος ὡς ἄρχοι μὲν Ἰταλίας ποτὲ Ἀταλάριχος
 ὁ Θευδερίχου θυγατρίδους, βοῶν δέ τις ἀγέλη
 ἐς Ῥώμην ὑπὸ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἀμφὶ δεῖλιν
 ὀψίαν ἐξ ἀγροῦ ἤκει διὰ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἦν Φόρον
 12 Εἰρήνης καλοῦσι Ῥωμαῖοι· ἐνταῦθα γάρ πη ὁ
 τῆς Εἰρήνης νεὼς κεραυνόβλητος γενόμενος ἐκ
 παλαιοῦ κείται. ἔστι δέ τις ἀρχαία πρὸ ταύτης
 δὴ τῆς ἀγορᾶς κρήνη, καὶ βοῦς ἐπὶ ταύτης
 χαλκοῦς ἔστηκε, Φειδίου, οἶμαι, τοῦ Ἀθηναίου
 13 ἢ Λυσίππου ἔργον. ἀγάλματα γὰρ ἐν χώρῳ
 τούτῳ πολλὰ τοῦτοι δὴ τοῖν ἀνδροῖν ποιήματά
 ἔστιν. οὐδὲ καὶ Φειδίου ἔργον ἕτερον· τοῦτο
 14 γὰρ λέγει τὰ ἐν τῷ ἀγάλματι γράμματα. ἐν-
 ταῦθα καὶ τὸ τοῦ Μύρωνος βοῖδιον. ἐπιμελὲς
 γὰρ ἐγεγόνει τοῖς πάλαι Ῥωμαῖοις τῆς Ἑλλάδος
 τὰ κάλλιστα πάντα ἐγκαλλωπίσματα Ῥώμης
 15 ποιήσασθαι. ἓνα δὲ ταῦρον ἔφη τῶν τηνικάδε
 παριόντων εὐνοῦχον¹ τῆς τε ἀγέλης ἀπολειπό-
 μενον καὶ ταύτης δὴ τῆς κρήνης ἐπιβατεύσαντα
 16 καθύπερθεν βοὸς τοῦ χαλκοῦ στήναι. τύχη
 δέ τιμι παριόντα τινά, Τοῦσκον γένος, κομιδῇ
 ἄγροικον δόξαντα εἶναι, ξυμβάλλοντα τὸ ποιού-
 μενον φάναι (εἰσὶ γὰρ μαντικοὶ καὶ ἐς ἐμέ²
 Τοῦσκοι) ὡς εὐνοῦχος ποτε καταλύσει τὸν
 17 ἄρχοντα Ῥώμης. καὶ τηνικάδε μὲν ὁ τε Τοῦσκος
 ἐκεῖνος καὶ ὁ παρ' αὐτοῦ λόγος γέλωτα ὤφλε.
 πρὸ γὰρ τῆς πείρας αἰεὶ ἄνθρωποι τὰς προρρήσεις
 φιλοῦσι χλευάζειν, οὐκ ἀναχαιτίζοντος αὐτοῦς
 τοῦ ἐλέγχου, τῷ μήτε ἀποβεβηκέναι τὰ πράγ-

¹ εὐνοῦχον L: εὐνοῦχων K.

² καὶ ἐς ἐμέ K. οἶμαι L.

sojourning in Rome, and this man was a member of the senate. This Roman said that once, during the time when Atalaric the grandson of Theoderic ruled Italy, a herd of cattle came into Rome in the late evening from the country through the forum which the Romans call the Forum of Peace; for in that place has been situated from ancient times the temple of Peace, which was struck by lightning. And there is a certain ancient fountain before this forum, and a bronze bull stands by it, the work, I think, of Pheidias the Athenian or of Lysippus. For there are many statues in this quarter which are the works of these two men. Here, for example, is another statue which is certainly the work of Pheidias, for the inscription on the statue says this. There too is the calf of Myron¹. For the ancient Romans took great pains to make all the finest things of Greece adornments of Rome. And he said that one of the cattle then passing by—a steer—left the herd and mounting this fountain stood over the brazen bull. And by some chance a certain man of Tuscan birth was passing by, one who appeared to be a very rustic fellow, and he understood the scene which was being enacted and said (for the Tuscans even down to my day are gifted with prophecy) that one day a eunuch would undo the ruler of Rome. And then indeed that Tuscan and the words he uttered earned only laughter. For before actual experience comes men are ever wont to mock at prophecies, whilst proof does not upset them, because the events

¹ This famous statue (*Greek Anthology* IX 713-742, 793-798) stood in the market-place of Athens originally (*Cic. Ferr.* IV. 60).

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ματα μήτε τὸν περὶ αὐτῶν λόγον¹ εἶναι πιστόν,
ἀλλὰ μύθῳ τινὶ γελοιώδει ἐμφερῇ φαίνεσθαι.
- 18 Νῦν δὲ δὴ ἅπαντες τὸ ξύμβολον τοῦτο τοῖς
19 ἀποβεβηκόσιν ὑποχωροῦντες θαυμάζουσι. καὶ
διὰ τοῦτο ἴσως ἐπὶ Τουτίλαν ἐστρατήγει Нарσῆς,
ἡ στοχαζομένης τοῦ ἐσομένου τῆς βασιλέως
20 γνώμης, ἡ πρυτανευούσης τὸ δέον τῆς τύχης. ὁ
μὲν οὖν Нарсῆς στράτευμά τε λόγου ἄξιον καὶ
χρήματα μεγάλα πρὸς βασιλέως κεκομισμένος
21 ἐστέλλετο. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ξὺν τοῖς ἐπομένοις ἐν
μέσῃ Θράκῃ ἐγένετο, χρόνον τινὰ ἐν Φιλιππου-
22 πόλει ἀποκεκλεισμένος τῆς ὁδοῦ ἔμεινε. στρά-
τευμα γὰρ Οὐννικὸν ἐπισκῆψαν τῇ Ῥωμαίων
ἀρχῇ ἅπαντα ἡγόν τε καὶ ἔφερον, οὐδενὸς σφίσιν
ἀντιστατούντος. ἐπειδὴ δὲ αὐτῶν οἱ μὲν τινες
ἐπὶ Θεσσαλονίκην, οἱ δὲ τὴν ἐπὶ τὸ Βυζάντιον
ἦσαν, μόλις ἐνθένδε ἀπαλλαγεῖς ἐπίπροσθεν ἦει.

XXII

- Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ὁ μὲν Ἰωάννης ἐπὶ Σαλώνων Нарсῆν
ἔμενε, Нарсῆς δὲ Οὐννων τῇ ἐφόδῳ συμποδιζό-
μενος σχολαίτερον² ἦει, ἐν τούτῳ ὁ Τουτίλας
προσδεχόμενος τὴν Нарсоῦ στρατιὰν ἐποίει τάδε.
- 2 ἄλλους τε Ῥωμαίους καὶ τινας τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς
συγκλήτου βουλῆς ἐν Ῥώμῃ καθίστη, τοὺς λοι-
3 πους ἐπὶ Καμπανίας ἐάσας. καὶ αὐτοὺς ἐκέλευεν
ὅση δύναμις ἐπιμελεῖσθαι τῆς πόλεως, ἐνδεικνύ-
μενος³ ὅτι δὴ αὐτῷ μεταμέλει τῶν οἱ ἐς Ῥώμην
εἰργασμένων τὰ πρότερα, ἐπεὶ ἐμπρήσας αὐτῆς

¹ λόγον K om L

² σχολαίτερον Hoeschel σχολαίτερος K, σχολαιότερον L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxi 17-xxii. 3

have not come about and the tale of them is not credible, but seems akin to some ridiculous myth.

But now all men, yielding to the arguments of actual events, marvel at this sign. And it was perhaps for this reason that Narses marched as general against Totila, the emperor's judgment penetrating the future, or chance ordaining the inevitable thing. So Narses, receiving a notable army and great sums of money from the emperor, set forth. But when he came with his command to the midst of Thrace, he spent some time at Philippopolis, having been cut off from his road. For an army of Huns had made a descent upon the Roman domain and were plundering and pillaging everything with no man to stand in their way. But after some of them had advanced against Thessalonice and the rest took the road to Byzantium, Narses finally departed thence and marched forward.

XXII

Now while John, on the one hand, was at Salones awaiting Narses, and Narses, on the other hand, was travelling rather slowly, being hindered by the incursion of the Huns, meantime Totila, while awaiting the army of Narses, was engaged as follows. He placed a part of the Romans and some of the members of the senate in Rome, leaving the rest in Campania. And he commanded them to look after the city as well as they could, shewing plainly thereby that he felt repentance for what he had done to Rome previously, for he had, as it hap-

³ ἐνδεικνύμενος K. om L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- πολλὰ ἔτυχεν, ἄλλως τε καὶ ὑπὲρ Τίβεριν πο-
 4 ταμόν. οἱ δὲ καθεστῶτες ἐν αἰχμαλώτων λόγῳ
 καὶ περιηρημένοι χρήματα πάντα, μὴ ὅτι τῶν
 κοινῶν, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τῶν ἰδίᾳ σφίσι προσηκόντων
 δυνατοὶ ἦσαν μεταποιεῖσθαι.
- 5 Καίτοι ἀνθρώπων μάλιστα πάντων ὧν ἡμεῖς
 ἴσμεν φιλοπόλιδες Ῥωμαῖοι τυγχάνουσιν ὄντες,
 περιστέλλειν τε τὰ πάτρια πάντα καὶ διασώ-
 ζεσθαι ἐν σπουδῇ ἔχουσιν, ὅπως δὴ μηδὲν
 6 ἀφανίζεται Ῥώμῃ τοῦ παλαιοῦ κόσμου. οἷ γε¹
 καὶ πολὺν τινα βεβαρβαρωμένοι αἰῶνα τάς τε
 πόλεως διεσώσαντο οἰκοδομίας καὶ τῶν ἐγκαλλω-
 πισμάτων τὰ πλεῖστα, ὅσα οἷόν τε ἦν χρόνῳ
 τε τοσούτῳ τὸ μῆκος καὶ τῷ ἀπαμελεῖσθαι δι'
 7 ἀρετὴν τῶν πεποιημένων ἀντέχειν² ἔτι μέντοι
 καὶ ὅσα μνημεῖα τοῦ γένους ἐλέλειπτο ἔτι, ἐν
 τοῖς καὶ ἡ ναὺς Αἰνείου, τοῦ τῆς πόλεως οἰκιστοῦ,
 καὶ εἰς τόδε κεῖται, θέαμα παντελῶς ἀπιστον.
- 8 νεώσοικον γὰρ ποιησάμενοι ἐν μέσῃ τῇ πόλει,
 παρὰ τὴν τοῦ Τιβέριδος ὄχθην, ἐνταῦθά τε αὐτὴν
 καταθέμενοι, ἐξ ἐκείνου τηροῦσιν. ἥπερ ὁποῖα
 ποτὲ ἐστὶν αὐτὸς θεασάμενος ἐρῶν ἔρχομαι.
- 9 Μονήρης τε ἡ ναὺς ἦδε καὶ περιμήκης ἄγαν
 τυγχάνει οὔσα, μῆκος μὲν ποδῶν εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκα-
 τόν, εὖρος δὲ πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι, τὸ δέ γε ὕψος
 τοσαύτη ἐστὶν ὅσον αὐτὴν ἐρέσσεσθαι μὴ ἀδύ-
 10 νατα εἶναι. ξύλων δὲ κόλλημα οὐδὲ ἐν τὸ
 παράπαν ἐνταῦθά ἐστὶν οὐδὲ σιδήρων ἄλλη τινὶ
 μηχανῇ τὰ ξύλα τοῦ πλοίου εἰς ἄλληλά πη
 ἐρήρειςται, ἀλλὰ μονοειδῇ ξύμπαντά ἐστι λόγου

¹ οἷ γε—ἔχει (§ 16) L om. K.

pened, burned large parts of it, particularly on the further side of the Tiber River. But these Romans, being reduced to the state of slaves and stripped of all their money, were not only unable to lay claim to the public funds, but could not even secure those which belonged to them personally

Yet the Romans love their city above all the men we know, and they are eager to protect all their ancestral treasures and to preserve them, so that nothing of the ancient glory of Rome may be obliterated. For even though they were for a long period under barbarian sway, they preserved the buildings of the city and the most of its adornments, such as could through the excellence of their workmanship withstand so long a lapse of time and such neglect. Furthermore, all such memorials of the race as were still left are preserved even to this day, and among them the ship of Aeneas, the founder of the city, an altogether incredible sight. For they built a ship-house in the middle of the city on the bank of the Tiber, and depositing it there, they have preserved it from that time. And I shall now explain what sort of a ship this is, having seen it myself.

The ship is one with a single bank of oars and is very long, being one hundred and twenty feet in length and twenty-five feet wide, and its height is all that it can be without becoming impossible to row. But there is nowhere in the boat any piecing together of timbers at all nor are the timbers fastened together by any device of iron, but all the timbers are of one piece, a thing strange and un-

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- τε καὶ ἀκοῆς κρείσσω καὶ μόνῳ γεγονότα, ὅσα
- 11 γε ἡμᾶς εἰδέναι, ἐν τῷδε τῷ πλοίῳ. ἥ τε γὰρ
 τρόπις μονοφυῆς οὖσα ἐκ πρύμνης ἄκρας ἄχρι ἐς
 τὴν πρῶραν διήκει, κατὰ βραχὺ μὲν θαυμασίως
 ἐπὶ τὸ κοῖλον ὑποχωροῦσα, καὶ αὖ πάλιν ἐνθένδε
 κατὰ λόγον εὖ μάλα ἐπὶ τὸ ὀρθόν τε καὶ διατετα-
- 12 μένον ἐπανιούσα. τά τε παχέα ξύμπαντα ξύλα
 ἐς τὴν τρόπιν ἐναρμοσθέντα (ἅπερ οἱ μὲν ποιηταὶ
 δρυόχους¹ καλοῦσιν, ἕτεροι δὲ νομέας) ἐκ τοίχου
 μὲν ἕκαστον θατέρου ἄχρι ἐς τῆς νεῶς διήκει τὸν
- 13 ἕτερον τοῖχον. ὑφίζανοντα δὲ καὶ αὐτὰ ἐξ
 ἑκατέρας ἄκρας καμπὴν ποιεῖται διαφερόντως
 εὐπρόσωπον, ὅπως ἂν τὴν νῆα μάλιστα κοίλην
 ἀποτετορνεύσθαι ξυμβαίῃ, εἴτε τῆς φύσεως κατὰ
 τὴν τῆς χρείας ἀνάγκην τὰ τε ξύλα διακοψάσης
 καὶ ξυναρμοσαμένης τὰ πρότερα τὸ κύρτωμα
 τοῦτο εἴτε χειροποιήτῳ τέχνῃ τε καὶ μηχανῇ
 ἄλλῃ τῆς τῶν νομέων ἀνωμαλίας ἐν ἐπιτηδείῳ
- 14 γεγεννημένης. σανὶς τε πρὸς ἐπὶ τούτοις ἑκάστη
 ἐκ πρύμνης ἄκρας ἐς τῆς νηὸς ἐξικνεῖται τὴν
 ἑτέραν ἀρχήν, μονοειδῆς οὖσα καὶ κέντρα σιδηρᾶ
 τούτου ἕνεκα προσλαβοῦσα μόνον, ὅπως δὴ ταῖς
- 15 δοκοῖς ἐναρμοσθεῖσα τὸν τοῖχον ποιῇ. οὕτω μὲν
 ἡ ναὺς ἦδε πεποιημένη κρείσσω παρέχεται τοῦ
 λόγου τὴν ὄψιν, ἐπεὶ τῶν ἔργων τὰ πλείστῳ
 παραλόγῳ ξυμβαίνοντα οὐκ εὐδιήγητα τίθεται
 τοῖς ἀνθρώποις αἰεὶ τῶν πραγμάτων ἢ φύσις,
 ἀλλὰ ταῖς ἐπινοαῖς τὰ ξυνειθισμένα νικῶσα καὶ
- 16 τοῦ λόγου κρατεῖ. τούτων δὲ δὴ τῶν ξύλων
 οὐδὲν οὔτε σέσηπεν οὔτε τι ὑποφαίνει ὥς σαπρὸν
 εἶη, ἀλλ' ἀκραιφνῆς πανταχόθι οὖσα ἡ ναὺς,
 ὥσπερ ὑπόγουον τῷ τεχνίτῃ τῷ αὐτῆς, ὅστις ποτ'
- 280

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxii. 10-16

heard of and true only, as far as we know, of this one boat. For the keel, which is a single piece, extends from the extreme stern to the bow, gradually sinking to the middle of the ship in a remarkable way and then rising again thence properly and in due order until it stands upright and rigid. And all the heavy timbers¹ which fit into the keel (these the poets call "oak-stays," but others call them "shepherds") extend each and every one from one side all the way to the other side of the ship. These, too, sinking from either end, form a remarkably shapely bend, in order that the ship may be fashioned with a very wide hull, whether nature under the constraint of their future use originally carved out the timbers and fashioned this arch or the sweep of the ribs was properly adjusted by craftsmen's skill and other devices. Each plank, furthermore, extends from the very stern to the other end of the ship, being of one piece and pierced by iron spikes only for this purpose, that by being fastened to the timbers¹ they may form the side of the ship. This ship thus constructed makes an impression when seen which transcends all description, for the nature of things always makes those works which are most cunningly built not easy for men to describe, but by means of her innovations so prevails over our usual habits of mind as to check even our power of speech. Now none of these timbers has either rotted or given the least indication of being unsound, but the ship, intact throughout, just as if newly constructed by the hand of the builder,

¹ The ribs

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

ἦν, νεναυπηγημένη, ἔρρωται καὶ ἐς ἐμὲ θαυμαστὸν ὅσον. τὰ μὲν οὖν ἀμφὶ τῇ τοῦ Αἰνείου νηὶ ταύτῃ ἔχει.

- 17 Τουτίλας δὲ πλοῖα μακρὰ ἐς τριακόσια Γότθων πληρώσας ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἐκέλευεν ἵεναι, ληίζεσθαι τοὺς παραπίπτοντας ἐπιστείλας δυνάμει
- 18 τῇ πάσῃ. οὗτος δὲ ὁ στόλος ἄχρι ἐς τὴν Φαιάκων χώραν,¹ ἣ νῦν Κέρκυρα ἐπικαλεῖται, οὐδὲν
- 19 ἄχαρι ἐργάζεσθαι ἔσχε. νῆσον γὰρ οὐδεμίαν ἐν τῷδε τῷ διάπλῳ οἰκουμένην ξυμβαίνει εἶναι ἐκ τοῦ κατὰ τὴν Χάρυβδιν πορθμοῦ μέχρι ἐς τὴν Κέρκυραν, ὥστε πολλάκις ἐγὼ ἐνταῦθα γενόμενος διηπορούμην ὅπῃ ποτὲ ἄρα τῆς Καλυψοῦς ἢ
- 20 νήσος εἴη. ταύτης γὰρ τῆς θαλάσσης οὐδαμῇ νῆσον τεθέαμαι, ὅτι μὴ τρεῖς, οὐ πολλῷ ἄποθεν τῆς Φαιακίδος, ἀλλ' ὅσον ἀπὸ σταδίων τριακοσίων, ἄγχιστά πη ἀλλήλων οὔσας, βραχείας κομιδῇ καὶ οὐδὲ ἀνθρώπων οἰκία ἐχούσας οὔτε ζώων οὔτε ἄλλων² τὸ παράπαν οὐδέν. Ὅθονοι
- 21 δὲ καλοῦνται τανῦν αἱ νῆσοι αὗται. καὶ φαίη ἂν τις τὴν Καλυψὺ ἐνταῦθα³ γενέσθαι, καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ τὸν Ὀδυσσέα γῆς τῆς Φαιακίδος ὄντα οὐ πολλῷ ἄποθεν ἢ σχεδία, ὥς φησιν Ὀμηρος, ἢ ἄλλῳ τῷ τρόπῳ νεῶς τινος χωρὶς ἐνθένδε διαπορθμεύσασθαι. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα ἡμῖν ὅσον τεκμηριούσθαι εἰρήσθω. τοῖς γὰρ παλαιοτάτοις ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς ἐναρμόσασθαι τὸν ἀληθῆ λόγον οὐ ῥάδιον, ἐπεὶ ὁ πολὺς χρόνος τά τε τῶν χωρίων ὀνόματα καὶ τὴν ἀμφ' αὐτοῖς δόξαν ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον μεταβάλλειν φιλεῖ.

¹ χώραν K : om. L

² ἄλλων K om L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxii. 16-22

whoever he was, has preserved its strength in a marvellous way even to my time. Such are the facts relating to the ship of Aeneas.

Totila now manned with Goths as many as three hundred ships of war and ordered them to go to Greece, instructing them to make every effort to capture those who fell in their way. But this fleet, as far as the land of the Phaeacians, which is now called Cercyra,¹ was able to do no damage. For it so happens that there is no inhabited island in that part of the sea which extends from the strait of Charybdis² as far as Cercyra, so that many a time, in passing that way, I have been at a loss to know where in the world the island of Calypso was. For nowhere in that sea have I seen an island with the exception of three not far from Phaeacia, and only about three hundred stades distant, huddled close together and very small and having no habitations either of men or of animals or anything else at all. These islands are now called Othoni³. And one might say that Calypso lived there, and that Odysseus, consequently, being not far from the land of Phaeacia, ferried himself over from here on a raft, as Homei says, or by some other means without any ship. But let this be ventured by us only as a possible interpretation. For it is not easy to reconcile the actual facts precisely with the very ancient records, since the long passage of time is wont very generally to change the names of places and the beliefs concerning them.

¹ Modern Corfu

² Modern Strait of Messina.

³ Modern Othoman Islands

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 23 Τὸ πλοῖον ἀμέλει ὅπερ ἐν γῇ τῇ Φαιάκων ἐκ
λίθου λευκοῦ πεποιημένον παρὰ τὴν ταύτης¹
ἀκτὴν ἔστηκεν,² ἐκεῖνό τινες οἰοῦνται εἶναι ὃ³ τὸν
᾽Οδυσσεά ἐς τὴν Ἰθάκην ἐκόμισεν, ἡνίκα ξενα-
24 γείσθαι αὐτὸν ἐνταῦθα ξυνέβη. καίτοι οὐ μονοει-
δὲς τὸ πλοῖον τοῦτό ἐστιν, ἀλλὰ ἐκ λίθων ὅτι
25 μάλιστα πολλῶν ξύγκειται. καὶ γράμματα ἐν
αὐτῷ ἐγκεκόλαπται καὶ διαρρήδην βοᾷ τῶν τινὰ
ἐμπόρων ἐν τοῖς ἄνω χρόνοις ἰδρύσασθαι τὸ
26 ἀνάθημα τοῦτο Διὶ τῷ Κασίῳ. Δία γὰρ Κάσιον
ἐτίμων ποτὲ οἱ τῇδε ἄνθρωποι, ἐπεὶ καὶ ἡ πόλις
ἐν ἣ τὸ πλοῖον τοῦτο ἔστηκεν ἐς τόνδε τὸν
27 χρόνον⁴ Κασώπῃ ἐπικαλεῖται. τοῦτον⁵ δὲ τὸν
τρόπον ἐκ λίθων πολλῶν καὶ ἡ ναὺς ἐκείνη
πεποίηται ἣν Ἀγαμέμνων ὁ τοῦ Ἀτρέως τῆς
Εὐβοίας ἐν Γεραιστῷ ἀνέθηκε τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι,
ἀφοσιούμενος κὰν τούτῳ τὴν ἐς αὐτὴν ὕβριν,
ἡνίκα διὰ τὸ τῆς Ἰφιγενείας πάθος τὸν ἀπόπλουν
28 ἡ Ἀρτεμις ξυνεχώρει τοῖς Ἑλλησιν. ἃ δὲ
γράμματα ἐν πλοίῳ τούτῳ ἡ τηνικάδε ἡ ὕστερον
ξυσθέντα δηλοῖ ἐν ἑξαμέτρῳ. ὧν τὰ μὲν πλεῖστα
ἐξίτηλα χρόνῳ τῷ μακρῷ γέγονε, τὰ δὲ πρῶτα
καὶ ἐς τόδε διαφαίνεται λέγοντα ὧδε·

Νῆά με λαινέην⁶ ἰδρύσατο τῇδ' Ἀγαμέμνων,
Ἑλλήνων στρατιῆς σῆμα πλοιοζομένης.⁷

- 29 καὶ ἐν ἀρχῇ ἔχει· “Τύννιχος ἐποίει Ἀρτέμιδι

¹ ταύτης K. ταύτη L ² ἔστηκεν L om K

³ ἐκεῖνό—ὃ K ἐκείνην τινες εἶναι τὴν ναὺν οἰοῦνται ἢ L

⁴ ἐς τόνδε τὸν χρόνον L: om K

⁵ τοῦτον—ὠνόμαζον (§ 29) L: om K

⁶ με λαινέην Gomperz μελαίνην L

⁷ πλοιοζομένης Hoeschel: πλοιοζομένης L.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxii 23-29

Such is the case of the ship which stands by the shore of the island in the land of the Phaeacians, made of white stone and supposed by some to be the very one which carried Odysseus to Ithaca at the time when he had the fortune to be entertained in Phaeacia. And yet this boat is not a monolith, but is composed of a very great number of stones. And an inscription has been cut in it and cries aloud that some merchant in earlier times set up this offering to Zeus Casius. For the men of this place once honoured Zeus Casius, since the very city in which this boat stands is called up to the present time Casope. In the same manner that ship is made of many stones which Agamemnon the son of Atreus set up to Artemis at Geraestus¹ in Euboea, seeking even in this way to blot out the insult to her, at the time when through the suffering of Iphigeneia² Artemis permitted the Greeks to set sail. This is declared by an inscription on this boat in hexameters which was engraved either then or later. And though the most of it has disappeared because of the passage of time, the first verses are discernible even to the present and run as follows:—

“Here on this spot Agamemnon did set me, a
ship made of marble,
A sign of the fleet of the Greeks sailing to Troy
e’er to be.”

And at the end it has the words. “Made by

¹ Modern Porto Castri.

² Sacrificed by her father, Agamemnon, in order to propitiate Artemis who had detained the Trojan expedition by contrary winds

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

Βολοσία.” οὕτω γὰρ τὴν Εἰλείθυιαν ἐν τοῖς ἄνω χρόνοις ἐκάλουν, ἐπεὶ καὶ βολὰς τὰς ὠδύνας ὠνόμαζον.¹ ἐμοὶ δὲ αὖθις ὅθενπερ ἐξέβην ἰτέον.

- 30 Ἐπειδὴ ἐς τὴν Κέρκυραν οὗτος ὁ Γότθων στόλος ἀφίκετο, αὐτὴν τε ἦγον καὶ ἔφερον ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς καὶ ὅσαι ἄλλαι αὐτῇ νῆσοι ἐπικεῖνται,
31 αἱ Συβόται καλοῦνται· διαβάντες δὲ καὶ εἰς τὴν ἡπειρον ἐξαπιναίως ἅπαντα ἐληλίζοντο τὰ ἀμφὶ Δωδώνην χωρία καὶ διαφερόντως Νικόπολιν τε καὶ Ἀγχίαλον, οὗ δὴ Ἀγχίσην, τὸν Αἰνείου πατέρα, ἐξ Ἰλίου ἀλούσης ξὺν τῷ παιδὶ πλεοντά² φασιν οἱ ἐπιχώριοι ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἀφανισθῆναι
32 καὶ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν τῷ χωρίῳ δοῦναι. περιόντες δὲ τὴν παραλίαν ὅλην καὶ ναυσὶ Ῥωμαίων³ ἐντυχόντες πολλαῖς αὐτοῖς φορτίοις ἀπάσας εἶλον. ἐν ταῖς εἶναι ξυνέβη καὶ τῶν νηῶν τινὰς αἱ τῇ Ναρσοῦ στρατιᾷ ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔφερον. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν τῇδε ξυννηέχθη γενέσθαι.

XXIII

Τουτίλας δὲ πολλῷ πρότερον Γότθων στρατεύμα ἰς Πικηνοὺς ἐτύγχανε πέμψας, ἐφ' ᾧ δὴ τὸν Ἀγκῶνα ἐξελοῦσιν· οἷς δὴ ἄρχοντας τοὺς ἐν Γότθοις⁴ δοκιμωτάτους ἐπέστησε, Σκιποῦάρ τε καὶ Γίβαλ καὶ Γουνδούλφ, ὅσπερ Βελισαρίου
2 δορυφόρος ἐγεγόνει ποτέ. τινὲς δὲ αὐτὸν Ἰνδούλφ

¹ ὠνόμαζον Etym. M · ἐνόμιζον L.

² πλεοντά Maltretus · πλεοντάς MSS

³ ναυσὶ Ῥωμαίων K; ναυσὶν ἐλλήνων L.

Tynnichus, to Artemis Bolosia"; for thus they used to name Eleithuia in former times, because they called the pains of travail "bolae." But I must return to the point from which I have stayed

When this Gothic expedition reached Cercyra, they plundered it thoroughly in a sudden raid, and also the other islands called Sybotae¹ which lie near it; then suddenly crossing over to the mainland also they plundered the whole country about Dodona, and particularly Nicopolis and Anchialus, where the natives say Anchises the father of Aeneas passed from the world, while he was sailing from captured Troy with his son, and thus gave the place its name. And going about the whole coast and meeting many Roman ships, they captured every one of them, cargoes and all. Among these happened to be also some of the ships which were carrying provisions from Greece for the army of Narses. Thus then did these things take place.

XXIII

LONG before this Totila had sent an army of Goths into Picenum, in order to capture Ancon; and he appointed as commanders over this army the most notable men among the Goths, Scipuar and Gibal and Gundulf, the last named having once been a guardsman of Belisarius. And some called him Indulf². And

¹ Modern Sybota Islands ² Cf. Book VII. xxxv. 23 ff.

³ γότθοις K. γότθοις ἅπασι L.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἐκάλουν.¹ οἷς δὴ καὶ πλοῖα μακρὰ ἐπτὰ καὶ τεσσαράκοντα ἔδωκεν, ὅπως τὸ φρούριον κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλασσαν πολιορκοῦντες ῥᾶόν τε καὶ ἀπονώτερον τὴν αὐτοῦ ἐπικράτειαν θήσονται.
- 3 χρόνου δὲ ταύτῃ τῇ προσεδρεΐα τριβέντος συχνοῦ, συνέβαινε τοὺς πολιορκουμένους τῇ τῶν ἀναγκαίων ἀπορίᾳ πιέζεσθαι
- 4 “Ἀπερ ἐπεὶ Βαλεριανὸς ἔμαθεν, ἐπὶ Ῥαβέννης διατριβὴν ἔχων, ἀμύνειν τε κατὰ μόνας τοῖς ἐν τῷ Ἀγκῶνι Ῥωμαίοις οὐχ οἷός τε ὢν, πέμψας πρὸς Ἰωάννην τὸν Βιταλιανοῦ ἀδελφιδοῦν ἐπὶ Σαλώνων ὄντα ἔγραψε τάδε· “Μόνος ὁ Ἀγκῶν ἡμῖν τοῦ κόλπου ἐντὸς ἀπολέλειπται, ὥς αὐτὸς
- 5 οἶσθα, εἴπερ ἔτι νῦν ἀπολέλειπται.² οὕτω γὰρ τοῖς ἐν τούτῳ Ῥωμαίοις³ πικρότατα πολιορκουμένοις⁴ τὰ πράγματα ἔχει ὥστε δέδοικα μὴ βοηθοῦντες ἔξωροι ὦμεν, ὁπίσω τοῦ καιροῦ τὴν σπουδὴν ἔχοντες, ⁵ἑωλόν τε τὴν ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ
- 6 προθυμίαν ποιούμενοι ἀλλὰ παύσομαι. ἡ γὰρ τῶν πολιορκουμένων ἀνάγκη μακροτέραν τὴν ἐπιστολὴν οὐκ ἔῃ γίνεσθαι, τὸν χρόνον ἐφ’ ἑαυτὴν ἀκριβῶς σφίγγουσα καὶ ὁ κίνδυνος ὀξυτέραν τοῦ
- 7 λόγου τὴν ἐπικουρίαν ζητῶν.” ταύτην Ἰωάννης ἀναλεξάμενος τὴν ἐπιστολὴν, καίπερ αὐτῷ πρὸς βασιλέως ἀπορρηθὲν, αὐτοκέλευστος ἐτόλμα ἵεναι, τῶν οἱ πρὸς αὐτοκράτορος ἐπηγγελμένων προὔργιαιτέραν τὴν ἀπὸ τῆς τύχης στενοχωρίαν
- 8 πεποιημένος. ἄνδρας τε ἀπολεξάμενος οὐς μάλιστα πάντων ἀγαθοὺς τὰ πολέμια ᾤετο εἶναι, καὶ αὐτῶν ὀκτὼ καὶ τριάκοντα πλοῖα μακρὰ ἐμπλησάμενος πλέοντά τε ὥς τάχιστα καὶ πρὸς πόλεμον

¹ τινές—ἐκάλουν K om. L

he gave them also forty-seven ships of war, in order that, in besieging the fortress by land and sea, they might make the overmastery of it easier and less laborious. And after this siege had been continued a long time it came about that the besieged were hard pressed by the scarcity of provisions

When this was learned by Valerian, who was waiting at Ravenna being unable single-handed to succour the Romans in Ancon, he sent a messenger to John the nephew of Vitalian who was at Salones with the following letter "Ancon is the only city left us to the south of the gulf, as you yourself know, if indeed it is now still left us. For such is the situation of the Romans who are being most closely besieged in this city, that I fear lest we be late with our assistance, shewing zeal after the critical time, and displaying our enthusiasm for it a day too late But I shall cease. For the constraint imposed upon the besieged does not permit my letter to be made longer, since it strictly appropriates the time to its own uses, while the danger demands assistance more swift than words" When John had read this letter, he dared, though it had been forbidden him by the emperor, to go on his own initiative, considering the straitened condition brought about by chance more weighty than the imperial commands. So selecting men whom he considered the most able fighters of all, and manning thirty-eight ships of war with them—boats of great swiftmess and built

² ὥς—ἀπολέλειπται K om L

³ τοῖς—ῥωμαίοις L τοὺς—ῥωμαίους K

⁴ πολιορκουμένοις L πολιορκουμένους K

⁵ ἑωλόν—ζητῶν (§ 6) L om K

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

τὸν ἐν θαλάσῃ ὡς ἄριστα πεποιημένα, ἐνία τε αὐτοῖς τῶν ἐπιτηδείων ἐνθήμενος, ἄρας ἐκ Σαλῶνων τῷ Σκάρδωνι¹ προσέσχευ. οὐδὲ καὶ Βαλεριανὸς ξὺν ναυσὶ δώδεκα οὐκ ἐς μακρὰν ἦλθεν.

- 9 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀλλήλοις ξυνέμιξαν, κοινολογησάμενοί τε καὶ τὰ σφίσι ξύμφορα δόξαντα εἶναι βεβουλευμένοι, ἐνθένδε μὲν ἀποπλέουσιν, ἐς δὲ ἡπειρον τὴν ἀντιπέρασ κατάραντες ἐς χωρίον ὀρμίζονται ὃ δὴ Σενογαλλίαν² Ῥωμαῖοι καλοῦσι,
- 10 τοῦ Ἀγκῶνος οὐ πολλῷ ἄποθεν. ὅπερ ἐπεὶ οἱ Γότθων στρατηγοὶ ἔμαθον, πλοῖα μακρὰ καὶ αὐτοὶ τὰ σφίσι παρόντα, ἐπὶ καὶ τεσσαράκοντα ὄντα, Γότθων τῶν λογίμων αὐτίκα ἐπλήρουν. τὸ δὲ ἄλλο στράτευμα ἐπὶ τῇ προσεδρεία τοῦ φρουρίου ἀπολιπόντες εἰς τῶν πολεμίων
- 11 ἐχώρουν. ἡγεῖτο δὲ τῶν μὲν ἐπὶ τῇ πολιορκίᾳ μεμενηκότων ὁ Σκιποῦαρ, τῶν δὲ δὴ ἐν ταῖς
- 12 ναυσὶν ὄντων Γίβαλ τε καὶ Γουνδούλφ. ἐπειδὴ τε ἄγχιστα³ ἀλλήλων ἐγένοντο, τὰς τε ναῦς ἐκάτεροι ἀνεκώχευον καὶ ξυναγαγόντες αὐτὰς ἐς ὀλίγον παραΐνεσιν ἐς τοὺς στρατιώτας ἐποιοῦντό
- 14 τινα. Πρῶτοί τε Ἰωάννης καὶ Βαλεριανὸς ἔλεξαν τοιάδε· “Μηδεὶς ὑμῶν, ὦ ξυστρατιῶται, ὑπὲρ τοῦ Ἀγκῶνος μόνου τούτου καὶ τῶν ἐν αὐτῷ πολιορκουμένων Ῥωμαίων ἀγωνιεῖσθαι ταυτὶν οἰέσθω, μηδὲ ἄχρι τοῦδε ἀποκριθῆσεσθαι ἡμῖν τὴν ξυμβολὴν τήνδε,⁴ ἀλλὰ ξύμπαν, ὡς συνελόν-

¹ Σκάρδωνι Σκαρδῶνι Dindorf, στόλω K, ἀγκῶνι L, Πόλη Maltretus, Αἰώνη Comparetti

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII xxiii 8-14

with all possible care for warfare on the sea—and putting a few of his provisions aboard, he set sail from Salones and put in at Scardon¹ And Valerian also came thither not long afterwards with twelve ships

After joining forces they conferred with each other and considered the plans which seemed to promise them the greatest advantage; then they set sail from there and upon reaching the opposite mainland anchored at a place which the Romans call Senogallia,² not far away from Ancon When the Gothic generals learned this, they too immediately manned with the notable Goths the ships of war which they had with them, forty-seven in number, and leaving the rest of the army engaged in the siege of the fortress they advanced straight against their enemy. Now Scipuar, on the one hand, commanded those who remained to carry on the siege, and Gibal and Gundulf commanded the men on the ships And when the two forces came near each other, both commanders stopped their ships and drew them close together and made an exhortation to the soldiers

And John and Valerian spoke first as follows
“Let not one of you, fellow-soldiers, think that on the present occasion you are to struggle in behalf of this city of Ancon alone and the Romans besieged in it, nor that the result of this struggle will affect that matter only, but you must consider that the

¹ Modern Scardona ² Sena Gallica, modern Sinigaglia.

² ὁ δὲ Σενογαλλίαν Scaliger ὁ δὲ οὖσιν ἐς γαλλίας K, ὁ δρησὸν οἱ ἐκ γαλλίας L

³ ἄγχιστα Maltretus. om MSS

⁴ τὴν ξυμβολὴν τήνδε K τὰ τῆς ξυμβολῆς τῆσδε L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- τας εἰπεῖν, τὸ τοῦ πολέμου κεφάλαιον ἐνταῦθα
 ἐστάναι, ἔνθα τε ἂν ἀποκλῖναι ξυμβαίῃ τὴν
 μάχην, συγκληροῦσθαι αὐτῇ καὶ τῆς τύχης τὸ
 15 πέρασ οὕτωςι γὰρ περὶ τῶν παρόντων σκοπεῖσθε.¹
 πολλή τις ἐπὶ ταῖς δαπάναις ἀπόκειται² τοῦ
 πολέμου ῥοπή, τοὺς τε τῶν ἐπιτηδείων σπανί-
 16 ζοντας ἡττᾶσθαι τῶν πολεμίων ἐπάναγκες. λιμῶ
 γὰρ οὐκ οἶδεν ἡ ἀρετὴ ξυνοικίζεσθαι, πεινῇν τε
 καὶ ἀνδραγαθίζεσθαι οὐκ ἀνεχομένης τῆς φύσεως.
 17 τούτων δὲ τοιούτων ὄντων ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν
 ὀχύρωμα ἡμῖν ἐκ τοῦ Δρυόντος ἐς Ῥάβενναν
 ἀπολέλειπται, ὅπη ἂν τὰ ἐδώδιμα ἡμῖν τε καὶ
 ἵπποις³ τοῖς ἡμετέροις ἀποκεῖσθαι δεήσει, οὕτω
 τε οἱ πολέμοι κρατοῦσι τῆς χώρας ὥστε φίλιον
 οὐδὲν μεμένηκεν ἡμῖν ἐνταῦθα χωρίον, ὅθεν ἂν
 καὶ κατὰ βραχὺ τῶν τι ἐπιτηδείων ἐκπορίζεσθαι
 18 χρή. ἐς δὲ τὸν Ἀγκῶνα ἡμῖν ἡ προσδοκία
 μεμένηκε πᾶσα τοῦ καὶ τοῖς ἐξ ἡπείρου τῆς
 ἀντιπέρας καταίρουσιν ἐνταῦθα προσχεῖν δυνα-
 19 τοῖς εἶναι καὶ ἀσφάλειαν⁴ ἔχειν. οὐκοῦν εὐημερή-
 σαντες ἐν τῇ ξυμβολῇ τήμερον καὶ βασιλεῖ τὸν
 Ἀγκῶνα, ὡς τὸ εἶκός, κρατυνάμενοι τάχα ἂν καὶ
 τὰ ἄλλα τοῦ πρὸς Γότθους πολέμου ἐν ἐλπίσιν
 20 ἀγαθαῖς τὸ λοιπὸν ἔξομεν. σφαλέντες δὲ ἐν
 ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ, ἄλλο μέντοι πικρὸν οὐκ ἂν
 εἴποιμεν, ἀλλὰ δοιή τὴν Ἰταλίας ἐπικράτησιν ὁ
 θεὸς Ῥωμαίοις διηνεκῇ εἶναι. κακέينو δὲ λογί-
 ζεσθαι ἡμῖν ἄξιον, ὡς κακοῖς ἐν τῷ ἔργῳ γινο-
 21 μένοις ἡμῖν οὐδὲ ἀποφεύγειν ἐξόν οὔτε γὰρ τὴν
 γῆν ἔξετε πρὸς τῶν ἐναντίων κατειλημμένην οὔτε
 τὴν θάλασσαν πλώιμον, οὕτω θαλασσοκρατούν-

¹ σκοπεῖσθε K. σκοπεῖται L

main issue of the whole war, to speak comprehensively, is here involved, and to whichever side the battle inclines, there will be bestowed also the final decision of fortune. For you should regard the present situation thus: Wai depends for its decision in large measure upon the commissary, and those in want of supplies are inevitably bound to be defeated by their enemy. For valour cannot dwell together with hunger, since nature will not permit a man to be starving and to be brave at the same time. This being the case, we have no other stronghold left us from Dryus to Ravenna, where we can deposit the food supplies for ourselves and our horses, and the enemy are so thoroughly masters of the land that not a single town remains there friendly to us, from which we could even in small measure provide ourselves with supplies. And it is on Ancon alone that our whole expectation is based that the army sailing in from the opposite mainland can land here and be in safety. Consequently, if we fare well in to-day's encounter, and secure Ancon, as is probable, for the emperor, we shall perhaps be in a position henceforth to hope that what remains of the Gothic war will likewise go well for us. If, however, we fail in this battle,—but of further calamity we would not speak, only may God grant to the Romans the lasting mastery of Italy. And this too is worthy of our consideration, that, if we shew ourselves cowards in the struggle, even flight will be impossible. For neither will you have the land, seeing it is held fast by our opponents, nor will you be able to sail the sea, since the enemy control it as they do; but

² πολλή τις ἐπὶ ταῖς δαπάναις ἀπόκειται K. om L

³ ἵπποις K. om L

⁴ καὶ ἀσφάλειαν L. ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ K.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- των τῶν πολεμίων,¹ ἀλλὰ περιέστηκεν ἡμῖν ἡ
 τῆς σωτηρίας ἐλπὶς ἐν ταῖς χερσὶν οὖσα καὶ
 22 ξυμμεταβαλλομένη τοῖς κατὰ τὴν ἀγώνισιν
 ἔργοις. ἀνδραγαθίζεσθε τοίνυν ὅση δύναμις,
 τοῦτο ἐκείνο ἐκλογιζόμενοι, ὡς ἡσσηθέντες μὲν
 ἐν τῷ παρόντι τὴν ὑστάτην ἤτταν κληρώσεσθε,
 νενικηκότες δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄγαν εὐδαιμόνων ζῆν τῇ
 εὐκλείᾳ τετάξεσθε.”
- 23 Ἰωάννης μὲν καὶ Βαλεριανὸς τοσαῦτα εἶπον.
 καὶ οἱ Γότθων δὲ ἄρχοντες τοιάνδε τὴν παράκλη-
 σιν ἐποιήσαντο· “Ἐπειδὴ πάσης ἀπεληλαμένοι
 τῆς Ἰταλίας καὶ πολὺν τινα χρόνον οὐκ ἴσμεν ἐν
 ὁποίοις ποτὲ μυχοῖς οἶδε² οἱ κατάρατοι τῆς γῆς ἢ
 τῆς θαλάσσης διαλαθόντες τανῦν ἡμῖν τετολμή-
 κασιν ἐς χεῖρας ἵεναι, καὶ ὡς ἀναμαχούμενοι ἐφ’
 ἡμᾶς ἤκουσιν, ἐπάναναγκες αὐτοῖς τὸ ἐκ τῆς ἀβουλίας
 ἐγγενόμενον θράσος ἀναχαιτίζειν προθυμία τῇ
 24 πάσῃ, ὡς μὴ ἐνδιδόντων ἡμῶν τὰ τῆς ἀπονοίας
 αὐτοῖς ἐς μέγα χωροῖη. ἀμαθία γὰρ οὐ κατ’
 ἀρχὰς ἀναστελλομένη ἀναβαίνει μὲν ἐπ’ ἄπειρον
 τόλμαν, ἐς ἀνηκέστους δὲ τῶν παραπιπτόντων
 25 τελευτᾷ συμφορὰς δείξατε τοίνυν αὐτοῖς ὅτι
 τάχιστα ὡς Γραικοὶ τέ εἰσι καὶ ἄνανδροι φύσει
 καὶ ἡσσημένοι θρασύνονται, μηδὲ συγχωρήσητε
 26 τὴν διάπειραν αὐτοῖς πρόσω ἵεναι. ἀνανδρία γὰρ
 καταφρονηθεῖσα ἐπὶ παρρησίαν ἐξάγεται μείζω,
 27 ἐπεὶ τῷ προιέναι τὸ θάρσος ἄοκνον γίνεται. ἐπὶ
 πολὺ δὲ ἀνθέξειν αὐτοὺς ἀνδραγαθίζομένοις ὑμῖν
 μηδαμῶς οἶεσθε. φρόνημα γὰρ τῇ δυνάμει τῶν

¹ τῶν πολεμίων K in margin, L βωμίων K in context.

² οἶδε K : ἴσαν L

it has come to this—that our hope of safety lies in our own strength alone and will shape itself in accordance with our performance during the combat. Be valiant, then, as far as in you lies, laying to heart this one thought, that if, on the one hand, you are defeated on the present occasion, you will suffer your last defeat, but if, on the other hand, you are victorious, you will not only win glory but will also be ranked with the very fortunate.”

Thus spoke John and Valerian. And the commanders of the Goths made the following exhortation: “Since these accursed rascals, after being driven away from all Italy and hiding for a long time in we know not what corners of the earth or the sea, have now had the hardihood to engage with us and have come against us with the purpose of renewing the fight, it is necessary to check¹ with full determination the daring which their folly has engendered in them, so that it may not happen by reason of our giving way that the result of their madness grows to something great. For foolishness which is not checked in the beginning does mount up to boundless daring, but ends in irreparable calamity to those concerned. Shew them, therefore, as quickly as possible that they are Greeklings and unmanly by nature and are merely putting on a bold front when defeated, and do not consent that this experiment of theirs proceed further. For cowardice, when merely despised, proceeds to flaunt itself still more, because rashness just by continuing comes to be devoid of fear. And do not by any means suppose that they will resist you long if you play the part of brave men. For when a lofty spirit is not matched

¹ *Lit* “pull back by the hair”

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

αὐτῷ χρωμένων μὴ συμμετρούμενον πρὸ μὲν τοῦ ἔργου ἐπαιρόμενον ἐν ἀκμῇ φαίνεται, ἀρξαμένης
 28 δὲ τῆς ξυμβολῆς καταρρεῖν εἴωθεν. ὅτε τοίνυν ταῦτα οὕτως ἔχει, ἀναμνήσθητε μὲν ὄντινα τρόπον οἱ πολέμιοι πολλάκις ἀποπειρασάμενοι τῆς ἀρετῆς τῆς ὑμετέρας ἀπήλλαξαν, ἐκλογίζεσθε δὲ ὥς οὐκ ἀμείνους ἐκ τοῦ αἰφνιδίου γεγενημένοι ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ὥρμηνται, ἀλλὰ τὰ παραπλήσια τοῖς προλαβοῦσι τετολμηκότες, τὴν ὁμοίαν καὶ νῦν κληρώσονται τύχην."

29 Τοσαῦτα καὶ οἱ τῶν Γότθων ἄρχοντες παρακελευσάμενοι καὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις ὑπαντιάσαντες μελλήσει οὐδεμιᾷ ἐς χεῖρας ἦλθον. ἦν τε ἡ ναυμαχία ἐσάγαν ἰσχυρά, πεζομαχία ἐμφερῆς¹
 30 οὔσα. τὰς τε γὰρ ναῦς μετωπηδὸν ἀντιπρώρους ταῖς τῶν ἐναντίων ἐκάτεροι στήσαντες τὰ τοξεύματα ἐς ἀλλήλους ἀφίεσαν, καὶ αὐτῶν ὅσοι ἀρετῆς τι μετεποιοῦντο, ἄγχιστά πη ἀλλήλων γινόμενοι ἐν χρῷ τε ξυνιόντες ἀπὸ τῶν καταστρωμάτων ξυνέμισγον, ξίφεσί τε καὶ δόρασιν, ὥσπερ ἐν
 31 πεδίῳ, μαχόμενοι. καὶ τὰ μὲν προοίμια τοῦ ἀγῶνος τοῦδε τοιαῦτα ἐγεγόνει

"Τστερον δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι ἀπειρία τοῦ ναυμαχεῖν ξὺν πολλῇ ἀταξία τὴν ξυμβολὴν τήνδε διέφερον· οἱ μὲν γὰρ αὐτῶν οὕτως² ἀπ' ἀλλήλων δίσταντο ὥστε διδόναι τοῖς πολεμίοις αὐτοὺς κατὰ μόνας ἐμβάλλειν, οἱ δὲ συχνοὶ ἐς ταὐτὸ ξυνιόντες πρὸς ἀλλήλων ἀεὶ τῇ τῶν πλοίων
 32 στενοχωρία ξυνεποδίζοντο. εἵκασεν ἄν τις φορηδὸν αὐτοῖς τὰ τῶν πλοίων ἱκρία ξυγκεῖσθαι.

¹ πεζομαχία ἐμφερῆς K. πεζομαχίας ἰσχυροτέρα L

² αὐτῶν οὕτως K. αὐτῷ τούτῳ L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. XLIII. 27-32

by a commensurate power on the part of those who indulge in it, though before the event it may appear exalted to the highest pitch, yet when the combat begins, it is wont to ebb away. Seeing then that this is true, call to mind in what manner the enemy have faied on many occasions when they have made trial of your valour, and consider that in coming against you they have not become better men on the spur of the moment, but shewing merely a degree of daring similar to that on previous occasions, they will now also achieve the same fortune "

After the Gothic commanders had made this exhortation, they confronted the enemy and without delay came to close quarters with them. And the fighting was exceedingly fierce and resembled a battle on land. For both sides set their ships head on with the bows against those of their opponents and discharged their arrows against each other, and all those who laid some claim to valour brought their ships close enough to touch one another and then engaged from the decks, fighting with sword and spear just as if on a plain. Such was the opening stage of this encounter.

But after this the barbarians, through lack of experience in sea-fighting, began to carry on the combat with great disorder, for some of them became so far separated from one another that they gave their enemy opportunity to ram them singly, while others drew together in large groups and were constantly hindered by one another because of the crowding of the boats. One would have thought that the decks of their boats were built together like a mat. And neither could they shoot

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

καὶ οὐδὲ τοξεύειν ἐς τῶν ἐναντίων τοὺς διεστῶτας
 ἠδύναντο, ὅτι μὴ ὀψέ τε καὶ μόλις, οὐδὲ ξίφεσιν
 ἢ δόρασι χρῆσθαι, ἡνίκα ἂν σφίσιν ἐγκειμένους
 αὐτοὺς ἴδοιεν, ἀλλὰ κραυγῇ τε καὶ ὠθισμῷ ἐν
 σφίσιν αὐτοῖς διηνεκῶς εἶχοντο, ξυγκρούοντές τε
 αἰ ἐς ἀλλήλους καὶ τοῖς κοντοῖς αὐθις διωθού-
 μενοι οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ, καὶ πῇ μὲν συμφύροντες τῇ
 στενοχωρίᾳ τὸ μέτωπον, πῇ δὲ ἀποφοιτῶντες
 πολλῷ ἀποθεν ἐπὶ πονηρῷ τῶν σφετέρων¹ ἐκά-
 33 τεροι. τὰς τε παρακελεύσεις αὐτῶν ἕκαστος ἐς
 τοὺς ἄγχιστα ὄντας ξὺν ὀλολυγῇ πολλῇ ἐποιοῦντο,
 οὐκ ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἀλλ' ὅπως τὰς διαστάσεις
 34 αὐτοὶ ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἐργάζονται. ἡσυχολημένοι
 τε τῇ ἐς ἀλλήλους ἀμυχανία τῆς κατὰ σφῶν
 νίκης αἰτιώτατοι τοῖς πολεμίους ἐγίνοντο.
 Οἱ δὲ Ῥωμαῖοι ἀνδρείως μὲν τὰ ἐς τὴν ξυμβολήν,
 ἐμπείρως δὲ τὰ ἐς τὴν ναυμαχίαν διαχειρίζοντες,
 τὰ τε πλοῖα μετωπηδὸν στήσαντες, καὶ οὔτε κατὰ
 πολὺ διεστῶτες ἀλλήλων οὔτε μὴν ἄγχιστα
 ξυνιόντες περαιτέρω τῆς χρείας, ἀλλὰ συμμέτρους
 αἰ τὰς τε ξυνόδους καὶ διαστάσεις ποιοῦμενοι, ἦν
 μὲν ναὺν πολεμίαν ἀποσκεδαννυμένην τῶν ἄλλων
 θεῶντο,² κατέδυνον ἐμβάλλοντες οὐδενὶ πόνῳ, εἰ δέ
 που ξύγχυσιν ἐς τῶν πολεμίων τινὰς ἴδοιεν,
 ἐνταῦθα τὰ τε τοξεύματα συχνὰ ἔπεμπον καὶ
 ἡνίκα σφίσιν ἐπιπέσοιεν, ἀτάκτοις οὔσι καὶ
 συντριβέσι γεγεννημένοις τῷ τῆς ἀταξίας καμάτῳ,
 35 ἐκ χειρὸς αὐτοὺς διεχρώντο ἀπειρηκότες οὖν οἱ
 βάρβαροι πρὸς τε τὰ τῆς τύχης ἐναντιώματα καὶ
 τὰς κατὰ τὴν μάχην ἀμαρτάδας ξυμπεπτωκυίας,

¹ τῶν σφετέρων K τῷ σφετέρῳ L

² θεῶντο Haury θεῶνται K, ἐθεῶντο L.

their bows against those of their opponents who were at a distance except late and with difficulty, nor could they use sword or spear whenever they saw them bearing down upon them; but their attention was constantly engrossed by the shouting and crowding among themselves, as they continually collided with each other and then pushed off again with their poles in a disorderly manner, sometimes pushing their prows into the crowded space, and sometimes backing off to a great distance, thus making trouble for their own side in either case. And each crew kept shouting orders and howling wildly to those nearest them, not to urge them against the enemy, but in order that their own ships might get the proper intervals from each other. And being thus preoccupied by their difficulty with each other, they themselves became the chief cause of victory for their enemy.

The Romans, on the other hand, handled the fighting manfully and their ships with skill, putting their boats head on and neither separating far from one another nor crowding together closer than was necessary, but always keeping their movements toward or from each other properly co-ordinated; and whenever they observed an enemy ship separated from the rest, they rammed and sunk it with no difficulty, and whenever they saw some of the enemy in a confused mass, there they directed showers of arrows, and, as soon as they fell upon them when in disorder and utterly exhausted by the labour which their confusion entailed, they would destroy them out of hand. So the barbarians giving up the struggle against the adversities of fortune and the errors which they had made during the

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- οὐκ εἶχον καθ' ὃ τι μαχέσονται, οὐδὲ ναυμαχοῦντες, οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ καθάπερ ἐν πεζομαχίᾳ ἐπὶ τῶν καταστροφμάτων ἐστῶτες, ἀλλὰ ῥίψαντες τὴν ἀγώνισιν ἐπικινδύνως ἡτρέμιζον, ἐπὶ τῇ τύχῃ
- 36 καταλιπόντες¹ διὸ δὴ ἐς ὑπαγωγὴν οἱ Γότθοι αἰσχροῦν ξὺν πολλῇ ἀκοσμία ἐτράποντο, καὶ οὔτε ἀλκῆς οὔτε φυγῆς τινὸς εὐπρεποῦς οὔτε του ἄλλου ἐς σωτηρίαν αὐτοὺς ἄγοντος ἐμέμνητο ἔτι, ἀλλὰ² μεταξὺ πλοίων τῶν πολεμίων ὡς τὰ πολλὰ σκε-
- 37 δαννύμενοι διηποροῦντο. καὶ αὐτῶν τινὲς ναυσὶν ἔνδεκα διέφυγον καὶ λαθόντες³ ἐσώθησαν, οἱ δὲ
- 38 λοιποὶ ἅπαντες ὑπὸ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐγένοντο. ὦν δὴ πολλοὺς μὲν αὐτοχειρὶ Ῥωμαῖοι διέφθειρον, πολλοὺς δὲ αὐταῖς ναυσὶ καταδύοντες ἔκτεινον· τῶν δὲ στρατηγῶν Γουνδούλφ μὲν ξὺν ταῖς ἔνδεκα ναυσὶ λαθὼν⁴ ἔφυγε, τὸν δὲ δὴ ἕτερον ἐζώγρησαν Ῥωμαῖοι.
- 39 Καὶ ἔπειτα οἱ ἐν ταῖς ἔνδεκα ναυσὶν ἐς τὴν γῆν ἀποβάντες τὰ μὲν πλοῖα εὐθύς ἔκαυσαν, ὡς μὴ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων ταῖς χερσὶ γένωνται, αὐτοὶ δὲ πεζῇ ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐκομίσθησαν ὁ τοὺς
- 40 ἐν Ἀγκῶνι ἐπολιόρκουν. φράσαντές τε αὐτοῖς τὰ ξυμπεσόντα εὐθυωρὸν ξὺν αὐτοῖς τὴν ἀναχώρησιν ἐποιήσαντο, τὸ στρατόπεδον τοῖς πολεμίοις ἀπολιπόντες, καὶ δρόμῳ τε καὶ θορύβῳ πολλῷ ἐς Αὐξιμον πόλιν ἐγγύς πη οὔσαν ἀνέδραμον.
- 41 Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ ἀφικόμενοι ἐς τὸν Ἀγκῶνα οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον τό τε στρατόπεδον τῶν πολεμίων ἀνδρῶν ἔρημον αἰροῦσι καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια τοῖς ἐν τῷ φρου-
- 42 ρίῳ ἐσκομίσαντες ἀπέπλευσαν ἐνθένδε. καὶ Βαλε-

¹ καταλιπόντες K καταφυγόντες L: Haury suggests τὴν σωτηρίαν καταλιπόντες

battle, knew not how they should continue to fight, for they neither continued the sea-fight nor yet stood upon their decks as in a land battle, but abandoning the struggle they came to a perilous pause, having now left all to chance. Consequently the Goths in great disorder turned to a disgraceful retreat, and they no longer thought of valour or of orderly flight nor of anything else which would insure their safety, but scattered as they were for the most part among their enemy's ships, they were completely helpless. And some of them fled unobserved with eleven ships and were saved, but all the rest to a man fell into the hands of their enemy. Many of these the Romans slew with their own hands, and many others they destroyed by sinking them with their ships; and of the generals Gundulf escaped unobserved with the eleven ships, but the other was captured by the Romans.

After this the men on the eleven ships disembarked on the land and immediately set the ships on fire so that they might not fall into the hands of their enemy, while they themselves proceeded on foot to the army which was besieging the city of Ancon. And after they had announced to them what had taken place, they all made a hasty retreat together, abandoning their camp to the enemy, and ran as hard as they could and in great confusion up to the neighbouring city of Auximus. And the Romans, coming to Ancon not long afterwards, captured the enemy's camp without a man in it and then, after carrying in provisions for those in the fortress, sailed

² ἐς—ἀλλά K om L

³ καὶ λαθόντες K τε καὶ διαλαθόντες L

⁴ λαθών K διαλαθών L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

ριανὸς μὲν ἐπὶ Ῥαβέννης ἐχώρησεν, Ἰωάννης δὲ ἐς Σάλωνας ἀνέστρεψεν. αὕτη διαφερόντως ἡ μάχη τό τε φρόνημα καὶ τὴν δύναμιν Τουτίλα καὶ Γότθων κατέλυσεν.

XXIV

- Ἐπὶ δὲ τὸν αὐτὸν χρόνον τῇδε Ῥωμαίοις τὰ πράγματα εἶχεν ἐν Σικελίᾳ. Λιβέριος μὲν ἐνθένδε βασιλεῖ ἐς Βυζάντιον μετὰ πεμπτος ἦλθεν, Ἀρταβάνης δέ, τοῦτο βασιλεῖ δεδογμένον, παντὸς ἤρχε
 2 τοῦ ἐν Σικελίᾳ Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ. ὃς δὲ Γότθους τοὺς ἐν τοῖς ἐκείνῃ φρουρίοις ἀπολελειμμένους, ὀλίγους κομιδῇ ὄντας, πολιορκῶν, μάχῃ τε αὐτῶν τοὺς ἐπεξιόντας νικῆσας ἐς πᾶσάν τε ἀπορίαν τῶν ἀναγκαίων καταστησάμενος ὕστερον ὁμο-
 3 λογίᾳ ξύμπαντας εἶλεν. οἷς οἱ Γότθοι περίφοβοί τε γεγεννημένοι καὶ τοῖς κατὰ τὴν ναυμαχίαν ξυμπεπτωκόσι περιαλγούντες τὸν πόλεμον ἀπεγίνωσκον, ἤδη δυσέλπιδες τὸ παράπαν γεγεννημένοι, λογιζόμενοί τε ὡς ἐν τῷ παρόντι δὴ αἰσχροῦς ἤσσημένοι τῶν πολεμίων καὶ παντάπασι διεφθαρμένοι, ἦν τις Ῥωμαίοις βοήθεια καὶ κατὰ βραχὺ ἐπιγένηται, τρόπῳ οὐδενὶ ἀντέχειν αὐτοῖς¹ οὐδὲ χρόνου ῥοπήν τινα ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται ἢ ἐπὶ τῆς Ἰταλίας ἐστήξουσιν. οὐ μὲν οὐδὲ κατὰ πρεσβείαν διαπράξασθαί τι ἐκ βασιλέως ἐν ἐλπίδι εἶχον.
 4 πολλάκις γὰρ ἐς αὐτὸν πρέσβεις ὁ Τουτίλας ἐτύγγανε πέμψας. οἷ, ἐπεὶ ἐς ὅψιν Ἰουστινιανῶ βασιλεῖ ἦλθον, ἀνεδίδαξαν μὲν ὡς τῆς Ἰταλίας

¹ αὐτοῖς Haury αὐτοῖς MSS

away from there. And Valerian, for his part, proceeded to Ravenna, while John returned to Salones. This engagement especially broke the spirit and weakened the power of Totila and the Goths.

XXIV

AT about this same time Roman affairs stood as follows in Sicily. Liborius had been summoned from there by the emperor and had gone to Byzantium, while Artabanes, for thus the emperor had decided, commanded the whole Roman army in Sicily. He had laid siege to those Goths who had been left in the fortresses of the island, a very small number indeed, and whenever they made sallies he had defeated them in battle and had reduced them to a state of absolute destitution as regards the necessities of life, and finally he had taken them all by surrender. At this the Goths became fearful, being deeply moved by the outcome of the naval battle, so that they were beginning to despair of the war, having by now become utterly hopeless, for they reasoned that even in the existing circumstances they had been shamefully defeated by their enemy and completely demoralized, and if any assistance should come to the Romans, even in small measure, they would be unable by any means to hold out against them even for the least space of time or to keep a foothold in Italy. Nor indeed had they any hope of accomplishing anything by negotiation with the emperor. For Totila had, as it happened, sent envoys to him often. These envoys had indeed come before Justinian and explained that the Franks had occupied the greater part of

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

τὰ μὲν πολλὰ¹ κατέλαβον Φράγγοι, ἡ δὲ λοιπὴ
ἐρημος ἀνθρώπων τῷ πολέμῳ ἐπὶ πλείστον
γεγέννηται, Σικελίας δὲ καὶ Δαλματίας, αἵπερ
ἀκραιφνεῖς διέμειναν μόναι, Ῥωμαίοις ἐξίστανται
Γότθοι, δασμοὺς δὲ καὶ φόρους ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐρήμου
ἀποφέρειν² ὁμολογοῦσιν ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος καὶ συμ-
μαχήσειν ἐφ' οὓς ἂν³ βασιλεὺς⁴ βούλοιο καὶ
5 τὰ ἄλλα κατήκοοι αὐτῷ ἔσεσθαι· ἀλλὰ βασιλεὺς
μάθησιν οὐδεμίαν τῶν λεγομένων ποιούμενος τοὺς
πρέσβεις ἅπαντας ἀπεπέμπετο, πρὸς τὸ Γότθων
ὄνομα χαλεπῶς ἔχων, ἄρδην τε αὐτὸ τῆς Ῥω-
μαίων ἀρχῆς ἐξελάσαι διανοούμενος. ταῦτα μὲν
οὖν τῇδε ξυνηνέχθη γενέσθαι.

6 Θεωδίδερος δέ, ὁ Φράγγων ἀρχηγός, οὐ πολλῶ
ἔμπροσθεν ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἠφάνιστο νόσφ, Λιγου-
ρίας τε χωρία ἅττα καὶ Ἀλπεις Κουτίας καὶ
Βενετιῶν τὰ πολλὰ οὐδενὶ λόγῳ ἐς ἀπαγωγὴν
7 φόρου ὑποτελῇ ποιησάμενος. τὴν γὰρ ἀσχολίαν
τῶν μαχομένων οἰκείαν οἱ Φράγγοι εὐκαιρίαν
πεποιημένοι τοῖς ἐκείνων περιμαχήτοις αὐτοῖς
8 ἀκινδύνως ἐπλούτουν. καὶ Γότθοις μὲν πολίσ-
ματα ὀλίγα ἐν Βενετίοις διέμεινε, τὰ τε⁵ ἐπι-
θαλασσίδια χωρία Ῥωμαίοις· τὰ δὲ ἄλλα ὑπο-
9 χεῖρια σφίσιν ἅπαντα πεποίηνται Φράγγοι. Ῥω-
μαίων τε καὶ Γότθων πόλεμον τόνδε ἡπέρ μοι
εἴρηται πρὸς ἀλλήλους διαφερόντων καὶ πολε-
μίους οὐ δυναμένων ἐπικτᾶσθαι καινούς, Γότθοι
τε καὶ Φράγγοι ἐς λόγους ἀλλήλοις ξυνίασι, καὶ
ξυνέκειτο, μέχρι μὲν ἂν Γότθοι πρὸς Ῥωμαίους
τὸν πόλεμον διαφέροιν, ἔχοντας ἐκατέρους ὧνπερ

¹ πολλά KW πλείστα L

² ἀποφέρειν K ἀποφέρεσθαι L, om W.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxiv. 4-9

Italy, while the rest of it had become for the most part deserted on account of the war; yet the Goths were willing to retire in favour of the Romans from Sicily and Dalmatia, which alone had remained intact, and agreed to pay tribute and taxes for the abandoned land every year and would fight as allies against whomsoever the emperor should wish and would be in other respects subject to him. But the emperor would pay no attention to what they said and dismissed the envoys one and all, hating as he did the Gothic name and intending to drive it out absolutely from the Roman domain. Thus then did these events take place

But Theudibert, the ruler of the Franks, had not long before been taken from the world by disease, having without justification made some parts of Liguria and the Cottian Alps and the most of Venetia subject to the payment of tribute. For the Franks had treated the preoccupation of the warring nations as their own opportunity, and without danger were enriching themselves with the lands for which the combatants were fighting. And the Goths indeed had a few fortresses left in Venetia, while the Romans held the coast towns; but the Franks had brought all the others under their sway. Now while the Romans and the Goths were waging this war against each other as I have described it and were unable to take on new enemies in addition, the Goths and the Franks had negotiated with each other and come to an agreement that, as long as the Goths were waging war against the Romans, both of them should remain

³ ἀν KL ἀν ἀεί W.

⁴ βασιλεύς KW om L

⁵ τὰ τε K τὰ τε γάρ L τὰ μὲν γάρ Dindorf.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἐγένοντο ¹ ἐγκρατεῖς ἡσυχῇ μένειν, μηδέν τε σφίσι
 10 πρὸς ἀλλήλους πολέμιον εἶναι. ἤν δέ γε βασι-
 λέως ποτὲ Ἰουστινιανοῦ περιέσεσθαι Τουτίλαν
 τῷ πολέμῳ συμβαίῃ, τηνικάδε Γότθους τε καὶ
 Φράγγους διοικήσασθαι ταῦτα, ὅπη ἂν συνοίσειν
 11 ἐκατέροις δοκῇ. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν τῇδε ξυνέκειτο.
 τὴν δὲ Θεудιβέρτου ἀρχὴν διεδέξατο Θεудίβαλδος
 ὁ παῖς. βασιλεὺς τε Ἰουστινιανὸς Λεόντιον, τὸν
 Ἀθανασίου γαμβρόν, ἄνδρα ἐκ βουλῆς, πρεσ-
 βευτὴν παρ' αὐτὸν ἔπεμψεν ἕς τε ὁμαιχμίαν
 παρακαλῶν ἐπὶ Τουτίλαν τε καὶ Γότθους καὶ
 χωρίων ἐκστῆναι τῶν ἐπὶ τῆς Ἰταλίας αἰτού-
 μενος ὧνπερ Θεудίβερος οὐ δέον ἐπιβατεῦσαι
 διὰ σπουδῆς ² ἔσχε.
 12 Λεόντιος δέ, ἐπειδὴ παρὰ Θεудίβαλδον ἀφίκετο,
 ἔλεξεν ὧδε· “Ἴσως μὲν τι καὶ ἄλλοις ³ παρὰ τὰς
 ἐλπίδας τισὶ τετυχηκέναι ξυνέπεσεν, ὁποῖον δὲ
 Ῥωμαίοις ταυτὴν πρὸς ὑμῶν γεγενῆσθαι ξυνέβη,
 οὐδενί, οἶμαι, ξυνηνέχθη πώποτε ⁴ τῶν πάντων
 13 ἀνθρώπων. βασιλεὺς μὲν γὰρ Ἰουστινιανὸς οὐ
 πρότερον κατέστη ἕς πόλεμον τόνδε, οὐδὲ Γότθοις
 πολεμῆσθαι ἔνδηλος γέγονεν, ἕως αὐτῷ Φράγγοι
 φιλίας τε καὶ ξυμμαχίας διόματι χρήματα μεγάλα
 κεκομισμένοι τὴν ἀγωνίαν ξυλλήψεσθαι ὡμο-
 14 λόγησαν. οἱ δὲ οὐχ ὅπως τι δρᾶν τῶν ὁμολογη-
 μένων ἠξίωσαν, ἀλλὰ καὶ προσηδικήκασιν Ῥω-
 μαίους τοιαῦτα οἶα οὐδ' ἂν τις ὑποπτεῦσαι ῥαδίως
 15 ἔσχεν. ὁ γὰρ πατὴρ ὁ σὸς Θεудίβερος χώρας
 ἐπιβατεῦσαι ὑπέστη, οὐδὲν αὐτῷ προσήκον,

¹ ὧνπερ ἐγένοντο K ὧν περιεγένοντο L.

² ἐπιβατεῦσαι διὰ σπουδῆς KH ἐπιστρατεύσας ἐν σπονδαῖς L

³ ἄλλοις K ἄλλο LH

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxiv. 9-15

quiet holding what they had secured and there should be no hostilities between them. But if indeed Totila should ever have the fortune to overcome Justinian in the war, the Goths and the Franks should at such time settle these matters in such a way as should seem likely to benefit both of them. So much for this agreement. But Theudibert was succeeded by his son Theudibald. And the emperor sent Leontius, the son-in-law of Athanasius, a member of the senate, as envoy to him, inviting him to an offensive alliance against Totila and the Goths and demanding that he withdraw from the parts of Italy on which Theudibert had set his mind wrongfully to trespass.

Now Leontius, upon coming before Theudibald, spoke as follows. "It may perhaps be true that on other occasions events have gone contrary to the expectations of men, but such a thing as has been done to the Romans in the present case by you has, I think, never happened to anyone else in the world. For the Emperor Justinian, on his part, did not enter into this war, nor did he let it appear that he was about to fight the Goths, until the Franks, in the name of alliance and friendship, had received from him great sums of money and agreed to assist him in the struggle. They, however, have not only seen fit to fulfil none of their promises, but they have further wronged the Romans in a way which no one could have easily imagined. For your father Theudibert undertook to trespass upon territory to which he had no just claim and which the emperor

⁴ συνηνέχθη πρόποτε KH συνηνεχθήναι ποτε L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἡσπερ βασιλεὺς πόνῳ τε¹ πολλῷ καὶ κινδύνοις πολέμου, καὶ ταῦτα Φράγγων ἀπάντων² ἐκποδῶν
- 16 ἵσταμένων, κύριος γέγονε. διόπερ ταυτὺν ἐς ὑμᾶς ἤκω, οὐχ ὅπως μέμφομαι ἢ αἰτιάσομαι, ἀλλ' αἰτησόμενός τε καὶ παραινέσων ὅσα ξυνοίσειν
- 17 ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς μέλλει. λέγω δὲ ὅπως βεβαιότατα μὲν διασώζητε τὴν ὑπάρχουσαν ὑμῖν εὐπραξίαν, συγχωρήσητε δὲ Ῥωμαίους³ ἔχειν τὰ αὐτῶν ἴδια·
- 18 τοὺς γὰρ δύνάμιν περιβεβλημένους μεγάλην καὶ βραχέων τινῶν οὐχ ὅσῃα κτήσις ἀφαιρείσθαι πολλάκις τὰ παρόντα αὐτοῖς ἐκ παλαιοῦ ἀγαθὰ⁴ ἴσχυσεν, ἐπεὶ τὸ εὐδαιμον τῷ ἀδίκῳ ἐς ταῦτο ξυνιέναι οὐδαμῇ εἴωθε,⁵ καὶ μὴν καὶ ὅπως ἡμῖν τὸν πρὸς Τουτίλαν ξυνδιενέγκητε πόλεμον, τὴν
- 19 τοῦ πατρὸς ὑποτελοῦντες ὁμολογίαν. τοῦτο γὰρ ἂν πρέπον γνησίοις παισὶ πάντων μάλιστα, ἐπανορθοῦν μὲν, εἴ τι⁶ τοῖς γειναμένοις ἡμαρτήσθαι ξυμβαίνει, περιστέλλειν δὲ καὶ κρατύνεσθαι ὅσα δὴ αὐτοῖς ἄριστα εἵργασται. ἐπεὶ καὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ταῦτα διαφερόντως εὐκτὰ τοῖς συνετωτάτοις ἂν εἴη, ὅπως δὴ αὐτῶν τὰ μὲν τῶν ἐπιτηδευμάτων ἄριστα οἱ παῖδες ζηλοῖεν, εἰ δέ τι⁷ αὐτοῖς οὐκ ὀρθῶς πέπρακται, μὴ ὑπ' ἄλλου του τὸ⁸ τοιοῦτον ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν παίδων
- 21 ἄμεινον ἔσεσθαι. καίτοι ἐχρῆν ὑμᾶς ἀκλήτους Ῥωμαίοις πόλεμον τόνδε ξυνάρασθαι. πρὸς Γότθους γὰρ ἡμῖν ὁ ἀγὼν ἐστίν, οἷ τὸ ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἐχθροὶ τε καὶ ὅλως ἄπιστοι γεγόνασι Φράγγοις,

¹ πόνῳ τε L πόνῳ K, χρόνῳ τε H

² ἀπάντων H om KL

³ Ῥωμαίους KH Ῥωμαίοις L

⁴ ἐκ παλαιοῦ ἀγαθὰ K om L, παλαιοῦ ἀγαθοῦ H.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxiv. 15-21

had mastered with great labour by the perils of war, and that too while all the Franks were standing out of the way. Consequently I now come to you, not to reproach you or lay charges against you, but in order to make demands and to counsel you as to what will be of advantage to you yourselves. I say, then, that you, on the one hand, should preserve the prosperity which you now enjoy, and allow the Romans, on the other hand, to have that which is their own; for when a nation is possessed of great power, the unholy acquisition of even some trifling thing has many a time been of sufficient moment to rob it of the advantages it has enjoyed from of old, since prosperity is by no means wont to associate itself with injustice; and I demand, furthermore, that you join with us in carrying on the war against Totila, thus fulfilling your father's agreement. For the conduct which above all others would become true-born sons is this—to correct whatever mistakes have been made by their parents, but to continue and confirm whatever deeds of excellence they have done. Indeed this would be a thing most ardently prayed for by the most understanding of men, that their children might emulate the best of their activities, and that whatever has not been well done by them should be corrected by no one else than their children. In fact you ought to have taken up this war with the Romans unsummoned. For our struggle is against the Goths, who have been from the beginning bitter enemies of the Franks and altogether untrustworthy toward them, waging

⁵ ἐπεὶ—εἴωθε KL om H

⁷ εἰ δέ τι KL εἰσέτι H

⁶ μέν, εἴ τι KL μέντοι ἄ H

⁸ του τό L τό K, τουτο H

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἄσπονδά τε αὐτοῖς καὶ ἀκήρυκτα πολεμοῦντες
 22 τὸν πάντα αἰῶνα. οἱ δὲ νῦν μὲν δέει τῷ ἔξ
 ἡμῶν οὐκ ἀπαξιούσι κολακικοὶ ἐς ὑμᾶς εἶναι·
 εἰ δέ ποτε ἡμῶν ἀπαλλαγεῖεν, οὐκ ἐς μακρὰν
 23 τὴν ἐς Φράγγους ἐνδείξονται γνώμην. πονηροὶ¹
 γὰρ ἄνθρωποι τὸν αὐτῶν τρόπον ἀμείβειν μὲν
 οὐκ εὐτυχοῦντες, οὐ πράσσοντες κακῶς δύνανται,
 ἀποκρύπτειν δὲ αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον ἐν
 κακοπαθείαις εἰώθασιν, ἄλλως τε ἦν καὶ τῶν
 πέλας τινὸς δέωνται, τῆς χρείας αὐτοὺς συγκα-
 24 λύπτειν ἀναγκαζούσης τὴν μοχθηρίαν. ὦν ἐν-
 θυμηθέντες ἀνανεοῦτε μὲν τὴν ἐς βασιλέα φιλίαν,
 ἀμύνεσθε δὲ τοὺς ἄνωθεν ὑμῖν δυσμενεῖς δυνάμει
 τῇ πάσῃ.”
 25 Λεόντιος μὲν τοσαῦτα εἶπε. Θεοδίβαλδος δὲ
 ἀμείβεται ὧδε· “Συμμάχους μὲν ἐπὶ Γότθους²
 ἡμᾶς οὐκ ὀρθῶς οὐδὲ τὰ δίκαια ποιοῦντες καλεῖτε·
 φίλοι γὰρ ἡμῖν τανῦν Γότθοι τυγχάνουσιν ὄντες
 εἰ δὲ ἀβέβαιοι Φράγγοι ἐς αὐτοὺς εἶεν, οὐδὲ ὑμῖν
 26 ποτε πιστοὶ ἔσονται. γνώμη³ γὰρ ἅπαξ μοχθηρὰ
 ἐς τοὺς φίλους ὀφθεῖσα ἐκτρέπεσθαι τῆς δικαίας
 ὁδοῦ αἰὲ πέφυκεν. ὦν μέντοι ἐπεμνήσθητε χωρίων
 ἔνεκα, τοσαῦτα ἐροῦμεν, ὥς ὁ πατὴρ ὁ ἐμὸς Θεοδί-
 βερτος οὔτε βιάσασθαι πώποτε⁴ τῶν ὁμόρων τινὰ
 ἐν σπουδῇ ἔσχεν οὔτε κτήμασιν ἀλλοτρίοις ἐπι-
 27 πηδᾶν. τεκμήριον δέ· οὐ γάρ εἰμι πλούσιος.
 οὐ τοίνυν οὐδὲ τὰ χωρία ταῦτα Ῥωμαίους⁵ ἀφε-
 λόμενος, ἀλλὰ Τουτίλα ἔχοντος ἤδη αὐτὰ καὶ

¹ πονηροὶ—μοχθηρίαν om H

² Γότθους KH: γότθοις L

³ γνώμη—πέφυκεν. om H.

⁴ βιάσασθαι πώποτε LH: βιάζεσθαι ποτε K

⁵ Ῥωμαίους Haurý. Ῥωμαίοις MSS

a truceless and implacable¹ war upon them through all the ages. Of course they do not hesitate now, through fear of us, to adopt a wheedling air toward you, but if ever they should get rid of us, they will at no distant time display their real attitude toward the Franks. For evil men cannot change their character either in prosperity or in adversity, though it is true as a general thing that, during periods of ill fortune, they are wont to conceal it, particularly when they need something from their neighbours, their need compelling them to cover up their baseness of heart. Call to mind then these things and renew, on the one hand, your friendship with the emperor, and defend yourselves, on the other hand, against your ancient enemies with all your power."

So spoke Leontius. And Theudibald replied as follows. "You summon us, in the first place, to be allies against the Goths contrary to rectitude and justice, for it so happens that the Goths at the present time are our friends. And if the Franks should be unfaithful to them, neither will they ever be faithful to you. For men whose sentiments have once been seen to be base toward their friends are always of such a nature as to turn aside from the path of justice. And, in the second place, as to the lands you have mentioned, we shall say only this—that my father Theudibert never set his mind upon doing violence to any one of his neighbours or usurping the possessions of others. In proof of this witness the fact that I am not rich. Consequently he did not acquire these lands by robbing the Romans of them, but he took possession of them as a gift from Totila, who already held them and expressly

¹ *Lit* "unheralded", cf Demosthenes, *De Corona* 262, ἄσπονδος καὶ ἀκήρυκτος πόλεμος

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- διαρρήδην ἐνδιδόντος καταλαβὼν ἔσχευ, ἐφ' ᾧ
 χρῆν μάλιστα βασιλέα¹ Ἰουστινιανὸν συνήδεσθαι
 28 Φράγγοις. ὁ γὰρ τοὺς τι ἀφελομένους τῶν αὐτοῦ
 κτημάτων ἰδίῳ ὑφ' ἐτέρων τινῶν βιασθέντας ὁρῶν,
 εἰκότως ἂν χαίροι, τὴν δίκην ἐκτετικέναι ὀρθῶς
 καὶ δικαίως τοὺς αὐτὸν ἡδίκηκότας οἰόμενος, ἦν
 μὴ ἐς τοὺς βιασαμένους αὐτὸς² φθονερὸς γένηται,
 ἐπεὶ τὸ προσποιεῖσθαι τὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν δικαιο-
 29 ματα³ ἐς φθόνον ὥς τὰ πολλὰ περιστασθαι
 οἴονται⁴ ἄνθρωποι. δικασταῖς μέντοι ἐπιτρέπειν
 οἰοί τέ ἐσμεν τὴν περὶ τούτων διάγνωσιν, ὥστε
 εἴ τι Ῥωμαίους ἀφελῆσθαι τὸν πατέρα τὸν ἐμὸν
 φανερόν γένηται, τοῦτο ἡμᾶς ἀποτινύναι μελ-
 λήσει οὐδεμιᾷ ἐπάναγκες εἶη ὑπὲρ τε τούτων
 πρέσβεις ἐς Βυζάντιον σταλήσονται⁵ παρ' ἡμῶν
 30 οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον." τοσαῦτα εἰπὼν τὸν τε
 Λεόντιον ἀπεπέμψατο καὶ πρεσβευτὴν Λεύ-
 δαρδον, ἄνδρα Φράγγον, τέταρτον αὐτὸν παρὰ
 βασιλέα Ἰουστινιανὸν ἔστειλε.⁶ καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐς
 Βυζάντιον ἀφικόμενοι ἔπρασσον ὧν περ⁷ ἕνεκα
 ἦλθον.
 31 Τουτίλας δὲ νήσους τὰς Λιβύῃ προσηκούσας
 καταλαβεῖν διὰ σπουδῆς εἶχε στόλον οὖν αὐτίκα
 νηῶν ἀγείρας καὶ στράτευμα τούτῳ ἐνθέμενος
 ἀξιόχρεων ἐς τε Κουρσικὴν καὶ Σαρδὼ στέλλει.
 32 οἱ δὲ τὰ μὲν πρῶτα ἐς Κουρσικὴν ἀποπλεύσαντες,
 οὐδενὸς αὐτῆς⁸ ἀμυνομένου, τὴν νῆσον ἔσχον,
 33 μετὰ δὲ καὶ Σαρδὼ κατέλαβον. ἄμφω δὲ τὰ

¹ χρῆν μάλιστα βασιλέα: χρήματα μάλιστα H

² βιασαμένους αὐτός LH: βιασαμένους K

³ δικαίωματα KH: δικαιοῦματα οἷς L

⁴ οἴονται KH: εἰώθασιν L.

handed them over to him, and upon this the Emperor Justinian should certainly have congratulated the Franks. For he who sees men who have robbed him of some of his private possessions roughly handled by any others would naturally rejoice, believing that those who wronged him have rightly and justly paid the penalty, except in case he be privately envious of those who have done the violence—for men feel that the appropriation by others of property which is claimed by an enemy tends, as a general thing, to envy. We are, however, able to leave to arbiters the decision of these matters, with the understanding that, if it becomes evident that my father robbed the Romans of anything, it shall be obligatory for us to restore this without delay. And envoys will be sent to Byzantium by us in regard to this matter not long hence." With such words he dismissed Leontius and despatched Leudardus, a Frank, with three others to the Emperor Justinian. And upon their arrival at Byzantium they treated of the matters for which they had come.

Totila was now eager to seize the islands which belong to Libya. He accordingly gathered a fleet of ships immediately and, putting an adequate army on board, sent it to Corsica and Sardinia. This fleet first sailed off to Corsica and, finding no defenders, took the island, and afterwards took possession of Sardinia likewise. And Totila made both these

⁵ σταλήσονται KL: ἀποσταλήσονται H.

⁶ ἔστειλε KL: ἐπέμψεν H

⁷ ὡν περ H. om K, οὗ L

⁸ αὐτῆς Haury: αὐτοῖς MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

νήσω ὁ Τουτίλας ὑποτελεῖς ἐς ἀπαγωγὴν φόρου
 πεποίηται. ὅπερ Ἰωάννης μαθὼν, ὃς τοῦ ἐν
 Λιβύῃ Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ ἡρχε, στόλον τε νηῶν
 34 καὶ στρατιωτῶν πλῆθος ἐς¹ Σαρδὼν ἔπεμψεν.
 οἵπερ ἐπειδὴ Καρανάλεως πόλεως ἄγχιστα ἴκοντο,
 ἐνστρατοπεδευσάμενοι ἐς πολιορκίαν καθίστασθαι
 διενοοῦντο· τειχομαχεῖν γὰρ οὐκ ᾔφροντο οἰοί τε
 εἶναι, ἐπεὶ Γότθοι ἐνταῦθα φυλακτῆριον διαρκὲς
 35 εἶχον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ταῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι ἔγνωσαν,
 ἐπεξελθόντες ἐκ τῆς πόλεως καὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις
 ἐξαπιναιῶς ἐπιπесόντες τρεψάμενοί τε αὐτοὺς
 36 οὐδενὶ πόνῳ πολλοὺς ἔκτειναν. οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ
 φεύγοντες ἐν μὲν τῷ παραυτίκα ἐς τὰς ναῦς
 διεσώθησαν, ὀλίγῳ δὲ ὕστερον ἐνθένδε ἀπάραντες
 ἐς Καρχηδόνα παντὶ τῷ στόλῳ ἀφίκοντο. ἐν-
 37 ταῦθά τε διαχειμάσαντες ἔμενον, ἐφ' ᾧ δὴ ἅμα
 ἡρι ἀρχομένῳ παρασκευῇ πλείονι ἐπὶ τε Κουρ-
 σικὴν καὶ Σαρδὼν αὐθις στρατεύσωσι. ταύτην
 38 δὲ τὴν Σαρδὼν τανῦν Σαρδινίαν καλοῦσιν ἐν-
 ταῦθα φύεσθαι ξυμβαίνει πόαν ἥς δὴ ἀπο-
 γευομένοις ἀνθρώποις αὐτίκα σπασμὸς θανάσιμος
 ἐπιγίνεται, οἱ² δὲ τελευτῶσιν οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον,
 γέλωτα γελᾶν ἀπὸ τοῦ σπασμοῦ δοκοῦντές τινα,
 ὥνπερ ὁμωνύμως τῇ χώρᾳ Σαρδώνιον καλοῦσι.
 39 τὴν δὲ Κουρσικὴν οἱ πάλοι ἄνθρωποι Κύρνον
 ἐκάλουν. ἐνταῦθα, ὥσπερ ἄνθρωποι πίθηκες³
 γίνονται, οὕτω δὴ τινων ἵππων ἀγέλαι εἰσὶ τῶν
 προβατίων ὀλίγῳ μειζόνων. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν
 τοιαῦτά ἐστι.

¹ ἐς Hoeschel in margin ἐν MSS

² οἱ K ἀφ' οἷ L

islands subject to the payment of tribute But when this was learned by John, who was commanding the Roman army in Libya, he sent a fleet of ships and a strong force of soldiers to Sardinia. And when they came close to the city of Caianalis, they made camp with the purpose of instituting a siege; for they did not consider themselves able to storm the wall, since the Goths had a sufficient garrison there. But when the barbarians learned this, they made a sally against them from the city, and falling suddenly upon their enemy routed them with no difficulty and slew many. And the rest saved themselves for the moment by fleeing to the ships, but a little later they cast off from there and went to Carthage with the whole fleet. There they remained through the winter, in order that at the opening of spring they might again make an expedition to Corsica and Sardinia with fuller preparation Now this island of Sardinia was formerly called Saïdo In that place there grows a certain herb such that, if men taste of it, a fatal convulsion immediately comes over them, and they die not long afterward, having the appearance of laughing, as it were, as a result of the convulsion, and this laughter they call "Sardonic" from the name of the place But Corsica was called by men of ancient times Cyinus On that island are found apes just like men, and there is also a breed of horses only a little larger than sheep So much for this.

^{αι}
 3 πίθηκες K. νάννοι L in context, γρ. πιτζάδαι L in margin

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

XXV

Σκλαβηνῶν δὲ πολὺς ὄμιλος Ἰλλυριοῖς ἐπισκήψαντες πάθη ἐνταῦθα οὐκ εὐδιήγητα εἰργάσαντο.¹ βασιλεὺς δὲ Ἰουστινιανὸς στράτευμα ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἔπεμψεν, οὗ δὴ ἄλλοι τε καὶ οἱ Γερμανοῦ παῖδες ἡγούντο. οἷπερ τῷ πλήθει τῶν
 2 πολεμίων παρὰ πολὺ ἐλασσούμενοι χωρήσαι μὲν αὐτοῖς ὁμόσε² οὐδαμῇ ἴσχυσαν, ὀπισθεν δὲ αἰέ μένοντες τῶν βαρβάρων τοὺς ἀπολειπομένους
 3 ἐσίνοντο. καὶ πολλοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἔκτεινον, τινὰς δὲ καὶ ζωγρήσαντες βασιλεῖ ἔπεμψαν. οὐδὲν μέντοι ἦσσαν οἱ βάρβαροι οὗτοι τὰ δεινὰ ἔδρα-
 4 σαν. ἐν ταύτῃ τε τῇ λεηλασίᾳ χρόνου τι μέγα κατατρίψαντες μῆκος τὰς μὲν ὁδοὺς νεκρῶν ἀνέπλησαν ἀπάσας, ἐξᾶνδραποδίσαντες δὲ ἀνάριθμα πλήθη καὶ ληισάμενοι ξύμπαντα, οὐδενὸς σφίσιν ἀντιστατοῦντος, ἐπ' οἴκου ἀπεκομίσθησαν
 5 σὺν πάσῃ τῇ λείᾳ. οὐδὲ γὰρ διαπορθμεομένους ποταμὸν Ἰστρον ἴσχυσαν σφᾶς ἐνεδρεῦσαι Ῥωμαῖοι ἢ ἄλλῳ τῷ βιάσασθαι τρόπῳ, ἐπεὶ Γήπαιδες αὐτοὺς μισθαρνήσαντες ὑπεδέξαντο καὶ διεπόρθμευσαν μακρόμισθοι γεγεννημένοι.³ ἐπὶ κεφαλῇ γὰρ ἐκάστη κατὰ στατῆρα χρυσοῦν ἢ
 6 μίσθωσις ἦν. διόπερ βασιλεὺς ἐδυσφορεῖτο, οὐκ ἔχων τὸ λοιπὸν⁴ ὅπῃ ποτὲ αὐτοὺς ἀναστέλλοι διαβαίνοντας ποταμὸν Ἰστρον ἐφ' ᾧ λήσονται τὴν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχήν, ἢ ξὺν ταῖς ὠφελίαις⁵ τὴν ἀποπορείαν ποιουμένους ἐνθένδε, ἥθελέ τε τούτων δὴ ἕνεκα Γηπαίδων τῷ ἔθνει ἐς συνθήκας καταστήναί τινας.⁶

¹ εἰργάσαντο K. διειργάσαντο L ² ὁμόσε K: ἀντίον L

³ μακρόμισθοι γεγεννημένοι K: μικρομισθίους γεγεννημένους L.

XXV

A GREAT throng of Sclaveni now descended upon Illyricum and inflicted sufferings there not easily described. And the Emperor Justinian sent an army against them commanded by the sons of Germanus with others. But since this army was far outnumbered by the enemy, it was quite unable to engage with them, but remained always in the rear and cut down the stragglers left by the barbarians. And they slew many of them but took some few prisoners, whom they sent to the emperor. But nevertheless these barbarians continued their work of devastation. And spending as they did a long time in this plundering expedition, they filled all the roads with corpses, and enslaved countless multitudes and pillaged everything without meeting any opposition, then finally they departed on the homeward journey with all their plunder. Nor could the Romans ambuscade them while crossing the Ister River or harm them in any other way, since the Gepaedes, having engaged their services, took them under their protection and ferried them across, receiving large payment for their labour. For the payment was at the rate of one gold stater per head. At this the emperor was grievously vexed, seeing that for the future he had no possible means of checking the barbarians when crossing the Ister River in order to plunder the Roman domain, or when taking their departure from such expeditions with the booty they gained, and he wished for these reasons to enter into some sort of treaty with the nation of the Gepaedes.

⁴ τὸ λοιπὸν KL: om W.

⁵ ἥ ἐν ταῖς ὠφελίαις W. αἰφνιδίαν L

⁶ ἥ—τινας. om K

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 7 Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ Γήπαιδές τε καὶ Λαγγοβάρδαι αὖθις πολεμῶντες ἐπ' ἀλλήλους ἦσαν. Γήπαιδές τε τὴν Ῥωμαίων δειμαίνοντες δύναμιν (ἀνήκοι γὰρ οὐδαμῇ ἦσαν ὡς Ἰουστινιανὸς βασιλεὺς ὁμαιχμίαν διωμότως πρὸς Λαγγοβάρδας πεποιήται) φίλοι καὶ ξύμμαχοι Ῥωμαίοις
- 8 γενέσθαι ἐν σπουδῇ ἔσχον. πρέσβεις οὖν ἐς Βυζάντιον εὐθὺς πέμπουσι, βασιλέα καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐς τὴν ὁμαιχμίαν παρακαλοῦντες. καὶ ὃς αὐτοῖς μελλήσῃ οὐδεμιᾷ ἐπὶ τῇ ξυμμαχίᾳ τὰ πιστὰ
- 9 ἔδωκε. δεηθέντων δὲ τῶν πρέσβεων τῶνδε καὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς ἄνδρες δυοκαίδεκα¹ ὄρκια δόντες, ταύτας αὐτοῖς τὰς συνθήκας
- 10 ἐπέρρωσαν. οὐ πολλῶ δὲ ὕστερον Λαγγοβάρδαις κατὰ τὸ ξυμμαχικὸν δεομένοις στρατιᾷ ἐς ξυμμαχίαν ἐπὶ Γήπαιδας Ἰουστινιανὸς βασιλεὺς ἐπεμφεν, ἐπενεγκὼν Γήπαισι Σκλαβηνῶν τινὰς ἐπὶ πονηρῶ τῶν Ῥωμαίων μετὰ τὰς ξυνθήκας διαβιβάσαι ποταμὸν Ἰστρον.
- 11 Ἠγοῦντο² δὲ τῆς στρατιᾶς ταύτης Ἰουστίνος τε καὶ Ἰουστινιανὸς οἱ Γερμανοῦ παῖδες Ἀράτιός τε καὶ Σουαρτούας, ὃς πρὸς Ἰουστινιανὸν μὲν ἄρχων³ Ἑρούλοις κατέστη πρότερον, ἐπαναστάντων δὲ οἱ τῶν ἀπὸ Θούλης τῆς νήσου ἡκόντων, ὥσπερ μοι ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις ἐρρήθη, ἐς βασιλέα τε ἀφίκετο φεύγων καὶ Ῥωμαίοις στρατηγὸς τῶν ἐν Βυζαντίῳ καταλόγων εὐθὺς γέγονε, καὶ Ἀμαλαφρίδας, Γότθος ἀνὴρ, Ἀμαλαφρίδης μὲν θυγατριδοῦς, τῆς Θεου-

¹ δυοκαίδεκα KL· δώδεκα W.

² ἡγοῦντο—γεγράφεται (§ 13) om. W.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII xxv. 7-11

Meanwhile the Gepaedes and the Lombards were once more moving against each other determined to make war. But the Gepaedes, fearing the power of the Romans (for they had by no means failed to hear that the Emperor Justinian had made a sworn alliance for offence and defence with the Lombards), were eager to become friends and allies of the Romans. They accordingly straightway sent envoys to Byzantium inviting the emperor to accept an offensive and defensive alliance with them also. So he without any hesitation gave them the pledges of alliance. And at the request of the same envoys twelve members of the senate also furnished them with a sworn statement confirming this treaty. But not long after this, when the Lombards according to the terms of their alliance requested an army to fight with them against the Gepaedes, the Emperor Justinian sent it, laying the charge against the Gepaedes that after the treaty they had transported certain of the Slavens across the Ister River to the detriment of the Romans.

Now the leaders of this army were, first, Justinus and Justinian, the sons of Germanus, second, Ariatus; third, Suartuas, who had previously been appointed by Justinian ruler over the Euli (but when those who had come from the island of Thule rose against him, as told by me in the previous narrative,¹ he had returned in flight to the emperor, and immediately became general of the Roman forces in Byzantium); and, lastly, Amalafridas, a Goth, grandson of Amalafrida the sister of Theoderic

¹ Book VI xv 32-36.

² ἀρχων K ἀρχεὶν L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- δερίχου τοῦ Γότθων βασιλέως ἀδελφῆς, Ἑρμε-
 νεφρίδου δὲ υἱὸς τοῦ Θορίγγων ἡγησαμένου.
 12 ὃνπερ Βελισάριος μὲν σὺν Οὐιττίγιδι ἐς Βυζάν-
 τιον ἤγαγε, βασιλεὺς δὲ Ῥωμαίων ἄρχοντα
 κατεστήσατο, καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ ἀδελφὴν Αὐδουίν
 13 τῷ Λαγγοβαρδῶν ἄρχοντι κατηγγύησε. τοῦ δὲ
 στρατοῦ τούτου οὐδεὶς παρὰ Λαγγοβάρδας ἀφί-
 κετο, ὅτι μὴ οὗτος Ἀμαλαφρίδας σὺν τοῖς
 ἐπομένοις. οἱ γὰρ ἄλλοι ἐν Ἰλλυριοῖς ἀμφὶ
 πόλιν Οὐλπιαναν βασιλέως ἐπαγγεῖλαντος δια-
 τριβὴν ἔσχον, στάσεως ἐνταῦθα πρὸς τῶν οἰκη-
 τῶν γεγεννημένης, ὥνπερ ἕνεκα σφίσιν αὐτοῖς
 οἱ Χριστιανοὶ διαμάχονται, ἥπερ μοι ἐν λόγοις
 τοῖς ὑπὲρ τούτων γεγράφεται.
 14 Οἱ μὲν οὖν Λαγγοβάρδαι πανδημεὶ σὺν τῷ¹
 Ἀμαλαφρίδᾳ ἐς τὰ Γηπαίδων ἤθη ἀφίκοντο,
 ὑπαντιασάντων δὲ τῶν Γηπαίδων σφίσιν καὶ
 μάχης καρτερᾶς γενομένης ἡσσῶνται Γήπαιδες,
 καὶ αὐτῶν παμπληθεῖς² φασὶν ἐν τῷ πόνῳ
 15 τούτῳ ἀποθανεῖν. Αὐδουίν τε, ὁ τῶν Λαγγο-
 βαρδῶν βασιλεὺς, τῶν οἱ ἐπομένων τινὰς ἐς
 Βυζάντιον πέμψας εὐαγγέλια μὲν Ἰουστινιανῷ
 βασιλεῖ ἐδήλου, νενικημένων τῶν πολεμίων,
 ἐμέμφετο³ δὲ οὐ παραγενέσθαι οἱ κατὰ τὸ ξυμ-
 μαχικὸν τὸν τοῦ βασιλέως στρατόν, καίπερ
 Λαγγοβαρδῶν τοσούτων τὸ πλήθος ἔναγχος
 ἐσταλμένων ἐφ' ᾧ Нарсѣ ξυστρατεύσωσιν ἐπὶ
 Τουτίλαν τε καὶ Γότθους. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν
 ἐφέρετο τῇδε.

¹ σὺν τῷ K: ξὺν τῷ L: ἄμα W

² παμπληθεῖς—ἀποθανεῖν KL: πολλοὶ ἀπέθανον W.

king of the Goths, and son of Hermenefidus the former ruler of the Thuringians. This man had been brought by Belisarius to Byzantium with Vitigis, and the emperor had appointed him a Roman commander and betrothed his sister to Auduin the ruler of the Lombards. But not a man of that army reached the Lombards except this Amalafridas with his command. For the others, by direction of the emperor, stopped at the city of Ulpiana¹ in Illyricum, since a civil war had arisen among the inhabitants of that place concerning those matters over which the Christians fight among themselves, as will be told by me in the treatise on this subject.²

So the Lombards in full force and accompanied by Amalafridas came into the lands of the Gepaedes, and when the Gepaedes encountered them a fierce battle ensued in which the Gepaedes were defeated, and they say that a vast number of them perished in this engagement. Whereupon Auduin, the king of the Lombards, sent some of his followers to Byzantium, first to announce the good news to the Emperor Justinian, since the enemy had been vanquished, and, secondly, to reproach him because the emperor's army had not been present in accordance with the terms of their alliance, although such a host of Lombards had recently been sent to march with Narses against Totila and the Goths. Such was the course of these events.

¹ Modern Lipjan

² This promise seems not to have been fulfilled by Procopius

³ ἐμέμφετο—Γότθους LW. om K

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 16 Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ χρόνῳ σεισμοὶ κατὰ τὴν
Ἑλλάδα ἐπιπεσόντες ἐξαίσιον τὴν τε Βοιωτίαν
καὶ Ἀχαΐαν καὶ τὰ περὶ κόλπον τὸν Κρισαίου
17 κατέσεισαν. καὶ χωρία μὲν ἀνάριθμα, πόλεις
δὲ ὀκτὼ ἐς ἑδαφος καθεῖλον, ἐν ταῖς Χαιρώνειά
τε καὶ Κορώνεια ἦν καὶ Πάτραι καὶ Νάυπακτος
ὅλη, ἔνθα δὴ καὶ φόνος γέγονεν ἀνθρώπων
18 πολὺς. καὶ χάος δὲ τῆς γῆς πολλαχῇ ἀποσχισ-
θείσης γεγένηται. τὰ δὲ διαιρεθέντα ἑνια¹
μὲν αὖθις ἐς ταὐτὸ ξυνιόντα τὸ πρότερον τῇ
γῇ σχῆμά τε καὶ εἶδος ἀπέδωκεν, ἔστι δὲ οὐ
καὶ διεστηκότα μεμένηκεν· ὥστε οὐδὲ ἀλλήλοις
ἐπιμίγνυσθαι οἱ τῇδε ἀνθρωποὶ εἰσι δυνατοὶ ὅτι
19 μὴ περιόδοις πολλαῖς χρώμενοι. ἐν δέ γε τῷ
πορθμῷ ὄνπερ μεταξὺ Θεσσαλίας τε καὶ Βοιω-
τίας ξυμβαίνει εἶναι, γέγονέ τις ἐκ τοῦ αἰφ-
νιδίου τῆς θαλάσσης ἐπιρροὴ ἀμφὶ τε πόλιν
τὴν Ἐχινναίων καλουμένην καὶ τὴν ἐν Βοιωτοῖς
20 Σκάρφειαν. πόρρω τε τῆς ἡπείρου ἀναβᾶσα
καὶ κατακλύσασα τὰ ἐκείνη χωρία ἐς ἑδαφος
καθεῖλεν εὐθύς χρόνος τε τῇ θαλάσσῃ² πολὺς
ἐπιχωριαζούσῃ τῇ ἡπείρῳ ἐτρίβῃ, ὥστε τοῖς
ἀνθρώποις πεζῇ ἰοῦσι βατὰς ἐπὶ πλείστου
γενέσθαι τὰς νήσους αἵπερ ἔντοσθεν τοῦ πορθ-
μοῦ τούτου τυγχάνουσιν οὔσαι, τοῦ τῆς θα-
λάσσης δηλονότι ῥοθίου ἐκλιπόντος μὲν τὴν
αὐτοῦ χώραν, ἐπιπολάζοντος δὲ παρὰ δόξαν τὴν
21 γῆν³ ἄχρι ἐς τὰ ὄρη ἃ ταύτῃ ἀνέχει ἡνίκα
δὲ τῇ θαλάσσῃ ἐς τὰ οἰκεία ἐπανιέναι ξυνέπεσεν,
ἰχθύες ἐν τῇ γῇ ἀπελείποντο, ὥνπερ ἡ ὄψις
ἀήθης παντάπασιν οὔσα τοῖς τῇδε ἀνθρώποις
22 τερατώδης τις ἔδοξεν εἶναι οὓς δὴ ἐδωδίμους

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII xxv. 16-22

It was at this time that extraordinary earthquakes occurred throughout Greece, both Boeotia and Achaëa and the country on the Crisaean Gulf¹ being badly shaken. And countless towns and eight cities were levelled to the ground, among which were Chaeronea and Coronea and Patrae and all of Naupactus,² where there was also great loss of life. And the earth was rent asunder in many places and formed chasms. Now some of these openings came together again so that the earth presented the same form and appearance as before, but in other places they remained open, with the consequence that the people in such places are not able to intermingle with each other except by making use of many detours. But in the gulf between Thessaly and Boeotia³ there was a sudden influx of the sea at the city called Echinus and at Scarphea in Boeotia. And advancing far over the land it deluged the towns there and levelled them immediately. And for a long time the sea thus visited the mainland, so that for a very considerable period it was possible for men on foot to walk to the islands which are inside this gulf, since the water of the sea, obviously, had abandoned its proper place, and, strange to say, spread over the land as far as the mountains which rise there. But when the sea returned to its proper place, fish were left on the ground, and since their appearance was altogether unfamiliar to the people of the country, they seemed a kind of prodigy. And thinking them edible they picked them up to

¹ A northern arm of the Gulf of Corinth

² Modern Lepanto,

³ The Malian Gulf

¹ *ἐνία* Haury : *ἐνία σχῆμα* MSS : *ἐνία σχίσματα* editors

² *τῇ θαλάσση* K : om L.

³ *τῇ γῇ* K : *τῇ γῇ* L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- εἶναι οἰόμενοι ἀνείλονται μὲν ὥς ἐψήσουντες, θέρμης δὲ αὐτῶν τῆς ἐκ τοῦ πυρὸς ἀψαμένης ἐς ἰχῳράς τε καὶ σηπεδόνας οὐ φορητὰς τὸ
- 23 σῶμα ὅλον ἀποκεκρίσθαι ξυνέπεσεν. ἀμφὶ δὲ τὰ ἐκείνη χωρία, οὐ δὴ τὸ Σχίσμα¹ ὠνόμασται, καὶ σεισμὸς ὑπερμεγέθης γενόμενος² πλείω φόνον ἀνθρώπων ἢ ἐν πάσῃ τῇ ἄλλῃ Ἑλλάδι εἰργάσατο, μάλιστα ἐπεὶ³ τινα ἐορτὴν πανηγυρίζοντες ἔτυχον⁴ ἐκ πάσης τε τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐνταῦθα τότε τούτου δὴ ἔνεκα ξυνειλεγμένοι πολλοί⁵
- 24 Ἐν δὲ Ἰταλία τάδε ξυνέπεσε Κροτωνιάται καὶ στρατιῶται οἱ τὸ φυλακτήριον ταύτῃ ἔχοντες, ὧν Παλλάδιος ἦρχε, πικρότατα πρὸς Γότθων πολιορκούμενοι καὶ πιεζόμενοι τῶν ἀναγκαίων τῇ ἀπορίᾳ, πολλάκις μὲν λαθόντες τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπεμψαν ἐν Σικελίᾳ, μαρτυρόμενοι τοὺς ἐνταῦθα τοῦ Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ ἄρχοντας καὶ διαφερόντως τὸν Ἀρταβάνην, ὡς εἰ μὴ βοηθοῖεν
- 25 ὅτι τάχιστα σφίσιν, οὐτι ἐθέλουσίως σφᾶς τε αὐτοὺς καὶ τὴν πόλιν οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐνδώσουσιν. οὐδεὶς δὲ ἐνθένθε αὐτοῖς ἐπικουρήσων ἦλθε καὶ ὁ χειμὼν ἔληγε, καὶ τὸ ἐπτακαιδέκατον ἔτος ἐτελεύτα τῷ πολέμῳ τῷδε ὃν Προκόπιος ξυνέγραψε

σχίσμα L: σχῆμα K

² γενόμενος K ἐπιπεσών L,

boil them, but when the heat of the fire touched them the whole body was reduced to a liquid putrefaction of an unbearable sort. But in that locality where the so-called Cleft is located there was a tremendous earthquake which caused more loss of life than in all the rest of Greece, particularly on account of a certain festival which they happened to be celebrating there and for which many had gathered in that place from all Greece.

In Italy the following took place. The people of Croton and the soldiers who constituted the garrison there, commanded by Palladius, were being very closely besieged by the Goths, and hard pressed as they were by scarcity of provisions, they had many times sent to Sicily without being detected by the enemy, calling to witness the commanders of the Roman army there, especially Artabanes, and saying that, if they did not relieve them at the earliest possible moment, they would, little as they wished it, surrender themselves and the city to the enemy not long thereafter. But no one came from there to assist them. And the winter drew to a close, and the seventeenth year ended in this war, the history of which Procopius has written

³ ἐπεὶ K δὲ ἐπὶ L.
³ πολλοί L om K

ἔτυχον K ἔτυχον γάρ L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

XXVI

- Βασιλεὺς δὲ μαθὼν τὰ ἐν Κρότῳ πρασσόμενα πέμψας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἐκέλευε τοὺς ἐν Θερμοπύλαις φρουροὺς εἰς τε τὴν Ἰταλίαν πλεῖν κατὰ τάχος καὶ τοῖς ἐν Κρότῳ πολιορκουμένοις
- 2 βοηθεῖν δυνάμει τῇ πάσῃ οἱ δὲ κατὰ ταῦτα ἐποιοῦν ἄραντές τε σπουδῇ πολλῇ καὶ πνεύματος ἐπιφόρου ἐπιτυχόντες ἀπροσδόκητοι τῷ Κροτωνιατῶν λιμένι προσέσχον οἳ τε βάρβαροι ἑξαπιναίως τὸν στόλον ἰδόντες αὐτίκα δὴ μάλα εἰς δέος μέγα ἐμπεπτωκότες θορύβῳ πολλῷ τὴν
- 3 πολιορκίαν διέλυσαν. καὶ αὐτῶν οἱ μὲν τινες ναυσὶν εἰς τὸν Ταραντηνῶν λιμένα διέφυγον, οἱ δὲ πεζῇ ἰόντες¹ εἰς ὄρος τὸ Σκύλαιον ἀνεχώρησαν. ἃ δὲ ξυνεγενέοντα πολλῷ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἐδούλωσε
- 4 Γότθων τὸ φρόνημα. καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ Ῥάγναρις τε, Γότθος ἀνὴρ δόκιμος μάλιστα, ὃς τοῦ ἐν Ταραντηνοῖς φυλακτηρίου ἦρχε, καὶ Μόρας, ὅσπερ ἐφειστήκει τοῖς ἐν Ἀχεροντίᾳ φρουροῖς, Πακουρίῳ τῷ Περανίου τῶν ἐν Δρυοῦντι Ῥωμαίων ἀρχοντι, γνώμῃ τῶν σφίσιν ἐπομένων, εἰς λόγους ἦλθον, ἐφ' ᾧ δὲ ἀμφὶ τῇ σωτηρίᾳ τὰ πιστὰ πρὸς Ἰουστινιανοῦ βασιλέως λαβόντες Ῥωμαίοις σφᾶς αὐτοὺς ἐγχειρίσουσι ξὺν τοῖς ἐπομένοις καὶ τὰ ὀχυρώματα ὧν περ ἐπὶ τῇ φυλακῇ καταστάντες ἐτύγχανον. ἐπὶ ταύτῃ μὲν οὖν τῇ ὁμολογίᾳ Πακούριος ἐπὶ Βυζαντίου κομίζεται.
- 5 Ναρσῆς δὲ ἐκ Σαλῶνων ἄρας ἐπὶ Τουτίλαν τε καὶ Γότθους ἦει παντὶ τῷ Ῥωμαίων στρατῷ, μεγάλῳ ὑπερφυῶς ὄντι χρήματα γὰρ κεκομισ-

XXVI

BUT the emperor, learning of the situation at Croton, sent to Greece and ordered the garrison of Thermopylae to sail with all speed to Italy and bring all the assistance in their power to the besieged in Croton. And they acted accordingly, setting sail with great haste, and chancing to find a favouring wind, they put in unexpectedly at the harbour of Croton. And the barbarians, upon seeing the fleet all of a sudden, were plunged immediately into great fear and in wild confusion broke up the siege. Now some of them made their escape by ship to the harbour of Tarentum, while others, going by land, withdrew to Mt Scylaeum. And this event humbled the spirit of the Goths still more. In consequence of this Ragnais, a Goth of very great note, who commanded the garrison at Tarentum, and Moras, who commanded the guards in Acherontia, opened negotiations, by the wish of their soldiers, with Pacurius son of Peiranius, commander of the Romans in Dryus, and agreed that, on condition they should receive pledges for their safety from the Emperor Justinian, they would surrender themselves with their commands to the Romans together with the strongholds they had been set to guard. In order, then, to confirm this agreement Pacurius journeyed to Byzantium.

Naises now set out from Salones and moved against Totila and the Goths with the whole Roman army, which was an extraordinarily large one, for

¹ δὲ πεζῇ ἰόντες K: δ' ἐπεζιόντες L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- μένος ἐπιεικῶς μεγάλα πρὸς βασιλέως ἐτύγ-
 6 χανεν. ἀφ' ὧν δὴ ἔμελλε στρατιὰν τε ἀξιολο-
 γωτάτην ἀγεῖραι καὶ ταῖς ἄλλαις ἐπαρκέσειν τοῦ
 πολέμου ἀνάγκαις, τοῖς δὲ δὴ ἐπὶ τῆς Ἰταλίας
 στρατιώταις ἐκλῦσαι τὰ πρόσθεν ὀφλήματα
 πάντα, ἐφ' οἷσπερ αὐτοῖς ὑπερήμερος χρόνου¹
 πολλοῦ βασιλεὺς² ἐγεγόνει, οὐ κομιζομένοις ἐκ
 τοῦ δημοσίου, ἥπερ εἴθισται, τὰς σφίσι τεταγ-
 μένας συντάξεις· ἔτι μέντοι καὶ αὐτῶν βιά-
 σασθαι τῶν παρὰ Τουτίλαν ἀπηντομοληκότων
 τὰς γνώμας, ὥστε δὴ αὐτοὺς τοῖς χρήμασι
 τούτοις χειροῇθεις γεγεννημένους τὴν ἐπὶ τῇ πο-
 λιτείᾳ μεταγνῶναι προαίρεσιν.
- 7 Λίαν γὰρ τὰ πρότερα πόλεμον τόνδε ἀπημε-
 λημένως³ διαφέρων Ἰουστινιανὸς βασιλεὺς ἀξιο-
 λογωτάτην αὐτοῦ πεποίηται τὴν παρασκευὴν
- 8 ἐν ὑστάτῳ. ἐπειδὴ γὰρ αὐτόν οἱ ὁ Ναρσῆς
 ἐγκείμενον εἶδεν,⁴ ἐφ' ᾧ ἐς Ἰταλίαν στρατεύοι,
 φιλοτιμίαν ἐνδέδεικται στρατηγῷ πρέπουσαν,
 οὐκ ἄλλως βασιλεῖ ἐπαγγέλλοντι⁵ ὑπηρετήσιν
 ὁμολογήσας, ἣν μὴ τὰς δυνάμεις ἀξιόμαχους
- 9 ἐπάγεσθαι μέλλῃ. χρήματά τε οὖν καὶ σώματα
 καὶ ὄπλα τῷ τρόπῳ τούτῳ ἐπαξίως πρὸς τοῦ
 βασιλέως κεκόμισται τῆς Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς, καὶ
 προθυμίαν αὐτὸς ἀοκνοτάτην ἐπιδειξάμενος ἀξιο-
- 10 χρεων στρατιὰν ἐξήγειρεν ἕκ τε γὰρ Βυζαντίου
 ἐπηγάγετο Ῥωμαίων στρατιωτῶν μέγα τι χρῆμα
 καὶ τῶν ἐπὶ Θράκης χωρίων ἕκ τε Ἰλλυριῶν
- 11 πολλοὺς ἤθροισε. καὶ Ἰωάννης δὲ ξύν τε τῷ
 οἰκείῳ στρατεύματι καὶ τῷ πρὸς Γερμανοῦ τοῦ

¹ χρόνου L: χρόνος K

² βασιλεὺς K: βασιλεῖ L.

he had received from the emperor an exceedingly large sum of money, with which he was, first, to gather a very formidable army and meet the other requirements of the war, and, after that, to pay the soldiers in Italy all the money which was due to them from the past, for the emperor had been delinquent in this matter for a long time, since the soldiers were not receiving from the public treasury, as was usual, the pay assigned to them, furthermore, he was to bring pressure to bear also upon those soldiers who had deserted to Totila, so that they would be rendered tractable by this money and reverse their choice of allegiance

Indeed, though the Emperor Justinian had previously conducted this war very negligently, he made the most notable preparation for it at the last. For when Naisos saw that he urgently desired him to lead an expedition against Italy, he displayed an ambition becoming to a general, declaring that on no other condition would he obey the emperor's command than that he should take with him forces sufficient to the purpose. So by taking this position he obtained from the emperor money and men and arms in quantities worthy of the Roman empire, and he himself displayed a most tireless enthusiasm and so collected an adequate army. For he not only took with him a great number of Roman soldiers from Byzantium, but he also collected many from the lands of Thrace and Illyricum. And John, too, with his own army and that left by his father-

² ἀπημελημένως L: om. K

⁴ αὐτόν—εἶδεν L: αὐτὸν οἶον ἐγκείμενον νασῆς εἶδε K

⁵ ἐπαγγέλλονται Chist: ἀπαγγέλλονται MSS.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 12 κηδεστοῦ ἀπολελειμμένῳ ξὺν αὐτῷ ᾗρει. καὶ
 Αὐδουίν, ὁ Λαγγοβαρδῶν ἡγούμενος, χρήμασι
 πολλοῖς ἀναπεισθεὶς Ἰουστινιανῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ
 τῇ τῆς ὁμαιχμίας ξυνθήκῃ, πεντακοσίους τε
 καὶ δισχιλίους τῶν οἱ ἐπομένων ἀπολεξάμενος
 ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς τὰ πολέμια ἐς ξυμμαχίαν αὐτῷ
 ἐπεμψεν, οἷς δὴ καὶ θεραπεία εἶπετο¹ μαχίμων
- 13 ἀνδρῶν πλέον ἢ τρισχιλίων. εἶποντο δὲ αὐτῷ
 καὶ τοῦ Ἑρούλων ἔθνους πλέον ἢ τρισχιλίοι,
 ἵππεῖς ἅπαντες, ὧν ἄλλοι τε καὶ Φιλημούθ
 ἦρχον, καὶ Οὐννοὶ τε παμπληθεῖς καὶ Δαγισ-
 θαῖος ξὺν τοῖς ἐπομένοις ἐκ τοῦ δεσποτηρίου
 διὰ τοῦτο ἀπαλλαγείς, καὶ Καβάδης, Πέρσας
 ἔχων αὐτομόλους πολλούς, ὁ Ζάμου μὲν υἱός,
 Καβάδου δὲ τοῦ Περσῶν βασιλέως υἱωνός,
 οὐπερ ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις ἐμνήσθην ἅτε
 τοῦ χαναράγγου σπουδῇ διαφυγόντος τε Χοσρόην
 τὸν θεῖον καὶ πολλῷ πρότερον ἀφικομένου ἐς
 τὰ Ῥωμαίων ἦθῃ· καὶ Ἀσβαδος, νεανίας τις,
 Γήπαις γένος, διαφερόντως δραστήριος, ὁμογενεῖς
 τετρακοσίους ξὺν αὐτῷ ἔχων, ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς
 τὰ πολέμια· καὶ Ἀρούθ, Ἑρουλος μὲν τὸ γένος,
 ἐκ παιδὸς δὲ Ῥωμαίων τὴν δίαιταν στέρξας καὶ
 τὴν Μαυρικίου τοῦ Μούνδου γυναῖκα γαμετὴν
 ποιησάμενος,² αὐτός τε μαχιμώτατος ὧν καὶ
 πολλοὺς τοῦ Ἑρούλων ἔθνους ἐπομένους ἔχων
 ἐν πολέμου κινδύνοις ὡς μάλιστα δοκιμωτάτους·
 Ἰωάννης τε, ὁ Φαγᾶς τὴν ἐπὶ κλησιν, οὐπερ ἐν
 τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις ἐμνήσθην, Ῥωμαίων ἐπα-
 γαγόμενος ὁμιλον ἀνδρῶν μαχίμων.

¹ εἶπετο: εἶπε K, om L. ² καί—ποιησάμενος L: om. K.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII xxvi. 11-13

in-law Germanus, accompanied him. Moreover, Auduin, ruler of the Lombards, having been won over by the Emperor Justinian by the use of much money and in accordance with the treaty of alliance, selected twenty-five hundred of his followers who were capable warriors and sent them to fight with the Romans, and these were also attended by more than three thousand fighting men as servants. And he also had with him more than three thousand of the Erulian nation, all horsemen, commanded by Philemuth and others, besides great numbers of Huns. Dagisthaeus too was there with his followers, having been released from prison for this purpose, also Cabades, with many Persian deserters (this man was son of Zames and grandson of Cabades the Persian king, and has been mentioned in the previous narrative¹ as having escaped from his uncle Chosroes by the efforts of the "chanaianges"² and having come long before to the land of the Romans). There was also Asbadus, a young man of the race of the Gepaedes and an especially active man, having with him four hundred men of his race who were capable warriors. Besides these there was Aruth of the nation of the Eruli, who from boyhood had admired Roman ways and had made the daughter of Mauricius son of Mundus his married wife, being himself a most valiant fighter, and bringing with him a large number of Eruli who were especially distinguished in the perils of war. Finally there was John surnamed the Glutton, whom I have mentioned in the preceding narrative,³ bringing a large force of able Roman soldiers.

¹ Book I. xxiii. 7 ff.

² A Persian title meaning "general", cf. Book I. v. 4.

³ Book II. xix. 15, etc.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 14 Ἦν οὖν μεγαλοδωρότατος ὁ Ναρσῆς καὶ πρὸς
τὸ εὖ ποιεῖν τοὺς δεομένους ὁξὺς ἐσάγαν, δύνάμιν
τε πολλὴν περιβεβλημένος ἐκ βασιλέως ἀδεέ-
15 τερον ἐς τὰ σπουδαζόμενα ἐχρήτο τῇ γνώμῃ.
καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ πολλοὶ ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν χρόνοις
ἄρχοντές τε καὶ στρατιῶται¹ εὐεργέτου αὐτοῦ
16 ἔτυχον. ἐπεὶ οὖν ἀποδέδεικτο στρατηγὸς ἐπὶ
Τουτίλαν τε καὶ Γότθους, ὡς ἀσμενέστατα ἕκαστοι
στρατεῦεσθαι ὑπ' αὐτῷ ἤθελον, οἱ μὲν ἐκτίνειν οἱ
ἐθέλοντες παλαιὰς χάριτας, οἱ δὲ καραδοκῶντες,
ὡς τὸ εἶκός, μεγάλων ἀγαθῶν παρ' αὐτοῦ τεύξεσ-
17 θαι. μάλιστα δὲ αὐτῷ Ἑρουλοὶ τε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι
βάρβαροι εὐνοικῶς εἶχον, διαφερόντως πρὸς τοῦ
ἀνθρώπου εὖ πεπονθότες.
- 18 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ Βενετίων ὡς ἀγχοτάτω ἐγένοντο,
παρὰ τῶν Φράγγων τοὺς ἡγεμόνας, οἱ τῶν ἐκείνῃ
φυλακτηρίων ἦρχον, ἄγγελον στείλας ἡτείτο τὴν
19 δίοδον σφίσιν ἅτε φίλοις οὖσι παρέχεσθαι. οἱ
δὲ τοῦτο Ναρσῇ ἐπιτρέψειν οὐδεμιᾷ μηχανῇ
ἔφασαν, ἐς μὲν τὸ ἐμφανὲς τὴν αἰτίαν² οὐκ
ἐξενεγκόντες, ἀλλ' ὡς ἐνι μάλιστα κατακρυψά-
μενοι,³ τοῦ Φράγγων ἔνεκα ξυμφόρου ἢ τῆς ἐς
τοὺς Γότθους εὐνοίας τὴν κωλύμην ποιεῖσθαι,
σκήψιν δέ τινα οὐ λίαν εὐπρόσωπον δόξασαν
εἶναι προβεβλημένοι, ὅτι δὴ Λαγγοβάρδας τοὺς
σφίσι πολεμιωτάτους οὗτος ἐπαγόμενος ἦκει.
20 ἐπὶ τούτοις διαπορουμένῳ τὴν ἀρχὴν τῷ Ναρσῇ
καὶ Ἰταλῶν τῶν οἱ παρόντων ἀμφὶ τῷ πρακτέῳ
πυνθανομένῳ ἐσήγγελόν⁴ τινες ὡς εἰ καὶ⁵ Φράγγ-
γοι παρήσουσι σφᾶς τήνδε τὴν δίοδον ποιεῖσθαι,

¹ στρατιῶται L. στρατηγοὶ K.

² τὴν αἰτίαν L: om. K.

³ κατακρυψάμενοι K: om. L.

Naises, for his part, was a man of princely generosity and extraordinarily eager to help those who needed it, and being clothed with great power by the emperor he exercised his judgment the more freely regarding those matters in which he was interested. Consequently many commanders and soldiers as well had in former times experienced his generosity. Naturally, then, when he was appointed General against Totila and the Goths, each and every one desired most eagerly to serve under him, some wishing to repay him for old favours, and others probably expecting, as was natural, to receive great gifts from his hand. But the Epirotes and the other barbarians were particularly well disposed towards him, having been especially well treated by him.

When they had reached a point very close to Venetia, he sent a messenger to the rulers of the Franks who commanded the fortresses there, demanding that they allow his army free passage, as being friends. But they said that they would by no means concede this to Narses, not openly revealing the real reason, but with all possible care concealing the fact that it was in the interest of the Franks or because of their good-will toward the Goths that they were barring his passage, and putting forward a kind of pretext which did not appear very plausible, by saying that he came bringing with him Lombards who were their bitterest enemies. Narses was at first puzzled by this and enquired of the Italians who were with him what should be done, but some men brought the news that, even if the Franks permitted them to pass through this country, they would still

⁴ ἐσθήγγελλον L ἐπήγγελλον V

⁵ εἰ καὶ L: εἰκη V.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἀλλ' ἐς Ῥάβενναν ἐνθένδε κομίζεσθαι οὐδαμῇ
 ἔξουσιν, οὐδὲ τὴν πορείαν ταύτην ποιεῖσθαι ὅτι
 21 μὴ ἄχρι ἐς πόλιν Βερώνην. Τουτίλαν γὰρ ἀπο-
 λεξάμενον εἴ τι δόκιμον ἦν ἐν τῷ Γότθων στρατῷ,
 στρατηγόν τε αὐτοῖς καταστησάμενον Τείαν τὸν
 Γότθον, ἄνδρα διαφερόντως ἀγαθὸν τὰ πολέμια,
 στείλαι ἐς πόλιν Βερώνην Γότθων κατήκοον
 οὖσαν, ἐφ' ᾧ τῷ Ῥωμαίων στρατῷ διακωλύει τὴν
 πάροδον, ὅσα γε δυνατόα. καὶ ἦν δὲ οὕτως.
- 22 Ἐπειδὴ τε ὁ Τείας ἐγένετο ἐν πόλει Βερώνῃ, τὴν
 ἐκείνῃ διόδον τοῖς πολεμίοις ἀπέφραξε πᾶσαν,
 ἀδιέξοδά τε καὶ ὅλως ἄπορα πανταχόσε ἀμφὶ
 ποταμὸν Πάδον τὰ χωρία εἶναι ἀνάγκη χειρο-
 ποιήτῳ σκευωρησάμενος, καὶ πῇ μὲν λόχμας τε
 καὶ τάφρους καὶ φάραγγας τεκτηνάμενος, πῇ δὲ
 τέλμινάς τε ὡς βαθυτάτας καὶ χώρους τεναγώδεις
 τινὰς αὐτὸς τῷ Γότθων στρατῷ ἐφύλασεν ἐς τὸ
 ἀκριβές, ὡς ὁμόσε χωρῆσαι Ῥωμαίοις, ἦν τι ἀπο-
 23 πειρῶνται τῆς ἐνθένδε ὁδοῦ. ταῦτα δὲ Τουτίλας
 ἐμνηχανᾶτο, οἰόμενος διὰ μὲν τῆς παραλίας κόλ-
 πον τοῦ Ἰονίου Ῥωμαίοις μήποτε δυνατόα ἔσεσθαι
 τὴν πορείαν ποιεῖσθαι, ἐπεὶ ναυσίποροι ποταμοὶ
 παμπληθεῖς ἐνταῦθα ἐκβολὰς ἔχοντες ἀπόρευτα
 παντάπασιν παρέχονται εἶναι τὰ ἐκείνῃ χωρία·
 ναῦς δὲ αὐτοὺς τοσαύτας τὸ πλήθος ὡς ἡκιστα
 ἔχειν, ὥστε δὴ ἀθρόους¹ παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ δια-
 πορθμεύεσθαι τὸν Ἰόνιον κόλπον, ἦν δὲ γε κατ'
 ὀλίγους ναυτίλλωνται, αὐτὸς ἂν τῷ καταλοίπῳ
 στρατῷ τῶν Γότθων τοὺς ἐκάστοτε ἀποβαίνοντας
 24 πόνῳ οὐδενὶ ἀναστείλειε. τοιαύτῃ μὲν οὖν γνώμῃ
 ὁ τε Τουτίλας ἐπήγγελλε ταῦτα καὶ ὁ Τείας ἐποίει.

¹ ἀθρόους Hoeschel in margin : ἀθρόον MSS.

be utterly unable to get on from there to Ravenna, nor could he march that way any farther than the city of Veiona. For Totila, they reported, had gathered whatever was notable in the Gothic army, and appointing as General over them Teias the Goth, a conspicuously able warrior, had sent him to the city of Verona, which was subject to the Goths, for the purpose of preventing, as far as in him lay, the Roman army from passing by. This was in fact the case.

By the time Teias entered the city of Verona, he had shut off entirely the road by which his enemy must pass, having by artificial means made the land which borders the Po River such that it was altogether out of the question to travel in it or through it, for he had in some places constructed brush entanglements and ditches and gullies, in others sloughs of the greatest depth and certain expanses of swampy ground, while he himself with the Gothic army was maintaining close guard so as to engage with the Romans if they should make any attempt to pass by that road. Now Totila had devised these things with the idea that the Romans would never be able, on the one hand, to make the march along the coast of the Ionian Gulf, for a great number of navigable rivers have their mouths there and make the route entirely impassable, and, on the other hand, he thought that they certainly did not have ships in such numbers as to ferry the whole army in a body across the Ionian Gulf, while if they should sail in small groups, he himself with the remainder of the Gothic army would with no trouble stop the disembarkation on each occasion. Such was the purpose of Totila in giving these orders, which were being duly executed by Teias.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

Ναρσῇ δὲ λίαν ἀμνηχανοῦντι Ἰωάννης ὁ Βιταλιανοῦ, τῶν τῇδε χωρίων ἐμπείρως ἔχων, παρήνει παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ μὲν κατὰ τὴν παραλίαν ἰέναι, κατηκόων σφίσιν ὄντων, ὡς προδεδήλωται, τῶν τῇδε ἀνθρώπων, παρακολουθεῖν
 25 δὲ τῶν νηῶν τινὰς καὶ ἀκάτους πολλὰς. ἐπειδὴν γὰρ ὁ στρατὸς ἐπὶ ταῖς τῶν ποταμῶν ἐκβολαῖς γένωνται, γέφυραν ἐκ τῶν ἀκάτων τούτων τῷ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ῥοθίῳ ἐναρμοσάμενοι, ῥᾶον ἂν καὶ ἀπονώτερον ποιήσαιντο τὴν διάβασιν. ὁ μὲν Ἰωάννης ταῦτα παρήνει, πείθεται δὲ Ναρσῆς, καὶ τῷ τρόπῳ τούτῳ παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ ἐπὶ Ῥαβέννης κομίζεται.

XXVII

Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπράσσετο τῇδε, ἐν τούτῳ τάδε ξυννηέχθη γενέσθαι. Ἰλδιγισὰλ Λαγγοβάρδας ἀνὴρ, οὐπὲρ ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις ἐμνήσθην ἄτε¹ τοῦ² Αὐδουῖν ὄντος ἐχθροῦ, ὃς τούτων δὴ τῶν βαρβάρων ἠγεῖτο (αὐτῷ γὰρ τὴν ἀρχὴν κατὰ γένος προσήκουσαν Αὐδουῖν βιασάμενος ἔσχευ) ἐξ ἡθῶν ἀποδράς³ τῶν πατρίων ἐπὶ
 2 Βυζαντίου κομίζεται. οὐ δὴ αὐτὸν ἀφικόμενον Ἰουστινιανὸς βασιλεὺς ἐν τοῖς μάλιστα φιλοφροσύνης ἠξίωσεν, ἄρχοντά τε κατεστήσατο ἐνὸς τῶν ἐπὶ τοῦ Παλατίου φυλακῆς τεταγμένων
 3 λόχων, οὗσπερ⁴ σχολὰς ὀνομάζουσιν. εἶποντο δὲ αὐτῷ τοῦ Λαγγοβαρδῶν ἔθνους ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ

¹ ἄτε Haury : αὐτός MSS αὐτῷ Maltretus

² τοῦ L δέ V. ³ ἀποδράς L : om V

⁴ οὗσπερ L . οὐπὲρ V.

Narses thus found himself completely bewildered, but John, the nephew of Vitalian, being familiar with these regions, advised him to proceed with the whole army along the coast, the inhabitants of this district, as previously stated,¹ being subject to them, while some of the ships and a large number of small boats accompanied them. For whenever they should come to the mouth of a river, they would throw a bridge of these boats across the river's current, and thus render the crossing comparatively easy. Such was the advice of John, and Narses was persuaded, and in this way made the journey to Ravenna with the whole army.

XXVII

WHILE these things were going on as described, the following took place. Ildigisal the Lombard has been mentioned in the preceding narrative² as a personal enemy of Auduin, who was the ruler of these barbarians (indeed the kingship belonged to this man by birth, but Auduin had taken it from him by violent means), he now escaped from his native land and set out for Byzantium. And when he arrived there the Emperor Justinian treated him with very particular consideration and appointed him commander of one of the companies of guards assigned to the palace, which they call "scholae"³. And he was followed by no fewer than three hundred

¹ Chap xxiv 8

² Book VII xxxv. 19, where he is called Ildiges.

³ i e "schools."

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

τὰ πολέμια οὐχ ἥσσους ἢ τριακόσιοι, οἱ δὲ μίαν
 4 πρῶτον ἐπὶ Θράκης δίαιταν εἶχον. τὸν Ἰλδιγισάλ
 οὖν Αὐδοῦν μὲν πρὸς βασιλέως Ἰουστινιανοῦ
 ἐξητεῖτο ἅτε φίλος τε Ῥωμαίοις καὶ ξύμμαχος ὢν,
 μισθὸν τῆς φιλίας τὴν προδοσίαν αὐτῷ τοῦ
 5 ἱκέτου¹ εἰσπραττόμενος ὁ δὲ τρόπῳ οὐδενὶ
 ἐδίδου.

Χρόνῳ δὲ ὕστερον Ἰλδιγισάλ, ἐνδεέστερον ἢ
 κατὰ τὴν ἀξίαν αὐτοῦ καὶ τὴν Ῥωμαίων δόξαν
 ἐπικαλῶν οἱ αὐτῷ τὴν τε τιμὴν καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
 εἶναι, δυσφοροῦμένῳ ἐπὶ πλείστον ἐώκει. ὁ δὲ
 Γόαρ κατενόησε, Γότθος ἀνὴρ, πάλαι τε δορυάλω-
 τος ἐν τῷδε τῷ πολέμῳ ἐκ Δαλματίας ἐνταῦθα
 ἦκων, ἥνικα τὸν πόλεμον Οὐίττιγισ ὁ Γότθων
 6 βασιλεὺς πρὸς Ῥωμαίους διέφερε· θυμοειδὴς δὲ
 ὢν καὶ δραστήριος ἄγαν πρὸς τύχην τὴν παρούσαν
 ζυγομαχῶν διαγέγονεν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Γότθοι μετὰ² τὴν
 Οὐίττιγιδος ἐπικράτησιν ἐς ἀπόστασιν εἶδον, βασι-
 λεῖ ὄπλα³ ἀντάραντες, κακουργῶν ἐπὶ τῇ πολιτείᾳ
 διαφανῶς ἦλω. φυγῇ δὲ ζημιωθεὶς τῆς Αἰγύπτου
 ἐς τὴν Ἀντινόου⁴ κομίζεται, καὶ χρόνος αὐτῷ
 7 πολὺς ἐν τῇ ποινῇ ταύτῃ ἐτρίβη. ἀλλ' ὕστερον
 οἰκτισάμενος βασιλεὺς κατήγαγεν ἐς Βυζάντιον.
 οὗτος ὁ Γόαρ τὸν Ἰλδιγισάλ ἰδὼν ἀσχάλλοντα,
 ἥπερ μοι εἴρηται, ἐνδελεχέστατα νοουθετῶν ἀνα-
 πείθει δρασμῷ χρήσασθαι, ξὺν αὐτῷ ὁμολογήσας
 8 ἐκ Βυζαντίου ἀπαλλαγῆσθαι. ἐπειδὴ δὲ
 αὐτοῖς ἡ βουλὴ ἤρεσκε, φεύγουσι μὲν ἐξαπιναίως
 ξὺν ὀλίγοις τισίν, ἐς δὲ Ἀπρων ἀφικόμενοι τὴν

¹ ἱκέτου Maltietus οἰκέτου MSS

² γότθοι μετὰ L γότθων κατὰ V.

³ ὄπλα Haury οἱ πάλαι MSS.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxvii 3-8

able warriors of the Lombard nation, who at first lived together in Thiace. Auduin accordingly demanded Ildigisal from the Emperor Justinian on the ground that he was a friend and ally of the Romans, claiming as payment for his friendship the betrayal of the suppliant to him. But Justinian refused absolutely to give him up.

Later on, however, Ildigisal began to make the complaint that both his rank and his maintenance were not commensurate with his worth and the good name of the Romans and appeared to be exceedingly dissatisfied. Now this was observed by Goar, a Goth, who had long ago come there from Dalmatia as a captive taken in this war, at the time when Vittigis, king of the Goths, was carrying on the war against the Romans, and being an impetuous and exceedingly active fellow, he was in constant rebellion against the fate which was upon him. But when the Goths, after the overthrow of Vittigis, planned a revolution and took up arms against the emperor, he was clearly caught working against the state. And being condemned to exile, he proceeded to the city of Antinous in Egypt, where he spent a long time under this punishment. But later the emperor, moved by pity, brought him back to Byzantium. This Goar, then, seeing Ildigisal in a state of discontent, as I have said, kept after him without interruption and tried to persuade him to take to flight, promising that he would leave Byzantium with him. And since this plan pleased them, they fled suddenly with only a few followers, and upon reaching the Thracian city of Apri, they

⁴ τὴν Ἀντινόου Χαλκὴ ταυτόν L, ταυτόν V.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

Θρακῶν πόλιν ἀναμίνυνται Λαγγοβάρδαις τοῖς
τῇδε οὔσι. τοῖς τε βασιλικοῖς ἵπποφορβίοις
κατατυχόντες μέγα τι χρήμα ἵππων ἐνθένδε
ἐπαγόμενοι πρόσω ἐχώρουν.

- 9 Ὅνπερ ἐπειδὴ βασιλεὺς ᾔσθετο, ἔς τε Θράκην
ὄλην καὶ Ἰλλυριοὺς στείλας ἄρχουσίν τε πᾶσι
καὶ στρατιώταις ἐπέστελλε τοῖς δραπεταῖς
10 τούτοις σθένει παντὶ ὑπαντιάσαι. καὶ πρῶτα
μὲν Οὐννων¹ τῶν Κουτριγούρων καλουμένων
ὀλίγοι τινὲς (οἳ δὴ ἐξ ἡθῶν τῶν πατρίων ἐξανα-
στάντες, ἥπέρ μοι οὐ πολλῶ ἔμπροσθεν δεδιήγη-
ται, δόντος βασιλέως ἐπὶ τῆς Θράκης ἰδρύσαντο)
11 τοῖς φεύγουσι τούτοις ἐς χεῖρας ἦλθον. ἥσση-
θέντες δὲ μάχῃ τινὲς μὲν πίπτουσιν, οἳ δὲ λοιποὶ
τραπόμενοι οὐκέτι ἐδίωκον, ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ ἔμενον.
οὕτω τε Θράκην ὄλην διεληλύθασιν Ἰλδιγισάλ
τε καὶ Γόαρ ξὺν τοῖς ἐπομένοις, οὐδενὸς ἐνοχλοῦν-
12 τος. ἐν Ἰλλυριοῖς δὲ γενόμενοι Ῥωμαίων στρατὸν
εὖρον ἐπὶ τῷ σφῶν πονηρῷ ξὺν ἐπιμελείᾳ ξυνει-
13 λεγμένον. τοῦ δὲ στρατοῦ τούτου ἄλλοι τέ τινες
καὶ Ἀράτιός τε καὶ Ῥεκίθαγγος καὶ Λεωνιανὸς
καὶ Ἀριμουθ ἡρχον, οἳ δὴ ἐτύγχανον τὴν ἡμέραν
14 ἵππεύσαντες ὄλην. ἔς τε χώρον ὑλῶδη ἀφικόμενοι
περὶ λύχνων ἀφὰς ἔστησαν, ὥς αὐλισόμενοί τε
καὶ διανυκτερεύοντες ἐνταῦθα τὴν νύκτα ἐκείνην.
15 τοῖς μὲν οὖν στρατιώταις ἐπέστελλον οἳ ἄρχοντες
οὔτοι τά τε ἄλλα καὶ ἵππων τῶν σφετέρων ἐπι-
μελεῖσθαι καὶ παρὰ² τὸν ταύτη ῥέοντα ποταμὸν
αὐτοὺς ἀναψύχειν, παρηγοροῦντας τὸν τῆς ὁδοῦ
16 κόπον. αὐτοὶ τε κατὰ τρεῖς ἢ τέτταρας ἕκαστος
δορυφόρους ἐπαγόμενοι ἀποκεκρυμμένως τοῦ ποτα-

¹ Οὐννων L οὖν V.

² παρὰ L: περὶ V

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxvii. 8-16

joined forces with the Lombards who were there. Next they came by chance upon the imperial horse pastures and took from them a great number of horses, which they took with them as they proceeded.

But when the emperor learned of this, he sent into all Thrace and Illyricum and instructed all commanders and soldiers to use every means in their power to check these runaways. And first of all a small number of the Huns called Cutrigurs (men who had migrated from their ancestral abodes, as I have stated not long since,¹ and settled in Thrace with the emperor's permission) came to an engagement with these fugitives. But they were defeated in battle and some of them fell, while the rest were routed and did not continue the pursuit, but remained where they were. Thus Ildigisal and Goar with their followers passed through the whole of Thiace, not molested by anyone. But upon reaching Illyricum they found a Roman army carefully gathered to oppose them. Now this army was commanded by Ariatus, Rhecithangus, Leonianus, Arimuth, and others, all of whom happened to have been riding the whole day. And upon reaching a wooded place about nightfall they had stopped, intending to bivouac and so pass the night there. So these commanders gave their soldiers the usual orders, instructing them to care for their horses and to refresh themselves beside the river which flowed by, thus repairing the fatigue of the journey. They themselves meanwhile took with them three or four bodyguards each and in a concealed place began to

¹ Chap. xiv. 7

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- μοῦ ἔπινον· δίψει γάρ, ὥς τὸ εἰκός, χαλεπῇ
 17 εἶχοντο. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Γόαρ καὶ Ἰλδιγισὰλ ἀγχοῦ
 που ὄντες καὶ σκοποὺς πέμψαντες ταῦτα ἔγνω-
 σαν. ἀπροσδόκητοί τε πίνουσιν αὐτοῖς ἐπι-
 στάντες ἅπαντας ἔκτειναν, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν
 ἀδεέστερον σφίσιν αὐτοῖς τὰ ἐς τὴν πορείαν
 18 ἦπερ ἐβούλοντο διωκῆσαντο ἄναρχοι γὰρ οἱ
 στρατιῶται γενόμενοι διηποροῦντό τε καὶ παν-
 τάπασιν ἀμηχανοῦντες ὀπίσω ἀπήλαινον. Γόαρ
 μὲν οὖν καὶ Ἰλδιγισὰλ οὕτω διαφυγόντες ἐς
 Γήπαιδας ἦλθον.
- 19 Ἐτύγχανε δὲ καὶ τις ἐκ Γηπαίδων, Οὐστρίγοτ-
 θος ὄνομα, ἐς Λαγγοβάρδας φυγὼν τρόπῳ τοιῷδε.
 Ἐλεμοῦνδος μὲν ὁ Γηπαίδων γεγονὼς βασιλεὺς
 οὐ πολλῶ ἔμπροσθεν ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἠφάνιστο
 νόσῳ, τούτου δὴ οἱ μόνου τοῦ Οὐστριγότθου
 ἀπολελειμμένου παιδός, ὅνπερ ὁ Θορισὶν βια-
 σάμενος (μειράκιον γὰρ ἦν ἔτι) τὴν ἀρχὴν ἔσχε.
 20 διὸ δὴ ὁ παῖς οὐκ ἔχων τὸν ἡδικοκτότα καθ' ὃ τι
 ἀμύνηται, ἐξ ἡθῶν ἀναστὰς τῶν πατρίων ἐς
 Λαγγοβάρδας Γήπαισι πολεμίους ὄντας ἀπιδὼν
 21 ᾤχετο. ἐγένοντο δὲ Γήπαισιν ὀλίγῳ ὕστερον
 πρὸς τε βασιλέα Ἰουστινιανὸν καὶ τὸ Λαγγο-
 βαρδῶν ἔθνος διαλλαγαί, ὀρκίοις τε ἀλλήλους¹
 22 δεινοτάτοις κατέλαβον ἢ μὴν τὸ λοιπὸν φιλίαν
 τὴν ἐς ἀλλήλους ἀπέραντον διασώσασθαι. ἐπειδὴ
 τε αὐτοῖς τὰ ἐς τὰς διαλλαγὰς βεβαιότατα
 ξυνετελέσθη, βασιλεὺς τε Ἰουστινιανὸς καὶ
 Αὐδουὶν ὁ τῶν Λαγγοβαρδῶν ἡγούμενος παρὰ
 Θορισὶν τὸν Γηπαίδων ἄρχοντα πέμψαντες τὸν
 Ἰλδιγισὰλ ἄτε κοινὸν ἐχθρὸν ἐξητοῦντο, τὴν ἐς

¹ ἀλλήλους Maltretus . ἀλλήλοις MSS

drink from the river ; for they were naturally suffering from severe thirst. But the men of Goar and Ildigisal who were near by had sent out scouts and found this out. So falling unexpectedly upon them as they drank they slew every man of them, and thereafter they conducted their march as they pleased without further fear. For the soldiers, finding themselves without commanders, fell into a state of perplexity, and being completely at a loss began to withdraw. So Goar and Ildigisal made their escape in this way and came to the Gepaedes.

Now it so happened that a certain man named Ustrigothus had fled from the Gepaedes to the Lombards in the following circumstances. Elemundus, who had been king of the Gepaedes, had been taken from the world by disease not long before, this Ustrigothus being his only surviving child ; but Thorsin had forced him aside (for he was still a stripling) and had thus secured the power. Consequently the boy, having no means of defending himself against the aggressor, departed from his native land and made off to the Lombards, who were then at war with the Gepaedes. But a little later a reconciliation was effected by the Gepaedes with both the Emperor Justinian and the Lombard nation, and they bound themselves by the most solemn oaths that from that time forth they would preserve an eternal friendship with each other. And as soon as the details of the agreement had been most firmly fixed, both the Emperor Justinian and Auduin, ruler of the Lombards, sent to Thorsin, the ruler of the Gepaedes, demanding the surrender of Ildigisal as a common enemy, ask-

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- τὸν ἰκέτην τὸν αὐτοῦ προδοσίαν δεόμενοι δῆλωσιν
τῆς ἐς αὐτοὺς φιλίας ποιήσασθαι πρώτην.
- 23 Καὶ ὃς τοῖς Γηπαίδων λογίμοις κοινολογησάμε-
νος¹ τὰ παρόντα σπουδῇ ἀνεπυνθάνετο εἰ ποιητέα
- 24 οἱ τὰ πρὸς τοῖν βασιλέοιν αἰτούμενα εἶη. οἱ δὲ
ἄντικρυς μὴ ποιήσῃν ἀπέειπον, κρεῖσσον ἀπισ-
χυρισάμενοι εἶναι Γηπαίδων τῷ ἔθνει αὐταῖς τε
γυναιξὶ καὶ γόνῳ παντὶ διολωλέναι αὐτίκα δὴ
μάλα ἢ ἀνοσίοις ἐπ' ἀσεβήματι γενέσθαι τοιούτῳ.
- 25 ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὁ Θορισὶν ἐς ἀμηχανίαν ἐξέπιπ-
τεν. οὔτε γὰρ ἀκουσίῳ² τῶν ἀρχομένων ἐπιτε-
λέσαι τὸ ἔργον εἶχεν οὔτε ἀνακυκλεῖν πόλεμον,
πόνῳ τε καὶ χρόνῳ πεπαυμένον πολλῷ, πρὸς τε
Ῥωμαίους καὶ Λαγγοβάρδας ἔτι ἤθελεν. ὕστερον
- 26 μέντοι ἐπευόει τάδε. πέμψας παρὰ τὸν Αὐδουὶν
ἐξητεῖτο τὸν Ἐλεμούνδου υἱὸν Οὐστρίγοτθον, ἐπὶ
τὴν ὁμοίαν αὐτῷ ἁμαρτάδα ὁρμῶν, τῶν τε ἰκετῶν³
ἀνταλλάσσεσθαι⁴ τὴν προδοσίαν παρακαλῶν.
- 27 τῇ γὰρ τῆς ἐμφεροῦς ἀτοπίας ὀκνήσει τὴν ἐπίτα-
ξιν αὐτῶν ἀναχαιτίσειν ἐλπίδα εἶχεν,⁵ ἀλλ'
Αὐδουὶν αὐτὸν μηδεμίᾳ μελλήσει τῇ παρανομίᾳ
- 28 καὶ ὁμολογίᾳ λήψεσθαι τούτων τε αὐτοῖς
δεδογμένων ἐξεπιστάμενοι ὥς οὔτε Λαγγοβάρδαι
οὔτε Γήπαιδες ἐθέλουσι τοῦ μιάσματος μετα-
λαχεῖν σφίσιν,⁶ ἐς μὲν⁷ τὸ ἐμφανὲς οὐδὲν ἔδρασαν,
ἐκάτερος δὲ δόλῳ τὸν θατέρου ἐχθρὸν ἔκτεινεν.
- 29 ὅντινα μέντοι τρόπον, ἀφίημι λέγειν· οὐ γὰρ
ὁμολογοῦσιν ἀλλήλοις οἱ ἄμφ' αὐτοῖν⁸ λόγοι,

¹ κοινολογησάμενος L ἐπικοινωσάμενος V.

² ἀκουσίῳ Maltretus ἀκουσίως MSS.

³ ἰκετῶν Maltretus οἰκετῶν MSS

⁴ ἀνταλλάσσεσθαι Maltretus: ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι L, ἀπαλλάσσειν V.

ing that he make the betrayal of his suppliant the first proof of his friendship to them

He then conferred on the situation with the notable men of the Gepaedes and eagerly asked whether he was bound to fulfil the demand of the two sovereigns. And they forbade him absolutely to do so, firmly declaring that it was better for the nation of the Gepaedes to perish forthwith with their women and their whole stock rather than to become polluted by such an impiety. Upon hearing this Thorisin was plunged into uncertainty. For neither could he perform the deed against the will of his subjects, nor did he wish to revive once more a war against the Romans and Lombards which had been brought to an end with great labour and expenditure of time. Later, however, he thought of the following plan. He sent to Auduin and demanded the surrender of Ustrigothus, son of Elemundus, urging him to commit a sin equal to the one urged upon himself, and inviting him to betray one suppliant in exchange for the other. In this way he hoped that he would frustrate their demand through dread of a similar transgression and would immediately catch Auduin himself by the proposed illicit compact. So when they had reached these decisions and understood clearly that neither Lombards nor Gepaedes were willing to have any share in the pollution, they did nothing at all openly, but each of them put the enemy of the other to death by stealth. But as to how they did this, I shall not undertake to tell; for the accounts of this matter

⁵ ἐλπίδα εἶχεν Herwerden εἶχεν MSS

⁶ σφίσιν Scaliger: φησιν L, φησί V.

⁷ μὲν Maltretus μὲν οὖν MSS

⁸ αὐτοῖν Haury αὐτῶν MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

ἀλλὰ κατὰ πολὺ διαλλάσσουν οἷά γε τῶν πραγμάτων τὰ λαθραιότατα. τὰ μὲν οὖν κατὰ Ἰλδιγισὰλ καὶ Οὐστρίγοτθον ἐς τοῦτο ἐτελεύτα.

XXVIII

Τοῖς δὲ ἀμφὶ Ναρσὴν ἀφικομένοις ἐς Ῥάβενναν πόλιν ἀνεμίγνυντο Βαλεριανὸς καὶ Ἰουστίνος οἱ στρατηγοί, καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο στράτευμα Ῥωμαίων
 2 ταύτῃ ἐλέλειπτο. ἐπειδὴ δὲ αὐτοῖς ἐννέα ἡμερῶν χρόνος ἐς Ῥάβενναν ἐτέτριπτο, Οὐσδρίλας, Γότθος ἀνὴρ, διαφερόντως ἀγαθὸς τὰ πολέμια, τοῦ ἐν Αριμίνῳ φυλακτηρίου ἄρχων, πρὸς Βαλεριανὸν ἔγραψε τάδε· “ Πάντα ταῖς φήμαις καταλαβόντες, τοῖς τε φάσμασιν ἤδη ξύμπασαν Ἰταλίαν συσχόντες καὶ ὀφρυάσαντες οὐχ ὅσα γε τὰ ἀνθρώπεια, ταύτῃ τε Γότθους, ὥσπερ οἶεσθε, δεδιζάμενοι, εἶτα κάθησθε νῦν ἐν Ῥαβέννῃ τῇ μὲν ἀποκεκρῦφθαι ὡς ἥκιστα τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐνδηλοι,¹ οἶμαι,² ξυμφρουροῦντες ἔτι τὸ φρόνημα τοῦτο, βαρβάρων δὲ παμμίκτῳ ὁμίλῳ τὴν οὐδαμόθεν προ-
 3 σήκουσαν ὑμῖν κατατρίβοντες χώραν. ἀλλ’ ἀνάστητε ὅτι τάχιστα καὶ πολεμίων ἔργων τὸ λοιπὸν ἄπτεσθε, δείξατέ τε ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς Γότθοις, μηδὲ ἀναρτήσητε μακροτέραις ἐλπίσιν ἡμᾶς,
 4 προσδεχομένους ἐκ παλαιοῦ τὸ θέαμα.” ἡ μὲν γραφὴ τοσαῦτα ἐδήλου
 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ταῦτα Ναρσὴς ἀπενεχθέντα εἶδε, Γότθων τῆς ἀλαζονείας γελάσας,³ καθίστατο

¹ ἐνδηλοι Scaliger ἐνδηλον MSS.

² οἶμαι Haury εἶναι MSS.

do not agree with each other, but differ widely, as is natural in matters of a very secret nature. Such was the end of the story of Ildigisal and Ustrigothus.

XXVIII

WHEN¹ the forces of Narses reached the city of Ravenna, they were joined by the generals Valerian and Justinus and whatever of the Roman army was left in that region. Now when they had spent nine days' time at Ravenna, Usdilas, a Goth and an exceptionally capable warrior, commander of the garrison at Ariminum, wrote to Valerian as follows: "Though you have filled the world with talk of you and have already captivated the whole of Italy with the visions of your power, and have assumed an air of supercilious pride quite above the level of mortal men, and though you have in this way frightened the Goths, as you fondly imagine, you nevertheless now sit in Ravenna without at all shewing your own forces to your enemy, though your policy of keeping hidden—no doubt as a way of guarding still this proud spirit of yours—but using a heterogeneous horde of barbarians with which to ruin the land which belongs to you in no sense whatever. But arise with all speed and henceforth essay the deeds of war, shew yourselves to the Goths, and do not tantalize us longer with mere hope, since we have been awaiting the spectacle a long time." Such was the message of the letter.

When this was brought to Narses and seen by him, he laughed at the effrontery of the Goths and

¹ The narrative is resumed from chap. xxvi

³ γέλασας LV καταγελάσας MS. a corr., Maltretus

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- εὐθὺς παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ ἐς τὴν ἔξοδον, φρουρὰν
 5 ξὺν Ἰουστίνῳ ἐν Ῥαβέννῃ ἀπολιπών. γενόμενοί
 τε πόλεως Ἀρίμινου ἄγχιστα, εὗρον οὐκ εὐπετῇ
 σφίσι τὸ ἐνθένδε τὴν δίοδον οὖσαν, Γότθων
 περιηρηκότων τὴν ἐκείνη γέφυραν οὐ πολλῷ πρό-
 6 τερον. ὁ γὰρ ποταμὸς ὁ τὴν Ἀρίμινον παραρ-
 ρέων ἀνδρὶ μὲν ἀόπλῳ ἐνὶ πεζῇ ἰόντι μόλις
 διαβατὸς γίνεται διὰ τῆς γεφύρας πόνῳ τε καὶ
 τάλαιπωρία πολλῇ, καὶ ταῦτα μηδενὸς ἐνοχλοῦν-
 τος ἢ τὴν δίοδον ἀναστέλλοντος· πλήθει δὲ
 ἀνθρώπων καὶ διαφερόντως ἐξωπλισμένων, ἄλλως
 τε καὶ πολεμίων ἀντιστατούντων, τρόπῳ ὁτῶουν
 7 ἐνταῦθα διαπορθμέυσασθαι ἀδύνατά ἐστι. διόπερ
 ὁ Ναρσῆς ἐν τῷ γεφύρας χώρῳ γενόμενος ξὺν
 ὀλίγοις τισὶν ἀπορούμενος ἐπὶ πλείστον διεσκο-
 πεῖτο ὁπόθεν ἂν ποτε πόρον τινὰ τῷ πράγματι
 8 εὔροι. οὐ δὴ καὶ Οὐσδρίλας τινὰς ἐπαγαγόμενος
 ἵππέων ἤλθε, μή τι τῶν πρassoμένων αὐτὸν διαλά-
 θοι τῶν δέ τις Ναρσῇ ἐπισπομένων τὸ τόξον
 ἐντείνας ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἔβαλλεν, ἐνὶ τε τῶν ἵππων
 9 κατατυχὼν εὐθὺς ἔκτεινεν. οἷ τε ἀμφὶ τὸν Οὐσδρί-
 λαν τότε μὲν ἐνθένδε κατὰ τάχος ἀπαλλαγέντες
 ἐντὸς τοῦ περιβόλου ἐγένοντο, αὐτίκα δὲ καὶ
 ἄλλους ἐπαγαγόμενοι τῶν σφίσι μαχιμωτάτων διὰ
 πύλης ἐτέρας ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἵεντο, ὥς ἀπροσδόκητοί
 τε αὐτοῖς ἐπιπεσόντες καὶ τὸν Ναρσῆν διαχρησό-
 10 μενοι αὐτίκα δὴ μάλα. ἐπὶ θατερα γὰρ τοῦ
 ποταμοῦ διερευνώμενος τῇ στρατιᾷ τὴν διάβασιν
 ἤδη ἀφίκτο. ἀλλὰ τῶν τινὲς Ἑρούλων τύχῃ
 αὐτοῖς¹ τινὲ ἐνταῦθα ὑπαντιάσαντες κτείνουσί τε

¹ αὐτοῖς Hoeschel in margin . αὐτοῦς MSS.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxviii. 4-10

immediately prepared his whole army for departure, leaving a garrison with Justinus at Ravenna. But when they came close to the city of Ariminum, they found that the road from that point was not easy, since the Goths had not long before damaged the bridge there. For the river which flows by Ariminum is scarcely passable for a single unarmed man making his way on foot over the bridge with great labour and difficulty, and that too when no one is harassing him or disputing the passage;¹ but for a large number of men, particularly when under arms, and above all when confronted by an enemy, it is impossible by any means whatever to make that crossing. Consequently Narses went to the site of the bridge accompanied by a few, and being thoroughly perplexed he was considering carefully what solution he could possibly find for the difficulty. And Usdrilas also came thither, bringing some of his horsemen, lest anything that was done should escape him. Then one of the followers of Narses drew his bow and shot at them, and he hit one of their horses and killed it outright. And the company of Usdrilas for the moment departed from there in haste and got inside the fortifications, but immediately rushed out against the Romans through another gate, bringing with them others of their most warlike men, in order to fall upon them unexpectedly and destroy Narses forthwith. For in reconnoitring the crossing for the army he had already reached the other side of the river. But certain of the Eruli by some chance encountered them there and slew

¹ The splendid bridge of Augustus over the Marecchia (anc *Fluvius Ariminus*), which still stands must have been very much damaged to justify this statement of Procopius.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

τὸν Οὐσδρίλαν, καὶ ὅστις ποτὲ ἦν ἐπιγνωσθέντα παρὰ Ῥωμαίου ἀνδρὸς τὴν κεφαλὴν ἀφαιρούμενοι, ἐς τὸ Ῥωμαίων στρατόπεδον ἤλθον, καὶ Ναρσῇ ἐπιδείξαντες τῇ προθυμίᾳ ἐπέρρωσαν πάντας, τεκμηριουμένους τῷ ξυμβεβηκότι τὰ ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ Γότθοις πολέμια εἶναι· οἳ γε τῶν πολεμίων τῷ στρατηγῷ ἐνεδρεύσαντες αὐτοὶ οὐκ ἐξ ἐπιβουλῆς ἢ προνοίας τινὸς τὸν ἄρχοντα σφῶν ἐξαπιναίως ἀφῆρηντο.

- 11 Ναρσῆς δέ, καίπερ Οὐσδρίλα πεπτωκότος, ὃς τοῦ ἐν Ἀριμῆνῳ φυλακτηρίου ἦρχε, πρόσω ἤπειγε¹ τὸ στράτευμα. οὔτε γὰρ Ἀρίμνηνον οὔτε ἄλλο τι χωρίον πρὸς τῶν πολεμίων ἐχόμενον ἐνοχλεῖν ἠθέλεν, ὥς μὴ τις αὐτῷ τρίβοιτο χρόνος, μηδὲ τῷ παρέργῳ τῆς χρείας ἢ σπουδαιοτάτῃ διείργοιτο
- 12 πρᾶξις. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἅτε πεπτωκότος σφίσι τοῦ ἄρχοντος ἡσυχαζόντων τε καὶ οὐκέτι ἐμποδίων καθισταμένων ὁ Ναρσῆς ἀδεέστερον γεφύρα τὸν ποταμὸν ζεύξας διεβίβασε πόνῳ οὐδενὶ τὸν
- 13 στρατὸν ἅπαντα. ὁδοῦ δὲ τῆς Φλαμηνίας ἐνθένδε ἀφέμενος ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἦει. Πέτρας γὰρ τῆς Περτούσης καλουμένης, ἥσπερ μοι τὸ τοῦ ὀχυρώματος καρτερὸν χωρίου φύσει ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν δεδιήγηται λόγοις, κατειλημμένης² τοῖς ἐναντίοις πολλῷ πρότερον, ἀπόρευτα Ῥωμαίοις καὶ παντάπασιν ἀδιέξοδα, ὅσα γε κατὰ τὴν Φλαμηνίαν ὁδὸν, ὄντα ἐτύγχανεν. ὁδὸν οὖν ὁ Ναρσῆς διὰ ταῦτα τὴν ἐπιτομωτέραν ἀφεῖς τὴν βάσιμον ἦει.

¹ ἤπειγε MSS ἐπῆγε Dindorf.

² κατειλημμένης Haury κατειλημμένου MSS, κατειλημμένον Hoeschel.

Usdrilas, and since he was identified by a Roman they cut off his head, and coming into the Roman camp displayed it to Narses and so strengthened the courage of all, for they inferred from what had happened that Heaven was hostile to the Goths, seeing that in seeking to ambush the general of their enemy they themselves, not through any plot or preconceived plan, had suddenly lost their own commander

But Narses, in spite of the fall of Usdrilas, commander of the garrison at Ariminum, pushed forward with the army. For he did not wish to trouble Ariminum nor any other place held by the enemy, in order that no time might be wasted by him and the accomplishment of the most important thing be crowded out by that which was incidental to his task. The enemy, for their part, now that their commander had fallen, remained quiet and sought no longer to block his way, so that Narses without a fear spanned the river with a bridge and took the entire army across without any trouble. From there he left the Flaminian Way and went to the left. For the place called Petia Pertusa, whose naturally strong fortress has been described by me in the previous narrative,¹ had been occupied by his opponents long before, and consequently the road was closed to the Romans and it was out of the question to pass through, as far at least as the Flaminian Way was concerned. Narses accordingly left the shorter road on this account and went by the road which could be travelled

¹ Book VI xi. 10-14

XXIX

Τῷ μὲν οὖν Ῥωμαίων στρατῷ τά γε ἀμφὶ τῇ πορείᾳ ταύτῃ πη εἶχε. Τουτίλας δὲ πεπυσμένοις ἤδη τὰ ἐν Βενεταίαις ξυνενεχθέντα Τείαν μὲν τὰ πρῶτα καὶ τὴν ξὺν αὐτῷ στρατιὰν προσδεχόμενος
 2 ἐν τοῖς ἐπὶ Ῥώμης χωρίοις ἡσυχῇ ἔμενεν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ παρήσαν, μόνοι τε δισχίλιοι ἰππεῖς ἐλείποντο ἔτι, τούτους δὴ οὐκ ἀναμείνας ὁ Τουτίλας, ἀλλὰ παντὶ ἄρας τῷ ἄλλῳ στρατῷ ὥς τοῖς πολεμίοις
 3 ἐν ἐπιτηδείῳ ὑπαντιάσων ἦει. ἐν δὲ τῇ ὁδῷ ταύτῃ τά τε τῷ Οὐσδρίλᾳ συμπεπτωκότα καὶ Ἀρίμηνον τοὺς πολεμίους διαβεβηκέναι μαθὼν, ὅλην μὲν Τουσκίαν ἀμείψας, ἐν ὅρῳ δὲ τῷ Ἀπεννίνῳ καλουμένῳ γενόμενος, αὐτοῦ ἐνστρατοπεδευσάμενος, ἔμενεν ἄγχιστα κώμης ἥνπερ οἱ
 4 ἐπιχώριοι Ταγίνας καλοῦσιν. ἥ τε Ῥωμαίων στρατιὰ Ναρσοῦ ἡγουμένου οὐ πολλῷ¹ ὕστερον ἐν τῷ ὅρῳ καὶ αὐτοὶ τῷ Ἀπεννίνῳ ἐνστρατοπεδευσάμενοι ἔμενον, σταδίοις ἑκατὸν μάλιστα τοῦ τῶν ἐναντίων στρατοπέδου διέχοντες, ἐν χωρίῳ ὁμαλῷ μὲν, λόφους δὲ ἄγχιστά πη περιβεβλημένῳ πολλούς, ἵνα δὴ ποτε στρατηγούντα² Ῥωμαίων Κάμιλλον τῶν Γάλλων ὁμίλον διαφθεῖραι μάχῃ
 5 νενικηκότα φασί. φέρει δὲ καὶ εἰς ἐμὲ μαρτύριον τοῦ ἔργου τούτου τὴν προσηγορίαν ὁ χώρος καὶ διασώζει τῇ μνήμῃ τῶν Γάλλων τὸ πάθος, Βουσταγαλλῶρων καλούμενος. βούστα γὰρ Λατῖνοι
 6 τὰ ἐκ τῆς πυρᾶς καλοῦσι λείψανα τύμβοι τε τῆδε γεώλοφοι τῶν νεκρῶν ἐκείνων παμπληθεῖς εἰσίν.

¹ οὐ πολλῷ Maltretus πολλῷ MSS.

² ποτε στρατηγούντα A στρατηγούνται ποτε V.

XXIX

SUCH were the events of the march of the Roman army. Now Totila, having already learned what had taken place in Venetia, at first remained quiet in the vicinity of Rome awaiting Teias and his army. But when they had come and only two thousand horsemen were still missing, Totila, without awaiting these, started on the march with all the rest of the army in order to encounter the enemy in a suitable place. But he learned on this march both what had befallen Usdrilas and also that his enemy had passed by Ariminum, whereupon he crossed the whole of Tuscany, and upon reaching the mountains called the Apennines established his camp there and remained close to a village which the inhabitants call Taginae.¹ And the Roman army led by Narses also made camp on the Apennines not long afterward and remained in that position, about one hundred stades distant from the camp of their opponents, in a place which is level but surrounded by many hills close by, the very place where once, they say, Camillus as general of the Romans defeated in battle and destroyed the host of the Gauls.² And the place even to my day bears witness to this deed in its name and preserves the memory of the disaster which befell the Gauls, being called Busta Galloium.³ For the Latins call the remains of the funeral pyre "busta." And there are great numbers of mounded tombs of their bodies in this place.

¹ More properly Tadinum, modern Gualdo Tadino.

² This statement is quite untrue as it stands.

³ *I.e.* "Sepulchres of the Gauls." Here again Procopius is far from the truth. The Busta Galloium of Livy V. xlviii were in the city of Rome.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- Αὐτίκα δὲ στείλας ἐνθένδε Ναρσῆς τῶν οἱ
 ἐπιτηδεῖων τινὰς παραίνεσιν ἐπήγγελλε ποιείσ-
 θαι τῷ Τουτίλα καταθέσθαι μὲν τὰ πολέμια,
 βουλευέσθαι δὲ εἰρηναῖά ποτε, διαριθμουμένων ὅτι
 δὴ αὐτός, ἀνθρώπων ἄρχων ὀλίγων τέ τινων καὶ
 ὑπόγυον νόμῳ οὐδενὶ ξυνειλεγμένων, πάσῃ τῇ
 Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ ἐπὶ πλεῖστον διαμάχεσθαι οὐκ
 7 ἂν δύναίτο. ἔφη δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ τοῦτο, ὥστε δὴ
 αὐτόν, εἰ πολεμησεῖοντα ἴδοιεν, μελλήσει οὐδεμιᾷ
 ἐγκελεύεσθαι τακτὴν¹ διορίσαι τινὰ ἡμέραν τῇ
 8 μάχῃ. ἐπειδὴ γοῦν οἱ πρέσβεις οὗτοι τῷ Τουτίλα
 ἐς ὄψιν ἦλθον, τὰ ἐπιτεταγμένα ἐποίουν. καὶ ὁ
 μὲν νεανιευόμενος ἐκομψεύετο ὡς τρόπῳ αὐτοῖς
 παντὶ πολεμητέον εἶη, οἱ δὲ ὑπολαβόντες “Ἄλλ’,
 ὦ γενναῖε” ἔφασαν “ῥητόν τινα καιρὸν τῇ
 9 ξυμμίξωμεν” ἔφη. οἱ μὲν οὖν πρέσβεις παρὰ
 τὸν Ναρσὴν ἐπανήκοντες τὰ ξυγκείμενα σφίσιν
 ἐπήγγελλον, ὁ δὲ Τουτίλαν δολώσεις ὑποτοπάζων
 ἐπινοεῖν παρεσκευάζετο ὡς τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ μαχού-
 10 μενος καὶ ἔτυχέ γε τῆς τῶν πολεμίων ἐννοίας.
 ἡμέρα γὰρ τῇ ἐπιγενομένῃ αὐτάγγελος παντὶ τῷ
 στρατῷ παρῆν ὁ Τουτίλας. ἤδη δὲ ἀλλήλοις
 ἑκατεροὶ ἀντεκάθηντο, οὐ πλέον ἢ δυοῖν διέχοντες
 τοξευμάτων βολαῖν.
 11 Ἦν γέ τι² γεώλοφον ἐνταῦθα βραχύ, ὃ δὴ
 καταλαβεῖν ἀμφότεροι διὰ σπουδῆς εἶχον, ἐν
 ἐπιτηδεῖῳ σφίσιν οἰόμενοι κεῖσθαι, ὅπως τε
 βάλλειν τοὺς ἐναντίους ἐξ ὑπερδεξίων ἔχοιεν καὶ
 ὅτι χῶροι λοφώδεις, ἥπέρ μοι δεδήλωται, ἐνταῦθά
 πη ἦσαν, ταύτῃ τοι κυκλώσασθαί τινας τὸ
 Ῥωμαίων στρατόπεδον κατὰ νώτου ἰόντας ἀμή-

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII xxix. 6-II

Now Narses immediately sent from there some of his associates, bidding them exhort Totila to lay aside warfare and at last make plans for peace, for he must realize that as ruler of only a small number of men recently banded together by no law, he would not be able to contend for very long with the whole Roman empire. But he told them this also, that, if they saw that Totila was determined to fight, they should immediately urge him to appoint a definite day for the battle. These envoys accordingly came before Totila and carried out their instructions. And he in a spirit of bravado began to boast that by all means they must fight, but the envoys rejoined quickly, "Very well, good Sir, appoint some definite time for the engagement." Whereupon he immediately said, "At the end of eight days let us match our strength." So the envoys returned to Narses and reported their agreement, whereupon he, suspecting that Totila was planning treachery, made preparations to fight on the following day. And in fact he was right in his judgment of the purpose of his enemy. For on the succeeding day Totila was at hand self-announced with his whole army. And immediately the two armies took up positions opposite one another, not more than two bowshots apart.

Now there was a small hill there which both were eager to occupy, thinking that it was favourably situated for their purposes, both in order to shoot at their opponents from a high point of vantage, and also because the ground being hilly thereabout, as I have previously stated, it was impossible for anyone to encircle the Roman camp on that side

¹ τακτῆν Α ταυτήν V

² τι Maltretus τοι MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- χανον ἦν, ὅτι μὴ διὰ μιᾶς τινὸς ἀτραποῦ,
 12 ἢ παρὰ τὸ γεώλοφον ἐτύγγανεν οὔσα. διὸ
 δὴ περὶ πλείους αὐτὸ ποιεῖσθαι ἀμφοτέροις
 ἐπάναγκες ἦν, Γότθοις μὲν, ὅπως ἐν τῇ ξυμβολῇ
 κυκλωσάμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους ἐν ἀμφιβόλῳ
 ποιήσονται, Ῥωμαίοις δέ, ὅπως δὴ ταῦτα μὴ
 13 πάθοιεν. ἀλλὰ προτερήσας Ναρσῆς πεντήκοντα
 ἐκ καταλόγου πεζοὺς ἀπολέξας ἄωρι νύκτωρ ὡς
 καταληψομένους τε καὶ καθέζοντας αὐτὸ ¹
 14 ἔστειλε. καὶ οἱ μὲν οὐδενὸς σφίσι τῶν πολεμίων
 ἐμποδῶν ἵσταμένου ἐνταῦθα γενόμενοι ἡσυχῇ
 15 ἔμενον. ἔστι δέ τις χειμάρρους τοῦ γεωλόφου
 ἐπίπροσθεν, παρὰ μὲν τὴν ἀτραπὸν ἧς ἄρτι
 ἐμνήσθην, τοῦ δὲ χώρου καταντικρὺ οὗ ἔστρατο-
 πεδεύσαντο Γότθοι, οὗ δὴ οἱ πεντήκοντα ἔστησαν,
 ἐν χρῶ μὲν ξυνιόντες ἀλλήλοις, ἐς φάλαγγα δὲ
 ὡς ἐν στενοχωρίᾳ ξυντεταγμένοι.
 16 Μεθ' ἡμέραν δὲ τὸ γεγονὸς ἰδὼν Τουτίλας
 ἀπώσασθαι αὐτοὺς ἐν σπουδῇ εἶχεν. ἴλην τε
 ἱππέων εὐθὺς ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἔπεμψεν, ἐξελᾶν ὅτι
 17 τάχιστα ἐνθένδε αὐτοὺς ἐπιστείλας. οἱ μὲν οὖν
 ἱππεῖς θορύβῳ τε πολλῷ καὶ κραυγῇ ἐπ' αὐτοὺς
 ἔεντο, ὡς αὐτοβοεῖ ἐξαιρήσοντες, οἱ δὲ εἰς ὀλίγον
 ξυντεταγμένοι καὶ ταῖς μὲν ἀσπίσι φραζάμενοι,
 18 τὰ δὲ δοράτια ἐπανατεινάμενοι ² ἔστησαν εἴτα οἱ
 μὲν Γότθοι σπουδῇ ἐπιόντες ξυνταράξαντες
 αὐτοὺς ἤλαυνον, οἱ δὲ πεντήκοντα, τῶν τε ἀσπί-
 δων τῷ ὠθισμῷ καὶ τῶν δορατίων τῇ ἐπιβολῇ
 πυκνοτάτῃ οὔσῃ καὶ οὐδαμῇ συγκεχυμένη ὡς

¹ αὐτό Hauy αὐτοὺς MSS

² τὰ δὲ δοράτια ἐπανατεινάμενοι A om V.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxix. 11-18

and get behind it except by following a single path which happened to skirt the hill. Consequently both of them were bound to consider it of particular importance, the Goths, in order that they might surround their enemy during the engagement and so place them between two forces, and the Romans, in order that they might not have this thing happen to them. But Narses had anticipated the Goths by choosing fifty infantrymen from a cohort and sending them late at night to occupy and hold the hill. And they, finding none of the enemy in the way, went there and remained quiet. Now there is a certain water-course in front of the hill, running along the path which I have just mentioned and opposite the spot where the Goths had made their camp, and it was at this point that the fifty took up their position, standing shoulder to shoulder and arrayed in the form of a phalanx as well as the limited space permitted.

After day came, Totila saw what had happened and was eager to dislodge them. So he immediately sent a troop of horsemen against them with orders to drive them out from there as quickly as possible. The horsemen accordingly charged upon them with great hubbub and shouting, intending to capture them at the first cry, but the Romans drew up together into a small space and, making a barrier with their shields and thrusting forward their spears, held their ground. Then the Goths came on, charging in haste and thus getting themselves into disorder, while the fifty, pushing with their shields and thrusting very rapidly with their spears, which were nowhere allowed to interfere one with the other, defended themselves most vigorously against

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- καρτερώτατα τοὺς ἐπιόντας ἡμύνοντο, ἐξεπίτηδές
 τε πάταγον ταῖς ἀσπίσιν ἐποίουν, ταύτῃ μὲν τοὺς
 ἵππους αἰὲ δεδισσόμενοι, τοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας ταῖς τῶν
 19 δορατίων αἰχμαῖς. καὶ οἳ τε ἵπποι ἀνεχαιτίζοντο
 τῇ τε δυσχωρίᾳ καὶ τῶν ἀσπίδων τῷ πατάγῳ
 λίαν ἀχθόμενοι καὶ διέξοδον οὐδαμῇ ἔχοντες, οἳ
 τε ἄνδρες ἀπεκναίοντο, ἀνθρώποις τε οὕτω ξυμ-
 φραξαμένοις μαχόμενοι καὶ τρόπῳ οὐδενὶ εἴκουσι,
 καὶ ἵπποις ἐγκελευόμενοι ὥς ἥκιστα ἐπαίου-
 σιν. ἀποκρουσθέντες τε τὴν πρώτην ὀπίσω
 20 ἐχώρουν. καὶ αὖθις ἀποπειρασάμενοι καὶ ταῦτὰ
 πάσχοντες ἀνεπόδιζον. πολλάκις τε οὕτως ἀπαλ-
 λάξαντες οὐκέτι ἠνώχλουν, ἀλλ' ἐτέραν ἱλὴν
 21 Τουτίλας ἐς τὸ ἔργον τοῦτο ἀντικαθίστη. ὦνπερ
 ὁμοίως τοῖς προτέροις ἀπαλλαγέντων ἕτεροι ἐς
 τὴν πρᾶξιν καθίσταντο. πολλὰς τε ἱλας ὁ
 Τουτίλας οὕτως ἀμείψας ἐπὶ πάσαις τε ἄπρακτος
 γεγυνώς εἶτα ἀπέειπεν.
- 22 Οἳ μὲν οὖν πεντήκοντα κλέος ὑπὲρ ἀρετῆς ἀπή-
 νεγκαν¹ μέγα, δύο δὲ αὐτῶν διαφερόντως ἐν τῷ
 πόνῳ τούτῳ ἠρίστευσαν, Παῦλός τε καὶ Ἀνσίλας,
 οἳ δὴ ἐκπεπηδηκότες τῆς φάλαγγος δήλωσιν
 23 ἀρετῆς μάλιστα πάντων πεποιήνται. τοὺς μὲν γὰρ
 ἀκινάκας σπασάμενοι κατέθεντο εἰς τὸ ἔδαφος,
 τὰ δὲ τόξα ἐντεινάμενοι ἔβαλλον ἐπικαιριώτατα
 24 στοχαζόμενοι τῶν πολεμίων. καὶ πολλοὺς μὲν
 ἄνδρας, πολλοὺς δὲ ἵππους διεχρήσαντο, ἕως ἔτι
 εἶχον τοὺς ἀτράκτους αὐτοῖς αἱ φαρέτραι. ἐπειδὴ
 δὲ ἅπαντα αὐτοὺς τὰ βέλη ἤδη ἐπιλελοίπει, οἳ δὲ
 τά τε ξίφη ἀνελόμενοι καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας προ-
 βεβλημένοι κατὰ μόνας τοὺς ἐπιόντας ἡμύνοντο.

¹ ἀπήνεγκαν Braun ὑπήνεγκαν MSS.

their assailants; and they purposely made a din with their shields, terrifying the horses, on the one hand, by this means, and the men, on the other, with the points of their spears. And the horses became excited, because they were greatly troubled both by the rough ground and by the din of the shields, and also because they could not get through anywhere, while the men at the same time were gradually worn out, fighting as they were with men packed so closely together and not giving an inch of ground, and trying to manage horses that did not in the least obey their urging. So they were repulsed in the first attack and rode back. And a second time they made the attempt and retired with the same experience. Then, after failing thus many times, they no longer continued the attack, but Totila substituted another troop for this work. And when they failed as their predecessors had, still others undertook the task. So after Totila had in this way sent in many troops and had accomplished nothing with all of them, he finally gave up.

Thus the fifty won great renown for valour, but two of them distinguished themselves particularly in this action, Paulus and Ansilas, who had leaped out from the phalanx and made a display of valour surpassing all others. For they drew their swords and laid them on the ground, and then stretched their bows and kept shooting with a most telling aim at the enemy. And they destroyed many men and many horses as well, as long as their quivers still held arrows. At length, when their missiles had now entirely failed them, seizing their swords and holding their shields before them, all by themselves they ward off the assailants. And whenever any

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 25 ἐπειδάν τε ἱππευόμενοι τῶν ἐναντίων τινὲς ξὺν τοῖς δόρασιν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ῥοιεν, οἱ δὲ τοῖς ξίφεσι παίοντες ἀπεκαύλιζον τῶν δοράτων εὐθύς τὰς
- 26 αἰχμὰς. πολλάκις δὲ αὐτῶν οὕτω δὴ ἀναστελλόντων τὰς τῶν πολεμίων ἐπιδρομὰς ξυνηνέχθη τὸ θατέρου ξίφος (ἦν δὲ οὗτος ἀνὴρ Παῦλος ὀνόματι) συγκεκάμφθαι¹ τῇ ἐς τὰ ξύλα συνεχεῖ τομῇ καὶ τὸ παράπαν ἀχρεῖον εἶναι. ὅπερ²
- 27 αὐτίκα μὲν προσουδίζει χαμαί, χερσὶ δὲ ἀμφοτέραις ἐπιλαβόμενος τῶν δοράτων ἀφηρεῖτο τοὺς ἐπιόντας. τέτταρά τε δόρατα οὕτω τοὺς πολεμίους διαφανῶς ἀφελόμενος αἰτιώτατος γέγονε
- 28 τοῦ τὴν πρᾶξιν αὐτοὺς ἀπογνῶναι. διὸ δὴ αὐτὸν ὑπασπιστὴν αὐτοῦ ἴδιον ἀπὸ τοῦ ἔργου τούτου Ναρσῆς τὸ λοιπὸν κατεστήσατο.

XXX

Ταῦτα μὲν οὖν τῇδε κεχώρηκεν. ἑκάτεροι δὲ παρεσκευάζοντο εἰς παράταξιν. καὶ Ναρσῆς τὸ στράτευμα ἐν χώρῳ ὀλίγῳ ξυναγαγὼν τοιάδε παρεκελεύσατο· “Τοῖς μὲν ἐξ ἀντιπάλου τῆς δυνάμεως ἐς ἀγωνίαν τοῖς πολεμίοις καθιστάμενοις παρακελεύσεώς τε ἂν ἴσως δεήσῃε πολλῆς καὶ παραινέσεως ἐς τὴν³ προθυμίαν ὁρμώσης, ὅπως δὴ ταύτῃ τῶν ἐναντίων πλεονεκτοῦντες κατὰ νοῦν μάλιστα τῆς παρατάξεως ἀπαλλάξωσιν ὑμῖν δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες, οἷς καὶ τῇ ἀρετῇ καὶ τῷ πλήθει καὶ τῇ ἄλλῃ παρασκευῇ πάσῃ πολλῷ τῷ διαλλάσσοντι πρὸς καταδεεστέρους ἢ μάχῃ

¹ συγκεκάμφθαι Hoeschel τῷ συγκεκάμφθαι MSS

² ὅπερ Hoeschel ὅσπερ MSS

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxix. 25-xxx. 1

of their opponents on horseback came at them with their spears, they immediately broke off the heads of the spears with a blow of their swords. But after they had in this manner checked the onrushes of the enemy many times, it came about that the sword of one of them (this was Paulus) was bent double by the frequent cutting of the wooden shafts and so was utterly useless. This then he immediately threw on the ground, and seizing the spears with both hands he would wrench them from his assailants. And by wrenching four spears from the enemy in this way in the sight of all he made himself the chief cause of their abandoning their attempt. Wherefore, in consequence of the exploit, Narses made him a personal guard of his own from that time on.

XXX

SUCH was the progress of these events. Both armies now prepared for action. And Narses gathered his army in a small space and exhorted them as follows. "When an army is entering the combat with its strength evenly matched with that of the enemy, a long speech of exhortation and encouragement would perhaps be necessary of the sort which would inspire the men with ardour, in order that, being superior to the enemy in this respect they might find the issue of the combat wholly what they wish. But in your case, my men, you who have to fight against an army vastly inferior to you in valour, in numbers, and in every sort of equipment besides, I think nothing

³ ἐς τήν Haury : τήν MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

ἐστίν,¹ οὐδὲν ἄλλο προσδεῖν οἶομαι ἢ τῷ θεῷ
 2 ἴλεω ἐς ξυμβολὴν τήνδε καθίστασθαι. εὐχῇ
 τοίνυν αὐτὸν ἐνδελεχέστατα ἐς ξυμμαχίαν ἐπα-
 γόμενοι πολλῷ τῷ καταφρονήματι ἐπὶ τούτων
 δὴ τῶν ληστῶν τὴν ἐπικράτησιν ἴεσθε, οἳ γε
 δοῦλοι βασιλέως τοῦ μεγάλου τὸ ἐξ ἀρχῆς ὄντες
 καὶ δραπεταὶ γεγεννημένοι τύραννόν τε αὐτοῖς
 ἀγελαῖόν τινα ἐκ τοῦ συρφετοῦ προστησάμενοι
 ἐπικλοπώτερον συνταράξαι τὴν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχὴν
 3 ἐπὶ καιροῦ τινὸς ἴσχυσαν. καίτοι τούτους γε
 ἡμῶν οὐδὲ ἀντιπαρατάσσεσθαι νῦν τὰ εἰκότα
 4 λογιζομένους ὑπώπτευσεν ἄν τις. οἱ δὲ θράσει
 θανατῶντες ἀλογίστῳ τινὶ καὶ μανιώδῃ προ-
 πέτειαν ἐνδεικνύμενοι προὔπτον αὐτοῖς θάνατον
 ἀναιρεῖσθαι τολμῶσιν, οὐ προβεβλημένοι τὴν
 ἀγαθὴν ἐλπίδα, οὐδὲ τί ἐπιγενήσεται σφίσιν
 αὐτοῖς ἐκ τοῦ παραλόγου καὶ τοῦ παραδόξου
 καραδοκοῦντες, ἀλλὰ πρὸς τοῦ θεοῦ διαρρήδην
 ἐπὶ τὰς ποινὰς τῶν πεπολιτευμένων ἀγόμενοι.
 ὦν γὰρ ἄνωθέν τι κατεγνώσθη παθεῖν, χωροῦσιν
 5 ἐπὶ τὰς τιμωρίας αὐτόματοι. χωρὶς δὲ τούτων
 ὑμεῖς μὲν πολιτείας εὐνόμου προκινδυνεύοντες
 καθίστασθε εἰς ξυμβολὴν τήνδε, οἱ δὲ νεωτερί-
 ζουσιν ἐπὶ τοῖς νόμοις ζυγομαχοῦντες, οὐ παρα-
 πέμψειν τι τῶν ὑπαρχόντων ἐς διαδόχους προσ-
 δοκῶντές τινας, ἀλλ' εὖ εἰδότες ὡς συναπολείται
 αὐτοῖς ἅπαντα καὶ μετ' ἐφημέρου βιοτεύουσι τῆς
 6 ἐλπίδος. ὥστε καταφρονεῖσθαι τὰ μάλιστα
 εἰσιν ἄξιοι. τῶν γὰρ οὐ νόμῳ καὶ ἀγαθῇ πολι-
 τεύει ξυνισταμένων ἀπολέλειπται μὲν ἀρετὴ πᾶσα,

¹ ἐστίν Hoeschel. om MSS.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxx. 1-6

further is necessary than that we enter this engagement with God propitious to us. Do you, then, invoke His alliance with unceasing prayer, and so fare forth with great contempt to achieve the overthrow of these robbers, who, being originally slaves of the great emperor and then turning fugitives and setting a tyrant over themselves who was a worthless fellow from the common rabble, have been able for a certain season to work havoc in the Roman empire by their thievish actions. And yet one would have supposed that these men would not even have arrayed themselves against us now, if they had considered the probabilities. Yet they are playing a desperate game with an irrational sort of boldness and displaying the rashness of frenzy, and in this spirit they dare to embrace a death which obviously awaits them, not shielding themselves by a reasonable hope, nor even looking forward to see what will fall to their lot through a strange and unexpected turn of events, but being indisputably led on by God to the punishment earned by their administration of the state. For such men as have been condemned to suffer by the powers above move on to their punishment unaided. But aside from this, while you for your part are entering this combat in defence of a lawful government, they are in revolt against the laws and fighting a battle of desperation, not expecting to transmit anything they hold to any successors, but well assured that it will all perish with them and that the hope on which they live is ephemeral. Consequently they deserve thoroughly to be despised. For those who are not organized under law and good government are bereft of all virtue, and the victory, naturally, is

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

διακέκριται δέ, ὥς τὸ εἶκός, ἡ νίκη, οὐκ εἰωθυῖα
7 ταῖς ἀρεταῖς ἀντιτάσσεσθαι.” τοιαύτην μὲν ὁ
Ναρσῆς τὴν παρακέλευσιν ἐποιήσατο.

Καὶ Τουτίλας δὲ τεθηπότας τὴν Ῥωμαίων
στρατιὰν τοὺς οἱ ἐπομένους ὁρῶν ξυγκαλέσας
καὶ αὐτὸς ἅπαντας ἔλεξε τάδε. “Τστάτην ὑμῖν
8 παραίνεσιν ποιησόμενος ἐνταῦθα ὑμᾶς, ἄνδρες
ξυστρατιῶται, ξυνήγαγον ἄλλης γάρ, οἶμαι,
παρακελεύσεως μετὰ τήνδε τὴν ξυμβολὴν οὐκέτι
δεήσει, ἀλλὰ τὸν πόλεμον ἐς ἡμέραν μίαν ἀπο-
9 κεκρίσθαι ξυμβήσεται πάντως. οὕτω γὰρ ἡμᾶς
τε καὶ βασιλέα Ἰουστινιανὸν ἐκνευρίσθαι τε-
τύχηκε καὶ περιηρῆσθαι δυνάμεις ἀπάσας, πόνους
τε καὶ μάχαις καὶ ταλαιπωρίαις ὠμληκότας ἐπὶ
χρόνου παμμέγεθες μῆκος, ἀπειρηκέναι τε πρὸς
τὰς τοῦ πολέμου ἀνάγκας, ὥστε, ἣν τῇ ξυμβολῇ
τῇ νῦν τῶν ἐναντίων περιεσόμεθα, οὐδαμῶς ἀνα-
ποδιεῖν τὸ λοιπὸν ἔξουσιν, ἣν δὲ ἡμεῖς τι προσ-
πταίσωμεν ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ, ἐλπίς οὐδεμία εἰς
τὸ ἀναμαχήσεσθαι λελείψεται Γότθοις, ἀλλὰ
τὴν ἥσαν ἑκατέροις σκῆψιν ἐς τὴν ἡσυχίαν
10 εὐπρόσωπον διαρκῶς ἔξομεν. ἀπολέγοντες γὰρ
ἄνθρωποι πρὸς τῶν πραγμάτων τὰ πονηρότατα
ἐς αὐτὰ ἐπανιέναι οὐκέτι τολμῶσιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ
σφόδρα ἴσως διωθουμένης αὐτοὺς¹ ἐπὶ ταῦτα
τῆς χρείας ταῖς γνώμαις ἀναχαιτίζονται, δεδισσο-
μένης αὐτοῖς τὰς ψυχὰς τῆς τῶν κακῶν μνήμης.
11 τοσαῦτα, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀκηκοότες ἀνδραγαθίζεσθε
μὲν τῷ παντὶ σθένει, μηδεμίαν ἐς ἄλλον τινὰ
χρόνον ἀποτιθέμενοι τῆς ψυχῆς ἀρετὴν, ταλαι-
πωρεῖσθε δὲ ἀλκῇ τῇ πάσῃ, μηδὲ τὸ σῶμα
12 ταμιευόμενοι ἐς κίνδυνον ἄλλον. ὅπλων δὲ ὑμῖν

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII xxx. 6-12

already decided; for victory is not accustomed to range itself against the virtues" Such was the exhortation which Narses made.

And Totila likewise, seeing his men in abject terror of the Roman army, called them all together and spoke as follows: "Fellow-soldiers, I have brought you together here with the purpose of making a final exhortation. For no other admonition will, I believe, be necessary after this battle, but the result will certainly be that the war will be decided on one day. For so thoroughly have both we and the Emperor Justinian become exhausted and stripped of all power through being subjected to toils and battles and hardships for an exceedingly long time, and so completely have we found ourselves unable to meet the demands of the war, that, if we shall overcome our opponents in this present engagement, they will be utterly unable to come back in the future, while if we meet with any reverse in this battle, no hope will be left the Goths of renewing the fight, but either side will have in defeat a thoroughly sufficient excuse for inaction. For when men once give up the fight against overwhelming obstacles, they no longer have the courage to return to them, but even when they are perhaps strongly impelled to do so by actual need, their hearts rebel, for the memory of their failure makes their spirit quail. Having heard this, my men, play the brave part with all your might, without holding any fighting power in reserve for some other occasion, and put your whole strength into the struggle without trying to save your bodies for another danger. And let there be on your part

¹ αὐτοὺς A αὐτῆς V

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- γινέσθω καὶ ἵππων μηδεμία¹ φειδώ, ὥς οὐκέτι
 χρησίμων ἐσομένων ὑμῖν. ἅπαντα γὰρ προ-
 κατατρίψασα τὰ ἄλλα ἡ τύχη, μόνην τῆς ἐλπίδος
 τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν ἡμέραν ἐφύλαξε ταύτην
 13 τὴν εὐψυχίαν τοίνυν ἀσκέετε καὶ πρὸς εὐτολμίαν
 παρασκευάζεσθε. οἷς γὰρ ἐπὶ τριχὸς ἡ ἐλπίς,
 ὥσπερ τανὺν ὑμῖν, ἔστηκεν, οὐδὲ χρόνου τινὰ
 βραχυτάτην ῥοπὴν ἀναπεπτωκέναι ξυνοίσει.
 14 παρελθλυθείας γὰρ τῆς ἀκμῆς τοῦ καιροῦ ἀνόνη-
 τος ἡ σπουδὴ τὸ λοιπὸν γίνεται, καὶ διαφερόντως
 ὑπέρογκος ἦ, οὐκ ἐνδεχομένης τῶν πραγμάτων
 τῆς φύσεως ἀρετὴν ἔωλον, ἐπεὶ παρελθούσης τῆς
 χρείας ἔξωρα καὶ τὰ ἐπιγινόμενα ἐπάναγκες
 15 εἶναι. οἷμαι τοίνυν προσήκειν ὑμᾶς ἐπικαιριώ-
 τατα ἐν ἔργῳ λαβεῖν τὴν ἀγώνισιν, ὥς ἂν δυνη-
 σεσθε καὶ τοῖς ἀπ' αὐτῆς ἀγαθοῖς χρῆσθαι.
 ἐξεπίστασθέ τε ὡς ἐν τῷ παρόντι² ἀξιώλεθρος
 16 μάλιστα ἡ φυγὴ γίνεται. φεύγουσι γὰρ ἄνθρω-
 ποι λιπόντες τὴν τάξιν οὐκ ἄλλου του ἔνεκα ἢ
 ὅπως βιώσονται· ἦν δὲ θάνατον ἡ φυγὴ προὔπτον
 ἐπάγεσθαι μέλλῃ, ὁ τὸν κίνδυνον ὑποστὰς τοῦ
 φυγόντος πολλῶ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ ἔσται.
 17 τοῦ δὲ τῶν πολεμίων ὁμίλου ὑπερφρονεῖν ἄξιον,
 ἐξ ἐθνῶν ξυνειλεγμένων ὅτι μάλιστα πλείστων.
 ξυμμαχία γὰρ πολλαχόθεν ἐρανισθεῖσα οὔτε τὴν
 πίστιν οὔτε τὴν δύναμιν ἀσφαλῆ φέρεται, ἀλλὰ
 σχιζομένη τοῖς γένεσι μερίζεται καὶ ταῖς γνώμαις
 18 εἰκότως. μηδὲ γὰρ οἶεσθε Οὐννοὺς τε καὶ Λαγγο-
 βάρδας καὶ Ἑρούλους ποτέ, χρημάτων αὐτοῖς
 μεμισθωμένους οὐκ οἶδα ὁπόσων, προκινδυνεύσειν

¹ μηδεμία Haury οὐδεμία MSS

² παρόντι Maltietus παρόντι ὡς MSS.

no sparing of arms or of horses, for they will never again be useful to you. For fortune, having demolished everything else, has preserved only the ultimate hope for this day. Tune your hearts, then, to a high courage, and make ready for deeds of noble daring. For when hope hangs by a thread, as it now does with you, the only safe course will be not to lose courage for the briefest moment of time. For after the point of the crisis has passed, zeal becomes for ever worthless, even though it be of an altogether immoderate sort, since the nature of things has no place for valour after the event, for once the need has passed, everything which follows must necessarily be too late. I believe, then, that you should enter the struggle making the best use of every opportunity which presents itself in action, so that you may be enabled also to enjoy the benefits to come from it. And you understand well that in the present situation he who flees thoroughly deserves his own destruction. For men abandon their post and flee for no other reason than that they may live, but if flight can be seen to involve the death of the fugitive, he who faces the danger will be in much greater safety than the man who flees. But the vast number of the enemy is worthy only to be despised, seeing that they present a collection of men from the greatest possible number of nations. For an alliance which is patched together from many sources gives no firm assurance of either loyalty or power, but being split up in nationality it is naturally divided likewise in purpose. And do not think that Huns and Lombards and Eruli, hired by them with I know not how much money, will ever endanger themselves for them to

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 19 αὐτῶν ἄχρι ἐς θάνατον. οὐ γὰρ οὕτως αὐτοῖς ἡ
 ψυχὴ ἄτιμος¹ ὥστε καὶ ἀργυρίου τὰ δευτερεῖα
 παρ' αὐτοῖς φέρεσθαι, ἀλλ' εὖ οἶδα ὡς μάχεσθαι
 τὰ ἐς τὴν ὄψιν ποιούμενοι ἐθελοκακῆσουσιν
 αὐτίκα δὴ μάλα, ἢ κεκομισμένοι τὴν μίσθωσιν,
 ἢ τὴν ἐπίταξιν ὑποτετελεκότες τῶν ἐν σφίσιν
 20 ἀρχόντων. τοῖς γὰρ ἀνθρώποις καὶ τὰ τῶν
 πραγμάτων τερπνότατα δοκοῦντα εἶναι μὴ ὅτι
 πολέμια, ἣν μὴ κατὰ γνώμην αὐτοῖς πράσσεται,
 ἀλλὰ βιασθεῖσιν ἢ μισθαρνήσασιν ἢ ἄλλῳ τῷ
 ἀναγκασθεῖσιν, οὐκέτι αὐτοῖς² ἐπὶ τὸ καταθύ-
 μιον ἀποκεκρίσθαι ξυμβήσεται, ἀλλὰ τῷ ἀναγ-
 καίῳ μοχθηρὰ φαίνεται. ὧν ἐνθυμηθέντες
 προθυμίᾳ τῇ πάσῃ ὁμόσε τοῖς πολεμίοις
 χωρήσωμεν.”

XXXI

- Τοσαῦτα μὲν οὖν καὶ ὁ Τουτίλας εἶπε. τὰ δὲ
 στρατεύματα ἐς μάχην ξυνήει καὶ ἐτάξαντο ὧδε.
 μετωπηδὸν μὲν ἀμφοτέρωθεν ἅπαντες ἕστησαν,
 ὡς βαθύτατόν τε καὶ περίμηκες τῆς φάλαγγος
 2 τὸ μέτωπον ποιησόμενοι. τῶν δὲ Ῥωμαίων κέρας
 μὲν τὸ ἀριστερὸν Ναρσῆς τε καὶ Ἰωάννης ἀμφὶ
 τὸ γεώλοφον εἶχον καὶ ξὺν αὐτοῖς εἴ τι ἄριστον
 3 ἐν τῷ Ῥωμαίων στρατῷ ἐτύγχανεν ὄν· ἐκατέρῳ
 γὰρ τῶν ἄλλων χωρὶς στρατιωτῶν, δορυφόρων
 τε καὶ ὑπασπιστῶν καὶ βαρβάρων Οὐννων εἶπετο
 4 πλῆθος ἀριστίνδην συνειλεγμένων· κατὰ δὲ³
 δεξιὸν Βαλεριανὸς τε καὶ Ἰωάννης ὁ Φαγᾶς σὺν
 τῷ Δαγισθαίῳ καὶ οἱ κατάλοιποι Ῥωμαῖοι ἐτά-

¹ ἄτιμος Hoeschel in margin ἄτιμον MSS.

the point of death For life with them is not so cheap as to take second place to silver in their estimation, but I well know that after making an appearance of fighting they will desert with all speed, either because they have received their pay, or as carrying out the orders of their own commanders For even things that seem most delightful,—to say nothing of what happens in war—if they do not turn out in accordance with men's wishes, but if they are forced or hired or subject to any other compulsion, then such things will come no longer to be accounted pleasant, but by reason of the compulsion appear detestable. Remembering these things let us with all enthusiasm engage with the enemy."

XXXI

Thus then spoke Totila And the armies drew together for battle and arrayed themselves as follows. All the forces in each army took their stand facing the enemy, making the phalanx as deep as possible and the front very long And the Roman left wing was held by Narses and John near the hill, and with them was the flower of the Roman army, for each of them had, apart from the other soldiers, a great following of spearmen and guards and barbarian Huns, all chosen for their valour; and on the right were arrayed Valerian and John the Glutton along with Dagisthaeus and all the rest

² αὐτοῖς Hoeschel αὐτοῦς MSS

³ κατὰ δέ Hauvy κατὰ MSS.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 5 ξαντο πάντες. πεζοὺς μέντοι τοξότας ἐκ τῶν καταλόγου στρατιωτῶν ὀκτακισχιλίους μάλιστα ἔστησαν ἐς ἄμφω τὰ κέρα. κατὰ δὲ τὰ μέσα¹ τῆς φάλαγγος τοὺς τε Λαγγοβάρδας καὶ τὸ Ἑρούλων ἔθνος καὶ πάντας τοὺς ἄλλους βαρβάρους ὁ Ναρσῆς ἔταξεν, ἐκ τε τῶν ἵππων ἀποβιβάσας καὶ πεζοὺς εἶναι καταστησάμενος, ὅπως ἂν μὴ κακοὶ ἐν τῷ ἔργῳ γενόμενοι ἢ ἐθέλοκακοῦντες, ἂν οὕτω τύχῃ, ἐς ὑπαγωγὴν² ὀξύτεροι
- 6 εἶεν. τὸ μέντοι πέρας κέρως τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν Ῥωμαίων μετώπου Ναρσῆς ἐγγώνιον κατεστήσατο, πεντακοσίους τε καὶ χιλίους ἵππεῖς ἐνταῦθα
- 7 στήσας. προεῖρητο δὲ τοῖς μὲν πεντακοσίοις,³ ἐπειδὴν τάχιστα τῶν Ῥωμαίων τισὶ τραπήναι ξυμβαίῃ, ἐπιβοηθεῖν αὐτοῖς⁴ ἐν σπουδῇ, τοῖς δὲ χιλίοις, ὁπηνίκα οἱ τῶν πολεμίων πεζοὶ ἔργου ἄρχωνται, κατόπισθέν τε αὐτῶν αὐτίκα γενέσθαι
- 8 καὶ ἀμφιβόλους ποιήσασθαι. καὶ ὁ Τουτίλας δὲ τρόπῳ τῷ αὐτῷ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἀντίαν τὴν στρατιὰν ξύμπασαν ἔστησε. καὶ περιὼν τὴν οἰκίαν παράταξιν τοὺς στρατιώτας παρεθράσυνέ τε καὶ παρεκάλει ἐς εὐτολμίαν προσώπῳ καὶ λόγῳ
- 9 καὶ ὁ Ναρσῆς δὲ ταῦτο τοῦτο ἐποίει, ψέλλιά τε καὶ στρεπτοὺς καὶ χαλινοὺς χρυσοὺς ἐπὶ κοντῶν μετεωρίσας καὶ ἄλλα ἅττα τῆς ἐς τὸν κίνδυνον προθυμίας ὑπεκκαύματα ἐνδεικνύμενος.
- 10 χρόνον δέ τινα μάχης οὐδέτεροι ἦρχον, ἀλλ' ἡσυχῇ ἀμφοτέρωτεροι ἔμενον, προσδεχόμενοι τὴν τῶν ἐναντίων ἐπίθεσιν.
- 11 Μετὰ δὲ εἰς ἐκ τοῦ Γότθων στρατοῦ, Κόκκας.

¹ τὰ κέρα κατὰ δὲ τὰ μέσα Haury τὰ καὶ τὰδε τὰ μέσα MSS, τὰ κέρα κατὰ μέσα δέ Biau

of the Romans Furthermore, they placed on both wings about eight thousand unmounted bowmen from the regular troops But at the centre of the phalanx Narses had placed the Lombards and the nation of the Eruli and all the other barbarians, causing them to dismount from their horses and making them infantry, in order that, if it should chance that they turned cowards in the engagement or deserted, they might not be too eager to fly. Now Narses had set the extreme left wing of the Roman front at an angle, placing fifteen hundred cavalry there And the instructions previously given provided that the five hundred, on the one hand, should rush to the rescue the moment that any of the Romans chanced to be driven back, while the thousand, at the moment when the enemy's infantry began action, were to get behind them immediately and thus place them between two forces And Totila arrayed his army in the same way opposite his enemy Then going along his own battle-line he kept encouraging his soldiers with voice and expression and urging them to boldness Narses likewise did the same thing, holding in the an bracelets and necklaces and golden bridles on poles and displaying certain other incentives to bravery in the coming struggle For some time, however, neither army began battle, but both remained quiet awaiting the assault of their opponents

But later on one man of the Gothic army named

² ἡπαγωγὴν Maltretus ὑποταγὴν MSS

³ πεντακοσίους Maltretus πεντακοσίοις τε καὶ χιλίοις MSS.

⁴ αὐτοῖς Hoeschel αὐτοὺς MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ὄνομα, δόξαν ἐπὶ τῷ δραστηρίῳ διαρκῶς ἔχων,
 τὸν ἵππον ἐξελάσας, ἄγχιστα ἦλθε τοῦ Ῥωμαίων
 στρατοῦ, προῦκαλεῖτό τε, εἴ τις οἱ βούλοιοτο
 12 πρὸς μονομαχίαν ἐπεξιέναι. ὁ δὲ Κόκκας οὗτος
 εἷς τῶν Ῥωμαίων στρατιωτῶν ἐτύγχανεν ὢν τῶν
 παρὰ Τουτίλαν ἀπηυτομοληκότων τὰ πρότερα.
 13 καὶ οἱ αὐτίκα τῶν τις Ναρσοῦ δορυφόρων ἀντίος
 ἔσθη, Ἀρμένιος γένος, Ἀνζαλᾶς ὄνομα, καὶ αὐτὸς
 14 ἵππῳ ὀχούμενος. ὁ μὲν οὖν Κόκκας ὀρμήσας
 πρῶτος ὡς τῷ δόρατι παίσων ἐπὶ τὸν πολέμιον
 15 ἔετο, καταστοχαζόμενος τῆς ἐκείνου γαστροῦς. ὁ
 δ' Ἀνζαλᾶς ἐξαπιναίως τὸν ἵππον ἐκκλίνας
 ἀνόνητον αὐτὸν κατεστήσατο γενέσθαι τῆς
 οἰκείας ὀρμῆς. ταύτη τε αὐτὸς ἐκ πλαγίου τοῦ
 πολεμίου γενόμενος ἐς πλευρὰν αὐτοῦ τὴν ἀρις-
 16 τερὰν τὸ δόρυ ὤσε. καὶ ὁ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ ἵππου
 πεσὼν ἐς τὸ ἔδαφος νεκρὸς ἔκειτο· κραυγὴ δὲ
 ἀπὸ τοῦ Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ ὑπερφυχῆς ἦρθη, οὐδ'
 ὥς μέντοι μάχης τινὸς οὐδέτεροι ἦρξαν.
 17 Τουτίλας δὲ μόνος ἐν μεταίχμιῳ ἐγένετο, οὐ
 μονομαχήσων, ἀλλὰ τὸν καιρὸν τοῖς ἐναντίοις
 τοῦτον¹ ἐκκρούσων. Γότθων γὰρ τοὺς ἀπολει-
 πομένους δισχιλίους ἄγχιστά πη προσιέναι
 μαθὼν ἀπετίθετο ἐς τὴν αὐτῶν παρουσίαν τὴν
 18 ξυμβολήν, ἐποίει δὲ τάδε. πρῶτα μὲν οὐκ
 ἀπηξίου τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐνδείκνυσθαι ὅστις ποτὲ
 εἴη. τὴν τε γὰρ τῶν ὅπλων σκευὴν κατακόρως
 τῷ χρυσῷ κατελλημμένην ἡμπίσχετο καὶ τῶν οἱ
 φαλάρων ὁ κόσμος ἐκ τε τοῦ πίλου καὶ τοῦ
 δόρατος ἀλουργός τε καὶ ἄλλως βασιλικὸς ἀπε-

¹ τοῖς ἐναντίοις τοῦτον editors, after τοῦτον τοῖς ἐναντίοις
 Suidas τοὺς ἐναντίους τοῦτον MSS

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. XXXI. 11-18

Coccas, who had a great reputation as an active fighter, rode his horse out and came close to the Roman army and uttered a challenge, if anyone was willing to come forth against him in single combat. Now this Coccas happened to be one of the Roman soldiers who had previously deserted to Totila. And immediately one of the spearmen of Naises stood forth against him, a man of Armenian birth named Anzalas, who was likewise mounted on a horse. Coccas then made the first rush and charged his foe in order to smite him with his spear, aiming the weapon at his belly. But Anzalas, by suddenly turning his horse aside, caused the charge of his enemy to be futile. By this manœuvre he was placed on his enemy's flank and he now thrust his spear into his left side. And Coccas fell from his horse to the ground and lay there a dead man. Whereupon a tremendous shout arose from the Roman army, but even then neither side began any fighting.

But Totila now went alone into the space between the armies, not in order to engage in single combat, but in order to prevent his opponents from using the present opportunity. For he had learned that the two thousand Goths who had been missing were now drawing near, and so he sought to put off the engagement until their arrival by doing as follows. First of all, he was not at all reluctant to make an exhibition to the enemy of what manner of man he was. For the armour in which he was clad was abundantly plated with gold and the ample adornments which hung from his cheek-plates as well as from his helmet and spear were not only of purple

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 19 κρέματο θαυμαστός ὅσος. καὶ αὐτὸς ὑπερφυεῖ
 ὀχούμενος ἵππῳ παιδιὰν ἐν μεταίχμιῳ ἔπαιζε τὴν
 ἐνόπλιον ἐπισταμένως¹ τὸν τε γὰρ ἵππον ἐν
 κύκλῳ περιελίσσων, ἐπὶ θάτερα τέ ἀναστρέφων
 20 αὐθις κυκλοτερεῖς πεποίητο δρόμους. καὶ ἵππευό-
 μενος μεθίει ταῖς αὐραῖς τὸ δόρυ, ἀπ' αὐτῶν τε
 κραδαινόμενον ἀρπασάμενος εἴτα ἐκ χειρὸς ἐς
 χεῖρα παραπέμπων συχνὰ ἐφ' ἐκάτερα, ² καὶ
 μεταβιβάζων ἐμπείρως, ἐφιλοτιμεῖτο τῇ ἐς τὰ
 τοιαῦτα μελέτῃ, ὑπτιάζων καὶ ἰσχιάζων καὶ πρὸς
 ἐκάτερα ἐγκλινόμενος, ὥσπερ ἐκ παιδὸς ἀκριβῶς
 21 τὰ ἐς τὴν ὀρχήστραν δεδιδαγμένος. ταῦτά τε
 ποιῶν πᾶσαν κατέτριψε τὴν δειλὴν πρωίαν.
 ἐπὶ πλεῖστον δὲ τὴν τῆς μάχης ἀναβολὴν μη-
 κύνειν ἐθέλων ἔπεμψεν ἐς τὸ Ῥωμαίων στρατό-
 πεδον, φάσκων ἐθέλειν αὐτοῖς ἐς λόγους³ ξυμμίξαι.
 Ναρσῆς δὲ φενακίζειν αὐτὸν ἰσχυρίζετο, εἴ γε
 πολεμῆσειν τὰ πρότερα, ἡνίκα τοῦ προτείνεσθαι
 λόγους ἐξουσία εἴη, νῦν ἐν μεταίχμιῳ γενόμενος
 ἐς τοὺς διαλόγους χωροίη.

XXXII

- Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ Γότθοις καὶ οἱ δισχιλίοι ἤκου-
 οῦσπερ ἐς τὸ χαράκωμα Τουτίλας ἀφικέσθαι
 μαθὼν, ἐπειδὴ καὶ ὁ καιρὸς ἐς ἄριστον ἦγεν,
 αὐτὸς τε ἐς σκηνὴν τὴν οἰκείαν ἐχώρησε καὶ
 Γότθοι διαλύσαντες τὴν παράταξιν ὀπίσω ἀνέ-
 2 στρεφον. ἐν δὲ τῇ καταλύσει τῇ αὐτοῦ γεγωνὼς
 Τουτίλας τοὺς δισχιλίους ἤδη παρόντας εὖρε.

¹ ἐπισταμένως Hoeschel ἐπιστάμενος MSS

but in other respects befitting a king, marvellous in their abundance. And he himself, sitting upon a very large horse, began to perform the dance under arms skilfully between the armies. For he wheeled his horse round in a circle and then turned him again to the other side and so made him run round and round. And as he rode he hurled his javelin into the air and caught it again as it quivered above him, then passed it rapidly from hand to hand, shifting it with consummate skill, and he gloried in his practice in such matters, falling back on his shoulders, spreading his legs and leaning from side to side, like one who has been instructed with precision in the art of dancing from childhood. By these tactics he wore away the whole early part of the day. And wishing to prolong indefinitely the postponement of the battle, he sent to the Roman army saying that he wished to confer with them. But Narses declared that he must be trifling, seeing that he had been set on fighting at the time when there was opportunity to make proposals, but now, upon reaching the battle-field, he came forward to parley.

XXXII

MEANWHILE the two thousand Goths arrived, and when Totila had learned that they had reached the stockade, seeing that it was time for the morning meal, he himself went off to his own tent and the Goths began to break up their formation and retire. And when Totila reached his quarters, he found the two thousand already present. He then commanded

² καὶ—ἐκάτερα V om A

³ ἐς λόγους Scaliger. εὐλόγως MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

τό τε ἄριστον ἅπαντας αἰρεῖσθαι κελεύσας καὶ
 τὴν τῶν ὀπλων σκευὴν μεταμφιασάμενος ἅπασαν¹
 ἐξωπλίσατο μὲν ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς ἐν στρατιωτῶν
 λόγῳ, εὐθύς δὲ τὴν στρατιὰν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους
 ἐξήγευ, ἀπροσδόκητος αὐτοῖς ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι οἰό-
 3 μενος καὶ ταύτῃ αἰρήσειν. ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὥς ἀπαρα-
 σκεύους Ῥωμαίους εὔρε. δέισας γὰρ ὁ Ναρσῆς,
 ὅπερ ἐγένετο, μὴ σφίσιν ἀπροσδοκήτοις ἐπι-
 πέσοιεν οἱ πολέμιοι, ἀπέειπεν ἅπασιν μήτε ἄριστον
 αἰρεῖσθαι μήτε ἀποδαρθεῖν μήτε μὴν ἀποθωρα-
 κίσασθαι τῶν πάντων μηδὲνα μήτε τοῦ χαλινοῦ
 4 μεθεῦναι τὸν ἵππον. οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ ἀποσίτους
 τὸ παράπαν αὐτοὺς εἶασεν, ἀλλ' ἐν τῇ τάξει καὶ
 τῇ τῶν ὀπλων σκευῇ ἀκρατισαμένους ἐκέλευσε
 διηνεκὲς οὕτως ἀποσκοποῦντας караδοκεῖν τῶν
 5 πολεμίων τὴν ἔφοδον. τρόπῳ μέντοι τῷ αὐτῷ
 οὐκέτι ἐτάξαντο, ἀλλὰ Ῥωμαίοις μὲν τὰ κέρα, ἐν
 οἷς κατὰ τετρακισχιλίους οἱ πεζοὶ τοξόται εἰστήκει-
 σαν, ἐπὶ τὸ μηνοειδὲς τοῦ Ναρσοῦ γνώμη ἐτρά-
 6 πετο. Γότθοι² δὲ οἱ πεζοὶ ἅπαντες ὀπισθεν τῶν
 ἱππέων ἀθρόοι ἴσταντο, ἐφ' ᾧ, ἦν τοῖς ἱππεῦσιν
 τραπῆναι ξυμβῆ, ἀναστρέφοντες μὲν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς
 οἱ φεύγοντες σώζοιντο, ἐπίκουνα δὲ ἀμφοτέροι³
 εὐθύς χωρήσαιεν

Προείρητο δὲ Γότθοις ἅπασιν μήτε τοξεύματι
 μήτε ἄλλῳ ὁπλοῦν ἐς συμβολὴν τήνδε ὅτι μὴ τοῖς
 7 δόρασι χρῆσθαι. διὸ δὴ Τουτίλαν πρὸς τῆς
 ἀβουλίας καταστρατηγηθῆναι τῆς αὐτοῦ ξυνη-
 νέχθη· ὃς γε καθιστάμενος ἐς τήνδε τὴν μάχην

¹ ἅπασαν de Stefani ἅπαντας MSS.

² Γότθοι V γότθοις A

³ ἀμφοτέροι Maltretus ἀμφότερα MSS

all to take their meal, and changing his entire equipment he armed himself with all care with the private soldier's equipment and led the army out straightway against his enemy, thinking that he would fall upon them unexpectedly and thus overwhelm them. But even so he did not find the Romans unprepared. For Narses had feared, as actually happened, that the enemy would fall upon them when they were not expecting it, and so he had given orders that not a single man should either sit down to lunch or go off to sleep or even remove his cuirass, nor yet take his bridle off his horse. However, he did not allow them to be altogether without food, but commanded them to eat a small meal in ranks and with their equipment on, meanwhile maintaining a sharp look-out constantly and expecting the attack of the enemy. However, they were no longer arrayed in the same formation as before, for the Roman wings, in each of which four thousand unmounted horsemen had taken their stand, were moved forward at Narses' command so as to form a crescent. But the Gothic infantry were all placed in a body in the rear of the cavalry, in order that, if the horsemen should be routed, the fugitives might fall back upon them and be saved, and all could then advance immediately together.

Now orders had been given to the entire Gothic army that they should use neither bow nor any other weapon in this battle except their spears. Consequently it came about that Totila was out-generalled by his own folly, for in entering this battle he was led, by what I do not know, to throw

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- οὐκ οἶδα ὅτῳ ἀναπεισθεὶς παρείχετο τοῖς ἐναντίοις
 τὴν αὐτοῦ στρατιὰν οὔτε τῇ ὀπλίσει ἀντίξουν
 οὔτε τῇ τάξει ἀντίρροπον οὔτε τῷ ἄλλῳ ἀντίπα-
 λον, ἐπεὶ Ῥωμαῖοι μὲν ἐκάστοις ὡς ἐπικαιρότατα
 ἦν ἐν τῷ ἔργῳ ἐχρώντο, ἢ τοξεύοντες, ἢ δόρατα
 ὠθοῦντες, ἢ ξίφη διαχειρίζοντες,¹ ἢ ἄλλο τι
 ἐνεργοῦντες τῶν σφίσι προχείρων καὶ τῷ
 παρόντι ἐπιτηδείων, οἱ μὲν ἵππευόμενοι, οἱ δὲ καὶ
 πεζῇ ἐς τὴν παράταξιν καθιστάμενοι, κατὰ τὸ τῇ
 χρεῖα ξυνοῖσον, καὶ πῇ μὲν κύκλωσιν τῶν πολε-
 μίων διαπρασσόμενοι, πῇ δὲ προσιόντας δεχόμενοι
 καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσιν ἀποκρουόμενοι τὴν ἐπίθεσιν.
- 8 οἱ δὲ τῶν Γότθων ἵππεῖς, τῶν πεζῶν σφίσιν
 ἀπολελειμμένων ὀπίσω, μόνοις θαρσοῦντες τοῖς
 δόρασιν ὀρμῇ ἀνεπισκέπτῳ ἐπῆσαν, ἔν τε τῷ
 πόνῳ γενόμενοι τῆς σφετέρως ἀβουλίας ἀπώναντο.
- 9 ἐπὶ μέσους γὰρ τοὺς πολεμίους ὀρμήσαντες
 ἔλαθον σφᾶς αὐτοὺς ἐν μέσῳ πεζῶν τῶν ὀκτα-
 κισχιλίων γενόμενοι, τοῖς τε τοξεύμασι πρὸς
 αὐτῶν βαλλόμενοι ἐκατέρωθεν ἀπέειπον εὐθύς,
 ἐπεὶ οἱ τοξόται ἄμφω τοῦ μετώπου τὰ κέρα ἐπὶ
 τὸ μνηοειδὲς κατὰ βραχὺ ἔτρεπον, ἥπέρ μοι
- 10 ἔμπροσθεν εἴρηται. πολλοὺς μὲν οὖν ἀνδρας,
 πολλοὺς δὲ ἵππους ἐν τῷ πόνῳ τούτῳ Γότθοι
 ἀπέβαλον, οὐπω τοῖς ἐναντίοις ξυμμίξαντες,
 πολλῶν τε ἀνηκέστων κακῶν ἐς πείραν ἐλθόντες
 ὀψέ τε καὶ μόλις ἐς τῶν πολεμίων ἀφίκοντο τὴν
 παράταξιν.
- 11 Ἐνταῦθα τῶν Ῥωμαίων τινὰς ἢ τῶν σφίσι ξυμ-
 μάχων βαρβάρων μᾶλλον τῶν ἄλλων θαυμάζειν
- 12 οὐκ ἔχω. μία γὰρ ἀπάντων προθυμία τε καὶ

¹ ξίφη διαχειρίζοντες V . ξιφεῖδια χειρίζοντες A

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxxii. 7-12

against his opponents his own army with inadequate equipment* and outflanked and in no respect a match for their antagonists. For the Romans, on the one hand, made use of each weapon in the fighting according to the particular need of the moment, shooting with bows or thrusting with spears or wielding swords, or using any other weapon which was convenient and suitable at a given point, some of them mounted on horses and others entering the combat on foot, their numbers proportioned to the needs of the situation, so that at one point they could carry out an encircling movement around the enemy, and at another receive a charge and with their shields stop short the attack. The cavalry of the Goths, on the other hand, leaving their infantry behind, and trusting only to their spears, made their charge with reckless impetuosity, and once in the midst of the fray they suffered for their own folly. For in making their charge against their enemy's centre they had, before they realized it, placed themselves in between the eight thousand infantry, and being raked by their bowshots from either side they gave up immediately, since the bowmen kept gradually turning both the wings of their front so as to form the crescent which I have mentioned above. Consequently the Goths lost many men as well as many horses in this phase of the encounter before they had ever engaged with their opponents, and only after they had experienced very heavy losses did they with difficulty finally reach the ranks of their enemy.

At this point I cannot admire any of the Romans or of their barbarian allies more than the others. For they all shewed a common enthusiasm and displayed

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἀρετὴ καὶ ἐναγώνισις ἦν, ἕκαστοί τε τῶν ἐναντίων
ἐπιόντων σφίσιν ὡς καρτερώτατα δεξάμενοι τὴν
13 ἐπιδρομὴν ἀπεώσαντο. ἤδη δὲ ἀμφὶ τὰ πρὸς
ἐσπέραν ἦν καὶ τὰ στρατόπεδα ἐξαπιναίως ἐκι-
νήθη ἐκάτερα, Γότθων μὲν ἐς ὑπαγωγὴν, Ῥωμαίων
14 δὲ ἐς τὴν διώξιν. ὠρμημένοις γὰρ ἐς αὐτοὺς
Γότθοι οὐκ ἀντείχον τοῖς πολεμίοις, ἀλλ' ἐνε-
δίδοσαν ἐπιόντων αὐτῶν καὶ προτροπάδην
ἀνέστρεφον, καταπεπληγμένοι αὐτῶν τῷ τε
15 ὁμίλῳ καὶ τῇ εὐκοσμῷ. ἐς ἀλκὴν τε οὐδαμῇ
ἔβλεπον, ὥσπερ φάσματα ἐπιπεσόντα σφίσιν
16 δειμαίνοντες ἢ ἐξ οὐρανοῦ πολεμούμενοι. δι'
ὀλίγου δὲ εἰς πεζοὺς αὐτοῖς τοὺς σφετέρους ἀφικο-
μένους πολλῶ ἔτι μᾶλλον τὸ κακὸν ἤρετο καὶ
7 πρόσω ἐχώρει. οὐ γὰρ ἐν κόσμῳ τὴν ἀναχώρησιν
ποιησάμενοι ἐς αὐτοὺς ἦλθον, ὡς ἀναπνεύσουντές
τε καὶ ξὺν αὐτοῖς ἀναμαχοῦμενοι, ἥπερ εἴθισται,
ἢ ὠθισμῷ τοὺς διώκοντας ἀπωσόμενοι¹ ἢ παλίω-
ξιν ἐγχειρίζοντες ἢ ἄλλην τινὰ πολέμου ιδέαν,
ἀλλ' οὕτως ἀτάκτως ὥστε αὐτῶν τισὶ καὶ διε-
φθάρθαι τῆς ἵππου ἐπιπεσούσης ξυνέπεσε.
18 διόπερ αὐτοὺς² οἱ πεζοὶ οὔτε διαστάντες ἐδέξαντο
οὔτε διασωσόμενοι ἔστησαν, ἀλλὰ ξὺν αὐτοῖς
προτροπάδην ἅπαντες ἔφευγον, ἔνθα δὲ καὶ
19 ἀλλήλους ὥσπερ ἐν νυκτομαχίᾳ διέφθειρον. ὅ
τε τῶν Ῥωμαίων στρατός, τῆς ἐκείνων ἀπο-
λαύοντες ὀρρωδίας, φειδοὶ οὐδεμιᾶ τοὺς ἐν ποσὶν
αἰεὶ ἔκτεινον, οὔτε ἀμυνομένους οὔτε ἀντιβλέπειν
τολμῶντας, ἀλλὰ σφᾶς αὐτοὺς τοῖς πολεμίοις
παρεχομένους ὅ τι βούλουντο χρῆσθαι. οὕτω δὲ

¹ ἥπερ—ἀπωσόμενοι A: om V.

the same valour and energy in action, for each of them received the enemy's attack with the utmost vigour and repulsed the assault. And it was now toward evening when each of the two armies suddenly began to move, the Goths in retreat and the Romans in pursuit. For the Goths could no longer hold out against the onslaught of their enemy, but began to give ground before their attacks, and finally turned precipitately, terrified by their great numbers and their perfect order. And they gave not a thought to resistance, being as filled with terror as if some apparitions of the air had fallen upon them or as if Heaven were warring against them. But when shortly they reached their own infantry, their misfortune was doubled and trebled. For they did not come to them in an orderly retreat, as with the purpose of recovering their breath and renewing the fight with their assistance, as is customary, indeed they had no intention either of throwing back their pursuers by a massed attack or of undertaking a counter pursuit or any other military manœuvre, but they arrived in such disorder that some of the men were actually destroyed by the onrushing cavalry. Consequently the infantry did not open intervals to receive them nor stand fast to rescue them, but they all began to flee precipitately with the cavalry, and in the rout they kept killing each other just as in a battle at night. Meanwhile the Roman army, profiting by their panic, continued to kill without mercy all who fell in their way, while their victims offered no defence nor dared look them in the face, but gave themselves up to their enemy to treat as they

² αὐτοῦς Hoeschel in margin · αὐτοῖς MSS

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

αὐτοῖς τά τε δείματα ἐπεκάθιζε καὶ ὁ φόβος ἐκράτει.

- 20 Καὶ αὐτῶν ἑξακισχίλιοι μὲν ἐν τῷ ἔργῳ τούτῳ ἀπέθανον, πολλοὶ δὲ σφᾶς αὐτοὺς ἐνεχείρισαν τοῖς ἐναντίοις. οἱ δὲ αὐτοὺς ἐν μὲν τῷ παρόντι ἐζώγησαν, οὐ πολλῶ δὲ ὕστερον ἔκτειναν. οὐ μόνον δὲ Γότθοι ἀνῆρηντο, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν παλαιῶν Ῥωμαίων στρατιωτῶν πλεῖστοι, τῶν τὸ πρότερον ἀποταξαμένων μὲν τῇ Ῥωμαίων στρατιᾷ, ἀπηντομοληκότων δέ, ἥπέρ μοι ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις
- 21 ἐρρήθη, παρὰ Τουτίλαν τε καὶ Γότθους. ὅσοις δὲ δὴ τοῦ Γότθων¹ στρατοῦ μήτε ἀπολωλέναι μήτε ὑπὸ² τῶν πολεμίων ταῖς χερσὶ ξυνηνέχθη γενέσθαι, οὗτοι διαλαθεῖν τε καὶ φυγεῖν ἴσχυσαν, ὥς αὐτῶν ἕκαστος ἵππου ἢ ποδῶν ἢ τύχης ἔσχεν ἢ καιροῦ ἢ χώρου φέροντος ἐς τοῦτο ἐπιτυχεῖν.
- 22 Ἦδε μὲν οὖν ἡ μάχη ἐς τοῦτο ἐτελεύτα καὶ ξυνεσκόταζε παντάπασιν ἤδη. Τουτίλαν δὲ φεύγοντα ἐν σκότῳ σὺν ἀνδράσιν οὐ πλέον ἢ πέντε οὖσιν, ὧν περ ὁ Σκιποῦαρ εἰς ἐτύγχανεν ὢν, τῶν τινὲς Ῥωμαίων ἐδίωκον, οὐκ εἰδότες ὡς Τουτίλας εἶη· ἐν τοῖς καὶ Ἀσβαδον τὸν Γήπαιδα
- 23 ξυνέβαινεν εἶναι ὅσπερ ἐπεὶ Τουτίλα ἀγχοτάτω ἐγένετο, ὡς τῷ δόρατι αὐτὸν κατὰ τῶν νώτων
- 24 παίσων ἐπήει. Γοτθικὸν δὲ τι μειράκιον ἐκ τῆς Τουτίλα οἰκίας φεύγοντι τῷ δεσπότῃ ἐπόμενον, τύχην τε ἀπαξιοῦν τὴν τότε παρούσαν, ἀνέκραγε μέγα· “Τί τοῦτο, ὦ κύων, τὸν δεσπότην τὸν σαυτοῦ πλήξων ὥρμηκας;” ὁ μὲν οὖν Ἀσβαδος ἐπὶ Τουτίλαν τὸ δόρυ σθένει παντὶ

¹ Γότθων Hoeschel. γότθου MSS.

wished ; so thoroughly had terror settled upon them and panic possessed them.

Six thousand of the Goths perished in this battle, while great numbers put themselves into the hands of their opponents. These the Romans for the moment made prisoners, but a little later they slew them. And not Goths alone were destroyed, but also great numbers of the old Roman soldiers who had earlier detached themselves from the Roman army and deserted, as I have told in the previous narrative,¹ to Totila and the Goths. But all the soldiers of the Gothic army who had the fortune neither to perish nor to come under the hand of their enemy were able to hide or to flee, according as each could avail himself of horse or foot or good luck so as to find opportunity for the one or a place for the other.

Such was the conclusion of this battle, and complete darkness was already settling down. But Totila was in flight through the night accompanied by not more than five men, one of whom chanced to be Scipuar, pursued by some of the Romans who did not know that he was Totila, among these was Asbadus of the Gepaedes. This man had drawn close to Totila and was charging him with the purpose of thrusting his spear into his back. But a Gothic youth of the household of Totila, who was following his fleeing master, outraged at what was taking place, cried aloud, "What is this, you dog? Are you rushing to smite your own master?" Then Asbadus thrust his spear with all his strength at

¹ Book VII xi. 7, etc

² *ὁπὸ* Haury om. MSS.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

25 ωσεν, αὐτὸς δὲ πρὸς τοῦ Σκιποῦαρ τὸν πόδα
 πληγεῖς αὐτοῦ ἔμεινε. καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ Σκιποῦαρ
 πρὸς τοῦ τῶν διωκόντων πληγεῖς ἔστη, οἳ τε
 ξὺν Ἀσβάδῳ πεπονημένοι τὴν δίωξιν, τέτταρες
 ὄντες, ὅπως αὐτὸν διασώσονται, οὐκέτι ἐδίωκον,
 26 ἀλλὰ ξὺν αὐτῷ ὀπίσω ἀνέστρεφον. οἱ δὲ τῷ
 Τουτίλᾳ ἐπισπόμενοι, διώκειν σφᾶς ἔτι τοὺς
 πολεμίους οἰόμενοι, οὐδέν τι ἥσσον πρὸσω ἤλαυ-
 νον,¹ καίπερ αὐτὸν καιρίαν πληγέντα καὶ λει-
 ποψυχούντα βεβαιότατα ἐπαγόμενοι, πρυτα-
 νευούσης αὐτοῖς² τῆς ἀνάγκης τὸν βίαιον δρόμον
 27 σταδίου δὲ ἀνύσαντες τέσσαράς τε καὶ ὀγδοή-
 κοντα ἐς χωρίον ἀφίκοντο Κάπρας ὄνομα. οὗ δὲ
 τὸ λοιπὸν ἡσυχάζοντες Τουτίλα τὴν πληγὴν
 ἐθεράπευον, ὅσπερ οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον τὸν βίον
 28 ἐξεμέτρησεν. ἐνταῦθά τε αὐτὸν οἱ ἐπισπόμενοι
 κρύψαντες τῇ γῇ ἀνεχώρησαν.

Αὕτη γέγονε Τουτίλα τῆς τε ἀρχῆς καὶ
 τοῦ βίου καταστροφή, ἔτη ἑνδεκα Γότθων ἄρξαντι,
 οὐκ ἐπαξίως ἐπιγενομένη τῶν ἔμπροσθεν αὐτῷ
 πεπραγμένων, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὰ πράγματα πρότερον
 τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ³ ἐχώρησε, καὶ τοῖς ἔργοις οὐ κατὰ
 29 λόγον ἢ τελευτῇ ἐπεγένετο ἀλλὰ καὶ νῦν ἡ
 τύχη ὥραιζομένη τε διαφανῶς καὶ διασύρουσα τὰ
 ἀνθρώπεια τό τε παράλογον τὸ αὐτῆς ἴδιον καὶ
 τὸ τοῦ βουλήματος ἀπροφάσιστον ἐπιδέδεικται,
 Τουτίλα μὲν τὴν εὐδαιμονίαν ἐξ αἰτίας οὐδεμιᾶς
 ἐπὶ χρόνου μῆκος αὐτοματίσασα, δειλίαν δὲ οὕτω
 τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ καὶ καταστροφὴν ἀπαυθαδισαμένην
 30 ἐξ οὗ προσήκόντων ἐν τῷ παρόντι. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα

¹ πρὸσω ἤλαυνον Haury : προσήλαυνον MSS

² αὐτοῖς A : αὐτῆς V

Totila, but he himself was wounded in the foot by Scipuar and remained there. And Scipuar was wounded in turn by one of the pursuers and stopped, whereupon those who had been making the pursuit with Asbadus, four in number, gave up the chase in order to save him, and turned back with him. But the escort of Totila, thinking that the enemy were still pursuing them, rode forward without pausing, taking him along with great determination, though mortally wounded and fainting, for necessity compelled them to that headlong flight. So after covering eighty-four stades they came to a place called Caprae.¹ Here they rested from travel and endeavoured to treat the wound of Totila, who not long afterwards completed the term of his life. And there his followers buried him in the earth and departed.

Such was the conclusion of the reign and the life of Totila, who had ruled the Goths eleven years. But the end which came to him was not worthy of his past achievements, for everything had gone well with the man before that, and his end was not commensurate with his deeds. But here again Fortune was obviously disporting herself and tearing human affairs to shreds by way of making a display of her own perverse nature and unaccountable will, for she had endowed Totila of her own free will with prosperity for no particular reason for a long time, and then after this fashion smote the man with cowardice and destruction at the present time for no fitting cause. But these things, I believe, have never

¹ Modern Caprara ?

³ ἀνθρώπων: Haury conjectures ἀνθρώπων ἐπὶ μέγα

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

μὲν ἀνθρώπῳ, οἶμαι, καταληπτὰ οὔτε γέγονε
 πώποτε οὔτε μήποτε ὕστερον ἔσται· λέγεται δὲ
 αἰεὶ καὶ δοξάζεται διαψιθυριζόμενα ἐς τὸν πάντα
 αἰῶνα, ὥς πη ἐκάστῳ φίλον, λόγῳ τῷ εἰκότι
 δοκοῦντι εἶναι παρηγοροῦντι τὴν ἄγνοιαν. ἐγὼ
 δὲ ἐπὶ τὸν πρότερον λόγον ἐπάνειμι

- 31 Τουτίλαν γοῦν¹ Ῥωμαῖοι οὕτως ἐξ ἀνθρώπων
 ἀφανισθῆναι οὐκ ἔγνωσαν, ἕως αὐτοῖς γυνὴ μία,
 Γότθα γένος, ἔφρασέ τε καὶ τὸν τάφον ἐπέδειξεν.
- 32 οἳ τε ἀκηκοότες οὐχ ὑγιᾶ τὸν λόγον εἶναι οἰόμενοι,
 ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ ἐγένοντο, καὶ τὴν θήκην ὀκνήσει
 οὐδεμιᾷ διορύξαντες ἐξήνεγκαν μὲν τὸν Τουτίλαν
 ἐνθὲνδε νεκρόν, ἐπιγνόντες δὲ αὐτόν, ὥς φασι, καὶ
 τούτου δὴ τοῦ θεάματος ἐμπλησάμενοι τὴν
 σφετέραν ἐπιθυμίαν αὐθις αὐτὸν τῇ γῇ ἔκρυψαν,
 ἔς τε Ναρσὴν αὐτίκα τὸν πάντα λόγον ἀνή-
 νεγκαν.
- 33 Τινὲς δὲ οὐχ οὕτω τά γε κατὰ Τουτίλαν καὶ
 τήνδε τὴν μάχην ξυμβῆναι, ἀλλὰ τρόπῳ τῷ
 ἐτέρῳ φασίν· ὥνπερ μοι ἀναγράψασθαι οὐ τοι
- 34 ἀπὸ τρόπου ἔδοξεν εἶναι. λέγουσι γὰρ οὐκ ἀπρο-
 φάσιστον οὐδὲ παράλογον τὴν ὑπαγωγὴν ξυνε-
 νεχθῆναι τῷ Γότθῳ στρατῷ, ἀλλὰ Ῥωμαίων
 ἀκροβολιζομένων τινῶν βέλος ἐκ τοξεύματος τῷ
 Τουτίλᾳ ἐξαπιναίως ἐπιπεσεῖν, οὐκ ἐκ προνοίας
 τοῦ πέμψαντος, ἐπεὶ Τουτίλας ἐν στρατιώτου
 λόγῳ ὀπλισμένος τε καὶ παρατεταγμένος ὅπου
 δὴ τῆς φάλαγγος ἀπημελημένος εἰστήκει, οὐ
 βουλούμενος τοῖς πολεμίοις ἔνδηλος εἶναι, οὐδέ πη
 αὐτὸν ἐς ἐπιβουλὴν παρεχόμενος, ἀλλὰ τύχης
 τούτῳ² ταῦτα σκευωρουμένης τινὸς καὶ ἰθυνάσης

¹ γοῦν Hoeschel in margin γάρ MSS

been comprehensible to man, nor will they ever become so at any future time. And yet there is always much talk on this matter and opinions are being for ever bandied about according to each man's taste, as he seeks comfort for his ignorance in an explanation which seems reasonable. But I shall return to the previous narrative.

The Romans, indeed, did not know that Totila had been thus taken from the world, until a certain woman of the Gothic race told them and pointed out the grave. But when they heard it they did not think the story sound, and so they came to the spot and with no hesitation dug out the grave and brought up from it the corpse of Totila, then, they say, after recognizing him and satisfying their curiosity with this sight, they again buried him in the earth and immediately reported the whole matter to Narses.

But some say that Totila's death and this battle happened otherwise than I have told it, and it has seemed to me not improper to record this version. For these say that the retreat of the Gothic army did not take place in any strange and unaccountable manner, but while some of the Romans were shooting from a distance, a missile from a bow suddenly struck Totila, but not by the purpose of the man who had sent it, for Totila was armed in the fashion of a simple soldier and the place in the phalanx where he stood had been chosen at random; for he did not wish to be manifest to his enemy, nor would he, of course, expose himself to attack; but some chance prepared this fate for him and directed the

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- ἐπὶ τὸ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου σῶμα τὸν ἄτρακτον· καὶ αὐτὸν μὲν καιρίαν βληθέντα, ὡς ἐνὶ μέλιστα, περιώδυνον γεγεννημένον ἔξω γενέσθαι τῆς φάλαγ-
 γος ξύν τε ὀλίγοις κατὰ βραχὺ ὀπίσω ἰέναι.
 35 καὶ μέχρι μὲν ἐς Κάπρας ἀντέχοντα τῇ ταλαι-
 πωρίᾳ τὸν ἵππον ἔλαν, ἐνταῦθα δὲ λειποψυχή-
 σαντα τὸ λοιπὸν μεῖναι¹ τὴν πληγὴν θερα-
 πεύσοντα, οὐ πολλῶ τεῦστον αὐτῷ ἐπιγενέσθαι
 36 τὴν τέλειον ἡμέραν τοῦ βίου. τὴν δὲ Γότθων
 στρατιὰν οὔτε ἄλλως ἀξιόμαχον τοῖς ἀναντίοις
 οὖσαν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀπομάχου σφίσι παρὰ δόξαν
 γεγεννημένου τοῦ ἄρχοντος, ἐν θάμβει γενέσθαι, εἰ
 μόνος αὐτοῖς οὐκ ἐξ ἐπιβουλῆς τῶν πολεμίων ὁ
 Τουτίλας καιρίαν βληθείη, καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ περι-
 φόβους τε καὶ ἀθύμους γεγεννημένους ἔς τε
 ὀρρωδίαν ὄρον οὐκ ἔχουσιν καὶ ὑπαγωγῇ οὕτως
 αἰσχροῦ ἐμπεπτωκέναι. ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τούτων
 λεγέτω ἕκαστος ὅπη γινώσκει.²

XXXIII

- Ναρσῆς δὲ περιχαρὴς τοῖς ξυμπεπτακόσι γε-
 νόμενος ἐπαναφέρων οὐκ ἀνίει ἐς τὸν θεὸν εἰπαντα,
 ὅπερ καὶ ὁ ἀληθὴς λόγος ἐγένετο, τὰ τε ἐν ποσὶ
 2 διφκεῖτο. καὶ πρῶτα μὲν τῶν οἱ ἐπισπομένων
 Λαγγοβαρδῶν ἀπαλλαξείων τῆς ἀτοπίης (οἳ γε
 πρὸς τῇ ἄλλῃ ἐς τὴν δίαιταν παρανομία τὰς τε
 οἰκοδομίας, αἷς ἂν ἐντύχοιεν, ἐνεπίμπρασιν καὶ
 γυναιξὶ ταῖς ἐς τὰ ἱερὰ καταφευγούσαις βιαζόμενοι
 ἐπλησίαζον) χρήμασι μεγάλοις αὐτοὺς δεξιω-
 σάμενος ἐς τὰ πάτρια ἦθη ἀφήκεν ἰέναι, Βαλερια-

¹ μεῖναι A, V pr. m corr. : εἶναι V pr. m

shaft to the man's body Then he, having suffered a mortal wound and being tortured with intense pain, withdrew from the phalanx with a few men and moved slowly away And as far as Caprae he endured the suffering and continued to ride his horse, but there he fainted and after that remained there to care for his wound, and not long afterwards the final day of his life came upon him Meanwhile the Gothic army, not being in any case a match for their opponents, upon seeing also that their commander had been unexpectedly rendered unfit for battle, became thunderstruck to think that Totila alone among them had been mortally wounded with no design on the part of the enemy, and consequently they became alarmed and discouraged and were plunged into terror which had no bounds and began to retreat in that disgraceful manner But concerning these matters let each man speak according to his knowledge

XXXIII

NARSES was overjoyed at the outcome and ceased not attributing everything to God, an opinion which was indeed true; and he proceeded to arrange all urgent matters And first of all he was eager to be rid of the outrageous behaviour of the Lombards under his command, for in addition to the general lawlessness of their conduct, they kept setting fire to whatever buildings they chanced upon and violating by force the women who had taken refuge in the sanctuaries. He accordingly propitiated them by a large gift of money and so released them to go to their homes,

² γινώσκει Α. γένεσθαι V

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- νόν τε καὶ Δαμιανόν, τὸν αὐτοῦ ἀδελφιδοῦν, ξὺν
 τοῖς ἐπομένοις ἐξηγεῖσθαι τῆς ὁδοῦ ἄχρι ἐς τὰ
 Ῥωμαίων ὅρια σφίσι κελεύσας, ὅπως μηδενὶ ἐν
 3 τῇ ἀποπορείᾳ¹ λυμῆνυνται. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Λαγγο-
 βάρδαι ἀπηλλάγησαν ἐκ Ῥωμαίων τῆς γῆς,
 Βαλεριανὸς ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο ἀμφὶ πόλιν
 Βερόναν, ὡς πολιορκήσων τε καὶ παραστησόμενος
 4 αὐτὴν βασιλεῖ. δέισαντές τε οἱ τὸ φυλακτήριον
 ταύτῃ ἔχοντες Βαλεριανῶ ἐς λόγους ἦλθον, ὡς
 σφᾶς τε αὐτοὺς καὶ τὴν πόλιν ὁμολογία ἐνδῶ-
 5 σοντες. ἃ δὴ Φράγγοι μαθόντες, ὅσοι φρουρὰν
 ἐς τὰ ἐπὶ Βενετίας χωρία εἶχον, διεκώλυον προ-
 θυμία τῇ πάσῃ τῆς χώρας ἅτε αὐτοῖς προση-
 κούσης ἀξιοῦντες μεταποιεῖσθαι. καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ
 ἄπρακτος ἐνθένδε παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι Βαλε-
 ριανὸς ἀνεχώρησε.
 6 Γότθοι δέ, ὅσοι ἀποφυγόντες ἐκ τῆς ξυμβολῆς
 διεσώθησαν, διαβάντες ποταμὸν Πάδον, πόλιν τε
 Τικινὸν² καὶ τὰ ἐκείνῃ χωρία ἔσχον, ἄρχοντά τε
 7 τὸν Τεῖαν κατεστήσαντο σφίσιν. ὃς δὴ τὰ
 χρήματα εὐρὼν ἅπαντα ὅσα Τουτίλας ἔτυχεν ἐν
 Τικινῶ³ καταθέμενος, Φράγγους ἐς ξυμμαχίαν
 ἐπαγαγέσθαι διανοεῖτο, Γότθους δὲ ὡς ἐκ τῶν
 παρόντων διεῖπέ τε καὶ διεκόσμει, ξυλλέγων
 8 σπουδῇ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν ἅπαντας. ταῦτα ὁ Ναρσῆς
 ἀκούσας Βαλεριανὸν μὲν ἐκέλευσε πᾶσι τοῖς
 ἐπομένοις ἀμφὶ Πάδον ποταμὸν φυλακὴν ἔχειν,
 ὅπως μὴ Γότθοι ἀδεέστερον ξυστήσεσθαι δυνατοὶ
 εἶεν, αὐτὸς δὲ παντὶ τῷ ἄλλῳ στρατῷ ἐπὶ
 9 Ῥώμην ἵει. ἐν Τούσκοις τε γενόμενος Ναρνίαν

¹ ἀποπορεία ἀποπορία A corr , ἀπορία A pr m. V

² Τικινόν Maltretus . πικηνῶν L, τηκηνῶν V.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxxiii. 2-9

commanding Valerian and Damianus, his nephew, with their commands to escort them on the march as far as the Roman boundary, so that they might harm no one on the return journey. And after the Lombards had departed from Roman territory, Valerian went into camp near the city of Verona, intending to besiege it and win it for the emperor. But the garrison of this city became frightened and opened negotiations with Valerian, with the purpose of making a conditional surrender of themselves and the city. When this was learned by the Franks who were keeping guard in the towns of Venetia, they tried with all eagerness to prevent it, claiming the right to take charge of the land as belonging to themselves. And as a result of this, having accomplished nothing, Valerian retired from there with his whole army.

As for the Goths who had saved themselves by fleeing from the battle, they crossed the Po River and occupied the city of Ticinum and the adjacent country, appointing Teias as ruler over them. And he found all the money which Totila had deposited in Ticinum, and was purposing to draw the Franks into an alliance, he also began to organize and put in order the Goths as well as circumstances permitted, eagerly gathering them all about him. When Naisas heard this, he ordered Valerian with all his force to maintain a guard near the Po River so that the Goths might not be at liberty to assemble freely, while he himself with all the rest of the army marched against Rome. And when he came into Tuscany, he took Narnia by surrender and left

³ ΤΙΚΙΝΩ *Maltretus* πικκηνω *L*, τηκήνων *V*

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- μὲν ὁμολογία εἶλε, καὶ Σπολιτινοῖς ἀτειχίστοις οὖσι φρουρὰν ἔλιπεν, ἀνοικοδομήσασθαι ὅτι τάχιστα ἐπιστείλας ὅσα τοῦ περιβόλου καθε-
 10 λόντες ἐτύγγανον Γότθοι. ἔπεμψε δὲ καὶ τινὰς ἀποπειρασομένους τοῦ ἐν Περυσία φυλακτηρίου. ἡγούντο δὲ τῶν ἐν Περυσία φρουρῶν αὐτόμολοι γεγονότες Ῥωμαῖοι¹ δύο, Μελιγῆδιός τε καὶ Οὐλιφος, ὅσπερ Κυπριανοῦ δορυφόρος γεγωνὼς πρότερον, Τουτίλα πολλά οἱ ἐπαγγελιαμένῳ ἀναπεισθεὶς Κυπριανὸν τότε ἄρχοντα τοῦ ἐνταῦθα
 11 φυλακτηρίου δόλῳ ἔκτεινεν. ὁ μὲν οὖν Μελιγῆδιος λόγους τοῦ Ναρσοῦ ἐνδεξάμενος ἐβουλεύετο ξὺν τοῖς οἱ ἐπομένοις Ῥωμαίοις τὴν πόλιν ἐνδοῦναι, οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ τὸν Οὐλίφον τῶν πρασσομένων αἰσθόμενοι ξυνίσταντο ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἐκ τοῦ ἐμφανούς.
 12 καὶ Οὐλιφος μὲν ξὺν τοῖς οἱ ὁμογνωμονοῦσιν αὐτοῦ διεφθάρη, Μελιγῆδιος δὲ παρέδωκε Περυσίαν Ῥωμαίοις αὐτίκα. τῷ μέντοι Οὐλίφῳ ξυνέβη τίσις ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ δηλονότι ἐπιπεσοῦσα, ἐν αὐτῷ μάλιστα διεφθάρθαι τῷ χώρῳ, ἵνα δὴ αὐτὸς τὸν Κυπριανὸν διεχρήσατο. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτω κεχώρηκε.
 13 Γότθοι δὲ οἱ ἐν Ῥώμῃ φυλακὴν ἔχοντες ἐπειδὴ Ναρσὴν τε καὶ τὸν Ῥωμαίων στρατὸν ἐπὶ σφᾶς ἰόντας ἄγχιστά πη ἐπύθοντο εἶναι, παρεσκευάζοντο ὥς τὰ δυνατὰ σφίσιν ὑπαντιάζοντες.
 14 ἐτύγγανε δὲ Τουτίλας πολλὰς² μὲν ἐμπρησάμενος τῆς πόλεως οἰκοδομίας, ἥνικα δὴ αὐτὴν τὸ πρῶτον ἐξείλεν.³ . . . ἐν ὑστάτῳ δὲ λογισάμενος, ὥς ἐς ὀλίγους ἀποκεκριμένοι οὐχ οἰοί τέ εἶσι τὸ λοιπὸν

¹ Ῥωμαῖοι L ἐκ Ῥωμαίων V

² πολλὰς Hoeschel, in margin, om. L, πολλοῖς V.

a garrison at Spolitium, which was then without walls, instructing them to rebuild as quickly as possible such parts of the fortifications as the Goths had torn down. And he also sent some men to make trial of the garrison in Perusia. Now the garrison of Perusia was commanded by two Romans who had become deserters, Meligedius and Ulfus; the latter had formerly been a bodyguard of Cyprian, but had been won over by the large promises made to him by Totila and had treacherously killed Cyprian who then commanded the garrison of that place. Now Meligedius was for accepting the proposals of Narses and was planning with the men under his command to hand the city over to the Romans, but the party of Ulfus perceived what was going on and banded together openly against them. In the fight that followed Ulfus was destroyed together with those who thought as he did, and Meligedius immediately surrendered Perusia to the Romans. And Ulfus obviously suffered retribution from Heaven in being destroyed at the very place where he himself had murdered Cyprian. Such was the course of these events.

But the Goths who were keeping guard in Rome, upon learning that Narses and the Roman army were coming against them and were now very near, made preparations to offer the strongest resistance possible. Now it happened that Totila had burned many buildings of the city when he captured it for the first time. . . But finally, reasoning that the Goths, reduced as they were to a small number,

³ A clause seems lost in which was expressed a first decision to rebuild

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- Γότθοι ἅπαντα τὸν περίβολον Ῥώμης διαφυ-
 λάξαι, τειχίσματι βραχεῖ ὀλίγην ἑνὴν τῆς
 πόλεως μοῖραν ἀμφὶ τὸν Ἀδριανοῦ περιβαλὼν
 τάφον καὶ αὐτὸ τῷ προτέρῳ τείχει ἐνάψας
 15 φρουρίου κατεστήσατο σχῆμα. ἐνταῦθά τε τὰ
 σφίσιν αὐτοῖς τιμιώτατα καταθέμενοι Γότθοι ἐς
 μὲν τὸ ἀκριβὲς τὸ φρούριον τοῦτο ἐφύλασσον, τὸ
 δὲ ἄλλο τῆς πόλεως τείχος ἀπημελημένον
 16 ὑπερεώρων. φρουροὺς τοῖνυν σφῶν ἐν τούτῳ
 τῷ χωρίῳ¹ τηνικάδε ἀπολιπόντες ὀλίγους τινας²
 οἱ λοιποὶ ἅπαντες ἀμφὶ τὰς ἐπάλξεις τοῦ τῆς
 πόλεως γενόμενοι τείχους τῶν πολεμίων ἀπο-
 πειράσασθαι τειχομαχοῦντων ἐν σπουδῇ εἶχον.
 17 Ὅλον μὲν οὖν τὸν Ῥώμης περίβολον διὰ
 μεγέθους ὑπερβολὴν οὔτε Ῥωμαῖοι ἐπιόντες περι-
 18 βάλλεσθαι εἶχον οὔτε Γότθοι φρουρεῖν. διασκε-
 δαννύμενοι δὲ οἱ μὲν ὅπη παρατύχοι προσέβαλλον,
 οἱ δὲ ὥς ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ἡμύνοντο. καὶ Ναρσῆς
 μὲν τοξοτῶν ἐπαγόμενος μέγα τι χρήμα ἐς μοῖράν
 τινα τοῦ περιβόλου ἐπέσκηπτεν, ἐτέρωθι δὲ
 Ἰωάννης ὁ Βιταλιανοῦ ξὺν τοῖς οἱ ἐπομένοις προ-
 19 σέβαλλε. Φίλημouθ δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἐρουλοὶ κατ' ἄλλο
 τι μέρος ἠνώχλουν, ἐκαστάτῳ³ τε αὐτῶν οἱ λοιποὶ
 εἴποντο. ἐτειχομάχουν δὲ ἅπαντες ὥς ἀπωτάτῳ
 20 ἀλλήλων ὄντες. καὶ κατ' αὐτοὺς οἱ βάρβαροι
 ξυνιστάμενοι ἐδέχοντο τὴν ἐπίθεσιν. τὰ μέντοι
 ἄλλα τοῦ περιβόλου, ἵνα δὴ Ῥωμαίων οὐκ
 ἐγένετο προσβολή, ἀνδρῶν ἔρημα παντάπασιν
 ἦν, Γότθων ἀπάντων ὅπη ἂν οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπισκῆ-
 21 ψαιεν ἀγειρομένων, ἥπερ μοι εἴρηται. ἐν τούτῳ

¹ χωρίῳ V φρουρίῳ L

² ὀλίγους τινας V. om. L

³ ἐκαστάτῳ L ἐκάστοις V.

were no longer able to guard the whole circuit of the wall of Rome, he enclosed a small part of the city with a short wall around the Tomb of Hadrian and, by connecting this with the earlier wall, he made a kind of fortress. There the Goths had deposited their most precious possessions and they were keeping a careful guard over this fortress, disregarding the rest of the city wall which lay neglected. So on this occasion they left a few of their number as guards over this place while all the rest took their stand all along the battlements of the city wall, because they were eager to test their opponents' skill in attacking walls.

Now the whole circuit-wall of Rome was so extraordinarily long that neither could the Romans encompass it in their attack nor the Goths guard it. So the Romans scattered here and there at random and began to make their attacks, while the others defended themselves as well as circumstances permitted. Thus, Narses brought up a great force of archers and delivered an attack on a certain portion of the fortifications, while John the nephew of Vitellian was making an assault with his command at another point. Meanwhile Philemuth and the Eruli were harassing another section, and the rest followed at a great distance from them. Indeed, all were fighting at the wall with very considerable intervals between them. And the barbarians gathered at the points of attack and were receiving the assault. But the other parts of the fortifications, where there was no attack being made by the Romans, were altogether destitute of men, all the Goths being gathered, as I have said, wherever the enemy were attacking. In this situation Narses

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- δὲ γνώμη Ναρσοῦ ὁ Δαγισθαῖος στρατιώτας τε
 παμπληθεῖς ἔχων καὶ τό τε Ναρσοῦ καὶ τὸ
 Ἰωάννου σημεῖον καὶ κλίμακας πολλὰς ἐπαγό-
 μενος μοῖρα τινὶ τοῦ περιβόλου ἐξαπιναιῶς
 ἐπέσκηψε, φρουρᾶς¹ τὸ παράπαν ἐρήμῳ οὔσῃ.
 22 τὰς τε κλίμακας εὐθύς ἀπάσας οὐδενὸς ἀμυνομένου
 τῷ τείχει ἐρείσας πόνῳ οὐδενὶ ξὺν τοῖς ἐπομένοις
 ἐντὸς τοῦ περιβόλου ἐγένετο, τὰς τε πύλας κατ'
 23 ἐξουσίαν ἀνέωγον. ὧν περ αὐτίκα Γότθοι αἰσθό-
 μενοι οὐκέτι ἐς ἀλκὴν ἔβλεπον, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον
 ἅπαντες ὅπῃ αὐτῶν ἐκάστῳ δυνατὰ ἐγεγόνει. καὶ
 οἱ μὲν εἰς τὸ φρούριον εἰσεπήδησαν, οἱ δὲ δὴ ἐς
 τὸν Πόρτον ἐχώρησαν² δρόμῳ.
 24 Ἐνταῦθά μοι τοῦ λόγου ἔννοια γέγονεν ὄντινα
 ἡ τύχη διαχλευάζει τὰ ἀνθρώπεια τρόπον, οὐκ
 αἰὲ κατὰ ταῦτα παρὰ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἰοῦσα
 οὐδὲ ἴσοις αὐτοὺς ὀφθαλμοῖς βλέπουσα, ἀλλὰ
 ξυμμεταβαλλομένη χρόνῳ καὶ τόπῳ,³ καὶ παίζει
 ἐς αὐτοὺς παιδιὰν τινα παρὰ τὸν καιρὸν ἢ τὸν
 χῶρον ἢ τὸν τρόπον⁴ διαλλάσσουσα τὴν τῶν
 ταλαιπώρων ἀξίαν, εἴ γε ὁ Ῥώμην μὲν⁵ ἀπολω-
 λεκῶς τὰ πρότερα Βέσσας οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον
 ἀνεσώσατο Ῥωμαίοις τῆς Λαζικῆς⁶ Πέτραν,
 ἔμπαλιν δὲ ὁ Δαγισθαῖος Πέτραν τοῖς πολεμίοις
 μεθεῖς⁷ ἀνεκτήσατο ἐν χρόνῳ ὀλίγῳ βασιλεῖ
 25 Ῥώμην. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν γέγονέ τε τὸ ἐξ ἀρχῆς
 καὶ αἰὲ ἔσται, ἕως ἂν ἡ αὐτὴ τύχη ἀνθρώποις ἢ
 Ναρσῆς δὲ τότε παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ ἐπὶ τὸ φρούριον
 26 πολεμῶν ᾗ. κατορρωδήσαντές τε οἱ Βάρβαροι

¹ φρουρᾶς L φρουρῶν V

³ τόπον L: τρόπον V.

⁵ μὲν L. ἡμῖν V.

² ἐχώρησαν L ἐσεχώρησαν V.

⁴ τρόπον V. τόπον L

⁶ τῆς λαζικῆς V: τὴν λαζικὴν L

directed Dagisthaeus to take a large number of soldiers and the standards of both Narses and John, and, equipped with a large number of ladders, to make a sudden assault upon a certain part of the fortifications which was altogether destitute of guards. So he immediately placed all the ladders against the wall without any opposition, and with no trouble got inside the fortifications with his followers, and they opened the gates at their leisure. This was immediately discovered by the Goths, who no longer thought of resistance but began to flee, every man of them, wherever each one could. And some of them rushed into the fortress, while others went off on the run to Portus.

At this point in the narrative it occurs to me to comment on the manner in which Fortune makes sport of human affairs, not always visiting men in the same manner nor regarding them with uniform glance, but changing about with the changes of time and place, and she plays a kind of game with them, shifting the value of the poor wretches according to the variations of time, place, or circumstance, seeing that Bessas, the man who had previously lost Rome, not long afterward recovered Petra in Lazica for the Romans, and that Dagisthaeus, on the contrary, who had let Petra go to the enemy, won back Rome for the emperor in a moment of time. But these things have been happening from the beginning and will always be as long as the same fortune rules over men. Narses now advanced against the fortress with his whole army in warlike array. But the barbarians became

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

καὶ τὰ πιστὰ ὑπὲρ τῶν σωμάτων κεκομισμένοι
 σφᾶς τε αὐτοὺς καὶ τὸ φρούριόν οἱ αὐτίκα δὴ
 μάλα παρέδωσαν, ἔκτον τε καὶ εἰκοστὸν ἔτος
 27 Ἰουστινιανοῦ βασιλέως τὴν αὐτοκράτορα ἀρχὴν
 ἔχοντας. οὕτω τε Ῥώμῃ ἐπὶ τούτου βασιλεύον-
 τος τὸ πέμπτον ἔαλω, ἥσπερ εὐθὺς ὁ Ναρσῆς
 τῶν πυλῶν τὰς κλείς βασιλεῖ ἔπεμψε.

XXXIV

Τότε δὴ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις διαφανέστατα ἐπι-
 δέδεικται ὡς ἅπασιν, οἷσπερ ἔδει γενέσθαι κακῶς,
 καὶ τὰ εὐτυχήματα δοκοῦντα εἶναι εἰς ὄλεθρον
 ἀποκέκριται, κατὰ νοῦν τε ἀπαλλάξαντες ἴσως τῇ
 2 τοιαύτῃ εὐημερίᾳ¹ ξυνδιαφθείρονται. Ῥωμαίων
 γὰρ τῇ τε ξυγκλήτῳ βουλῇ καὶ τῷ δήμῳ τὴν
 νίκην τήνδε πολλῶ ἔτι μᾶλλον φθόρου αἰτίαν
 3 ξυνηνέχθη γενέσθαι τρόπῳ τοιῷδε. Γότθοι μὲν
 φεύγοντες καὶ τὴν Ἰταλίας ἐπικράτησιν ἀπογόν-
 τες, ὁδοῦ ποιούμενοι πάρεργον, τοὺς παρατυχόντας
 4 σφίσι Ῥωμαίους οὐδεμιᾷ διεχρῶντο φειδοῖ. οἱ δὲ
 βάρβαροι τοῦ Ῥωμαίων στρατοῦ ὡς πολεμίοις
 ἐχρῶντο πᾶσιν οἷς ἂν ἐντύχοιεν ἐν τῇ ἐς τὴν
 5 πόλιν εἰσόδῳ. πρὸς δὲ καὶ τότε αὐτοῖς ξυνηνέχθη
 γενέσθαι. πολλοὶ τῶν ἀπο τῆς ξυγκλήτου
 βουλῆς, τοῦτο Τουτίλα δεδογμένον, τὰ πρότερα
 6 ἔμενον ἐς τὰ ἐπὶ² Καμπανίας χωρία. ὧν πέρ-
 τινες, ἐπεὶ Ῥώμην ἔχεσθαι πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως
 στρατοῦ ἔγνωσαν, ἐκ Καμπανίας ἐξαναστάντες ἐς
 αὐτὴν ἦσαν. ὃ δὴ Γότθοι μαθόντες, ὅσοι ἐν τοῖς
 ταύτῃ ὀχυρώμασιν ἐτύγχανον ὄντες, ἅπαντα

¹ εὐημερία V εὐδρομία L.

² ἐς τὰ ἐπὶ V. ἐπὶ τὰ L.

terrified, and, upon receiving pledges for their lives, surrendered both themselves and the fortress with all speed, in the twenty-sixth year of the reign of ^{552 A.D.} the Emperor Justinian. Thus Rome was captured for the fifth time during his reign, and Narses immediately sent the keys of its gates to the emperor.

XXXIV

At that time it was shewn to the world with the greatest clearness that in the case of all men who have been doomed to suffer ill, even those things which seem to be blessings turn out for their destruction, and even when they have fared as they wish they are, it may be, destroyed together with this same prosperity. For this victory turned out to be for the Roman senate and people a cause of far greater destruction, in the following manner. The Goths, on the one hand, as by their flight they abandoned the dominion of Italy, made it an incident of their progress to destroy without mercy the Romans who fell in their way. And the barbarians of the Roman army, on the other hand, treated as enemies all whom they chanced upon as they entered the city. Furthermore, this too befell them. Many of the members of the senate, by decision of Totila, had been remaining previously in the towns of Campania. And some of them, upon learning that Rome was held by the emperor's army, departed from Campania and went thither. But when this was learned by the Goths who happened to be in the

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- διερευνώμενοι τὰ ἐκείνη χωρία τοὺς πατρικίους
 ἅπαντας ἔκτειναν. ἐν τοῖς καὶ Μάξιμος ἦν,
 οὐπὲρ ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις ἐμνήσθην.
 7 ἐτύγχανε δὲ καὶ Τουτίλας, ἡνίκα Ναρσῇ ὑπαν-
 τιάσων ἐνθένδε ἦει, τῶν ἐκ πόλεως ἐκάστης
 δοκίμων Ῥωμαίων τοὺς παῖδας ἀγείρας καὶ
 αὐτῶν ἐς τριακοσίους ἀπολεξάμενος, οὐσπερ
 μάλιστα τὸ σῶμα καλοὺς ᾔετο εἶναι, τοῖς μὲν
 γειναμένοις ὅτι δὴ αὐτῷ ξυνδιαιτήσονται ὑπειπών,
 8 ὁμήρους δέ οἱ λόγῳ τῷ ἀληθεῖ ἐσομένους. καὶ
 αὐτοὺς Τουτίλας μὲν τότε ὑπὲρ ποταμὸν Πάδον
 ἐκέλευσεν εἶναι, Τεῖας δὲ τανῦν ἐνταῦθα εὐρὼν
 ἅπαντας ἔκτεινε.
 9 Ῥάγναρις τε, Γότθος ἀνὴρ, ὅσπερ ἡγείτο τοῦ ἐν
 Ταραντηνοῖς φυλακτηρίου, καίπερ τὰ πιστὰ
 γνώμη βασιλέως πρὸς τοῦ Πακουρίου κεκομισ-
 μένος, Ῥωμαίοις τε προσχωρήσειν ὁμολογήσας,
 ἥπερ μοι ἔμπροσθεν εἴρηται, παρασχόμενος δὲ¹
 καὶ Γότθους ἕξ ἐν ὁμήρων λόγῳ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ
 δὴ τῇ ὁμολογίᾳ Ῥωμαίοις, ἐπειδὴ Τεῖαν ἤκουσε
 βασιλέα καταστάντα Γότθοις τοὺς τε Φράγγους
 ἐς ἐπικουρίαν ἐπαγαγέσθαι καὶ παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ
 τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐθέλειν ὁμόσε ἰέναι, μεταπορευθεὶς
 τὴν βουλὴν ἐπιτελεῖν τὰ ὁμολογημένα οὐδαμῇ
 10 ἤθελε. σπουδάζων δὲ καὶ διατεινόμενος τοὺς
 ὁμήρους ἀπολαβεῖν ἐπενόει τάδε πᾶμψας παρὰ
 τὸν Πακούριον ἥτει σταλῆναί οἱ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
 στρατιωτῶν ὀλίγους τινάς, ἐφ' ᾧ ξὺν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ
 ἐς τε τὸν Δρυοῦντα ἰέναι σφίσι δυνατὰ εἶη ἐνθένδε
 τε² διαπορθμευσάμενοις τὸν Ἰόνιον κόλπον ἐπὶ

¹ παρασχόμενος δὲ V παρασχών τε L.

² ἐνθένδε τε V: καὶ L.

fortresses there, they searched that whole country and killed all the patricians. Among these was Mañimus, whom I have mentioned in the preceding narrative¹ It happened also that Totila, when he went from there to encounter Narses, had gathered the children of the notable Romans from each city and selected about three hundred of them whom he considered particularly fine in appearance, telling their parents that they were to live with him, though in reality they were to be hostages to him. And at that time Totila merely commanded that they should be north of the Po River, but now Teias found and killed them all

Now Ragnaris, a Goth, who commanded the garison at Tarentum, had received pledges from Pacurius at the emperor's wish and agreed that he would submit to the Romans, as previously stated,² and had furnished six Goths as hostages to the Romans to make this agreement binding, but upon hearing that Teias had become king over the Goths and had invited the Franks to an alliance and wished to engage with the enemy with his whole army, he reversed his purpose completely and refused absolutely to fulfil his agreement. But he was eager and determined to get back the hostages, and so devised the following plan. He sent to Pacurius with the request that a few Roman soldiers be sent him in order that it might be possible for his men with safety to go to Dryus³ and from there to cross the Ionian Gulf and make their way to

¹ Book V xxv. 15 and Book III xx. 19.

² Chap xxvi 4

³ Mod. Otranto.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 11 Βυζαντίου κομίζεσθαι. ὁ μὲν οὖν Πακούριος μακρὰν ἀπολελειμμένος τῶν τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ βεβουλευμένων τῶν οἱ ἐπομένων πεντήκοντα στέλλει.
- 12 ὁ δὲ αὐτοὺς τῷ φρουρίῳ δεξάμενος καθεῖρξεν εὐθύς, τῷ τε Πακουρίῳ ἐσήμαινεν ὥς, εἴπερ αὐτῷ τοὺς στρατιώτας βουλομένων εἶη τοὺς αὐτοῦ ῥύεσθαι, ἀποδιδόναι δεήσει τοὺς Γότθων ὁμήρους.
- 13 ταῦτα ἀκούσας Πακούριος ὀλίγους μὲν τινὰς ἐπὶ τῇ τοῦ Δρυοῦντος φυλακῇ εἶασε, παντὶ δὲ τῷ
- 14 ἄλλῳ στρατῷ ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους αὐτίκα ἦει. Ῥάγναρις δὲ τοὺς μὲν παντήκοντα μελλήσει οὐδεμιᾷ ἔκτεινεν, ὥς ὑπαντιάσων δὲ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐκ τοῦ Τάραντος τοὺς Γότθους ἐξήγευ. ἐπειδὴ τε
- 15 ἀλλήλοις ξυνέμιξαν, ἡσσῶνται Γότθοι. Ῥάγναρις τε αὐτοῦ¹ ἀποβαλὼν πλείστους ξὺν τοῖς καταλοίποις δρασμῷ εἶχετο. ἐς μέντοι τὸν Τάραντα εἰσελθεῖν οὐδαμῇ ἴσχυσε, πανταχόθεν αὐτὸν περιβεβλημένων Ῥωμαίων, ἀλλ' ἐς Ἀχεροντίδα
- 16 ἔλθων ἔμεινε. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν τοιαύτη² ἐγεγόνει. Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον τὸν τε Πόρτον πολιορκήσαντες ὁμολογία εἶλον καὶ φρούριον ἐν Τούσκοις, ὃ δὴ Νέπα καλοῦσι,³ καὶ τὸ ἐν Πέτρᾳ τῇ Περτούσῃ ὀνομαζομένη ὀχύρωμα
- 17 Τεῖας δὲ (οὐ γὰρ ἀξιομάχους τῷ Ῥωμαίων στρατῷ Γότθους κατὰ μόνας ᾤετο εἶναι) παρὰ Θευδίσβαλδον τὸν Φράγγων ἄρχοντα ἐπεμψε, χρήματα πολλὰ προτεινόμενος ἐπὶ τε ξυμμαχίαν
- 18 παρακαλῶν. ἀλλὰ Φράγγοι τὰ ξύμφορα, οἶμαι, βεβουλευμένοι⁴ οὔτε ὑπὲρ τῆς Γότθων οὔτε ὑπὲρ

¹ αὐτοῦ L. αὐτῶν V

² τοιαύτη τοιαῦτα L, ταῦτα V, ταύτη Dindorf.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxxiv. 10-18

Byzantium. So Pacurius, being utterly ignorant of the man's purposes, sent him fifty of his men. And when Ragnaris had received them in the fortress, he immediately put them into confinement and sent word to Pacurius that, if it was his wish to recover his own soldiers, he would be obliged to surrender the Gothic hostages. But when Pacurius heard this, he left a few men to keep guard over Dryus, and immediately marched with all the rest of his army against the enemy. Thereupon Ragnaris killed the fifty men immediately, and then led forth the Goths from Tarentum to encounter his enemy. And when they engaged with each other, the Goths were defeated. Whereupon Ragnaris, having lost great numbers there, set off in flight with the remnant. However, he was quite unable to get back into Tarentum, since the Romans surrounded it on every side, but he went to Acheriontis and remained there. Thus, then, did these things happen. And not long afterwards the Romans took Portus by surrender after besieging the place, and likewise a fortress in Tuscany which they call Nepa,¹ as well as the stronghold of Petra Pertusa, as it is called.

Meanwhile Teias, considering the Goths by themselves not a match for the Roman army, sent to Theudibald, the ruler of the Franks, offering a large sum of money and inviting him to an alliance. The Franks, however, out of regard for their own interests, I suppose, wished to die for the benefit neither

¹ Modern Nepi

³ *νέπα καλοῦσι* V *ἐπικαλοῦσι*, followed by a lacuna of one word, L

⁴ After *βεβουλευμένοι* W adds *τοὺς πρέσβεις ἀπέπεμψαν*

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ὠφελείας¹ ἐβούλοντο² θνήσκειν, ἀλλὰ σφίσιν αὐτοῖς προσποιεῖν Ἰταλίαν ἐν σπουδῇ εἶχον, καὶ τούτου δὴ ἔνεκα τοὺς ἐν πολέμῳ κινδύνους ὑφίστασθαι ἤθελον.³ ἐτύγχανε δὲ Τουτίλας ἓνια μὲν τῶν χρημάτων ἐν Τικινῷ καταθέμενος, ἧπέρ μοι ἔμπροσθεν εἴρηται, τὰ δὲ πλείστα ἐν φρουρίῳ ἐχυρῷ μάλιστα, ὅπερ ἐν Κύμῃ τῇ ἐπὶ Καμπανίας ξυμβαίνει εἶναι, καὶ φρουροὺς ἐνταῦθα καταστησάμενος, ἄρχοντά τε αὐτοῖς τὸν ἀδελφὸν τὸν αὐτοῦ ξὺν Ἡρωδιανῷ
- 20 ἐπιστήσας. τούτους⁴ δὴ βουλόμενος ὁ Ναρσῆς ἐξελεῖν ἐς Κύμην τινὰς τοὺς τὸ φρούριον πολιορκήσοντας ἔπεμψε, αὐτὸς δὲ Ῥώμην διακοσμῶν αὐτοῦ ἔμεινε καὶ ἄλλους στείλας ἐκέλευε Κεν-
- 21 τουκέλλας πολιορκεῖν. Τείας δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἐν Κύμῃ φρουροὺς καὶ τὰ χρήματα δέσας, ἀπογνοὺς τε τὴν ἀπὸ τῶν Φράγγων ἐλπίδα, τοὺς οἱ ἐπομένους διέτασσε ὡς τοῖς πολεμίοις ὁμοσε χωρήσων.
- 22 Ὡν περ αἰσθόμενος ὁ Ναρσῆς Ἰωάννην τε τὸν Βιταλιανοῦ ἀδελφιδοῦν⁵ καὶ Φιλημουθὸν ξὺν τῷ οἰκείῳ στρατεύματι ἐς τὰ ἐπὶ Τουσκίας χωρία ἰέναι κελεύει, ἐνταῦθά τε καθιζήσομένους⁶ καὶ τοῖς ἐναντίοις ἀναχαιτίζοντας⁷ τὴν ἐπὶ Καμπανίας ὁδόν, ὅπως οἱ Κύμην πολιορκοῦντες ἀδεέστερον αὐτὴν ἢ βία ἢ ὁμολογία ἐξελεῖν δύναιτο.
- 23 ἀλλὰ Τείας ὁδοὺς μὲν ἐν δεξιᾷ τὰς ἐπιτομωτάτας ἐπὶ τὸ πλείστον ὑφείς, περιόδους δὲ πολλὰς καὶ μακροτάτας περιβαλόμενος, διὰ τε τῆς παραλίας κόλπου τοῦ Ἰονίου ἰὼν, ἐς Καμπανίαν ἀφίκετο,

¹ ὠφελείας LW · ἐλευθερίας V

² ἐβούλοντο L : ἐβούλοιντο V, βουλόμενοι W.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxxiv. 18-23

of Goths nor Romans, but were eager, rather, to acquire Italy for themselves, and only to attain this were they willing to undergo the perils of war. Now it so happened that, while Totila had deposited some of his money in Ticinum, as previously stated,¹ he had placed the most of it in an exceedingly strong fortress at Cumae, which is in Campania, and he had set guards over the place, appointing as their commander his own brother with Herodian. Narses, then, wishing to capture this garrison, sent some men to Cumae to besiege the fortress, while he himself remained at Rome, putting it in order. And he sent another force with orders to besiege Centumcellae. Teias then became fearful concerning the guards in Cumae and the money, and despairing of his hope of the Franks, he put his forces in array, intending to engage with his enemy.

But when Narses perceived this, he ordered John the nephew of Vitalian and Philemuth to proceed with his own army into the province of Tuscany, in order to take up a position there and check the march of his opponents to Campania, in order that the force besieging Cumae might be able without fear of molestation to capture it either by storm or by surrender. But Teias, leaving the most direct roads very far on his right, took many very long detours, passing along the coast of the Ionian Gulf, and so reached Campania, having eluded his enemy

¹ Chap xxxiii 7

³ ἤθελον W μόνους LV ⁴ τούτους L ὃ V.

⁵ ἀδελφιδούη Maltretus ἀδελφόν L, om V

⁶ καθιζησομένους Haury καθιζήμενους L, καθισομένους V

⁷ ἀναχαιτίζοντας V ἀναχαιτίζοντας L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 24 τοὺς πολεμίους λαθὼν ἅπαντας ὅπερ ἐπεὶ
 Ναρσῆς ἔμαθε, τοὺς τε ἀμφὶ τὸν Ἰωάννην καὶ
 Φιλημοῦθ μετεπέμπετο, οἱ τὴν δίοδον ἐν Τούσκοις
 ἐφρούρουν, καὶ Βαλεριανὸν ἄρτι Πέτραν ἐξαι-
 ροῦντα τὴν Περτοῦσαν καλουμένην μετεκάλει ξὺν
 τοῖς ἐπομένοις, τὰς τε δυνάμεις ξυνήγειρε, παντί
 τε καὶ αὐτὸς τῷ στρατῷ ὥς ἐς μάχην ξυντεταγμέ-
 νος ἐς Καμπανοὺς ἦει.

XXXV

- Ἔστι δέ τι ὅρος ἐπὶ Καμπανίας ὃ Βέβιος,
 οὐπερ ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν λόγοις ἐμνήσθην, ὅτι
 δὴ πολλάκις ἀφίησιν ἦχον μυκηθμῷ ἐμφερῇ.
 καὶ ἐπειδὰν αὐτῷ τοῦτο¹ ξυμβαίη, ὃ δὲ καὶ
 κόνεως ἐπὶ τούτῳ ζεύσεως μέγα τι χρῆμα
 ἐρεύγεται. ταῦτα μὲν ἐς ἐκείνῳ μοι τοῦ λόγου
 2 ἐρρήθη. τούτου δὴ τοῦ ὅρους, ἥπερ καὶ τῆς
 κατὰ τὴν Σικελίαν Αἴτνης, κενὰ τὰ ἐν μέσῳ
 ἐκ τῶν ἐσχάτων ἄχρι ἐς τὴν ὑπερβολὴν ἀπὸ
 ταυτομάτου τετύχηκεν εἶναι, οὐ δὴ ἔνερθεν
 3 διηνεκὲς τὸ πῦρ καίεται. ἐς τόσον δὲ βάθος
 τοῦτο δὴ τὸ κενὸν διήκειν ξυμβαίνει ὥστε δὴ
 ἀνθρώπῳ ἐν τῇ ἀκρωρεῖα ἐστῶτι ὑπερκύπτειν
 τε τολμῶντι ἐνθένδε οὐ ῥαδίως ἢ φλόξ ὁρατὴ
 4 γίνεται. ὁπηνίκα δὲ ξυνενεχθείη τῷ ὄρει τῷδε
 τὴν κόνιν, ἥπέρ μοι ἐρρήθη, ἐρεύγεσθαι, καὶ
 πέτρας ἀποτεμνομένη ἀπὸ τῶν τοῦ Βεβίου
 ἐσχάτων ἢ φλόξ ὑπὲρ τὴν κορυφὴν τοῦ ὅρους
 τούτου μετεωρίζει, τὰς μὲν βραχείας, τὰς δὲ
 καὶ μεγάλας κομιδῇ οὕσας, ἐνθένδε τε αὐτὰς
 ἀποπεμπομένη ὅπη παρατύχοι διασκεδάννυσι.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxxiv. 23-xxxv. 4

entirely And when Narses learned this, he summoned the forces of John and Philemuth, who were guarding the road through Tuscany, called back Valerian, who was just capturing Petra Pertusa, as it is called, with his men, collected his forces, and himself with his whole army marched into Campania arrayed as for battle.

XXXV

Now there is a mountain called Vesuvius in Campania, which I have mentioned in the previous narrative,¹ remarking that it often gives forth a sound like bellowing. And whenever this occurs, the mountain also belches forth a great quantity of hot ashes. So much was said at that point in my narrative. Now the centre of this mountain, just as is the case with Aetna in Sicily, is a natural cavity extending from its base to its peak, and it is at the bottom of this cavity that the fire burns continually. And to such a depth does this cavity descend that, when a man stands on the summit of the mountain and dares to look over the edge from there, the flames are not easily visible. And whenever it comes about that this mountain belches forth the ashes, as stated above, the flames also tear out rocks from the bottom of Vesuvius and hurl them into the air above the summit of this mountain, some of them small, but some exceedingly large, and thus shooting them forth from there it scatters them wherever they chance to fall. And a stream of fire also flows from

¹ Book VI. iv 21-30

¹ τοῦτο L: τὸ τοιοῦτο V

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 5 ῥέει δὲ καὶ ῥύαξ ἐνταῦθα πυρὸς ἐκ τῆς ἀκρωρείας
κατατείνων ἄχρι ἐς τοῦ ὄρους τὸν πρόποδα καὶ
ἔτι πρόσω, ἅπερ ἅπαντα¹ καὶ κατὰ τὴν Αἴτνην
γίνεσθαι πέφυκεν ὄχθας δὲ ποιεῖται ὑψηλὰς
ἐκατέρωθεν ὁ τοῦ πυρὸς ῥύαξ, τὰ ἔνερθεν
6 τέμνων. καὶ φερομένη μὲν ἐπὶ τοῦ ῥύακος τὰ
πρῶτα ἢ φλόξ καιομένη² εἰκάζεται ὕδατος
ἐκροῇ· ἐπεὶ δὲ αὐτῇ ἀποσβεσθῆναι ξυμβαίη,
ἀναστέλλεται μὲν τῷ ῥύακι ὁ δρόμος εὐθύς,
ἐπίπροσθέν τε ὁ ῥοῦς οὐδαμῇ πρόεισι, τὸ δὲ
ὑφίζανον τούτου δὴ τοῦ πυρὸς πηλὸς φαίνεται
σποδιᾷ ἐμφερής.
- 7 Κατὰ τούτου δὴ τοῦ Βεβίου τὸν πρόποδα
ὕδατος πηγαὶ ποτίμου εἰσί. καὶ ποταμὸς ἀπ’
αὐτῶν πρόεισι Δράκων ὄνομα, ὃς δὴ ἄγχιστὰ
πῇ τῆς Νουκερίας πόλεως φέρεται. τούτου τοῦ
ποταμοῦ ἐκατέρωθεν ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἀμ-
8 φότεροι τότε. ἔστι δὲ ὁ Δράκων τὸ μὲν ρεῦμα
βραχύς, οὐ μέντοι ἐσβατὸς οὔτε ἱππεύσιν³ οὔτε
πεζοῖς, ἐπεὶ ἐν στενῷ ξυνάγων τὸν ῥοῦν τὴν
τε γῆν ἀποτεμνόμενος ὡς βαθύτατα ἐκατέρωθεν
ὥσπερ ἀποκρεμαμένας ποιεῖται τὰς ὄχθας.
- 9 πότερα δὲ τῆς γῆς ἢ τοῦ ὕδατος φέρεται τὴν
αἰτίαν ἢ φύσις οὐκ ἔχω εἰδέναι. καταλαβόντες
δὲ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὴν γέφυραν Γότθοι, ἐπεὶ αὐτῆς
ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἄγχιστα, πύργους τε ξυλί-
νους ταύτῃ ἐνθέμενοι μηχανάς τε ἄλλας καὶ τὰς
βαλλίστρας καλουμένας ἐνταῦθα πεποίηνται,
ὅπως ἐνθένδε κατὰ κορυφὴν τῶν πολεμίων ἐνοχ-
10 λούντας⁴ δύνωνται βάλλειν. ἐκ χειρὸς μὲν οὖν

¹ ἅπαντα V: om. L.

² καιομένη L. κεομένου V.

the peak extending from the summit to the very base of the mountain and even further, resembling in all respects the phenomenon which is observed at Mt. Aetna. And the stream of fire forms high banks on either side in cutting out its bed. Now as the flame is carried along in the channel it at first resembles a flow of burning water, but as soon as the flame is quenched, the course of the stream is checked immediately and the flow proceeds no further, and the sediment of this fire appears as mud resembling ashes.

At the very base of this Mt Vesuvius there are springs of water fit to drink, and a river named Diacon proceeds from them which passes very near the city of Nuceria¹. And it was at this river that the two armies then made camp, one on one side and the other on the other. Now while this Dracon is a small stream, it still cannot be crossed either by horsemen or infantry, because, as it flows in a narrow channel and cuts into the earth to a great depth, it makes the banks on both sides overhanging as it were. But whether the cause is to be found in the nature of the soil or of the water, I cannot decide. Now the Goths had seized the bridge over the river, since they had encamped very near it, and placing wooden towers upon it they had mounted various engines in them, among them those called *ballistae*,² in order that they might be able to shoot from the tower down upon the heads of such of their enemy as harassed them. It was consequently impossible

¹ Modern Nocera.

² Catapults.

³ ἰππεῦσιν L. ἰππεύουσιν V

⁴ ἐνοχλοῦντας V: ἐνοχλοῦντες L.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- γίνεσθαι τινα ξυμβολὴν ἀμήχανα ἦν, τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἥπερ μοι εἴρηται, μεταξὺ ὄντος· ἀμφότεροι δὲ ὡς ἀγχοτάτω τῆς κατ' αὐτὸν ὄχθης γενόμενοι
- 11 τοξεύμασι τὰ πολλὰ ἐς ἀλλήλους ἐχρῶντο. ἐγίνοντο δὲ καὶ μονομαχίαι τινές, Γότθου ἀνδρός, ἂν οὕτω τύχοι, ἐκ προκλήσεως τὴν γέφυραν διαβαίνοντος χρόνος τε μηνῶν δυοῖν τοῖν στρατοπέδωιν
- 12 ἐς τοῦτο ἐτρίβη. ἕως μὲν οὖν¹ ἐθαλασσοκράτουν ἐνταῦθα οἱ Γότθοι, ἐσκομιζόμενοι τὰ² ἐπιτήδεια ναυσὶν ἀντεῖχον, ἐπεὶ τῆς θαλάσσης ἐστρατο-
- 13 πεδεύοντο οὐ πολλῷ ἄποθεν. ὕστερον δὲ Ῥωμαῖοι τὰ τε πλοῖα τῶν πολεμίων προδοσίᾳ Γότθου ἀνδρός εἶλον ὃς δὴ ταῖς ναυσὶν ἐφείσθηκει πάσαις, καὶ αὐτοῖς νῆες ἀνάριθμοι ἦλθον
- 14 ἕκ τε Σικελίας καὶ τῆς ἄλλης ἀρχῆς. ἅμα δὲ καὶ ὁ Ναρσῆς πύργους ξυλίνους ἐπὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τῇ ὄχθῃ καταστησάμενος δουλώσαι τῶν ἐναντίων τὸ φρόνημα παντελῶς ἴσχυσεν.
- 15 Οἷς δὴ οἱ Γότθοι περίφοβοι γεγεννημένοι καὶ πιεζόμενοι τῶν ἀναγκαίων τῇ ἀπορίᾳ ἐς ὄρος ἀγχιστα ὃν καταφεύγουσιν, ὅπερ Ῥωμαῖοι Γάλακτος Ὅρος τῇ Λατίνων καλοῦσι φωνῇ· οὐ δὴ αὐτοῖς Ῥωμαῖοι ἐπισπένσθαι οὐδαμῇ εἶχον, τῆς
- 16 δυσχωρίας ἀντιστατούσης. ἀλλὰ τοῖς βαρβάρους αὐτίκα ἐνταῦθα ἀναβεβηκόσι μετέμελεν, ἐπεὶ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων πολλῷ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἐσπᾶνιζον, σφίσι τε αὐτοῖς καὶ τοῖς ἵπποις ἐκπορίζε-
- 17 σθαι αὐτὰ οὐδεμιᾷ μηχανῇ ἔχοντες διὸ δὴ τὴν ἐν ξυμβολῇ τοῦ βίου καταστροφὴν αἵρετωτέραν τῆς πρὸς τοῦ λιμοῦ εἶναι οἰόμενοι ὁμόσε τοῖς

¹ ἕως μὲν οὖν L: καὶ τέως μὲν V

² τὰ L: τε τὰ V.

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII, xxxv. 10-17

for a hand-to-hand engagement to take place, since the river, as I have said, lay between, but both armies came as close as possible along the banks of the stream, and for the most part used only bows against each other. Some single encounters also took place, when some Goth on occasion, in answer to a challenge, crossed the bridge. And two months' time was spent by the armies in this way. Now as long as the Goths controlled that part of the sea, they maintained themselves by bringing in provisions by ship, since they were encamped not far from the shore. But later on the Romans captured the enemy's boats by an act of treason on the part of a Goth who was in charge of all their shipping; and at the same time innumerable ships came to them both from Sicily and from the rest of the empire. At the same time Nauses also set up wooden towers on the bank of the river, and thus succeeded completely in humbling the spirit of his opponents.

The Goths then, becoming alarmed because of these things and being at the same time hard pressed by want of provisions, took refuge on a mountain which is near by, called by the Romans in the Latin tongue "Milk Mountain",¹ here the Romans were quite unable to follow them because the rough terrain made it impossible. But the barbarians immediately repented having gone up there, because they began to be still more in need of provisions, having no means of providing them for themselves and their horses. Thinking, consequently, that death in battle was preferable to that by starvation, they unexpectedly moved out to engage

¹ Mons Lactarius.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- πολεμίοις παρὰ δόξαν ἐχώρουν, ἀπροσδόκητοί
 18 τε αὐτοῖς ἐξαπιναιῶς ἐπέπεσον. Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ
 αὐτοὺς ὡς ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ἀμυνόμενοι¹ ἔστη-
 σαν, οὐ κατὰ ἄρχοντας ἢ λόχους² ἢ καταλόγους
 τὴν τάξιν καταστησάμενοι, οὐδὲ τρόπῳ τῷ ἄλλῳ
 διακεκριμένοι ἀλλήλων, οὐδὲ τῶν σφίσι παραγ-
 γελλομένων ἐν τῇ ξυμβολῇ ἀκουσόμενοι, ἀλλ'
 19 ἀλκῇ τῇ πάσῃ, ὅπῃ ποτὲ παρατύχη, τοῖς πολε-
 μίοις ἀντιταξόμενοι.³ Γότθοι μὲν οὖν τῶν ἵππων⁴
 ἀφέμενοι πρῶτοι πεζῇ μετωπηδὸν εἰς βαθεῖαν
 φάλαγγα ἔστησαν ἅπαντες, καὶ Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ
 ταῦτα ἰδόντες τοὺς ἵππους ἀφήκαν, καὶ τρόπῳ
 τῷ αὐτῷ ἐτάξαντο πάντες.
 20 Ἐνταῦθά μοι μάχη τε πολλοῦ λόγου ἀξία καὶ
 ἀνδρὸς ἀρετὴ οὐδὲ τῶν τινὸς λεγομένων ἡρώων,
 οἶμαι, καταδεεστέρα γεγράψεται, ἥς δὴ ὁ Τείας
 21 δῆλωσιν ἐν τῷ παρόντι πεποιήται. Γότθους μὲν
 ἐς εὐτολμίαν ἢ τῶν παρόντων ἀπόγνωσις ὥρμα,
 Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ αὐτούς, καίπερ ἀπονενοημένους
 ὀρώντες, ὑφίσταντο δυνάμει τῇ πάσῃ, τοῖς κατα-
 δεεστέροις ἐρυθριῶντες ὑποχωρεῖν, ἀμφότεροί τε
 22 θυμῷ ἐπὶ τοὺς πέλας πολλῷ ἔεντο, οἱ μὲν θανα-
 τῶντες, οἱ δὲ ἀρετῶντες. καὶ ἡ μὲν μάχη πρῶτὴ
 ἤρξατο, Τείας δὲ πᾶσιν ἐνδηλος γεγεννημένος καὶ
 τὴν μὲν ἀσπίδα προβεβλημένος, ἐπανατεινόμενος
 δὲ τὸ δόρυ, πρῶτος ξὺν ὀλίγοις τισὶ τῆς φάλαγ-
 23 γος ἔσθη. Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ αὐτὸν ἰδόντες, οἰόμενοι
 τε, ἣν αὐτὸς πέσῃ, διαλυθήσεσθαι τὴν ξυμβολὴν
 σφίσιν αὐτίκα δὴ μάλα, ξυνίσταντο ἐπ' αὐτὸν

¹ ἀμυνόμενοι V: ἀμυνόμενοι L

² λόχους V: λοχαγούς L

³ ἀντιταξόμενοι V: ἀντιταξάμενοι L

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxxv. 17-23

their enemy, falling upon them suddenly and without warning. But the Romans, to ward them off as well as circumstances permitted, took their stand, not arranging themselves by commanders or by companies or by cohorts, nor distinguished in any other manner from one another, and not so as to hear the commands given them in battle, but still, determined to put forth all their strength against the enemy wherever they should chance to stand. Now the Goths were the first to abandon their horses and all took their stand on foot, facing their enemy in a deep phalanx, and then the Romans too, observing this, let their horses go, and all arrayed themselves in the same manner.

Here shall be described a battle of great note and the heroism of one man inferior, I think, to that of none of the heroes of legend, that, namely, which Teias displayed in the present battle. The Goths, on the one hand, were driven to be courageous by despair of the situation, while the Romans, on the other hand, though they could see that the enemy had become desperate, withstood them with all their strength, blushing to give way to a weaker force; thus from both sides they charged their nearest opponents with great fury, the one army courting death and the other desiring to make a display of valour. Now the battle began early in the morning, and Teias, easily recognized by all, stood with only a few followers at the head of the phalanx, holding his shield before him and thrusting forward his spear. And when the Romans saw him, thinking that, if he himself should fall, the battle would be instantly decided in their favour, all those who laid claim to

⁴ τῶν ἱππῶν V: τοὺς ἱπποὺς L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

ὅσοι ἀρετῆς μετεποιοῦντο, παμπληθεῖς ὄντες, καὶ
 τὰ δόρατα ἐς¹ αὐτὸν ἅπαντες οἱ μὲν ὥθουν, οἱ
 24 δὲ ἐσηκόντιζον. αὐτὸς δὲ ὑπὸ τῇ ἀσπίδι κεκα-
 λυμμένος ταύτῃ μὲν τὰ δόρατα ἐδέχετο πάντα,
 ἐμπίπτων δὲ αὐτοὺς² ἐκ τοῦ αἰφνιδίου πολλοὺς
 25 διεχρήτο. καὶ ὀπηνίκα οἱ τὴν ἀσπίδα ἔμπλεων
 οὖσαν πεπηγότων δοράτων θεῶτο, τῶν τινὲς ὑπασ-
 26 πιστῶν ταύτην παραδιδούς ἐτέραν ἡρέιτο. οὕτω
 μαχόμενος ἐς τῆς ἡμέρας τὸ τριτημόριον διαγέγονε,
 καὶ τότε δὴ δώδεκα μὲν αὐτῷ δόρατα ἐμπεπηγότα
 ἢ ἀσπίς εἶχε, κινεῖν δὲ αὐτὴν ὅπη βούλοιτο καὶ
 27 ἀποκρούεσθαι τοὺς ἐπιόντας οὐκέτι ἴσχυε. τῶν
 δὲ τινα ὑπασπιστῶν μετεκάλει σπονδῇ, οὐ τὴν
 τάξιν λιπὼν οὐδὲ ὅσον ἄχρι ἐς δάκτυλον ἕνα
 οὐδὲ ἀναποδίσας, ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τὰ πρόσω
 ἐπαγαγόμενος, οὐδὲ ἐπιστραφεῖς, οὐδὲ τὰ νῶτα
 τῇ ἀσπίδι³ ἐρείσας, οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ πλάγιος γε-
 γονώς, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ τῷ ἐδάφει ἐρηρυσμένος αὐτοῦ
 μετὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος εἰστήκει, κτείνων τε τῇ δεξιᾷ
 χεὶρὶ καὶ ἀποκρουόμενος τῇ λαίᾳ καὶ ἀνακαλῶν
 28 τὸ τοῦ ὑπασπιστοῦ ὄνομα καὶ ὁ μὲν αὐτῷ
 μετὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος παρῆν, ὁ δὲ ταύτην εὐθὺς τῆς
 29 βαρυνομένης τοῖς δόρασιν ἀντηλλάσσετο. ἐν
 τούτῳ δὲ οἱ χρόνου τινὰ βραχείαν στιγμὴν
 γυμνῷ⁴ γενέσθαι τὰ στέρνα ξυνέβη, τύχῃ τέ οἱ
 ξυνέπεσε τότε ἀκοντίῳ βεβληῖσθαι καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ
 30 εὐθὺς θνήσκει. καὶ αὐτοῦ τὴν κεφαλὴν ἐπὶ
 κοντοῦ μετεωρίσαντες τῶν Ῥωμαίων τινὲς στρα-
 τιᾷ ἑκατέρα περιμόντες ἐδείκνυν, Ῥωμαίοις μὲν,
 ὅπως δὴ θαρσῆσωσι μᾶλλον, Γότθοις δέ, ὅπως
 ἀπογόνους τὸν πόλεμον καταλύσωσιν.

¹ ἐς L: ἐπ' V.

² αὐτοὺς V: om. L: αὐτοῖς Dindorf.

valour concentrated on him—and there was a great number of them—and they all directed their spears at him, some thrusting and others hurling them. He himself meanwhile, covered by his shield, received all their spears in it, and by sudden charges he slew a large number. And whenever he saw that his shield was filled with spears fixed in it, he would hand this over to one of his guards and take another for himself. And he continued fighting in this manner for the third part of the day, and at the end of that time his shield had twelve spears stuck in it and he was no longer able to move it where he wished and repel his assailants. So he eagerly called one of his bodyguards without leaving his post so much as a finger's breadth nor giving ground nor allowing the enemy to advance, nor even turning round and covering his back with his shield, nor, in fact, did he even turn sidewise, but as if fastened to the ground he stood there, shield in hand, killing with his right hand and parrying with his left and calling out the name of the bodyguard. And the guard was now at his side with the shield, and Teias immediately sought to take this in exchange for the one weighed down with spears. But while he was doing so his chest became exposed for a brief instant of time, and it chanced that at that moment he was hit by a javelin and died instantly from the wound. Then some of the Romans raised his head aloft on a pole and went about shewing it to both armies, to the Romans in order that they might be encouraged, and to the Goths in order that they might in despair make an end of the war.

³ τῇ ἀσπίδι V om L

⁴ γυμνῶ V: γυμνᾷ L.

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 31 Οὐ μὴν οὐδ' ὥς τὴν ξυμβολὴν κατέλυσαν¹ Γότθοι, ἀλλ' ἄχρι ἐς νύκτα ἐμάχοντο, καίπερ ἐξεπιστάμενοι τὸν βασιλέα τεθνάναι σφίσιν ἐπειδὴ δὲ ξυνεσκόταζεν, αὐτοῦ ἐκάτεροι διαλυθέντες ἐν τῇ τῶν ὀπλων σκευῇ ἐνυκτέρευσαν.
- 32 ἡμέρᾳ δὲ τῇ ἐπιγενομένῃ ἀναστάντες ὀρθρου τρόπῳ τῷ αὐτῷ αὖθις² ἐτάξαντο καὶ μέχρι ἐς νύκτα ἐμάχοντο, καὶ οὔτε ὑπεχώρουν ἀλλήλοις οὔτε πη ἐτρέποντο ἢ ἀνεπόδιζον, καίπερ ἀμφοτέρωθεν κτεινομένων πολλῶν, ἀλλ' ἀπηγριωμένοι τῷ ἐς ἀλλήλους ἀπηνεῖ ἔργου³ εἶχοντο, Γότθοι μὲν εὖ εἰδότες ὅτι δὴ τὴν ὑσάτην διαφέρουσι μάχην, Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ αὐτῶν ἐλασσοῦσθαι⁴ ἀπαξιούντες. ἐν ὑσάτῳ δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι παρὰ τὸν Ναρσῆν πέμψαντες τῶν λογίμων τινὰς μεμαθηκέναι μὲν ἔλεγον ὥς πρὸς τὸν θεὸν σφίσιν ὁ ἀγὼν γένοιτο· αἰσθάνεσθαι γὰρ τὴν ἀντιταχθεῖσαν αὐτοῖς δύναμιν· καὶ τοῖς ξυμπεσοῦσι ξυμβάλλοντες τὴν τῶν πραγμάτων ἀλήθειαν γνωσιμαχεῖν⁵ τὸ⁶ λοιπὸν βούλεσθαι καὶ⁷ ἀπολιπεῖν τὴν ἀγώνισιν, οὐ μέντοι⁸ βασιλεῖ ἐπακούσοντας, ἀλλὰ ξὺν τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων τισὶν αὐτόνομοι βιοτεύουσιν, ἐδέοντό τε εἰρηναίαν σφίσι τὴν ἀναχώρησιν ἐνδοῦναι Ῥωμαίους, οὐ φθονοῦντας αὐτοῖς λογισμοῦ σῶφρονος, ἀλλὰ καὶ χρήμασι τοῖς αὐτῶν ὥσπερ ἐφοδίοις αὐτοὺς δωρουμένους, ὅσα δὴ ἐν τοῖς ἐπὶ τῆς Ἰταλίας φρουρίοις αὐτῶν ἕκαστος ἐναποθέμενος ἔτυχε

¹ κατέλυσαν L: κατέπανσαν V.

² αὖθις L: εὐθύς V

³ ἔργου L: om V.

⁴ ἐλασσοῦσθαι L: ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι V

But not even then did the Goths abandon the struggle, but they kept fighting till night, although well aware that their king was dead. But when it began to grow dark, the two armies separated and passed the night on the battle-field in their equipment. And on the following day they arose at dawn, and arraying themselves again in the same manner they fought till nightfall, neither army retreating before the other nor being routed nor even giving ground, though large numbers were being slain on both sides, but they kept at it with the fury of wild beasts by reason of their bitter hatred of each other, the Goths, on the one hand, knowing well that they were fighting their last battle, and the Romans, on the other, refusing to be woisted by them. But finally the barbarians sent to Naises some of their notables, saying that they had learned that the struggle they had taken up was against God, for they recognized, they said, the power that was arrayed against them, and, since they were coming to realize by what had happened the truth of the matter, they were desirous from now to acknowledge defeat and give up the struggle, not, however, to obey the emperor, but to live in independence with some of the other barbarians; and they begged that the Romans concede to them a peaceful withdrawal, not begrudging them a reasonable settlement, but presenting them, in fact, with their own money as travelling funds, that money, namely, which each of them had previously deposited

⁵ γνωσιμαχεῖν V · γνώσιμον σχεῖν L

⁶ τό L: δὲ τό V ⁷ καὶ V: μέν L.

⁸ ἀγώνισιν—μέντοι V: ἀπόγνωσιν, οὐκ ἐφῶδέ L

PROCOPIUS OF CAESAREA

- 34 πρότερον. ταῦτα ὁ μὲν Ναρσῆς ἐν βουλῇ ἐποιεῖτο. Ἰωάννης δὲ ὁ Βιταλιανοῦ παρήνει δέησιν ἐνδέχεσθαι τήνδε, καὶ μὴ περαιτέρω θανατῶσιν ἀνθρώποις διὰ μάχης ἵεναι, μηδὲ ἀποπειράσασθαι τόλμης ἐν ἀπογνώσει φυομένης τοῦ βίου, ἣ καὶ τοῖς αὐτῆς ἐχομένοις καὶ τοῖς
- 35 ὑπαντιάζουσι χαλεπὴ γίνεται. “Ἀρκεῖ γάρ,” ἔφη, “τοῖς γε σώφροσι τὸ νικᾶν, τὸ δὲ ὑπεράγαν ἐθέλειν ἴσως ἂν τῷ καὶ ἐς τὸ ἀξύμφορον τρέποιτο.”
- 36 Πείθεται τῇ ὑποθήκῃ Ναρσῆς, καὶ ξυνέβησαν ἐφ’ ᾧ τῶν βαρβάρων οἱ ἀπολελειμμένοι¹ χρήματα κεκομισμένοι τὰ αὐτῶν ἴδια ἐκ πάσης ἀπαλλάσσονται Ἰταλίας εὐθύς, πόλεμόν τε μηχανῇ
- 37 οὐδεμιᾷ πρὸς Ῥωμαίους διοίσουσιν ἔτι. Γότθοι μὲν οὖν μεταξὺ χίλιοι τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἐξαστάντες ἐς Τικινόν τε πόλιν καὶ χωρία τὰ ὑπὲρ ποταμὸν Πάδον ἐχώρησαν, ὧν ἄλλοι τε ἡγοῦντο
- 38 καὶ Ἰνδούλφ, οὐπὲρ πρότερον² ἐπεμνήσθην. οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἅπαντες ὄρκια δόντες τὰ ξυγκείμενα πάντα ἐπέρρωσαν. οὕτω τε καὶ Κύμην καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ πάντα ἐξεῖλον Ῥωμαῖοι, καὶ τὸ ὀκτωκαιδέκατον ἔτος ξυνετελεύετα τῷ Γοτθικῷ πολέμῳ τῷδε, ὃν Προκόπιος ξυνέγραψεν.

¹ ἀπολελειμμένοι L: ὑπολελειμμένοι V

² πρότερον L ἔμπροσθεν V

HISTORY OF THE WARS, VIII. xxxv. 33-38

in the fortresses of Italy These proposals Narses took under consideration Now John the nephew of Vitalian advised that they should allow this request and not carry on battle further with men who courted death nor expose themselves to those whose daring was sprung from despair of life, an attitude which proves dangerous not only for those possessed by it, but also for their opponents "For victory," he said, "is sufficient for the wise, but extravagant desires might perhaps turn out even to a man's disadvantage."

Narses followed this suggestion, and they came to terms, agreeing that the remainder of the barbarians, after receiving their own money, should depart immediately from all Italy and that they should no longer wage war in any way against the Romans Now a thousand Goths, in the midst of the negotiations, detached themselves from the main body, and under command of different men, among whom was the Indulf whom I have mentioned before,¹ proceeded to the city of Ticinum and the country beyond the Po But all the rest gave sworn pledges and confirmed all the details of the agreement Thus the Romans captured Cumae and all that remained, and the eighteenth year, as it closed, brought the end of this Gothic War, the history of which Procopius has written

¹ Book VII. xxxv 23, etc

INDEX

- Abasgi, a people near the Caucasus, subject to the Lazi, VIII iii 12, 13, iv 1, their religion, VIII iii 14, supplied eunuchs to Byzantium until the traffic was forbidden, VIII iii 15-20, converted to Christianity, VIII iii 19, dethrone their kings, VIII iii 21, ix 10, have a bishop sent by Justinian, VIII iv 12, revolt from the Romans, VIII ix 6, 9 ff., their land protected by nature, VIII ix 15-18, outwitted and dispersed by the Romans, VIII ix 23 ff., Mermeroes marches against them, VIII xvi 15
- Abasgia, defended by a mountain pass, VIII ix 15
- Acampsis River, the lower course of the Boas, VIII ii 8
- Achaëa, suffers from earthquakes, VIII xxv 16
- Acherontia, Acherontis, fortress in Lucania, commanded by Moras, VIII xxvi 4, refuge of Ragnaris, VIII xxxiv 15
- Adrianople, town in Thrace, distance from Byzantium, VII xl 36
- Adriatic Sea, crossed by Artabanus, VII xl 14, current thence seems to flow in the strait of Messina, VIII vi 21
- Aëtes, mythical king of Colchis, VIII ii 31, his legendary birthplace, VIII xiv 49
- Aeneas, son of Anchises, VIII xxii 31, his ship displayed in Rome, VII xxii 7-16
- Aeschylus, writer of tragedy, cited, VIII vi. 15
- Aetna, compared with Vesuvius, VIII xxxv 2, 5
- Agamemnon, leader of the Trojan expedition, VIII xxii. 28, father of Iphigeneia, VIII. v 23, son of Atreus, VIII xxii 27
- Alamundaras, said to have suffered at the hands of the Saracens, VIII xi 10
- Alani, an independent people, allied with the Romans, their mountainous country, VIII iii 4; neighbours of the Bruchi, VIII iv 1, as allies in the Roman army, VIII i 4, fighting with the Persians, VIII viii 28, 34, one of them alone defends a camp, VIII viii 37, is killed by John, VIII viii 38
- Alps, VIII xxiv 6
- Amalafrida, sister of Theodoric and grandmother of Amalafridas, VIII xxv 11
- Amalafridas, a Goth, commander of Roman troops sent to the Lombards, VIII xxv 11, grandson of Amalafrida, VIII xxv 11; alone reaches the Lombards, VIII xxv 13, with the Lombards, VIII xxi 14
- Amalasuntha, mother of Matasuntha, VII xxxix 14
- Amastris, city on the Euxine, VIII ii 2
- Amazons, their reputed home on the Thermodon, VIII ii 2, traditional account of their movements, VIII iii 5, 6, Procopius' explanation of the tradition, VIII iii 7-11
- Amusis, city on the Euxine, VIII ii 2, near the Thermodon River, VIII iii 5
- Anasozadus, eldest son of Chosroes, VIII x 8, banished by him because of lawless conduct, VIII x 8-10, leads an uprising and is punished by mutilation, VIII x 17-vi 1
- Anastasius, Roman emperor, founded Daras, VIII. vii. 9

INDEX

- Anchialus, ravaged by the Goths, VIII xxii 31
- Anchises, father of Aeneas, VIII xxii 31
- Ancon, attacked by the Goths, VIII xxiii 1 ff., saved from them, VIII xxiii 30, 40, reinforced, VIII xxiii 41
- Angli, one of the nations of Britania, VIII xv 7, 12, sent as envoys by the Franks, VIII xx 10, attack and defeat the Varni, VIII xx. 33, 34
- Ansilas, a Roman soldier, distinguished for valour, VIII do
- Antae, a barbarian nation north of the Maeotic Lake, VIII iv 9, invade Roman territory, VII xl 5, neighbours of the Sclaveni, do
- Antalas, Moorish chief, subjugated by John, VIII xvii 21
- Antinous, the city of, in Egypt, VIII. xxvii 6
- Antioch, captured and destroyed by Chosroes, VIII vii 11
- Anzalas, spearman of Narses, answers the challenge of Coccas, VIII xxxi 13, and slays him, VIII xxxi 15
- Apenmines, VIII xxiv 3, 4
- Apri, city in Thrace, VIII xxvii 8
- Apsarus, city near Lazica, VIII ii 11, its ancient greatness, VIII ii 14, distance from Rhizaëum, VIII ii 11, from Petra, VIII ii 21
- Apsilia, its mountains, VIII ix 15, betrayed to the Persians, VIII x 2-1
- Apsili, a Christian people subject to the Lazi, VIII ii 32, 33, iii 13, ix 7, 31, x 1, their mountainous country, VIII ix 20, revolt from the Colchians, VIII x 6, won back to allegiance by John, VIII x 7, a woman of, VIII x 5
- Apsyrus, brother of Medea, his tomb, VIII ii 14, ancient name of Apsarus, VIII ii 12
- Aradius, Roman commander against the Sclaveni, VII xl 34, sent to the Outrigurs with money, VIII xix 3, 4, commander of troops sent to the Lombards, VIII xxv 11, in Illyricum, VIII xxvii 13
- Archabis, town near Lazica, VIII ii 11
- Archaeopolis, first city in Lazica, VIII xiii 3, guarded by three thousand Romans, VIII xiii 8, objective of Mermeroes, VIII, xiii 3, 22, 24, 30, passed by him, VIII xiii 25-27, attacked by him, VIII xiv 3 ff., attempt to betray it, VIII xiv 23-27, held by the Romans and Lazi, VIII xiv 45, xvi 6, again attacked by Mermeroes, VIII xvii 17, its situation, walls and water supply, VIII xiv 1-3, distance from Mocheresis, VIII xiv 46
- Arethas, king of the Saracens, accused by Isdigousnas, VIII xi 10
- Argo, the ship said to have been built for the capture of the Golden Fleece, VIII ii 30
- Arians, the Goths, VIII iv 11
- Ariminum, captured by the Goths, VII xxxvii 23, commanded by Usdrilas, VIII xxviii 2, its bridge, VIII xxviii 5, 6, passed by Narses, VIII xxviii 11, xxxix 3
- Arimuth, Roman commander, in Illyricum, VIII xxvii 13
- Aristotle, studied the current at Chalcis, VIII vi 20
- Armenia, VIII viii 22, xv 9, Bessas appointed General of, VIII ix 4
- Armenians, VIII ii 5, viii 21, location of their country, VIII ii 20, neighbours of the Tzani, VIII i 9, visited by Bessas, VIII xiii 11, claim the site of Artemis' temple, VIII v 24, the following Armenians are named: John (Guzes), son of Thomas, VIII viii 15, xi 57, Anzalas, VIII xxxi 13
- Arrian, the historian, VIII xiv 18
- Artabanes, a Persarmenian, had deserted to the Romans, VIII xiii 21-24, sent by Justinian to relieve Liberius, VII xxxix 8, xl 14, driven back by storm, VII xl 15-17, distinguishes himself as a skilful commander, VIII viii 25-27, commander of all troops in Sicily, VIII xiv 1, receives appeals from Crotan, VIII xxv 24
- Artemis, her temple in Tauris, VIII v 23, a monument to, VIII xxii 27, Artemis Bolosia, VIII xxii 29
- Auruth, of the Eruli, husband of the daughter of Mauricius, VIII xxvi 13, in the army of Narses, do
- Asbadus, bodyguard of Justinian, defeated by the Sclaveni, VII.

INDEX

- xxxviii. 4-6, 9, in the army of Narses, viii xxvi 13, pursues and wounds Totila, viii xxxii 22-24, wounded by Scipuar, viii xxxii 24, returns, do
- Asia, viii ii 32, iii 7, 11, one of the continents, viii vi 12-15, its boundary toward Europe discussed, viii vi 1-15, ii 28
- Astica, plundered by the Sclaveni, vii xl 43
- Atalaric, ruler of Italy, grandson of Theoderic, vii xxxix 15, viii xxi 11
- Athanasius, father-in-law of Leontius, viii xxiv 11
- Atheneae, village near Lazica, viii ii 10, 11
- Athenaea, ancient ruler of a region which was later called by her name, viii ii 10
- Athenian, Phidias, viii xxi 12
- Atreus, father of Agamemnon, viii xxi 27
- Auduin, leader of the Lombards, viii xviii 3, married the sister of Amalafridas, viii xxv 12, sends envoys to ask a truce, viii xviii 7, reports his victory to Justinian, viii xxv 15, sends allies to Narses, viii xxvi 12, robs Ildigisal of the throne, viii xxvii 1, demands Ildigisal, viii xxvii 4, 22, refuses to surrender Ustingothus, viii xxvii 26, 27
- Auximus, Goths retreat thither, viii xxiii 40
- Babas, commander in the Roman army, sent to Lazica, viii ix 5; commander of Archaepolis, viii xiii 8, addresses his men, viii xiv 14-21, leads a sally, viii xiv 22 ff
- Belapaton, city in Persia, viii x 9, distance from Otesiphon, do
- Belisarius, garrisons Rome, vii xxxvi. 1, returns to Byzantium, vii xxxvi. 4, appoints commanders of Rhegium, vii xxxvii 20, assisted by Simmon, viii xix 7, honoured by the Emperor in Byzantium, viii xxi 1, considered the first citizen of the empire, viii. xxi. 2, 3, brought Amalafridas to Byzantium, viii xxv. 12, his guardsman Dio- genes, vii xxxvi 1, xxxvii 9, Gundulf, viii xxiii 1, the household of, vii xxxvi 16
- Bersabus, a Persian notable viii xv. 8, captured by Valerian, viii xv. 9, imprisoned in Byzantium, viii. xv 10, returned to Isdigousnas, viii xv 11
- Bessas, sent to Lazica as General of Armenia, viii ix 4, sent against the Abasgi, viii ix 12, besieges Petra, viii xi 11 ff, undermines the wall, viii xi 14-18, leads the assault in person, viii xi 39, 40, is wounded, but saved, viii xi. 44-50, returns to the assault, viii. xi 51, refuses a request for a truce, viii. xi 53, addresses the remnant of the Persians, viii xii 3-13, sends the captives to the Emperor, and dismantles the wall of Petra, viii xii 28, unwisely leaves Lazica, viii xii 11-13, regains his reputation lost at Rome, viii xii. 30-34, xxxiii 24
- Bithynians, their location, viii ii 2
- Boas River, description of, viii ii. 6, 9
- Boeotia, damaged by earthquakes, viii xxv 16, its town Scarphea, viii xxv 19
- Bolosia, epithet of Artemis, viii xxii. 29
- Bolum, fortress in Persarmenia. given up by the Romans, viii xiii 19
- Bosporus, city on the Euxine, viii v. 26, 27
- Braducius, had been interpreter of Isdigousnas, slain by Chosroes, viii. xi 8, 9, perhaps slandered by Isdigousnas, viii xi. 9
- Britain, its position with reference to Britia, viii xx 4-6
- Brittia, an island lying off Gaul, viii. xx 5, its numerous population, causing annual migrations to the mainland, viii xx 6-10, horses unknown there, viii xx 29, its dividing wall, viii xx 42-46, the destination of departed spirits, viii. xx 47 ff, its people wage war on the Varni, viii xx 1 ff, a maiden of, viii xx 12, 41, remote from the Varni, viii. xx 18, distance from the mouth of the Rhine, viii xx. 4

INDEX

- Brittones, one of the three nations of Brittia, VIII xx. 7
- Bruchi, a people near the Caucasus, VIII iv 1
- Busta Gallorum, VIII xxix 5
- Buzes, Roman commander, brother of Venilus, VIII ix 5, uncle of Domentiolus, VII xxxix 3
- Byzacium, district in Africa, VIII xvii 21
- Byzantium, capital of the Roman Empire, mentioned frequently, VII xxxvii 14; its long walls, VII xl 43, at the "beginning" of the Euxine, VIII ii 1, supplies forces to Narses, VIII xxvi 10, distance from Topirus, VII xxxviii 9, from Adrianople, VII xl 36
- Cabades A, Persian king, grandfather of Cabades B, VIII xxvi. 13
- Cabades B, son of Zames, nephew of Chosroes, VIII xxvi. 13, in the army of Narses, do.
- Calabria, VII xl 15
- Calchedon, at the "beginning" of the Euxine, VIII ii 1, v 31, 33
- Calypso, VIII xxii 19, 21
- Camillus, Roman General, VIII xxix 4
- Campania, district in Italy, VIII xxxiv 22, 23, 24, senators summoned thence by Totila, VII xxxvii 3, prisoners sent there by him, VIII xxii 2, xxxiv 5, 6, its fortress Cumae, VIII xxxiv 19, its mountain Vesuvius, VIII xxxv 1
- Candidati, Asbadus, VII xxxviii 5
- Caprae, scene of Totila's death, VIII xxxii 27, 35
- Caranalis, city in Sardinia, VIII xxiv. 34
- Carthage, VIII xxiv 36
- Casius, epithet of Zeus, VIII xxii 25
- Ca-rope, town in Cereyra, VIII xxii 26
- Caspian Gates, pass over the Caucasus, VIII. iii 4
- Catana, city in Sicily, without walls, VII xl 21
- Caucasus, mountain chain east of the Euxine, VIII ii 26, iii 11, 12, iv 1, contains the source of the Phasis, VIII ii 27, described, VIII iii. 1-4, no tradition of Amazons there, VIII iii 6, 7, extends to the Euxine, VIII ix 15; Opsites takes refuge in, VIII ix 29, home of the Sabini, VIII xi 23, 26
- Celesene, a region in Armenia, VIII v 24
- Celtic mountains, contain the sources of the Danube, VIII v 30
- Centumcellae, town in Etruria, VII xxxvi 11, 15, besieged by Totila, VII xxxvii 8-18, its surrender demanded by him, VII xxxix 2, attacked by Narses' order, VIII xxxiv. 20
- Cephallenia, touched at by Atabanc, VII xl 14
- Cepi, town on the Euxine, VIII v 28
- Cereyra, VIII xxii 18, 19, ravaged by the Goths, VIII xxii. 30
- Chaeonea, destroyed by earthquake, VIII xxv. 17
- Chalcis, in Euboea; visited by Aristotile, VIII vi 20
- Charybdis, the strait of, VIII vi 23, xxii 19
- Cherson, city on the Euxine, VIII v 27, 28, distance from the mouth of the Isler, VIII v 20
- Chimallon, leader of the Outriggers, VIII xviii 15, receives a message from Justinian, VIII xix 3
- Chorienes, Persian commander, VIII i 4, makes camp on the river Hippiis, VIII viii 1, advances to meet the Romans and Laza, VIII viii 17, receives fugitives, VIII viii 28, killed in battle, VIII viii 31, 35
- Chosroes, king of Persia, VIII xii 9, xv. 11, xvi 5, 27, 29, invited into Lazica by the inhabitants, VIII iv 5, eager to acquire Lazica, VIII vii 1, 13, xii 17, repeatedly invades Roman territory, VIII vii 2, reviled by the Persians, VIII vii 3, oppresses the Lazae, VIII viii 10, summons Scernaris, VIII ix 11, father of Anasozadus, VIII x 8, banishes him, VIII x 8-10, falls violently ill, VIII x 10, sickly by nature, do, gathered many physicians about him, VIII x 11, devoted to Tribunus, VIII x 11-14, grants him a favour, VIII x 14-16, defeats and punishes Anasozadus, VIII x 19-22; receives and dismisses Petrus, VIII xi 2, 3,

INDEX

- puts Braducius to death, VIII xi 8, captures and garrisons Petia, VIII xii 21, builds an aqueduct of three channels, VIII xii 22, prepares to break the endless ture, VIII xiv 39, his envoy Isdigousnas, VIII xv 1, wishes to ransom Bersabus, VIII xv 8, 10, exacts heavy payments from the Romans, VIII xv 17, plots the death of Gubazes, VIII xvi 2, reported in Lazica, VIII xvi 8, 11, hated by Gubazes, VIII xvi 12, receives the report of Isdigousnas, VIII xvii 9, uncle of Gabalas, VIII xxvi 13, his previous attack on Edessa, VIII xiv 35
- Christians, the following are mentioned as Christians peoples near Lazica, VIII ii 17, the Apsili, VIII ii 53, the Tetraxitae, VIII iv 9, the Romans, VIII vi 8, the Abasgi become Christians, VIII iii 19, 21, the disputes of the Christians, VIII xxv 13
- Cilicia, Paulus a native of, VII xxxvi 16
- Cimmerians, the ancient name of the tribes on the Maeotic Lake, VIII iv 1, and of the Huns, VIII v 1, discover the possibility of crossing the Maeotic Lake, VIII v 7-9, cross it and attack the Goths, VIII v 10, 11, Cimmerian Strait, considered by some the boundary between Europe and Asia, VIII vi 15
- Cleft, The, defile in Greece, visited by a violent earthquake, VIII xxv 23
- Coccas, a Roman deserter, VIII xxxi 12, slain in single combat, VIII xxxi 14-16
- Cortaeon, suggested as an earlier form of Cotus in Lazica, ancient *Colchis*, VIII xiv 49
- Colchians, VIII i 8, identified with the Lazi, VIII i 10, at the "end" of the Buxine, VIII ii 1, not neighbours of the Trapezuntines, VIII ii 15, ancient location of their dwellings, VIII ii 31, their king Gubazes, VIII viii 1, the Apsili revolt from them, VIII x 6, the Colchian Phasis, VIII vi 13, 14
- Colchis, invaded by the Persians, VIII i 3 ff., VIII viii 39, held entirely by the Persians, VIII xvi. 7
- Comana, city in Armenia, VIII v 24
- Constantianus, Roman commander against the Sclaveni, VII xl 34, his standard captured, VII xl 42, later recovered, VII xl 45
- Coronea, destroyed by earthquake, VIII xxv 17
- Corsica, VIII xxiv 37, attacked and captured by the Goths, VIII xxiv. 31-33, formerly called *Cyrnus*, VIII xxiv 39
- Cotais, later name for Cotiaion, VIII. xiv 48, near Uthmereos, VIII xiv 51, fortified by Merimercoe, VIII xvi 16, Persians retire thurher, VIII xvii 19
- Cotiaion, fortress in Lazica, VIII xiv. 48
- Cottian Alps, subject to Theudibert, VIII xxiv 6
- Cruscan Gulf, VIII xxv 16
- Cuton, sends appeal for help, VIII xxv 24, relief sent thurher by Justinian, VIII xxvi 1, 2
- Ctesiphon, city in Persia, distance from Belapaton, VIII x 9
- Cumae, money deposited there by Totila, VIII xxxiv 19, 21, attacked by Narses' order, VIII xxxiv 20, besieged, VIII xxxiv 22, taken by the Romans, VIII xxxv 38
- Cutrigur, progenitor of the Cutigur Huns, VIII v 2
- Cutrigurs, a Hunnic tribe, origin of the name, VIII v 2-4, settle in the country from which the Goths were expelled, VIII v 15, 22, 23, continue to ravage Roman territory, VIII v 16, become allies of the Gepaedes, VIII xviii 14, 15, accused by Justinian, VIII xviii. 18-20, receive money annually from Byzantium, VIII xviii 19, attacked by the Utigurs, VIII xviii 21-23, xix 8, their Roman prisoners escape, VIII xix 2, a remnant settled in Thrace, VIII. xix 7, Cutrigur Huns engage with Ildigisal and Goar, VIII xxvii. 10, 11, accused by the Utigurs, VIII xix 15 ff.

INDEX

- Cutzinas, a Moorish chief, allied with the Romans, VIII xvii 21
- Cyprian, murdered by Ulfus, VIII xxxiii 10, 12
- Cyrrus, ancient name of Corsica, VIII xxiv 39
- Dacia, traversed by the Ister, VIII v 30
- Dagisthaeus, Roman commander in Lazica, VIII viii 1, undermined the wall of Petra, VIII xi 11, 14, 15, leads the Roman army to battle, VIII viii 16, fights against the Persians, VIII viii 29, slandered by the Lazi, VIII ix 1-3, imprisoned, VIII ix 4, released from prison and sent with Narses, VIII xxvi 13, commands on the left wing, VIII xxxi 4, in the assault on Rome, VIII xxxiii 21, lost Petra, recovered Rome, VIII xxxiii 24
- Dalmatia, VIII xxvii 5, invaded by the Slaveni, VII xl 7, Roman army winters in, VII xl 11, 27, 30, Goths offer to resign claim to, VIII xxiv 4
- Damianus, Roman commander, nephew of Valerian, escorts the Lombards from Italy, VIII xxxiii 2
- Danube, called also Ister, *q v*, VIII v 29
- Daras, attacked in vain by Choroës, VIII vii 5, well provisioned against siege, VIII vii 7, its remarkable spring, VIII vii 7, 8, founded by Anastasius, VIII vii 9
- Diogenes, commands the garrison of Rome, VII xxxvi 1 ff, body-guard of Belisarius, VII xxxvii 9, escapes from Rome, VII xxxvi 15, commander of Centumcellae, VII xxxvii 9, receives and answers proposals from Totila, VII xxxvii 11-17, repudiates his agreement with Totila, VII xxxix 25, 26
- Dodona, ravaged by the Goths, VIII. xxii 31
- Dolomites, an independent people in Persia, in the Persian army, VIII. xiv 5-7, their fighting equipment, VIII xiv 8, accustomed to the mountains, VIII xiv 9, assist in the attack on Archaeopols, VIII xiv. 12, flee with the Persian army, VIII xiv 42
- Domentiolus, nephew of Buzes, commander of Messana, VII xxxix 3
- Dracón, river in Campania, VIII xxxv. 7, its high banks, VIII xxxv 8
- Dryus, port in southern Italy, held by the Romans, VIII. xviii 17, xxxiv 10, 13, commanded by Pacurius, VIII xxvi 4
- Echinus, visited by tidal wave, VIII xxv 19
- Edessa, attacked by Chosroës, VIII xiv 35, a portent in, VIII xiv 39-41
- Egypt, VIII xxvii 6, the Egyptian Nile, VIII vi 2, 13, 14
- Elexthana, VIII xxii 29
- Elemondus, king of the Gepaedes, his death, VIII xxvii 19, father of Ustingothus, VIII xxvii 19, 26
- Erlu, Suartuas appointed their ruler, VIII xxv 11, in the army of Narses, VIII xxvi 13, xxx 18, xxxi 5, devoted to him, VIII xxvi 17, a party of, kill Usdrilas, VIII xxviii 10, in the assault on Rome, VIII xxxiii 19 the following individuals are named Philomuth, VII xxxix. 10, Uligagus, VIII ix 5
- Euboea, VIII vi 20, xxii 27
- Eulysia, a country on the Euxine, VIII iv 7
- Euphrates, a eunuch of the Abasgi, VIII iii 19
- Euripus, the strait at Chalcis, VIII. vi 20
- Europe, one of the continents, VIII vi 12-15, ii 32, iii 11, xviii 1, ravaged by the Slaveni, vii xl 33, the boundary of, VIII ii 28, 29, vi 1-5
- Euxine Sea, description of, VIII. i. 7-v 33, receives the waters of the Ister, VIII v 30, forms part of the boundary between Europe and Asia, VIII vi 3, 5, receives the outflow from the Maeotic Lake, VIII vi 4, Phasis River at its extremity, VIII vi 8, considered by some to be formed by the Maeotic Lake, VIII vi 16, does not "end" at Byzantium, VIII vi 25, barbarians to the north of it, VIII. vii.

INDEX

- 12, touched by the Caucasus, VIII ix 13 .
- Flaminian Way, left by Narses, VIII. xxviii 13
- Foederati, barbarian bands allied with the Romans, VIII v 13
- Forum of Peace, in Rome, VIII xxi 11
- Franks, their ruler repudiates Totila's proposal of marriage with his daughter, VII xxxvii 1, 2, separated from the Varni by the Rhine, VIII xx 2, receive immigrants from Brittia, VIII xx 8-10, their ruler Theudibert, VIII xx 11, Hermegisclus allied with them by marriage, VIII xx 15, the Varni urged to favour them, VIII xx 17, close to the Varni, VIII xx 18, said to be holding a large part of Italy, VIII xxiv 6-8, make alliance with the Goths, VIII xxiv 9, 10, bribed by Justinian, VIII xxiv 13, hostile to the Goths, VIII xxiv 21, 22, refuse free passage to Narses, VIII xxvi 18-20, friendly to the Goths, VIII xxvi 19, prevent the surrender of Verona, VIII xxviii 5, their alliance desired by Tetas, VIII xxviii 7, xxiv 9, 17, desire Italy for themselves, VIII xxiv 18, despaired of by Tetas, VIII xxxiv. 21, mentioned, VIII xx 30, 49
- Frissones, one of the nations of Brittia, VIII xx 7
- Gadira, the Strait of, VIII vi 3, 8, 22
- Gaul, fronts Brittia, VIII xx 5
- Gauls, defeated by Camillus, VIII. xlix 4, 5
- Gelimer, King of the Vandals, VIII xix 7
- Gepacdes, make a treaty with the Lombards, VIII xviii 1, but finally resort to war again, VIII xviii 2 ff, led by Thorsin, VIII xviii 3, negotiate with Auduin, VIII xviii 8 ff, seek an alliance with the Huns, VIII xviii 13 ff, send the Outrigurs into Roman territory, VIII. xviii 16, 17, ferry the Slavens over the Ister, VIII xxv. 5, 10, Justinian seeks an understanding with them, VIII. xxv 6, prepare for war with the Lombards, VIII xxv 7, send envoys to Byzantium, VIII xxv. 8, Justinian sends troops to fight with the Lombards against them, VIII xxv 10, confront the Lombard army and are defeated, VIII. xxv 11, in the army of Narses, VIII xxvi 13, receive Goar and Ildigisil, VIII xxvii 18, Ustrigothus a refugee from, VIII xxvii 19, 20, make peace with Justinian and the Lombards, VIII xxvii 21, refuse to surrender Ildigisil, VIII xxvii 22-23, 28, their king Elemundus, VIII xxvii 19, the following individuals are named Philegagus, VIII viii 15, Asbadus, VIII xxvi 13, xxxii 22
- Geraestus, town in Euboea, VIII. xxii 27
- Germans, many tribes originally, VIII. xx 3
- Germanus, appointed commander against the Goths, VII xxxvii 24, nephew of Justinian, VII xxxvii 24, xxxix 9, of high reputation, VII xxxvii 24, father-in-law of John, VII xxxix, 10, xi 10, VIII xxvi 11, husband of Passara, VII xxxix 14, and of Matasuntha, do, father of Justinus and Justinian, VII xxxix 17, xi 10, 34, VIII xiv 11, replaced by Liberius, VII xxxvii 26, definitely appointed commander against the Goths, VII xxxix 9, makes ambitious preparations, VII xxxix 11 ff, defeats Stotzas, VII xxxix 12, receives from Romans in the Gothic army a promise to desert, VII. xxxix 22, awaited by Diogenes, VII xxxix 26, 28, detained by an invasion of Slavens, VII xi 1-4, feared by them, VII xi 4-6, as General of Thrace, had defeated the Antae, VII xi 6, prepares for departure to Italy, VII xi 8, dies of disease, VII. xi 9, 27, VIII xxi. 1, his character and attainments, VII xi 9, his sons as commanders, VIII xxv 1

INDEX

- Gibal, Gothic commander, sent against Ancon, VIII xxiii 1, in command of ships, VIII xxiii 12
- Glutton, epithet of John, VII xl 31, VIII xxvi 13
- Goar, a Gothic captive from Dalmatia, exiled to Egypt, VIII xxvii 5, 6, flies from Byzantium with Ildigisal, VIII xxvii 5 ff., surprises Roman officers, VIII xxvii 17, reaches the Gepædes, VIII xxvii 18
- Goths, the Ostrogothic nation settled in Italy, Arians, VIII iv. 11, their original home, VIII v. 5, defeated by the Cimmericians, VIII v 11, their migrations, VIII v. 12-14, besiege Rome, VII xxxvi 1 ff., capture Portus, VII xxxvi 3, besiege Centumcellæ, VII xxxvii 10-18; invade Sicily, VII xxxvii 18, capture Ariminum, VII xxxvii 23, alarmed at the choice of Germanus as commander against them, VII xxxvii 24, defeat a Roman force, VII xxxvii 28, attack Rhegium, VII xxxix 1, 2, plunder all Sicily, VII xxxix 4, terrified at reports of Germanus' preparations, VII xxxix 21, capture Rome, VIII ii 32, 33, offer to resign all claim to Sicily and Dalmatia, VIII xxiv 4, hold small part of Venetia, VIII xxiv 8, make alliance with the Franks, VIII xxiv 9, 10, said to be hostile to the Franks, VIII xxiv 21, 22, on friendly terms with the Franks, VIII xxvi 19, despair of ruling Italy permanently, VIII xxvii 3, in command of the sea, VIII xxv 12, 13, the Gothic War, VIII xxi 1, 4, xxxv 38
- Greece, VIII xxii 32, xxv 23, xxvi 1, its works of art brought to Rome, VIII xxi 14; fleet sent thither by Totila, VIII xxii 17, visited by earthquakes, VIII xxv 16 ff
- Greek language, VIII xiv 48
- Greekings, contemptuous name for the inhabitants of the East, VIII xxii 25
- Greeks, under Agamemnon, VII xxi 27, 28
- Gubazes, king of the Colchians, VIII viii 1, addresses the Lazic troops, VIII. viii. 6-13, leads the Lazi to the attack, VIII viii 14 ff., fights against the Persians, VIII viii 29, hostile to Terdetes, VIII x. 2, wins back the rebellious Apsih, VIII x 7, friendly to the Romans, VIII xvi 2, hides in the mountains, VIII xvi 6, 20, 21, false report of his defeat, VIII xvi 7, flees before the Persians, VIII xvi 19, receives a letter from Mermeroes, VIII xvi. 23, but is obdurate, VIII xvi 32, hostile to Chosroes, VIII xvi 32, with the Roman army, VIII xvii 13, his wife a Roman woman, VIII ix 9, nephew of Opsites, VIII ix 7, the sister of, VIII xvii. 11
- Gundulf, Gothic commander, sent against Ancon, VIII xxiii 1, former guardsman of Belisarius, VIII xxiii 1, in command of ships, VIII xxiii 12, escapes from battle VIII xxiv. 38
- Guzes, surname of John the Armenian, VIII viii 15, xi 57
- Hadrian, Tomb of, made a fortress by Totila, VIII xxxiii 11, held as a fortress by Paulus, VII xxxv. 17-23
- Halcarnassus, home of Herodotus, VIII vi 12
- Hebrus River, crossed by the Sclaveni, VII xxxviii 1
- Hellas VIII ii 15
- Hieraclea, city on the Euxine, VIII ii 2
- Hemegisclus, ruler of the Varni, VIII xx 11, marries the sister of Theudibert, VIII xx 11, foretells his own death, VIII xx 13 ff., his death, VIII xx 21
- Hermenefridus, ruler of the Thuringians and father of Amalfrida, VIII xxv 11
- Herodian, Gothic commander of Oumæ, VIII xxxiv 19
- Herodotus, cited and quoted, VIII vi. 12-15
- Hieron, place on the Bosphorus, VIII vi 17, 19, 25, 28
- Himerus, commander of Rhegium, VII xxxvii 20, surrenders to the Goths, VII xxxix. 5

INDEX

- Hippis River, in Lazica, VIII 1 6, VII 1, 2
- Homer, VIII. *xxii* 21
- Honoratae, neighbours of the Bithynians, VIII 11 3
- Hunnic nations, their location, VIII 11 5, their invasions through the Caucasus, VIII 11 3
- Hunnic Tribes, the Sabiri, VIII xi 23, along the Euxine, VIII v 27, their location, VIII iv 7
- Huns, once called the Cimmerians, VIII v 1, women found fighting in their armies, VIII. 11 10, give shelter to Opsites, VIII ix 29, in the Persian army, VIII xvii 10, 11, their alliance sought by the Gepaedes, VIII xviii 13 ff., ferried over the Ister by the Gepaedes, VIII xviii 17, receive a message from Justinian, VIII xix 3, come as refugees to Roman territory, VIII xix 6, invade Thrace, VIII xxii 1, in the army of Narses, VIII xxvi 13, xxx 18, xxxi 3, altogether illiterate, VIII. xix 8, invade Thrace, VIII xxi 22 *See also* Sabiri and Cutrigurs
- Iaudas, subjugated by John, VIII xvii 21
- Iberia, region on the Pontus, VIII 11 20, xvi 14, near Lazica, VIII ii 24, xii 12, 15, 21, adjoins the Caucasus, VIII 11 26, its passes seized by Meimeroes, VIII xii 3, road from, into Lazica, VIII xiii 5
- Iberians, rule over the Meschi, VIII 11 24
- Idigisal, a Lombard, goes as a fugitive to Byzantium, VIII xxvii 1, kindly received by Justinian, VIII. xxvii 2, demanded by Auduin, VIII xxvii 4, flies from Byzantium with Goar, VIII xxvii 5 ff., surprises Roman officers, VIII xxvii 17, reaches the Gepaedes, VIII xvii 18, his surrender demanded by Justinian and Auduin, VIII xxvii 22, slain by Thorisin, VIII xxvii 28, 29
- Illyricum, VIII xxvii 9, 12, invaded and plundered by the Slaveni, VII xxxviii 3, 7, 19; soldiers recruited there by Germanus, VII. xxxix. 9, 17, John, General of, VII xxxix. 10, mountains of, crossed by the Slaveni, VII xl. 7, named as the limit of the Caucasus, VIII 11 3, traversed by the Ister, VIII v 30, xviii. 17, again invaded by the Slaveni, VIII xxv 1 ff., soldiers recruited there, VIII xxvi 10, its cities Sardice, VII xl 1, Ulpiana, VIII. xxv 13
- India, silkworms introduced from, VIII xvii 1 ff
- Indulf, also called Gundulf, *qv.*, VIII xxiii 2, Gothic commander, VIII xxxv 37
- Ionian Gulf, VIII xxvi 23, xxxiv. 10, 23
- Iphigeneia, daughter of Agamemnon, VIII xxi 27, priestess in Tauris, VIII v 23
- Isaurians, in the garrison of Rome, betray the city to Totila, VII xxxvi 7-14, Mindes, the Isaurian, VII xxxvi 26
- Isdigousnas, Persian envoy to Byzantium, his unbearable arrogance, VIII. xi 1-7, makes trivial remonstrances to Justinian, VIII xi 10, xv 1 ff., secures the return of Bersabus, VIII xv 11, departs from Byzantium, highly honoured, VIII xv. 19, 20, reports to Chosroes, VIII xvii 9
- Ister River, called also Danube, distance from Cherson, VIII v 29, its course described, VIII v 30, crossed by the Slaveni, VII lxxviii. 1, 8, xl 1, 2, 31, VIII xxv 5, 10, crossed by the Antae, VII xl. 5, by the Goths, VIII v. 12, by the Cutrigurs, VIII v 16, guarded by the Romans, VIII xviii 17, crossed by the Cutrigurs, VIII xviii 17, mentioned, VII xxxix. 19, VIII xx 2, xxv. 6
- Istria, Roman fugitives rally in, VII. xxxix 24
- Italians, in the army of Narses, VIII. xxvi. 20
- Italy, invaded by the Goths, VIII. v. 14, skirted by the Ister, VIII v. 30, separated from Sicily by a narrow strait, VIII. vi. 21; said

INDEX

- to be held largely by the Franks, VIII xxiv 4, evacuation by Franks demanded, VIII xxiv 11, desired by the Franks, VIII xxiv 18, relinquished by the Goths, VIII xxv 36
- Ithaca, home of Odysseus, VIII xii 23
- Jason, shared in slaying Apsyrtus, VIII ii 12, his robbery of the Fleece, VIII ii 15, and flight with Medea, VIII ii 31
- John, son of Thomas, Roman commander in Lazica, VIII vii 15, ix 13, an Armenian, VIII vii 15; called John Guzes, VIII vii 15, orders his men to fight on foot, VIII vii 30, kills one of the Alani, VIII vii 38, attacks and circumvents the Abasgi, VIII ix 20 ff, wins over the Apsili, VIII x 7, gains an entrance into Petra, VIII xi 57, 58, killed by a stone, VIII xi 64
- John the Glutton, Roman commander against the Slavens, VII xi 34, in the army of Narses, VIII xxvi 13, commands on the left wing, VIII xxxi 1
- John (brother of Pappus), successful as General of Libya, VIII xvi 20, 21, sends an expedition to Sardinia, VIII xxiv 33
- John, nephew of Vitalian, son-in-law of Germanus, VII xxxix 10, xl 10, VIII xxvi 11, accompanies him as General, VII xxxix 10, appointed to succeed Germanus, VII xl 10, 27, winters in Salones, VII xl 30, VIII xxi 4, ordered to await Narses, VIII xxi 5, 6, not of sufficient authority to be commander-in-chief, VIII xxi 8, awaits Narses, VIII xxi 1, receives a letter from Valerian, VIII xxi 4-6, sails for the relief of Ancon, VIII xxii 7, 8, exhorts his fleet, VIII xxii 14-22, returns to Salones, VIII xxii 42, joins the army of Narses, VIII xxvi. 11, gives advice to Narses, VIII xxvi 24, 25, holds the right wing, VIII xxxi 2; in the assault on Rome, VIII. xxxii 18, his standard, VIII xxxiii 21, sent into Tuscany, VIII xxxiv 22, summoned to Campania VIII xxxiv 24, advises Narses to accept the Gothic terms, VIII. xxxv 31, 35
- Justinian, Emperor of the Roman Empire, appoints Germanus General of Thrace, VF xl 6, uncle of Germanus, VII xxxvii 21, xxxix 9, appoints Sueruas ruler of the Eruli, VIII xav 11, requested by Chosroes to send Tribunus, VIII x 14, plans to send Belisarius against the Goths once more, VII xxxvi 4, designates Liberius commander against the Goths, VII xxxvi 6, sends a fleet of provision-ships to Italy, VII xxxvii. 5, refuses to receive an envoy from Totila, VII xxxvii. 6, 7, considered powerless by Totila, VII xxxvii 13, appoints Germanus commander against the Goths, VII xxxvii 24, substitutes Liberius, VII xxxvii 26, xxxix. 6, and then reverses his decision, VII xxxvii 27, instructs Germanus to halt the invasion of the Slavens, VII xl 3, 34, his services to the Abasgi, VIII ii 19, 21, receives an envoy from the Tetraxitae, VIII iv 12, 13, sends Bessas instead of Dagisthaeus to Lazica, VIII ix 4, 12, sends Petrus to Chosroes, VIII xi 2, receives Isdigousnas with great favour, VIII xi 7, sends money to the Sabui, VIII xi 25, appoints Bessas General against the Persians, VIII xi 32, criticized because of this, VIII xi 33, garrisons Scandia and Strupinus, VIII xii 17, negotiates with Isdigousnas, VIII xv 1ii, hands over Beisabus to him, VIII xv 11, shews him unprecedented honour, VIII xv 19, 20, imports silkworms from India, VIII xvi 1 ff, appoints John General of Libya, VIII xvi 20, sends an embassy to the Utigurs, VIII xviii 18-21, sends a message to Chinalon, VIII xix 3, supplicated by the Cutrigurs, VIII xix 7, receives envoys from Sandil, VIII xix 9 ff receives envoys from the Franks,

INDEX

VIII xx 10; his reasons for appointing Narses commander-in-chief, VIII xxi. 8, 9, receives many embassies from Totila, VIII xxiv 1, invites Theudibald to an alliance, VIII xxiv 11, bribes the Franks, VIII xxiv 13, Franks send an envoy to him, VIII xxiv 30, sends an army against the Slaveni, VIII xxv. 1, makes alliance with the Lombards, VIII xxv 7, with the Gepaedes, VIII xxv 6-8, sends troops to the Lombards, VIII xxv 10, receives a message from Auduin, VIII xxv 15, sends relief to Croton, VIII xxvi 1, receives offers of surrender from Tarentum and Acherontia, VIII xxvi 4, provides lavishly for the Gothic war, VIII xxvi 7, persuades Auduin to send allies, VIII xxvi 12, receives Ildigisal, VIII xxvii 2, refuses to surrender him to Auduin, VIII xxvii 4, 5, makes peace with the Gepaedes, VIII xxvii 21, demands the surrender of Ildigisal, VIII xxvii 22, indulgent to his generals, VIII xiii. 14, his guardsman Asbidus, VII xxxviii 5, years of his reign noted, VIII xv 12, xxxvii 26
 Justinian, son of Germanus, VII xxxvii 17, appointed to succeed his father, VII xl 10, 27, as commander of Roman troops sent to the Lombards, VIII xxv 11
 Justinus, son of Germanus, VII xxxix 17, commander against the Slaveni, VII xl 34, commander of troops sent to the Lombards, VIII xlv 11, joins Narses, VIII xxxviii 1, left in command of Ravenna, VIII xxxviii 4

Latin language, VIII v 13, xxxv. 15

Latins, VIII v 14, xlix 5

Lazi, a people living on the Pontus, wrongly distinguished from the Colchians, VIII i 8, 10, ii 10, 16, vi 18, their bishops, VIII ii 17, boundaries of, VIII. ii 21, rule over Scymnia and Suania, VIII ii 23, their dwellings in Europe, VIII ii 29, rule over the Abasgi, VIII. iii 12, invite Chosroes into

their country, VIII iv 5; wish to fight apart from the Romans, VIII. viii 3-5, harangued by Gubazes, VIII viii 6-13, engage with the Persians, VIII viii 14 ff, pursue the defeated Persians, VIII viii 36; capture the Persian camp, VIII. viii. 38, slander Dagisthaeus, VIII. ix 1, rule over the Apsili, VIII. x 1, Terdetes, one of the, VIII x. 2, powerless to defend Apsilia, VIII x 4, win back the Apsili, VIII x. 7, have only Petra south of the Phasis, VIII xii 2, their frontier forts, Scanda and Sarapanis, VIII xii 15, 16, 18, destroy Scanda and Sarapanis, VIII xii. 20, destroy Rhodopolis, VIII xii. 22, build and later destroy a fortress, VIII xiv 47, guard Uthimereos, VIII xiv. 51, embrace the Persian cause, VIII. xvi 3, one of the Lazi named Theophobus, VIII xvi 4, excluded from their own land by the Persians, VIII xvi. 14, 15, suffer hardships in the mountains, VIII. xvi 21, 30, their king Opsites, VIII ix 7, Gubazes, VIII. xvi. 2, 6, one of the Lazi given a commission by Mermeroes, VIII xiv 23-27, kings of, married Roman women, VIII ix 8

Luzica, its situation, inhabitants, etc., VIII i 5 ff, ii 3, 6, 8, 22, ii 29, xi 26, called Coetaeon, VIII xiv 49, borders on Iberia, VIII xiii. 12, the scene of the story of the Golden Fleece, VIII ii 30, invaded by the Persians, VIII i 5, its possession desired by Chosroes, VIII. vii 1, 12, 13, xi 17, xv 17, invaded by him, VIII vii 4, assigned to Bessas, VIII ix. 4, invaded by Nabedes, VIII ix. 6, passes from Iberia seized by Mermeroes, VIII xiii 3, road into, from Iberia, VIII xiii 5, practically handed over to the Persians by Bessas, VIII xiii 13, scarcity of fodder in, VIII xiv 44, mostly held by the Persians, VIII xiv. 45, 53, contested by Romans and Persians, VIII xv 2, 11; held by the Persians, VIII xv 11, 14, oppressed

INDEX

- by the Roman soldiers, VIII xvi 1 ff, securely held by the Persians, VIII xvi 13, 14, xvii 9, its chief city Archaeopolis, VIII xiii 3, its cities Rhodopolis, VIII viii 21, Petra, VIII xxxiii 24, its border fortress Sarapanis, VIII xvi 17, its fertile section Mocheresia, VIII xiv 46
- Leonianus, Roman commander, in Illyricum, VIII xxvii 13
- Leontius, son-in-law of Athanasius, VIII xxiv 11, sent as envoy to Theudibald, do; addresses him, VIII xxiv 12-24, dismissed by him, VIII xxiv 30
- Leuardus, Frankish envoy to Justinian, VIII xxiv 30
- Libernus, a patrician of Rome, chosen to lead an expedition to Italy, VII xxxvi 6, xxxvii 26, but detained in Byzantium, VII xxxvii 27, an incompetent commander, VII xxxix 7, sent with a fleet to Sicily, VII xxxix 6, reaches Syracuse, VII xl 12, withdraws to Panoimius, VII xl 18, recalled to Byzantium, VII xxxix 8, VIII xiv 1
- Libya, one of the continents, VIII vi 13, 13, xiv 31, its geographical location, VIII vi 3, settled by the Vandals, VIII v 10, saved by Germanus, VII xxxiv 11, 12, situation there favourable to the Romans, VIII xvii 20, 21, desolation in, VIII xvii 22, John, General of, VIII xiv 33
- Liguria, district in Italy, VII xl 27, partly subject to Theudibald, VIII xiv 6
- Lombards, their ruler promises Germanus support, VII xxxix 20, make a treaty with the Gepaedes, VIII xvii 1, but finally resort to war again, VIII xviii 2 ff, led by Auduin, VIII xviii 3, Romans expected to ally themselves with them, VIII xviii 13, Outrigurs invoked against them, VIII xviii 14, prepare for war with the Gepaedes, VIII xxv 7, in alliance with Justinian, do; demand help against the Gepaedes, VIII xxv 10, receive only a small detachment of their Roman allies, VIII xxv. 13; advance on the Gepaedes, VIII xxv. 14, sent to assist Narseus, VIII xxv 15, xxvi 19, xxx 18, xxxi 5, then unruly conduct, VIII xxxii 2, sent home by him, VIII xxxiii 2, 3, follow Ildigisal to Byzantium, VIII xxvii 3, flee with Ildigisal and Goar, VIII xxxii 8 ff, receive a fugitive, Ustingoths, VIII xxxiii 19, 20, make peace with the Gepaedes, VIII xxvii 21, 25, unwilling to betray Ustingoths, VIII xxxvii 28, then king Auduin, VIII xxv 12, xxvi 12, xxvii 22, Ildigisal the Lombard, VIII xxvii 1
- Lysippus, the sculptor, VIII xvi 12, 13
- Maeotic Lake, description of the "lake" and the nations surrounding it, VIII iv 7-v 11, 23, vii 12, crossed for the first time by the Cimmerians, VIII v 7-9, receives the waters of the Tanais, VIII vi 4, 15, called "Mother of the Euxine," VIII vi 16, Outrigur Huns on one side of it, VIII xviii 14, Utigur Huns live beyond it, VIII xviii 18
- Martinus, Roman commander in Lazica, VIII xvii 12
- Mitasuntha, daughter of Anasiluntha, marries Germanus, VII xxxiv. 14
- Municius, son of Mundus, father-in-law of Auduin, VIII xvi 13
- Murmus, a patrician; slain by the Goths, VIII xxiv 6
- Medea, her slaying of Apsyrtus, VIII ii 12, assisted Jason to steal the Fleece, VIII ii 15, her flight with Jason, VIII ii 31, "Medea's Oil," used by the Persians at Tivti, VIII xi 36, 61
- Medes, encamp on the Hypanis River, VIII viii 1 See also Persians
- Melanchlrenae, a Scythian tribe, VIII v 6
- Melgedus, Roman deserter, commander of Persians, VIII xxxiii 10, surrenders the city to Narseus, VIII xxxiii 11, 12
- Mehta, island off Dahmatia, VII xl 17
- Mennicroes, Persian commander in Lazica, sends most of the Sabiri away, VIII xiii 7, marches toward

INDEX

Petra, VIII xiii 1, learns of its loss and turns against Archaeopolis, VIII xiii 2, 3, 20, marches against the Roman army, VIII xiii 23, passes Archaeopolis, VIII xiii 25-27, eluded by the Roman army, VIII xiii 29, marches on Archaeopolis, VIII xiii 30, attacks, VIII xiv 3 ff., sends the Dolomites against the upper town, VIII xiv 5, 10, has a conflagration started in Archaeopolis, VIII xiv 23-27, withdraws to Mocheresis, VIII xiv 45, restores Cotais, VIII xiv 50, controls most of Lazica, VIII xiv 53, gains Uthmireos by treason, VIII xvi 4 ff., garrisons three fortresses in Lazica, VIII xvi 16, 17, Jures deserters from the Laz, VIII xvi 22, writes to Gubazes, VIII xvi 23-31, reinforced by Huns, VIII xvi 10, moves against the strongholds of Lazica, VIII xvii 11, attacks a fortress, VIII xvii 14, then Archaeopolis, VIII xvii 17
 Meschi, a people subject to the Iberians, VIII ii 21, character of their country, VIII ii 25
 Messani, city in Sicily, attacked by Totila, VII xxxix 2-3
 Milk Mountain, in Campania, VIII xxxv 15
 Mines, in Italian, in the Roman army, VII xxxvi 26
 Mocheresis, a section of Lazica, VIII i 5, xvi 14, distance from Archaeopolis, VIII xiv 46, populous and productive, do., Mermeroes retires thither, VIII xiv 45, the key to Suania and Scymnia, VIII xiv 34, left by Mermeroes, VIII xvii 11, Persians retire thither, VIII xvii 19
 Moors, subjugated by John, VIII xvii 21, their chief, Cutzinas, do
 Moras, Gothic commander of Acherontia, negotiates for its surrender, VIII xxvi 4
 Mundus, father of Maurecius, VIII. xxvi 13
 Myron, the sculptor, VIII xxi 14
 Nabedes, Persian commander, invades Lazica, VIII ix 6, carries off Theodora, VIII ix 7
 Naissus, town in Moesia, VII xl 1

Narnia, taken by Narses, VIII xxxiii 9
 Narses, commander of the expedition against the Goths, awaited by John at Salones, VIII xxi 6, xxii. 1, marches against Totila, VIII xxi 19, 20, loses provision-ships, VIII. xxii 32, receives Lombards as allies, VIII xxv 15, sets out from Salones, VIII xxvi 5, his emergency preparations for the Italian expedition, VIII xxvi 8-10, refused free passage by the Franks, VIII xxvi 18, 19, considers his route of march, VIII xxvi 20, receives advice from John, VIII xxvi 24, 25, joined by Valerian and Justinus, VIII xxviii. 1, prepares to leave Ravenna, VIII xxviii 4, passes Ariminum, VIII xxviii 5 ff., receives the head of Usdrilas, VIII xxviii 10, leaves the Flaminian Way, VIII xxviii 13, reaches the Apennines, VIII xxix 4, sends a message to Totila, VIII xxx 6, receives his reply, VIII. xxxi 9, occupies a point of vantage, VIII xxxi 13 ff., makes Paulus a guardsman, VIII xxxi 28, exhorts his army, VIII xxx 1-7, holds the right wing, VIII xxvi 2, disposes his forces, VIII xxxi 5, bends the line, VIII xxxi 6, exhorts his men, VIII xxxi 9, refuses Totila's request for a conference, VIII xxxi 22, not caught unprepared, VIII xxxii 3, arrais his army, VIII xxxii 5, informed of Totila's death, VIII xxxii 32, sends the Lombards home, VIII xxxiii. 1, 2, sends Valerian to guard the Po, VIII xxxiii 8, receives the surrender of Perugia, VIII xxxiii. 11, 12, advances on Rome, VIII. xxxiii 13, attacks the walls of Rome, VIII xxxiii 18, sends Dagisthaeus to an undefended port, VIII xxxiii 21, the standard of, do., attacks Hadrian's Tomb, VIII. xxxiii 25, sends forces against Cumae and Centumcellae, VIII xxxiv 20, sends a force into Tuscan, VIII xxxiv 22; concentrates his forces in Campania, VIII xxxiv. 24, builds towers, VIII xxxv 14, receives overtures from the Goths, VIII xxxv 33, 34, accepts them,

INDEX

- VIII xxxv 36, a generous commander, VIII xxvi 14, 15, populæ with officers and soldiers, VIII xxvi 16, 17, his spearman, Anzala, VIII xxvi 13
- Naupactus, destroyed by earthquake, VIII xxv 17
- Nazares, Roman commander against the Slavens, VII xl 34
- Nepa, captured by the Romans, VIII xxxiv 16
- Nicopolis, ravaged by the Goths, VIII xxii 31
- Nile River, VIII vi 2, separates Asia from Africa, VIII vi 13, 14
- Nuceria, city in Campania, VIII xxxv 7
- Numidia, VIII xvii 21
- Odonachus, commander in the Roman army, sent to Lazica, VIII ix 5, in command of Archæopolis, VIII xiii 8, addresses his men, VIII xiv 14-21, leads a sally, VIII xiv 22 ff
- Odysseus, VIII xxii 21, 23
- Opsites, uncle of Gubazes and king of Lazica, VIII ix 7, his consort Theodora carried off by Nabedes, do
- Opsites, ruler of the Abasgi, VIII ix. 11, escapes to the Caucasus, VIII. ix 29
- Orestes, VIII v 24
- Othoni, islets near Cereyia, VIII xxii 20
- Pacurius, son of Peranius, commander of Dryus, negotiates for the Goths, VIII xxvi 4, negotiates with Ragnaric, VIII xxxiv 9, tricked by him, VIII xxxiv 10-12, defeats him in battle, VIII xxxiv 13-15
- Palace, in Byzantium, VII xl 9, the eunuchs in, VII xl 35, VIII iii 19, the Palace Guard, VIII xxvii 2
- Palestinian, Tribune the physician, VIII x 11
- Palladius, commander of Croton, VIII xxv 24
- Panormus, city in Sicily, VII xl 18
- Paphlagonians, neighbours of the Bithynians, VIII ii 2
- Passara, wife of Germanus, her death, VII xxxix 14
- Patrae, destroyed by earthquake, VIII xxv 17
- Patricians, Roman dignitaries, Liberius, VII xxxvi 6, slain by the Goths, VIII xxxiv 6
- Paul, Gate of, in the wall of Rome, VII xxxvi 7, 10
- Paulus, a Cilician, commander in the Roman army, VII xxxvi 14, seizes and holds the Tomb of Hadrian, VII xxxvi 17-23, surrenders and is sent to Byzantium by Totila, VII xxxvi 26-28
- Paulus, a Roman soldier, distinguished for valour, VIII xix 22, 26, 27, made a guardsman of Narses, VIII. xix 28
- Peace, the Forum of, VIII xxi 11, Temple of, VIII xxi 12
- Peloponnesus, refuge of Roman ships, VII xl 16
- Peranius, father of Pacurius, VII xxxvi 4
- Persarmenia, adjoining Iberia, VIII ii 26, viii 22
- Persarmenians, location of their country, VIII ii 20, the following individuals are mentioned Artabanes, VIII viii 21, Varazes, VIII xiii 10
- Persia, Dolomites live in, VIII xiv. 6, 7
- Persians, their five-year truce with the Romans, VIII i 3, invade Colchis, do, their allies, the Alani, VIII iii 4, maintain an army in Lazica, VII iv 5, 6, eager to acquire Lazica, VIII vii 1, 12, 13, invade Lazica, VIII viii 39, led into Apsilia by Terdetes, VIII x 2, 3, thus extend their power in Lazica, VIII x 4, hold Petra, do, repair its wall, VIII xi 15, 16, have some of the Huns in alliance, VIII xi 24, lose Petra and rush into the acropolis, VIII xi 62, 63, are exhorted by Bessas, VIII xii 1 ff, reject his counsel and are burned with the acropolis, VIII xii. 14-15, improve the very difficult road into Lazica, VIII xiii 5, take Scanda and Sarapanis, VIII xiii. 19, rebuild Scanda, VIII xiii 20; have the Dolomites as mercenaries, VIII xiv 6, 7, attack Archæopolis, VIII xiv 11, control the most of Lazica, VIII xiv 45, receive payments from the Romans, VIII xv

INDEX

- 3, 6, make a treaty with the Romans, VIII xv 12, hope to reach Byzantium through Lazica, VIII xv 15, make the Romans in effect tributary to them, VIII xv 16-18, hold Lazica securely, VIII xvi 6, 7, gain Uthimereos, VIII xvi 18, gain Scymnia and Sumni, VIII xvi 14, supply the Romans with silk, VIII xvii 1, in the army of Naises, VIII xxvi 13, do not allow a mutilated man to be king over them, VIII x 22, Persian standards, captured in Lazica, VIII xiv 43
- Perusia, betrayed to the Romans, VIII xxxiii 10-12
- Peter, the Apostle, Church of, in Rome, VII xxxvi 17
- Petra, its location at the end of the Euxine, VIII ii 32, built by the Romans on the Asiatic side of the Phasis, VIII ii 29, its walls made on rock, VIII xi 12, attacked by Chosroes, VIII iv 5, 6, Persian garrison in, receives supplies, VIII viii 39, said to have been neglected by Dagisthaeus, VIII ix 2, keeps Romans and Lazic engaged, VIII x 4, besieged by Bessas, VIII xi 11 ff, xiv 4, captured by the Romans, VIII xi 62, xiii 11, 12, had been strongly garrisoned and supplied by Chosroes, VIII xii 17-19, 21, its wall razed to the ground, VIII xii 28, Mermeroes learns of its loss, VIII xiii 1, 2, only stronghold in Lazica south of the Phasis, VIII xiii 2, lost by Dagisthaeus, recovered by Bessas, VIII xxxiii 24, distance from Apsarus, VIII ii 21, its water supply, VIII xii 20-22
- Petra Pertusa, held by the Goths, VIII xxviii 13, captured by the Romans, VIII xxxiv 16, 24
- Petrus, a patrician, sent as ambassador to Chosroes, VIII xi 2
- Phabizus, Roman General, defeats Anasozadus, VIII x 19
- Phaeacia, VIII xxii 20, 21
- Phaeacians, VIII xxii 18, 23
- Phanaguris, town on the Euxine, VIII v 28
- Phalangium, fortress in Persaimenna, given up by the Romans, VIII xiii 19
- Phasis River, in Colchis, VIII i 10, ii 15, 31, v 31, xiii 3, 9, 23, 26, xvi 6, 18, xvii 12, its course described, VIII ii 27, 32, considered a boundary between Europe and Asia, VIII ii 28, vi 7, 8, 13, 14, 15, Petra only town south of, in Lazica, VIII xiii 2, crossed by the Roman army, VIII xiii 28
- Phidias, the Athenian sculptor, VIII. xxi 12, 13
- Philegagus, Roman commander of horse, VIII viii 15, orders his men to fight on foot, VIII viii 30
- Philemuth, an Eruhan, accompanies Germanus, VII xxxix. 10, commander of Eruh, VIII xxvi 13, in the assault on Rome, VIII xxxiii 19, sent into Tuscany, VIII xxxiv 22, summoned to Campania, VIII xxxiv 24
- Philippopolis, city in Thrace, VIII xxi 21
- Picenum, VII xxxvii 23, 28, invaded by the Goths, VIII xxxii 1
- Pityus, fortress built by the Romans on the Euxine, VIII iv 4, distance from Sebastopolis, do
- Po River, VIII xxvi 22, xxxiii 6, xxxiv 8, xxxv 37, guarded by Valerian, VIII xxxiii 8
- Pontica, a people on the Euxine, VIII. ii 2, visited by Bessas, VIII xiii 11
- Pontus, the Euxine, VIII ii 1, vi 18
See also Euxine
- Portus, captured by the Goths, VII. xxxvi 3, sought by Gothic refugees, VIII xxxiii 23, surrendered to the Romans, VIII xxxiv 16
- Procopius, writer of the history of the wars, VII xxxix 29, VIII xxi 4, xxv 25, xxxv 38
- Prometheus, the alleged scene of his punishment, VIII i 12, vi 15
- Quaestor, VII xi 23
- Radigis, son of Hermegisclus, VIII xx 12, his father advises that he marry his stepmother, VIII. xx 20; brought to terms by his rejected fiancée, VIII xx 22 ff

INDEX

- Ragnans, a Goth, commander of Tarentum, negotiates for its surrender, VIII xxvi 4, refuses to surrender Tarentum, VIII xxxiv 9, tricks Pacurius, VIII xxxiv 10-12, defeated in battle, VIII. xxxiv 11, 15
- Ravenna, centre of Roman strength in Italy, VII xxxix 23, xl 30, VIII xxvii 4, 17, 42, xxvi 20, 25, xxviii 1, 2, left in charge of Justinus, VIII xxviii 4, Romans defeated near, VII xxxvii 28
- Rheithangus, Roman commander, in Illyricum, VIII xxvii 13
- Rhegium, attacked by the Goths, VII xxxvii 19-22, xxxix 1, surrendered by them, VII xxxix 5
- Rheon River, in Lazica, VIII xiii 3, xiv 47
- Rhine River, VIII xx 32, 33, distance from Britia, VIII xx 4, separates the Varni from the Franks, VIII. xx 2, 3, 18
- Rhipaean Mountains, contain the source of the Tanais, VIII vi 5, 6
- Rhizaem, town on the boundary of Trapezuntine territory, VIII ii 3, 10, distance from Apsarus, VIII ii 11
- Rhodopolis, city in Lazica, VIII xiii 21, destroyed by the Lazi, VIII xiii 22
- Romans, subjects of the Emperor both in the East and in the West, mentioned constantly throughout, VII xxxvi 8, etc., in the Gothic army, VII xxxix 22, make payments to the Persians, VIII xv 3, 6, make a treaty with the Persians, VIII xv 12, become in effect tributary to the Persians, VIII xv 16-18, purchase silk from the Persians, VIII xvii 1, feared by the Gepaedes, VIII xviii 13 ff, hold little of Venetia, VIII xxiv 8, capture Porlus and Petra Pertusa, VIII. xxxiv 16, capture Cumae, VIII xxxv 38, Roman deserters, VIII xxvi 6, xxxii 20, xxxiii 10, the inhabitants of Rome, VIII xii 31, 32, especially devoted to their city, VIII. xxii 5, their sufferings, VIII xxxiv 2-4, children of, slain by Telas, VIII xxxiv 7, 8, a Roman gentleman, VIII xxi 10, 11
- Rome, the capital of Italy, mentioned frequently, assailed by Totila, VII xxxvi 1 ff, captured through treachery, VII xxxvi 7-14, previously betrayed by Isaurians, VII xxxvi 7, commanded by Diogenes and Paulus, VII xxxvi 16, its population encouraged by Totila to return, VII xxxvi 29, its defences previously destroyed in part by him, VII xxxvii 2, VIII xxii 3, damages repaired by Totila, VII. xxxvii 3, commanded by Bessas, VIII xii 31, captured by the Goths, VIII xii 32, Procopius there, VIII. xvi 10, adorned by works of art from Greece, VIII xxi 14, prophecy concerning, VIII xxi 16, defended by the Goths, VIII xxxiii 13 ff, its wall too long for the Goths to defend, VIII xxxiii 17, lost by Bessas, won by Dagisthaeus, VIII xxxiii 24, captured five times in the reign of Justinian, VIII xxxiii 27, held by the Romans, VIII. xxxiv 6
- Sabiri Huns, then location, VIII iii. 5, in the Roman army, VIII vi. 22-26, receive money from Justinian, VIII xi 25, 26, shew the Romans how to build light rams, VIII xi 27-32, come as allies to the Persians, VIII xiii 6, feared by Mermeroes, who sends most of them away, VIII xiii 7, directed by Mermeroes to build rams, VIII. xiv 4, 5, serving in the Persian army, VIII xiv 11, xvi 8, xvi 10, then leader slain, VIII xvii 18
- Sagunae, a people near Lazica, VIII ii 16, iv 3, 5, 7
- Salones, Roman army winters in, VII. xl 11, 30, John winters there, VII. xxi 4, 5, xxii 1, xxiii 4, left by him, VIII xxxii 8, John returns to, VIII xxxii 42, left by Narses, VIII xxxvi 5
- Sandil, leader of the Utigurs, VIII xviii 23, remonstrates with Justinian, VIII xix 8 ff
- Sani (*see* Tzani), VIII i 8
- Saracens, accused by Isdigousnas, VIII.

INDEX

- xi 10, subject of dispute between Romans and Persians, VIII xv 2
- Siripamis, frontier fortress in Lazica, held by the Lazi, Romans and Persians in turn, VIII xiii 15-19, occupied by Mermeroes, VIII xvi 17
- Sirdice, city of Illyricum, VII xl 1, 4
- Sirdima, attacked and captured by the Goths, VIII xxiv 31-33, unsuccessful attempt to recapture, VIII xxiv 33-36, formerly called Sardo, VIII xxiv 37, 38
- Sirdo, older name for Sirdima, VIII xxiv 37
- Sirdonic, VIII xxiv 38
- Suromatae, a Scythian tribe, VIII. v 6
- Scanda, frontier fortress in Lazica, held by the Lazi, Romans and Persians in turn, VIII xiii 15-18; destroyed and rebuilt, VIII xiii 20
- Scardon, port on the Adriatic, touched by John, VIII xxiii 8
- Scutfeia, town in Boeotia, visited by tidal wave, VIII xxv 19
- Sceparna, ruler of the Abasgi, VIII ix 11, summoned by Chosroes, VIII ix 13, 14
- Scholasticus, a eunuch, commander-in-chief against the Sclaveni, VII xl 35
- Schools, sections of the imperial guard, VIII xxvii 2
- Scipiar, a Gothic commander, sent against Ancon, VIII xxiii 1, 12, accompanies Totila in his flight, VIII xxiii 22, wounds Asbadus, VIII xxiii 24, is wounded himself, VIII xxiii 25
- Sclaveni, neighbours of the Antae, VII xl 5, invade Roman territory, VII xxxviii 1-23, commit atrocities, VII xxxviii 6, 20-22, inexperienced in storming cities, VII xxxviii 7, capture Topirus, VII xxxviii 9-18, invade Roman territory, VII xl 1 ff., fear Germanus, VII xl 4, 5, 7, turn aside to Dalmatia, VII xl 7, continue their inroad, VII xl 31-33, defeat a Roman army, VII xl 36-41, find great booty, VII xl 42, 43, finally depart, VII xl 44, 45, invade Illyricum, VIII xxv 1 ff.; ferried over the Ister by the Gepaedes, VIII xxv 10
- Sylaeum, mountain in Italy, VIII xxvi 3
- Scymma, region near Lazica, VIII ii 23 shut off by Mermeroes, VIII xiv 53, gained by the Persians VIII xvi 14
- Scythians, VIII v 24, ancient name of the Goths, etc., VIII v 6, their location, VIII v 23
- Sebastopolis, fortress built by the Romans on the Euxine, VIII iv 4, distance from Pitrus, do
- Senators, brought back to Rome by Totila, VII. xxxvi 29, xxxvii 3, their sufferings, VIII. xxvii 2 ff., sent into Campania, VIII xxxiv 5
- Senogall town near Ancon, VIII xxiii 9
- Serinda, a land above India, VIII. xvii 1, 7
- Sicily, separated from Italy by a strait, VIII vi 21, Totila prepares to invade it, VII xxxvii 4, 8, invaded by the Goths, VII xxxvii 18, xxxix 2 ff., plundered throughout by them, VII xxxix 4, xl 19, Liberius sent thither with a fleet, VII xxxix. 6, Artabanes sent thither, VII xxxiv 8, VIII. xxv 24, evacuated by Totila, VII xl 24, 26-29, conquest of, by Artabanes, VIII xxiv 1 ff., Goths offer to give up claim to, VIII xxiv 4, source of supplies for the Goths, VIII xxv 13, its mountain, Aetna, VIII xxxv 2
- Sinnon, leader of the Cutrigurs, VIII. xix 7
- Sinope, city on the Euxine, VIII ii 2
- Spin, settled by the Visigoths, VIII. v 10, xi 5
- Spinus, a Roman, counsellor of Totila, VII xl 20, captured in Catania, VII xl 21, secures his release by a promise, VII xl 24, 25, persuades Totila to leave Sicily, VII xl 26-29
- Spolitum, home of Spinus, VII xl 20, ordered to be rebuilt by Narses, VIII xxxiii 9
- Stagirus, home of Aristotle, VIII vi 20
- Stephanus, a Roman, sent as ambassador by Totila to Justinian, VII xxxvii 6

INDEX

- Stotzas, defeated by Germanus, VII
xxxix 12
- Strabo, his account of the Amazons,
VIII in 6
- Suauna, region near Lazica, VIII in
23, shut off by Mermeroes, VIII
xiv 53, gained by the Persians,
VIII xvi 14
- Suartuas, Roman commander of
troops sent to the Lombards, VIII
xiv 11, had been appointed ruler
of the Eruli, do, later commander
of troops in Byzantium, VIII. xxv.
11
- Susurmena, village on the boundary of
the Trapezuntine territory, VIII in 3
- Sybotae, islands near Ceicyra, VIII
xxii 30
- Syracuse, besieged by the Goths, VII.
xi 12
- Taginae, town under the Apennines,
VIII xxxix 3
- Tanais River, VIII iv 7, v 23,
empties into the Maeotic Lake, VIII
vi 4, the outlet also of the Maeotic
Lake, VIII iv 10, rises in the
Rhipaeae Mountains, VIII vi 5,
said by some to divide Europe
from Asia, VIII vi 2, 6, 7, 13, 15,
crossed by the Utigurs, VIII xviii
22
- Tanaitis, a name given to a wind
near the Maeotic Lake, VIII iv 10
- Tarentum, captured by Totila, VII
xxxvii 23, Goths escape thither,
VIII xvi 3, commanded by Rag-
naris, VIII xxvi 4, xxxiv 9,
threatened by Pacuvius, VIII xxvii
14, 15
- Taurians, their location, VIII v 23
- Taurica, the land of the Taurians,
VIII v 23
- Telas, a Gothic commander, blocks
the roads against Narses, VIII xxvi.
21, 22, 24, summoned by Totila,
VIII xxxix 1, chosen king of the
Goths, VIII xxxiii 6, xxxiv 9, 17,
seeks alliance with the Franks, VIII.
xxxvii 7, xxxiv 9; slays Roman
children, VIII xxxv 8, prepares
to fight Narses, VIII xxxiv 21,
reaches Campania, VIII xxxiv 23,
fights heroically and dies, VIII
xxxv 20-29
- Terdetes, a notable of the Lazi, be-
trays Apsila to the Persians, VIII
x 2, 3
- Tetraxitae, a Gothic tribe near the
Maeotic Lake, VIII iv 9, v 5,
Christians, VIII iv 9, their history,
VIII v 1 ff., send an embassy to
Justinian, VIII iv. 12, 13, attacked
and taken across the Maeotic Lake
by the Utigurs, VIII v 18-21, in
alliance with the Utigurs, VIII xviii
22
- Themiscyra, town on the Thermodon
River, VIII in 2, traditional seat
of the Amazons, VIII in 5
- Theodeuc, king of the Ostrogoths,
establishes the Gothic kingdom in
Italy, VII xxxix 13, 21, VIII v
14, brother of Amalafrida, VIII
xxv. 11; grandfather of Athalaie,
VIII. xxi 11, father of Amala-
suntha, VII xxxix 14
- Theodora, consort of Opsites, carried
off by Nabedes, VIII ix 7, a Roman
by birth, VIII ix 8
- Theophobius, of the Lazi, betrays
Uthimereos, VIII xvi 4-13
- Thermodon River, reputed home of
the Amazons, VIII in 2, in 5, 7
- Thermopylae, in Greece, VIII xvi 1
- Thessalonice, its capture planned by
the Slavens, VII xi 1, avoided
by them, VII xi 7, threatened
by Huns, VIII xxi 22
- Thessaly, VIII xvi 19
- Theudibald, succeeds his father Theu-
dibert as king of the Franks, VIII.
xxiv 11, addressed by Leontius,
VIII xxiv 12-24, replies to him,
VIII xxiv 25-29, invited by Teias
to an alliance, VIII xxiv 17
- Theudibert, king of the Franks, mar-
ries his sister to Hermenegildus, VIII.
ix 11, his death, VIII xxiv 6,
succeeded by Theudibald, VIII xxiv
11, had trespassed on Italy, VIII
xxiv 11, 15, defended by Theudi-
bald, VIII xxiv 26, the sister of,
VIII xx 41
- Thomas, father of John Guzes, VIII.
viii 15, 38, ix 13, x. 7, xi 57,
64
- Thorsin, king of the Gepaedes by
usurpation, VIII xviii 3, xxvii
19, negotiates with Auduin, VIII

INDEX

xviii 8 ff., refuses to surrender
 Idigisal, viii xxvii 22-25
 Thrace, invaded by the Slavens, vii
 xxxviii 3, plundered by them,
 vii xxxviii 7, ravaged by the
 Slavens, vii xxxviii 19, Arta-
 banes appointed General of, vii
 xxxix 8; soldiers recruited there,
 vii xxxix 9, 17, 18, viii xxvi 10,
 Geimarus, General of, vii xl 6,
 Goths settle in, viii v 13, Cutri-
 gurs given homes there, viii xix.
 5, 7, xxvii 10, Narses passes
 through, viii xxi 21, Lombards
 settle in, viii xxvii 3, crossed by
 Idigisal and Goar, viii xxvii 11,
 named as the limit of the Caucasus,
 viii iii 3, traversed by the Ister,
 viii v 30, its towns Adrianople,
 vii xl 36, Apri, viii xxvii 8,
 Topirus, vii xxxviii 9, Tzurallum,
 vii xxxviii 5, home of Babas,
 viii ix 5, mentioned, viii xviii
 17, xxvii 9
 Thule, viii xxv 11, its position with
 reference to Britia, viii xx 4,
 in the extreme north, viii xx 6
 Thurimuth, commander of Rhegium,
 vii xxxvii 20, distinguishes
 himself in its defence, vii xxxix 1,
 surrenders Rhegium to the Goths,
 vii xxxix 5
 Thuringians, their king Hermene-
 fridus, viii xxv 11
 Tiber River, vii xxvi 8, 9, viii xxii
 3, 8
 Ticinum, held by the Goths, viii
 xxxiii 6, xxxv 37, money
 deposited there by Totila, viii
 xxxiii 7, xxxv 19
 Topirus, coast city in Thrace, cap-
 tured by the Slavens, vii xxxviii
 9-18, distance from Byzantium,
 vii xxxviii 9
 Totila, ruler of the Goths, vii xxxvi
 4, marches on Rome, vii xxxvi 1,
 captures Rome through treachery
 of Isaurians, vii xxxvi 7-14,
 attacks a Roman force in the Tomb
 of Hadrian, vii xxxvi 18-20,
 receives their surrender, vii xxxvi.
 24-28, receives the surrender of
 other Romans, vii xxxvi 28,
 wishes Rome to be inhabited,
 vii xxvi 29, proposes marriage

with the daughter of the Frankish
 king, vii xxxvii 1, is refused, vii
 xxxvii 2, repairs previous damage
 to Rome and provisions the city,
 vii xxxvii 3, prepares to invade
 Sicily, vii xxxvii 4, captures a
 fleet of provision-ships, vii xxxvii
 5, sends Stephanus as ambassador
 to Justinian, vii xxxvii 6, lays
 siege to Centumcellae, vii xxxvii
 8, sends envoys to Diogenes and
 receives proposals from him, vii
 xxxvii 11-17, attacks Rhegium,
 vii xxxvii 19-22, captures
 Tarentum, vii xxxvii 23, crosses
 to Sicily and attacks Messina, vii
 xxxix 2, demands the surrender
 of Centumcellae, vii xxxix 25,
 retires from Sicily, with enormous
 booty, vii xl 19, chooses Spinus
 as his counsellor, vii xl 20, seeks
 to rescue Spinus, vii xl 22, leaves
 Sicily, persuaded by Spinus, vii
 xl 24, 26-29, suspected of in-
 stigating the Slavens, vii xl 32,
 33, Narses marches against, vii
 xxi 19, prepares for Narses, vii
 xxii 1 ff., sends a fleet to Greece,
 vii xxii 17, sends an army into
 Picenum, viii xxiii 1, his power
 weakened, viii xxiii 42, send
 many vain embassies to Justinian,
 viii xxiv 4, gives lands to Theu-
 dibert, viii xxiv 27, sends an
 expedition to Corsica and Sardinia,
 viii xxiv 31-33, Roman deserters
 to, viii xxvi 6, xxxii 20, blocks
 the roads against Narses, viii.
 xxvi 21, 23, 24, awaits Teias
 near Rome, viii xxix 1, moves
 against the Romans, viii xxix 2,
 receives a message from Narses,
 viii xxix 6, his reply, viii xxix.
 8, suspected by Narses, viii xxix
 9, appears before the Roman camp,
 viii xxix 10, tries to gain a
 vantage-point, viii xxix 16 ff.,
 exhorts his army, viii xxx 7-20,
 arranges his forces, viii xxxi 8,
 displays his prowess to both armies,
 viii xxxi 17-20, proposes a
 conference, viii xxxi 21, with-
 draws to his camp, viii xxxii 1,
 changes his armour, viii xxxii 2,
 gives a foolish order, viii xxxii 7,

INDEX

- his flight and death, VIII xxxii 22-30, his death verified by the Romans, VIII xxxii 31, 32, another version of his end, VIII xxxii 33-36, deposits money in Ticinum, VIII xxxiii 7, instigates the murder of Cyprian, VIII xxxiii 10, burns many buildings in Rome, VIII xxxiii 14, sends many senators into Campania, VIII xxxiv 5, sends Roman children as hostages beyond the Po, VIII xxxiv 7, 8, deposits money in Ticinum and in Cumae, VIII xxxiv 19
- Trachea, a strongly defended pass in Abasgia, VIII ix 19, 21, 22
- Trajan, Roman Emperor, VIII ii 16
- Trapezuntines, their exact location, VIII i 8, extent of their territory, VIII ii 3, not neighbours of the Colchians, VIII ii 15
- Trapezus, city on the Euxine, VIII ii 2, distance from Rhizaeum, VIII ii 3, its unusual honey, VIII ii 4, boundaries of, VIII iv 5, refuge of Roman garrisons, VIII iv 6
- Tribunus, a physician from Palestine, greatly admired by Chosroes, VIII x 11-14, receives a favour from Chosroes, VIII x 15, 16
- Troy, its capture, VIII xxxi 31
- Tuscans, VIII xxi 16, 17
- Tuscany, VIII xxxiii 9, xxxiv 22, 24, crossed by Totila, VIII xxix 3, its fortress Nepa, VIII xxxiv 16
- Tynnichus, an artist, VIII xxxii 29
- Tzani, a people on the Euxine, VIII i 8, their exact location, VIII i 9, with the Roman army in Lazica, VIII xii 10
- Tzania, its mountains, VIII ii 5, 6
- Tzibie, fortress in Apsilia, VIII x 1, 7, guarding the road to the country of the Abasgi, VIII xvii 16
- Tzur, a pass over the Caucasus, VIII. iii 4
- Tzurullum, town in Thrace, VII xxxviii 5
- Ulfus, Roman deserter, commander of Perusia, VIII xxxiii 10, slayer of Cyprian, do, his death, VIII. xxxiii 11, 12
- Ulgagus, of the Eruli, commander in the Roman army, VIII ix 5, sent to Lazica, VIII ix 5, 13, xii 9, attacks the Abasgi, VIII ix 20 ff
- Ulpiana, city in Illyricum, VIII xxv. 13
- Usdrilas, commander of the Gothic garrison of Alimnum, VIII xxxiii 2, writes insolently to Valerian, VIII xxviii 2-4, leads a scouting party, VIII xxviii 8, 9, killed in a skirmish, VIII xxxviii 10, 11, xlix 3
- Ustrigothus, son of Elenmundus, VIII xxvii. 19, deprived of the throne of the Gepaedes and flees, VIII xxvii 19, 20, his surrender demanded by Thorism, VIII xxvii 26, slain by Auduin, VIII xxvii 28, 29
- Uthmereos, fortress in Lazica, VIII xiv 51, shut off by Mermerques, VIII xiv 53, betrayed to him, VIII xvi 4 ff, garrisoned by him, VIII xvi 16
- Utigur, progenitor of the Utigur Huns, VIII v 2
- Utigur Huns, tribe near the Maeotic Lake, VIII iv 8, origin of the name, VIII v 2-4, feared by the Tetraxitae, VIII iv 13, return home, VIII v 17, taking with them the Tetraxitae, VIII v 18-22, receive an embassy from Justinian, VIII xviii 18-21, attack the Outrigurs, VIII xviii 24, 25, xix 4, 6, their king, Sandil, VIII xix. 8 See also Cimmericians
- Valerian, Roman general in Armenia, VIII viii 22, captured Barsabaz, VIII xv 9, writes to John, VIII xxxii 4-6, comes to Scardon, VIII xxxii 8, exhorts his fleet, VIII xxxii 11-22, returns to Ravenna, VIII xliii 12, joins Narces, VIII xxxviii 1, receives a letter from Usdrilas, VIII xxxviii 2, commands on the left wing, VIII xxxi 1, escorts the Lombards from Italy, VIII xxxiii 2, encamps near Verona, VIII xxxiii 3, receives proposals of surrender, VIII xxxiii. 4, retires, VIII xxxiii 5, sent to guard the Po, VIII xxxiii 8, captures Petra Pertusa, VIII xxxiv. 24, summoned to Campania, do

INDEX

- Vandals, VIII xix 7, their original home, VIII v 5, emigrate to Libya, VIII v 10
- Varazes, a Persarmenian, with the Roman army in Lazica, VIII xiii 10
- Varni, involved in war with Brittia, VIII x 1 ff, ruled by Hermegisilus, VIII xx 11, advised to favour the alliance with the Franks, VIII xx 15, 17, close to the Franks, VIII xx 15, engage with the islanders, VIII xx 33, do not ride on horses, VIII xx 31, their king Radigis, VIII xx 20
- Vazaine, district in Persia, VIII. x 9, distance from Otesiphon, do.
- Venetia, largely subject to Theudibert, VIII xxiv 6, xxxiii 5, little of, left the Goths, VIII xxiv 8, reached by Narses, VIII xxvi 18, Teias summoned from, VIII xxix 1
- Vemius, brother of Buzes, commander in the Roman army, VIII. ix 5, sent to Lazica, VIII. ix. 5 xii 9
- Verona, held by the Goths, VIII xxvi. 20-22, threatened by Valerian, VIII xxxiii 3, 4
- Verus, Roman commander, defeated and slain in combat, VII xxxvii. 28, xxxix 24
- Vesuvius, its eruptions described, VIII xxxv 1-6, its springs, VIII xxxv 7
- Visigoths, their original home, VIII v 5, migrate to Spain, VIII v 10
- Vitalian, uncle of John, VII xxxix. 10, etc
- Vitigis, king of the Goths, VIII xxvii 5, 6, brought to Byzantium by Belisarius, VIII xxv 12, his death, VII. xxxix 14
- Zames, father of Cabades, VIII xxvi 13
- Zedu, an independent people on the Euxine, VIII iv 1, 2
- Zeus Casius, VIII xiii 25

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY
RICHARD CLAY & SONS LIMITED,
BUNGAY, SUFFOLK

THE LOEB CLASSICAL LIBRARY

VOLUMES ALREADY PUBLISHED

Latin Authors

APULEIUS THE GOLDEN ASS (METAMORPHOSES).

W Adlington (1566) Revised by S Gaselee (*4th Imp*)

AULUS GELLIUS. J. C Rolfe. 3 Vols

AUSONIUS. H G Evelyn White 2 Vols

BOETHIUS TRACTS AND DE CONSOLATIONE

PHILOSOPHIAE Rev. H. F Stewart and E K Rand
(*2nd Imp*)

CAESAR CIVIL WARS A. G Peskett (*2nd Imp*)

CAESAR GALLIC WAR H J Edwards (*4th Imp*)

CATULLUS F W Cornish, TIBULLUS. J B Postgate,
AND PERVIGILIUM VENERIS J W. Mackail. (*8th
Imp*)

CICERO · DE FINIBUS H Rackham (*2nd Imp*)

CICERO · DE OFFICIIS Walter Miller. (*3rd Imp*.)

CICERO · DE SENECTUTE, DE AMICITIA, DE
DIVINATIONE W A Falconer (*2nd Imp*)

CICERO: DE REPUBLICA AND DE LEGIBUS Clinton
Keyes

CICERO LETTERS TO ATTICUS E O Winstedt
3 Vols (Vol I. *4th Imp*, Vols. II and III *2nd Imp*)

CICERO LETTERS TO HIS FRIENDS. W Glynn
Williams. 3 Vols. Vols. I and II

CICERO. PHILIPPICS W C A Ker

CICERO: PRO ARCHIA, POST REDITUM, DE DOMO,
ETC. N. H. Watts

CICERO: TUSCULAN DISPUTATIONS. J. E. King

CICERO: PRO CAECINA, PRO LEGE MANILIA, PRO
CLUENTIO, PRO RABIRIO H. Grose Hodge

CICERO: VERRINE ORATIONS. L. H. G. Greenwood
2 Vols. Vol. I

CLAUDIAN M. Platnauer 2 Vols

CONFESSIONS OF ST. AUGUSTINE. W. Watts (1631)
2 Vols (Vol. I *4th Imp.*, Vol. II *3d Imp.*)

FRONTINUS: STRATAGEMS AND AQUEDUCTS C. E.
Bennett.

FRONTO. CORRESPONDENCE C. R. Haines. 2 Vols

HORACE: ODES AND EPODES. C. E. Bennett (*7th
Imp. revised.*)

HORACE: SATIRES, EPISTLES, ARS POETICA.
H. R. Fairclough

JUVENAL AND PERSIUS G. G. Ramsay (*4th Imp.*)

LIVY. B. O. Foster. 13 Vols Vols I-IV (Vol. I *2nd
Imp. revised.*)

LUCAN. Translated by J. D. Duff

LUCRETIVS W. H. D. Rouse (*2nd Edn.*)

MARTIAL. W. C. A. Ker. 2 Vols (*2nd Imp. revised.*)

OVID: HEROIDES AND AMORES. Grant Showerman
(*2nd Imp.*)

OVID: METAMORPHOSES. F. J. Miller. 2 Vols. (Vol.
I. *4th Imp.*, Vol. II. *3d Imp.*)

OVID: TRISTIA AND EX PONTO A. L. Wheeler.

PETRONIUS. M. Heseltine; SENECA: APOCOLO-
CYNTOSIS W. H. D. Rouse. (*5th Imp.*)

PLAUTUS Paul Nixon. 5 Vols. Vols I-III. (Vol. I.
3rd Imp.)

PLINY: LETTERS. Melmoth's Translation revised by
W. M. L. Hutchinson. 2 Vols. (*3rd Imp.*)

- PROPERTIUS H. E. Butler. (*3rd Imp*)
- QUINTILIAN. H E. Butler. 4 Vols.
- SALLUST. J, C Rolfe.
- SCRIPTORES HISTORIAE AUGUSTAE. D Magie
3 Vols Vols I and II
- SENECA EPISTULAE MORALES. R M. Gummere.
3 Vols (Vol I *2nd Imp*)
- SENECA MORAL ESSAYS. J W. Basore 3 Vols
Vol I
- SENECA TRAGEDIES. F J Miller. 2 Vols (*2nd Imp
revised.*)
- STATIUS J H Mozley. 2 Vols.
- SUETONIUS J C Rolfe 2 Vols (Vol. I *4th Imp.
revised*, Vol II *3rd Imp*)
- TACITUS DIALOGUS Sir Wm Peterson and AGRI-
COLA AND GERMANIA Maurice Hutton (*3rd Imp*)
- TACITUS HISTORIES. C H Moore. 2 Vols. Vol I
- TERENCE John Sargeaunt 2 Vols (*5th Imp*)
- VELLEIUS PATERCULUS AND RES GESTAE F W
Shipley
- VIRGIL H R Fairclough 2 Vols. (Vol. I *6th Imp*,
Vol II *3rd Imp*)

Greek Authors

- ACHILLES TATIUS S Gaselee
- AENEAS TACTICUS ASCLEPIODOTUS AND ONASANDER The Illinois Greek Club
- AESCHINES C. D. Adams.
- AESCHYLUS H Wen Smyth 2 Vols (Vol I *2nd Imp*)
- APOLLODORUS Sir James G Frazer 2 Vols "
- APOLLONIUS RHODIUS. R. C Seaton (*3rd Imp*)
- THE APOSTOLIC FATHERS Kuspopp Lake 2 Vols
(Vol I *4th Imp*, Vol II *3rd Imp*)
- APPIAN'S ROMAN HISTORY. Horace White. 4 Vols.
(Vols I and IV *2nd Imp*)
- ARISTOPHANES Benjamin Bickley Rogers 3 Vols
(*2nd Imp*) Verse trans
- ARISTOTLE THE "ART" OF RHETORIC J. H Freese
- ARISTOTLE THE NICOMACHEAN ETHICS H Rackham
- ARISTOTLE POETICS AND LONGINUS W Hamilton Fyfe, DEMETRIUS ON STYLE W Rhys Roberts
- ATHENAEUS DEIPNOSOPHISTAE C B Gulick. 7 Vols Vols I and II
- CALLIMACHUS AND LYCOPHRON A. W. Mair
- ARATUS G R Man
- CLEMENT OF ALEXANDRIA Rev G W. Butterworth
- DAPHNIS AND CHLOE Thornley's Translation revised by J. M Edmonds, AND PARTHENIUS. S Gaselee (*2nd Imp*)
- DEMOSTHENES, DE CORONA AND DE FALSA LEGATIONE C A Vince and J H Vince
- DIO CASSIUS ROMAN HISTORY E Cary 9 Vols.
- DIODECLES LAERTIUS. R D Hicks. 2 Vols.
- EPICTETUS. W A Oldfather 2 Vols
- EURIPIDES A S Way 4 Vols (Vol I *3rd Imp*, Vols II and IV *4th Imp*, Vol III *2nd Imp*) Verse trans
- EUSEBIUS. ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY. Kuspopp Lake. 2 Vols. Vol I

- GALEN ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES. A. J. Brock (*2nd Imp.*)
- THE GREEK ANTHOLOGY W. R. Paton 5 Vols
(Vol I, *3rd Imp.*, Vol. II *2nd Imp.*)
- THE GREEK BUCOLIC POETS (THEOCRITUS, BION, MOSCHUS) J M. Edmonds (*5th Imp. revised*)
- HERODOTUS. A. D. Godley 4 Vols (Vols. I-III *2nd Imp.*)
- HESIOD AND THE HOMERIC HYMNS II G Evelyn White. (*3rd Imp.*)
- HIPPOCRATES W H S Jones and E. T Withington 4 Vols Vols. I.-III
- HOMER: ILIAD. A. T. Murray 2 Vols (Vol I *2nd Imp.*)
- HOMER. ODYSSEY. A. T. Murray. 2 Vols (*3rd Imp.*)
- ISAEUS. E W Foister
- ISOCRATES G B Norlin 3 Vols. Vol. I
- JOSEPHUS H. St. J Thackeray. 8 Vols Vols I-III.
- JULIAN. Wilmer Cave Wright. 3 Vols.
- LUCIAN. A M Harmon. 8 Vols Vols. I.-IV. (Vol I *3rd Imp.*, Vol II. *2nd Imp.*)
- LYRA GRAECA. J M Edmonds 3 Vols (Vol I *2nd Ed.*)
- MARCUS AURELIUS C R Haines. (*2nd Imp.*)
- MENANDER F G Allinson
- OPPIAN, COLLUTHIUS, TRYPHIODORUS, A W Mair
- PAUSANIAS DESCRIPTION OF GREECE W H S Jones 5 Vols and Companion Vol Vols I and II
- PHILOSTRATUS THE LIFE OF APOLLONIUS OF TYANA F. C. Conybeare 2 Vols (Vol I *3rd Imp.*, Vol II *2nd Imp.*)
- PHILOSTRATUS AND EUNAPIUS LIVES OF THE SOPHISTS Wilmer Cave Wright
- PINDAR. Sir J E Sandys (*4th Imp.*)
- PLATO CHARMIDES, ALCIBIADES, HIPPARCHUS THE LOVERS, THEAGES, MINOS AND EPINOMIS W R M. Lamb

- PLATO · CRATYLUS, PARMENIDES, GREATER HIPPIAS, LESSER HIPPIAS. H. N. Fowler
- PLATO EUTHYPHRO, APOLOGY, CRITO, PHAEDO, PHAEDRUS H. N. Fowler (*6th Imp*)
- PLATO LACHES, PROTAGORAS, MENO, EUTHYDEMUS W. R. M. Lamb
- PLATO. LAWS Rev. R. G. Bury 2 Vols
- PLATO LYSIS, SYMPOSIUM, GORGIAS W. R. M. Lamb
- PLATO STATESMAN, PHILEBUS II N. Fowler; ION W. R. M. Lamb.
- PLATO THEAETETUS AND SOPHIST H. N. Fowler
- PLUTARCH MORALIA F. C. Babbitt 14 Vols Vols I and II
- PLUTARCH THE PARALLEL LIVES B. Perin 11 Vols (Vols I, II and VII *2nd Imp*)
- POLYBIUS W. R. Paton 6 Vols
- PROCOPIUS HISTORY OF THE WARS H. B. Dewing 7 Vols I-V.
- QUINTUS SMYRNAEUS A. S. Way Verse trans
- SOPHOCLES. F. Storr 2 Vols (Vol. I. *5th Imp*, Vol II *3rd Imp*) Verse trans
- ST. BASIL LETTERS. R. J. Deferrari 4 Vols Vols I and II
- ST. JOHN DAMASCENE · BARLAAM AND IOASAPH Rev. G. R. Woodward and Harold Mattingly
- STRABO · GEOGRAPHY Horace L. Jones. 8 Vols Vols. I-V
- THEOPHRASTUS ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS Sir Arthur Hort, Bart 2 Vols
- THUCYDIDES C. F. Smith 4 Vols (Vol I *2nd Imp revised*.)
- XENOPHON · CYROPAEDIA Walter Miller 2 Vols (Vol I *2nd Imp*.)
- XENOPHON HELLENICA, ANABASIS, APOLOGY AND SYMPOSIUM C. L. Brownson and O. J. Todd 3 Vols
- XENOPHON MEMORABILIA AND OECONOMICUS E. C. Marchant.
- XENOPHON. SCRIPTA MINORA. E. C. Marchant.

IN PREPARATION

Greek Authors

- ARISTOTLE, MAETPHYSICS, H Tredennick.
ARISTOTLE, ON THE MOTION AND PROGRESSION
OF ANIMALS, E S Forster.
ARISTOTLE, ORGANON, W. M L Hutchinson
ARISTOTLE, PHYSICS, Rev P. Wicksteed.
ARISTOTLE, POLITICS AND ATHENIAN CONSTI-
TUTION, Edward Capps.
ARRIAN, HIST. OF ALEXANDER AND INDICA, Rev
, E Iliffe Robson 2 Vols.
DEMOSTHENES, OLYNTHIACS, PHILIPPICS, LEP-
TINES AND MINOR SPEECHES, J H. Vince.
DEMOSTHENES, MEIDIAS, ANDROTION, ARISTO-
CRATES, TIMOCRATES, J H. Vince
DEMOSTHENES, PRIVATE ORATIONS, G M. Calhoun
DIO CHRYSOSTOM, W E Waters
GREEK IAMBIC AND ELEGIAC POETS AND THE
ANACREONTEA, J M. Edmonds
LYSIAS, W R M. Lamb.
PAPYRI, A S Hunt
PHILO, F M Colson and Rev. G H Whitaker
PHILOSTRATUS, IMAGES, Arthur Fairbanks
PLATO, REPUBLIC, Paul Shorey
PLATO, TIMAEUS, CRITIAS, CLITOPHO, MENEXE-
NUS, EPISTULAE, Rev R. G Bury.
SEXTUS EMPIRICUS, Rev R G Bury
THEOPHRASTUS, CHARACTERS, J M Edmonds,
HERODES, CHOLIAMBIC FRAGMENTS, etc, A D
Knox

Latin Authors

- AMMIANUS MARCELLINUS, J C Rolfe
BEDE, ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY
CICERO, IN CATILINAM, PRO MURÉNA, PRO
SULLA, B L Ullmann.
CICERO, DE NATURA DEORUM, H Rackham
CICERO, DE ORATORE, ORATOR, BRUTIUS, Charles
Stuttaford
CICERO, IN PISONEM, PRO SCAURO, PRO FONTEIO,
PRO MILONE, etc, N H. Watts
CICERO, PRO QUINCTIO, PRO ROSCIO AMERINO,
PRO ROSCIO COMOEDO, CONTRA RULLUM, J H
Freese
CICERO, PRO SEXTIO, IN VATINIUM, PRO CAELIO,
PRO PROVINCIIS CONSULARIBUS, PRO BALBO,
D Moirah
CORNELIUS NEPOS, J C Rolfe
ENNIUS, LUCILIUS and other specimens of Old Latin,
E H Warmington
FLORUS, E S. Forster.
OVID: ARS AMATORIA, REMEDIA AMORIS, etc.
J H Mozley.
OVID, FASTI, Sir J G Frazer.
PLINY, NATURAL HISTORY, W. H S Jones and L F.
Newman.
ST AUGUSTINE, MINOR WORKS.
SIDONIUS, LETTERS. E V Arnold and W B Anderson
TACITUS, ANNALS, John Jackson.
VALERIUS FLACCUS, A F. Scholfield.
VITRUVIUS, DE ARCHITECTURA, F. Granger.

DESCRIPTIVE PROSPECTUS ON APPLICATION

London	-	-	WILLIAM HEINEMANN
New York	-	-	- G. PUTNAM'S SONS

